SHOUT
SHARE
IT

SMITHSONIAN
LIBRARY

506.595

4

96375
Smith
80

JOURNAL

of the

Straits Branch

of the

Royal Asiatic Society

For the year

1916.

Part 72. Proceedings, pp. i-xxx; Journal, pp. 1-124 published May 20th, 1916.

Part. 73. Journal, pp. 125-278 published July 26th, 1916.

Part 74. Journal, pp. 279-328 with title page published December 30th, 1916.

SINGAPORE:
PRINTED AT THE METHODIST PUBLISHING HOUSE.
1916.

ERRATA.

p. 132 line 17 *for* nemestpinus *read* nemestrinus.

p. 133 line 10 from the bottom *for* nemestpinus *read* nemestrinus.

p. 136 line 12 *for* nemestpinus *read* nemestrinus.

p. 145 line 31 *for* sarmntosa *read* sarmentosa.

p. 148 line 22 *for* 1911 *read* 1811.

p. 148 line 22 *for* proceed *read* proceeded.

p. 148 line 23 *for* 1912 *read* 1812.

p. 148 line 30 *for* 1913 *read* 1813.

p. 150 for line 18 *substitute* Penang at this date was governed with the aid of a

p. 155 note 17 *for* ilieifolius *read* ilicifolius

p. 168 note 74 last line but two *for* 1915 *read* 1815.

p. 171 footnote 79 *for* Flora India *read* Flora Indica.

p. 173 last line of footnote *for* Coomb's *read* Coombs'.

p. 211 footnote 217 *for* has *read* had.

p. 216 footnote 232 *for* Saroaca *read* Saraca.

p. 227 footnote line 6. *supply* p. 477.

p. 228 footnote 276 *for* grandiora *read* grandiflora.

p. 230 footnote 287 *for* Ay. *read* Arg.

p. 243 *delete* under Nymphaea stellata the third line and the reference in the fourth.

p. 267 line 5 *for* give *read* gave.

p. 267 line 6 *for* value *read* names.

p. 268 last line but one *for* Ocetas *read* Octas.

Plates 1, 2 and 3, *for* time in seconds *read* time in pairs of seconds.

CONTRIBUTORS.

Annandale, N. Barnacles from deep-sea Telegraph Cables in the Malay Archipelago 281

Blagden, C. O. Notes on Malay History.

1. An early reference to Menangkabau
2. An early mention of the old Singapore 127

Burkill, I. H. Williams Jack's Letters to Nathaniel Wallich, 1819-1821 147

Campbell, J. Argyll. An Experimental Investigation concerning the effects of Tuba (Derris elliptica) Fish-poison 129

Humphreys, J. L. A Naning Wedding Speech 25

Kloss, C. Boden. See Robinson, H. C.

Macfadyen, E. Origin of the Name Kuala Lumpur .. 35

Marriott, H. Fragment of the History of Trengganu and Kelantan 3

Pepys, W. E. A Kelantan Glossary 303

Ridley, H. N. New and rare Malayan Plants, Series VIII 139

Robinson, H. C. and C. Boden Kloss Preliminary Diagnoses of some New Species and subspecies of Mammals and Birds, obtained in Korinchi, West Sumatra, Feb.-June, 1914 269

Sturrock, J. Hikayat Marong Mahawangsa or Kedah Annals 37

First part for the year
1916.

Price to non-members
$1.50

STRAITS BRANCH
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY

[No. 72]

JOURNAL

May, 1916

241468

Sold at the Society's Rooms, Raffles Museum. Singapore,
and by
MESSRS. WILLIAM WESLEY & SON
28, ESSEX STREET, STRAND,
LONDON, W. C.

PRINTED AT THE METHODIST PUBLISHING HOUSE, SINGAPORE

[No. 72]

JOURNAL
of the
Straits Branch
of the
Royal Asiatic Society

May, 1916

Smithsonian Institution
OCT
National Museum

SINGAPORE:
PRINTED AT THE METHODIST PUBLISHING HOUSE
1916

THE
STRAITS BRANCH
OF THE
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY

COUNCIL FOR 1916.

Hon. C. J. Saunders, *President.*

Hon. W. George Maxwell, C.M.G. *Vice-President for Singapore.*

Hon. A. T. Bryant, *Vice-President for Penang.*

Hon. A. H. Lemon, *Vice-President for the F. M. S.*

Dr. R. Hanitsch, *Honorary Treasurer.*

I. H. Burkill, Esq., *Honorary Secretary.*

C. Bazell Esq., *Honorary Librarian.*

Dr. R. D. Keith,
W. Makepeace Esq.
H. Marriott Esq.
H. Robinson Esq.
Councillors.

PROCEEDINGS

of the

Annual General Meeting.

Minutes of the Annual General Meeting held at the Society's rooms, Raffles Museum at 5 p.m. on Thursday, February 10th, 1916.

Present :—

In the chair, Rev. Dr. W. G. Shellabear, (President,) Rev. A. J. Amery, Messrs. C. F. C. Ayre, and A. W. Bean, Professor Argyll Campbell, Dr. D. J. Galloway, Mr. A. W. H. Hamilton, Dr. R, Hanitsch, Messrs. A. Knight, V. Knight, W. Makepeace, H. Marriott, Hon. W. George Maxwell, Messrs. R. D. Pringle, H. Robinson, Hon. C. J. Saunders, Messrs. See Teong Wah, and I. H Burkill. (Hon. Secretary).

Also as visitors, Mrs. Burkill, Mrs. Legrew Watkins and others.

The minutes of the meeting of April 12th, 1915, were read and confirmed.

The Annual Report and accounts, which had been circulated in print, were accepted.

On the recommendation of the retiring Council, His Highness the Raja Muda of Sarawak, was elected an Honorary Member on a show of hands.

The names of the following were put before the meeting as seeking membership:—

Mr. A. Rogers, Singapore, proposed by Mr. C. Bazell seconded by Mr. C. F. C. Ayre,

Mr. G. B. Kellagher, Singapore, proposed by Mr. C. Bazell, seconded by Mr. C. F. C. Ayre,

Mr. Ong Boon Tat, Singapore, proposed by the Mr. See Teong Wah, seconded by Dr. D. J. Galloway,

Mr. L. Rayman, Pekin, proposed by Dr. W. G. Shellabear, seconded by Mr. G. M, Laidlaw,

Mrs. Legrew Watkins, Singapore, proposed by Dr. R. Hanitsch, seconded by Mr. I. H. Burkill,

Mr. Frank H. Myers, Singapore, proposed by Rev. A. J Amery, seconded by Mr. I. H. Burkill,

Mr. W. E. Mann, Semarang, proposed by Mr. J. O' May, seconded by Dr. W. G. Shellabear.

Mr. Marriott pointed out that under rule 4 election of new members rested with the Council.

The Honorary Secretary stated that the retiring Council made the following nominations for the succeeding Council but asked for other nominations:—

President	Hon. C. J. SAUNDERS.
Vice-President for Singapore	Hon. W. G. MAXWELL.
Vice-President for Penang	Hon. A. T. BRYANT.
Vice-President for the F. M. S.	Hon. A. H. LEMON.
Hon. Secretary	Mr. I. H. BURKILL.
Hon. Treasurer	Dr. R. HANITSCH.
Hon. Librarian	Mr. C. BAZELL.
Councillors	Dr. R. D. KEITH. Mr. W. MAKEPEACE. Mr. H. MARRIOTT. Mr. H. ROBINSON.

No other nominations having been made, the Council's were voted on, and the officers as proposed elected.

The Hon. W. G. Maxwell, proposed and the Hon. C. J. Saunders seconded that a vote of thanks be accorded to the retiring President for the great service that he had done to the Society in editing the Hikayat Sri Rama. This was passed.

The Hon. Secretary explained how exactly a map of the Peninsula projected by the Survey Department, F. M. S., would compete with the Society's, and that the Council saw no other course than to abandon their work towards a new Edition.

The Hon. C. J. Saunders, proposed and Mr. Ayre seconded that a vote of thanks be accorded to Mr. W. Makepeace for his services in auditing the accounts of the Society. This was passed.

There being no further business, the President asked Mrs. Legrew Watkins to exhibit her collection of articles used by the Ainus of Northern Japan; and the meeting became informal.

ANNUAL REPORT

of the

Straits Branch, Royal Asiatic Society

for 1915.

Membership. During 1915 the following new members were elected :—

Mr. A. F. Worthington,
,, Lim Cheng Law,
,, See Tiong Hwa,
,, H. C. W. Allen,
Dr. C. Strickland,
Mr. L. Lewton-Brain,
,, O. T. Dussek,
Mr. V. Knight.
,, A. W. H. Hamilton.
,, J. G. Raggi.
,, F. M. Baddeley.
,, J. W. Boyd-Walker.
,, C. C. Brown.
,, H. D. Mundell.

The Branch lost by death 4 members, and from other causes 5 members.

In January 1916 the following were elected :—Messrs. H. W. Ford, T. G. Watson, Shiva Prasad Gupta, J. W. Cundell Ellis and Professor Argyll Campbell.

Council. During the year Mr. Gold and Mr. Still resigned their places on the Council. To fill the vacancy caused by Mr. Gold's resignation, the Hon. W. G. Maxwell was co-opted. Mr. Still's place was not filled up.

Journal. Three parts of the Journal were issued. The first part contained the Proceedings, and four short papers as follows:—

J. E. Nathan, A Journey over the Main Range from Perak to Pahang.

H. Overbeck, New Notes on the Game of Chongkak.

H. N. Ridley, New and Rare Malayan Plants.

I. H. Burkill, An Abnormality in the Coconut Palm.

The second part contained Dr. R. Hanitsch's monograph on the Malayan Blattidæ or cockroaches. The last part contained the Hikayat Sri Rama verbatim from an old manuscript in the Bodleian

Library, Oxford, which the University kindly enabled the Branch Society to use. The President edited the text, and the Council wish to record their gratitude to him for doing so.

In accordance with plans determined on in 1914, the parts of the journal were paged so as to make an annual volume, the Malay text forming an appendix. A title page and an index will be issued with the small part still unpublished.

The Council printed 550 copies of the first two parts but 1000 of the last, so that it may be sold to the public. As the text has been stereotyped, a second edition, if called for, will cost little. In order to sell the first edition the price has been fixed as low as the Society's expenses in procuring the rotographic copy of the manuscript, in transcribing and in printing permit.

Towards the 1916 Journal, the Council has eight papers actually in hand, including the Hikayat Marong Maha-wangsa or Annals of Kedah, promised in the Annual Report for 1914. As additional to the Journal, the Council has undertaken to publish the Reports on the Robinson-Kloss expedition to Korinchi Peak, Sumatra, and has put a part of the illustrations already into preparation.

Map. Subject to confirmation at the annual meeting the Council has decided to abandon its preparations for a new edition of the Map of the Malay Peninsula in consequence of the projection of a similar map by the F. M. S. Survey Department.

Library. One hundred and eighty-two volumes have been bound. They have been put onto the shelves, but cause a congestion which necessitates a rearrangement. A pair of pigeon-hole almairahs have been constructed especially for the holding of unbound periodicals.

Photographic Record. Owing to the difficulty of obtaining permanent photographic paper during the war, little progress has been made with the Photographic Record. Messrs. Topham, Jones and Railton have been so good as to present photographs and several members have offered negatives.

Finances. The expenditure for the year exceeded the revenue. In the Treasurer's statement, appended, it is recorded that he received:—

By subscriptions : : : :	$1329.68
By sales : : : :	476.48
By interest : : : : :	385.75
	$2191.91

and paid out $1932.04 : but by the deduction of a printing bill paid in

1915, amounting to $627.83, for the 1914 Journals and by the addition of a printing bill for $1998.44 dated 31st December last, for the 1915 Journals, etc., it is shown that $1110.74 was incurred above the receipts for the year. This excess has gone into the improvement of the Journal and into the sale copies of the Hikayat Sri Rama. It is hoped that it will come back in an increased membership and a demand for the latter publication, so rapid as to justify reprinting.

Application has been made to the Administrator of the Estate of the late Hon. Treasurer for the balance which was in his hands at his death.

I. HENRY BURKILL,

Hon. Secretary.

13th January, 1916

STRAITS BRANCH ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY

Receipts and Payments Account for the year ended 31st December, 1915.

Receipts.	$	c.	$	c.
To Balance Brought Forward from last Account:				
On Fixed Deposit: Merc. Bank ...	4,700			
do. Chart. ,, ...	1,500			
Current Account Merc. ,, ...	369	66		
do. Chart. ,,	151	76		
In the Hands of the Executors of the late Hon. Treasurer, Mr. Montgomerie	198	68	6,920	10
To Subscriptions				
For the year ended 31st Dec. 1912	5	—		
Do. do. 1913	25	—		
Do. do. 1914	180	—		
Do. do. 1915	929	68		
Do. do. 1916	40	—		
3 Life Memberships	150	—	1,329	68
To Sale of Journals			175	98
,, Sale of maps			292	—
,, Refundments			8	50
Received by the late Hon. Treasurer, Mr. Montgomerie ...			63	57
In the Hands of the late Hon. Treasurer, Mr. Montgomerie ...			4	50
To Bank Interest, Mercantile Bank			325	75
,, Chartered Bank			60	—
			9,180	08

Payments.	$	c.	$	c
By Printing Journal No. 67 ...	627	83		
,, do. do. No. 68 ...	107	35		
,, Illustrations for Journal Nos. 68 and 69	468	16		
,, Paid to Messrs Stanford for Maps	169	67		
,, Furniture	86	—		
,, Bookbinding	85	05		
,, Stationery	8	25		
,, Salaries	286	—		
,, Postages and Petties	91	79		
,, Cheque book	2	—	1.932	10
,, Balances carried forward: ...				
On Fixed Deposit:				
Mercantile Bank			4,700	—
Chartered Bank			1,560	—
On Current Account				
Mercantile Bank			633	17
Chartered Bank			151	63
In the Hands of the Executors ... of the late Hon. Treasurer, .. Mr. Montgomerie			198	68
do. late Hon. Treasurer ... Mr. Montgomerie			4	50
			9,180	08

Audited, vouchers and counterfoil receipts
and F/D receipts seen and found correct.
WALTER MAKEPEACE, *17 January, 1916.*

R. HANITSCH,
Hon. Treasurer.
January 15th, 1916.

Officers of the Straits Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society

1878-1915.

Presidents.

1878—1880	Ven. Archdeacon (afterwards Bishop) G. F. Hose.
1881—1882	The Hon'ble (afterwards Sir) Cecil Clementi Smith, G.C.M.G.
1883—1884	The Hon'ble C. J. Irving.
1885	The Hon'ble A. M. Skinner.
1886—1887	The Hon'ble (afterwards Sir) J. F. Dickson, K.C.M.G.
1888—1889	The Hon'ble A. M. Skinner.
1890—1891	His Excellency Sir J. F. Dickson, K.C.M.G.
1892—1893	His Excellency Sir Charles Warren, K.C.M.G., K.C.B.
1894—1907	The Right Rev. G. F. Hose, Bishop of Singapore and Sarawak.
1908—1913	The Hon'ble Dr. D. J. Galloway.
1914—1915	The Rev. Dr. W. G. Shellabear.

Vice Presidents.

Two from 1878 to 1909, but Three from 1910 forward.

J. D. Vaughan Esq. (1878).
D. Logan Esq. (1878; 1883—1888: 1890—1894: 1896—1897).
Hon'ble C. J. Irving (1879: 1880).
Major S. Dunlop, (1879).
Hon'ble (afterwards Sir) Cecil Clementi Smith (1880).
G. W. Lavino Esq. (1881—1882).
Dr. E. Bieber (1881—1882).
Hon'ble (afterwards Sir) W. E. Maxwell (1889: 1893—1894).
Hon'ble A. M. Skinner (1883—1884).
Hon'ble Dr. W. C. Brown (1898: 1900: 1902: 1904).
Hon'ble C. W. S. Kynnersley (1889: 1901: 1903—1904).
W. A. Pickering Esq. (1885—1888).
Hon'ble J. K. Birch (1899: 1905—1906).
Hon'ble R. N. Bland (1907—1909).
The Right Rev. G. F. Hose, Bishop of Singapore and Sarawak (1890—1892).
Rev. G. M. Reith (1895).

Hon'ble W. R. Collyer (1896—1900: 1902—1905).
A. Knight Esq. (1901).
Hon'ble Dr. D. J. Galloway (1906—1907).
Hon'ble W. D. Barnes (1908—1910).
Hon'ble C. J. Saunders (1910—1911; 1914—1915).
A. R. Adams Esq. afterwards the Hon'ble (1910).
H. C. Robinson Esq. (1909: 1913).
Hon'ble A. T. Bryant (1912: 1914—1915).
Hon'ble W. Evans (1911: 1913).
W. G. Maxwell Esq. afterwards the Hon'ble (1911—1912).
Rev. Dr. W. G. Shellabear (1913).
Hon'ble J. O. Anthonisz (1912).
R. O. Winstedt Esq. (1914—1915).

Hon. Treasurers.

1878	Hon'ble C. J. Irving.
1879	J. Miller Esq.
1880—1891	Edwin Koek Esq.
1891—1893	H. T. Haughton Esq.
1894—1897	J. O. Anthonisz Esq. (afterwards the Hon'ble).
1898—1906	Dr. R. Hanitsch.
1907—1909	R. J. Bartlett Esq.
1910	Dr. R. Hanitsch.
1911	C. F. C. Ayre Esq.
1911	Dr. R. Hanitsch.
1912—1914	J. Love Montgomerie Esq.
1915	Dr. R. Hanitsch.

Hon. Secretaries.

1878	Dr. N. B. Dennys.
1879	A. M. Skinner Esq. (afterwards the Hon'ble).
1880—1882	Frank A. Swettenham Esq. (afterwards Sir).
1883—1888	The Hon'ble William E. Maxwell (afterwards Sir).
1888—1889	H. T. Haughton Esq.
1890—1893	H. N. Ridley Esq.
1894—1895	R. J. Wilkinson Esq. (afterwards the Hon'ble).
1896	C. O. Blagden Esq.
1896—1900	H. N. Ridley Esq.
1901	P. J. Burgess Esq.
1902—1907	H. N. Ridley Esq.
1908	M. Hellier Esq.
1908—1911	H. N. Ridley Esq.
1912—1913	Dr. R. Hanitsch.
1914—1915	I. H. Burkill Esq.

Hon. Librarians.

1909—1912	W. Makepeace Esq.
1913	A. C. Baker Esq.
1914—1915	Dr. R. van Beuningen van Helsdingen.

Councillors.

Alphabetically Arranged.

Dr. E. Bieber (1878—1879). The Hon'ble R. N. Bland (1897—1900). Hon'ble F. W. Bonser (1890—1893). Dr. W. N. Bott (1895—1896). Hon'ble A. T. Bryant (1907: 1910). P. J. Burgess Esq: (1902: 1904). I. H. Burkill Esq: (1913). A. Currie Esq: (1889). W. Davison Esq: (1889—1901). M. de Vicq Esq: (1899). N. B. Dennys (1879: 1880—1881: 1883: 1886). Hon'ble J. Douglas (1878). Rev. W. Drury (1909—1911). A. Duff (1882—1884). Ven. Archdeacon W. Dunkerley (1903). H. H. Eschke Esq. (1897—1898: 1900: 1902—1904). Right Rev. Dr. C. J. Ferguson-Davie, Bishop of Singapore (1912—1913). V. A. Flower Esq. (1905—1906: 1908—1912). P. Gold Esq: (1914). Hon'ble Mr. Justice J. T. Goldney (1892). Hon'ble J. Graham (1882—1883). Dr. R. Hanitsch (1897: 1907—1909). G. T. Hare Esq: (1895—1896). Hon'ble D. F. A. Hervey (1879). E. C. Hill Esq: (1885). H. H. Hudson Esq: (1895). R. W. Hullett Esq: (1879—1880: 1884—1887: 1900). Dr. R. D. Keith (1911—1912: 1914—1915). C. Boden Kloss Esq: (1904—1908). A. Knight Esq: (1884—1887: 1889—1895: 1898—1899: 1902—1903: 1906—1911: 1913). E. Koek Esq: (1878—1879). W. Krohn Esq: (1881). Hon'ble C. W. S. Kynnersley (1892—1893: 1898: 1900—1904). Hon'ble A. H. Lemon (1895: 1906). Hon'ble Dr. Lim Boon Keng (1902). W. Makepeace Esq: (1914). H. Marriott Esq: (1908: 1912—1913). Hon'ble W. G. Maxwell (1905). J. Miller Esq: (1878: 1885—1887). W. Nanson Esq: (1890—1891). H. L. Noronha (1883—1887). Hon'ble W. T. Napier (1894: 1897). A. W. S. O'Sullivan Esq: (1901—1903). Bennett Pell Esq: (1881). W. A. Pickering Esq: (1880—1881). Rev. G. M. Reith (1894). H. N. Ridley Esq: (1894). G. A. Reme Esq: (1880). E. Rostados Esq: (1901). W. G. St. Clair Esq: (1889: 1901: 1903—1906). Rev. Dr. W. G. Shellabear (1896—1901: 1904). The Hon'ble A. M. Skinner (1878: 1880: 1882: 1887). A. W. Still Esq: (1914—1915). C. Stringer Esq: (1881—1882: 1889). S. L. Thornton Esq: (1888). Dr. C. Trebing (1882—1884). The Hon'ble R. J. Wilkinson (1896).

List of Members for 1916.

*Life Members. †Honorary Members.

Patron His Excellency Sir Arthur Young, K.C.M.G. Governor of the Straits Settlements and High Commissioner for the Malay States.

Date of election.	
18 Jan., 1903.	Abbott, Dr. W. L. Bayley's Hotel, London, W. England.
24 June, 1909.	Adam, Frank, The Straits Trading Co., Singapore.
— 1907.	Adams, Hon. A. R. Messrs. Adams and Allan, Penang [Vice-President, 1910].
14 Dec., 1910.	Adams, H. A. Superintendent, of Police and Prisons, Kuching, Sarawak.
20 June, 1910.	Adams, H. Powys, Imber Cross, Thames Ditton, Surrey, England.
10 March, 1909.	Adams, T. S. District Officer, Kuala Krai, Kelantan.
7 Feb., 1910.	Aldworth, J. R. O. Controller of Labour, Kuala Lumpur.
17 Feb., 1913.	Allen, Rev. George Dexter, Singapore.
3 May, 1914.	Allen, H. C. W., c/o Messrs. Boustead & Co., Singapore.
24 June, 1909.	Allen, Rowland, Beacon Hall, North Cranbrook, Kent, England.
16 Feb., 1914.	Amery, Rev. A. J. Victoria Bridge School, Singapore.
— 1907.	Anderson, E. Messrs. Mansfield and Co., Singapore.
22 Feb., 1911.	Anderson, J. W. Botanic Gardens, Singapore.
— 1890.	Anthonisz, J. O., C.M.G. England, (Hon. Treasurer, 1894-1896: Vice President 1913).
12 Oct., 1911.	Armstrong, W. R. Messrs. Logan and Ross, Penang.
27 Oct., 1908.	Arthur, J. S. W. Chinese Protectorate, Singapore.
4 June, 1908.	*Ayre, C. F. C. Outram Road School, Singapore.
3 May, 1915.	Baddeley, F. M., Postmaster General, Singapore.
1 Feb., 1915.	Bain, Norman K. Jugra, Selangor.

20 May,	1912.	Baker, A. C. c/o W. Evans Esq: The Limes, Crowmarsh near Wallingford, Berks, England. (Hon. Librarian 1912-1913).
3 June,	1909.	Banks, C. W. c/o Messrs. John Little & Co., Singapore.
10 Jan.,	1899.	*Banks, J. E. c/o the American Bridge Co. Ambridge, Pa., U. S. A.
9 Nov.,	1910.	Barnard, Basil, Forest Department, Taiping, Perak.
15 April,	1912.	Barnard, H. C., F. M. S. Railways, Kuala Lumpur.
23 June,	1904.	Bartlett, R. J. Inspector of Schools, Singapore.
24 May,	1910.	Bartley, W. Civil Service, Singapore.
20 July,	1914.	Bazell, C. Raffles Institution, Singapore. (Hon. Librarian 1916).
24 June,	1909.	Bean, A. W. c/o Messrs. Robinson & Co., Singapore.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Beatty, D. Tavoy, Burma.
16 June,	1913.	Bell, V. G. Forest Department, Kuala Lumpur.
25 Feb.,	1910.	*Berkeley, H., F. M. S., Civil Service.
14 Aug.,	1912.	Bicknell, J. W. c/o General Rubber Co. Medan, Sumatra.
—	1885.	Bicknell, W. A. York House, 4 Earls Road Bournemouth, W., England.
4 June,	1908.	*Bishop, Major C. F., R. A. 23 Percy Park Road, Tynemouth, England.
27 Jan.,	1890.	*Blagden, C. O. India Office Library, Whitehall, London, S. W. (Hon. Secretary, 1896).
—	1884.	Bland, R. N., C. M. G. Broadfields, Letchworth, Herts, England. (Council, 1898-1900: Vice-President, 1907—1909).
15 Jan.,	1906.	Bland, Mrs. Broadfields, Letchworth, Herts., England.
5 May,	1914.	Bluett, H. A. Newton, Lebong Loetit, Benkoelen, Sumatra; or Oaklea, Chaucer Road, Bedford, England.
14 Dec.,	1910.	Boult, F. F., Bintulu, Sarawak.
17 Jan.,	1910.	Boyd, D. T., c/o Messrs. Boustead & Co., Singapore.
16 Aug.,	1915.	Boyd-Walker, J. W. Atbara Estate, Kuantan, Pahang.
13 Jan.,	1913.	Braddell, R. St. J., Messrs. Braddell Bros., Singapore.
7 Feb.,	1910.	Brison, Clifford S., 32 Archfield Road, Cotham, Bristol, England.

23 Sept.,	1897.	Brockman, Sir Edward L., K. C. M. G. Kuala Lumpur.
1 April,	1910.	Brooke, J. R., Government Monopolies Department, Keppel Harbour, Singapore.
13 Jan.,	1909.	Brooks, C. J. Lebong Tandai, Benkoelen, Sumatra.
8 Sept.,	1909.	Brown, A. V., Police Court, Singapore.
16 Aug.,	1915.	Brown, C. C., F. M. S. Civil Service, Taiping, Perak.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Brown, D. A. M. Messrs. Brown, Phillips and Stewart, Penang.
1 Dec.,	1913.	*Bryan, J. M., Kuching, Sarawak.
26 March,	1887.	Bryant, Hon. A. T., Penang (Council, 1907: 1910: Vice-President, 1912, 1914-1916).
28 Oct.,	1912.	Burkill, I. H., Botanic Gardens, Singapore. (Council, 1913: Hon. Secretary, 1914-1916).
29 Sept.,	1913.	*Caldecott, Andrew, Secretariat, Kuala Lumpur.
1 April,	1910.	Campbell, J. Chartered Bank of India Australia, and China, Soerabaya, Java.
16 Jan.,	1916.	Campbell, Professor W. Argyll, M. D., D. Sc. Medical School, Singapore.
16 Feb.,	1914.	Cardew, G. E., 3/4th Devon Depot Battalion, Exmouth, Devon, England.
3 Jan.,	1909.	Carver, Hon. C. I., Messrs. Donaldson and Burkinshaw, Singapore.
2 Feb.,	1914.	Champkin, Cyril, The Chartered Bank of India, Australia and China, Singapore.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Chancellor, Capt. A. R., Police Office, Singapore.
15 Jan.,	1906.	Chapman, W. T. Ipoh, Perak.
1 Dec.,	1913.	*Choo Kia Peng, Kuala Lumpur.
16 March,	1911.	Clayton, T. W., Temerloh, Pahang.
2 Feb.,	1914.	Clement, W. R. T., Sarawak.
13 Jan.,	1913.	Chulan, Raja, bin Ex-Sultan Abdullah, Taiping. Perak.
30 Jan.,	1894.	†Collyer, W. R., I. S. O. Hackford Hall, Reepham, Norfolk, England. (Council 1904: Vice President, 1897-1900, 1902, 1904-1905: Hon. Member, 1906).
1 March,	1897.	*Conlay, W. L., Taiping, Perak.
27 Jan.,	1899.	Cook, Rev. J. A. B., Gilstead, Singapore.
—	1910.	Cook, Hon. W. Wallace c/o The Straits Trading Co., Singapore.
14 Aug.,	1912.	Crossle, Frank J., Edinburgh Estate, Kepong, Selangor.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Croucher, Dr. F. B., General Hospital, Singapore.
13 Jan.,	1905.	Dallas, Hon. F. H., Sarawak.

24 May, 1910. Daly, M. D., Batu Gajah, Perak.
18 July, 1891. Dane, Dr. R., Penang.
27 Jan., 1910. Darbishire, Hon. C. W., c/o Messrs. Paterson Simons & Co., Singapore.
— 1907. Dent, Dr. F. Government Analyst, Singapore.
1 Dec., 1911. Derry, R. 57 Ennerdale Road, Kew Gardens, Surrey, England.
5 Nov., 1903. *Deshon, H. F., Southfield, Combe Down, Bath, England.
23 Sept., 1897. Dickson, E. A., Grik, Upper Perak.
28 July, 1905. Douglas, Hon. R. S. Baram, Sarawak.
30 Nov., 1914. Duncan, W. Wallace, Assistant Censor, General Post Office, Penang.
27 Jan., 1910. Dunman, W., Grove Estate, Tanjong Katong, Singapore.
16 Aug., 1915. Dussek, O. T., Malay College, Malacca.
13 Oct., 1899. Edmonds, R. C., F. M. S. Civil Service, Seremban.
— 1885. Egerton, His Excellency Sir W., K. C. M. G. Government House, British Guiana.
13 Nov., 1901. Elcum, J. B., Singapore.
27 Jan., 1910. Ellerton, H. B., Isthmian Club, Piccadilly, London, W.
3 June, 1909. Ellis, Sir Evelyn C., Messrs. Drew and Napier, Singapore.
16 Jan., 1916. Ellis, J. W. Cundell, F. M. S. Civil Service, Kuala Lumpur.
27 Jan., 1910. Engel, L., Netherlands Trading Society, Batavia.
25 March, 1913. Ermen, C., Kuching Sarawak.
27 Jan., 1910. Engel, L., Netherlands Trading Society,
27 Jan., 1910. Evans, W., The Limes, Crowmarsh near Wallingford, Berks, England.
17 March, 1890. Everett, H. H., Santubong, Sarawak.
7 Feb., 1910. Falshaw, Dr. P. S., Government Veterinary Department, Singapore.
8 Sept., 1909. Farrer, R. J. Kota Bharu, Kelantan.
28 Oct., 1912. Faulkner, Dr. S. B. Christmas Island.
26 Jan., 1911. *Ferguson-Davie, Rt. Rev. Dr. C. J., Bishop of Singapore (Council, 1912-1913).
8 Sept., 1909. Ferrier, J. G., c/o Borneo Company, Soerabaya, Java.
24 May, 1910. Firmstone, H. W. Education Department, Singapore.
12 Jan., 1900. Fleming, T. C., Kuala Kubu, Selangor.
2 Sept. 1897. *Flower, Capt. S. S., Zoological Gardens, Ghizeh, Egypt.
23 June, 1904. *Flower, V. A., 42 Earls Court Square, London, S. W. (Council 1905-1912).

16 Jan.,	1916.	Ford, H. W.; Municipal Offices, Malacca.
19 Aug.,	1908.	Freeman, D., 9, Court of Justice, Kuala Lumpur.
—	1897.	Freer, Dr. G. D.
14 Aug.,	1912.	Gallagher, W. J., General Rubber Co., Medan, Sumatra.
23 Jan.,	1903.	Galloway, Dr. D. J., British Dispensary, Singapore. (Vice-President, 1906—1907; President, 1908—1913).
26 May,	1897.	*Gerini, Lt.-Col. G. E., Villa Gerini, Cisano-sub-Neva, Albenga, Italy.
15 April,	1912.	Gibbons, V. c/o Messrs. Boustead and Co. Singapore.
8 Sept.,	1903.	Gibson, W. S., Alor Star, Kedah.
28 May,	1902.	*Gimlette, Dr. J. D. 5 Merton Road, Southsea, England.
4 Jan.,	1916.	Glennie, Dr. J. A. R., Municipal Offices, Singapore.
18 March,	1909.	Goulding, R. R., Survey Department, Kuala Lumpur.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Gray, N. T., Taiping, Perak.
13 Jan.,	1916.	Gupta, Shiva Prasad, Nandansahu Street, Benares City, United Provinces, India.
14 Sept.,	1911.	Griffiths, J. Superintendent of Surveys, Johore Bahru.
12 Jan.,	1900.	Haines, Rev. F. W., Penang.
—	1886.	Hale, A. Dachurst, Hildenborough, Kent, England.
15 July,	1907.	Hall, G. A. Alor Star, Kedah.
5 May,	1914.	Hall, J. D. Patu Pahat, Johore.
26 Jan.,	1911.	Hallifax, F. J., Municipal Offices, Singapore.
12 April,	1915.	Hamilton, A. W. H., Police Offices, Singapore.
16 March,	1911.	Handy, Dr. J. M., St. Mary's Dispensary, 75 Hill Street, Singapore.
11 Sept.,	1895.	Hanitsch, Dr. R. Raffles Museum, Singapore. (Council, 1897, 1907-1909: Hon. Treasurer, 1898-1906, 1910-1911, 1914-1916: Hon. Secretary, 1912-1913).
3 June,	1909.	Harrington, A. G. Municipal Offices, Singapore.
5 Jan.,	1904.	*Haynes, A. S. Kuala Kangsar, Perak.
24 June,	1909.	Hennings, W. G. c/o Messrs. Mansfield & Co., Singapore.
14 Aug.,	1912.	Hermansen, J. C., The Waterhouse Co. Ltd., Singapore.
—	1910.	Hewan, E. D., c/o Messrs. Boustead & Co., Singapore.
—	1878.	Hill, E. C., The Manor House. Normandy near Guildford, England.

12 Oct., 1911.	Hood-Begg, A. c/o Messrs. Guthrie and Co., Singapore.
22 Nov., 1897.	Hose E. S.. Department of Agriculture, Kuala Lumpur.
A founder, 1878.	†Hose, Rt. Rev. Bishop G. F. Wyke Vicarage, Normandy near Guildford, England. (Vice-President, 1890-1892: President, 1894-1907).
7 Oct., 1891.	Hoynck van Papendrecht, P. C., 83 Antonie Duyckstraat, The Hague, Holland.
20 Oct., 1909.	Hubback, T. R. Pertang, Jelebu, Negri Sembilan.
20 Oct., 1909.	Hughes, J. W. W., Temerloh, Pahang.
15 July, 1907.	Humphreys, J. L., Trengganu.
27 Jan., 1910.	Jackson, Col. H. M., c/o the Survey Department, Kuala Lumpur.
27 Jan., 1910.	Jamieson, Dr. T. Hill, 4 Bishop Street, Penang.
26 March, 1907.	Janion, E. M. c/o English, Scottish and Australian Bank, 38 Lombard Street, London, E. C.
1 Dec., 1911.	Jelf, A. S., Ipoh, Perak.
— 1910.	Johnson, B. G. H., Telok Anson.
15 June, 1911.	Johnson, H. S. B., Limbang, via Labuan.
27 Jan., 1910.	Jones, H. W., Kuantan, Pahang.
17 Feb., 1913.	Jones, S. W., Kuala Lipis, Pahang.
26 May, 1912.	Jones, Wyndham, Miri, Sarawak.
16 April, 1912.	Jones, W. R. Geological Department, Batu Gajah, Perak.
5 Oct., 1897.	Kehding, Dr.
20 Oct., 1909.	Keith, Dr. R. D., Medical School, Singapore. (Council, 1911-1912, 1914-1916).
10 Feb., 1916.	Kellagher. G. B., S. S. Civil Service, Singapore.
3 June, 1909.	Kemp, W. Lowther, c/o Messrs. F. W. Barker and Co., Singapore.
13 Jan., 1913.	Kempe, John Erskine, Kuala Kangsar, Perak.
23 May, 1906.	Kinsey, W. E., Forest House, Seremban.
27 Jan., 1910.	Kirk, Dr. J., Penang.
29 Jan., 1900.	Kloss, C. Boden, The Museum, Kuala Lumpur. (Council, 1904-1908).
— 1884.	†Knight, Arthur, Grassdale, River Valley Road, Singapore. (Council, 1888-1895, 1898-1899, 1902-1903, 1905-1911: Vice-President, 1891: Hon. Member, 1915).
12 April, 1915.	Knight, Valentine, Raffles Museum, Singapore.
26 March, 1907.	Kriekenbeek, J. W., Taiping, Perak.
31 Jan., 1902.	Laidlaw, G. M. Pekan, Pahang.
16 Feb., 1914.	Lambourne, J., Castleton Estate, Telok Anson, Perak.

5 May,	1914.	Laville, L. V. T. Balik Pulau, Penang.
28 May,	1902.	†Lawes, Rev. W. G., Port Moresby, New Guinea.
5 Oct.,	1906.	Lawrence, A. E., Kuching, Sarawak.
29 Sept.,	1913.	Leicester, Dr. W. S., Pekan, Pahang.
28 March,	1894.	*Lemon, Hon. A. H., Seremban. (Vice-President, 1916).
30 May,	1890.	Lewis, J. E. A., B. A., 698 Harada Mura, Kobe, Japan.
16 Aug.,	1915.	Lewton-Brain, L. Director of Agriculture, Kuala Lumpur.
20 May,	1897.	Lim Boon Keng, Hon. Dr. M. D. c/o The Dispensary, Singapore.
12 April,	1915.	Lim Cheng Law, Millview, Penang.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Lloyd, J. T., c/o Messrs. Powell and Co., Singapore.
16 Feb.,	1914.	Lornie, J. Land Office, Singapore.
8 June,	1909.	Low, H. A., c/o Messrs. Adamson, Gilfillan and Co., Singapore.
22 Jan.,	1896.	Luering, Herr Prof. Dr. H. L. E., Wittelsbacher Allee, Frankfurt am Main, Germany.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Lupton, Harry, Bukit Mertajam, Province Wellesley.
26 June,	1907.	Lyons, Rev. E. S., 82 Isla de Remere, Manila.
3 June,	1909.	McArthur, M. S. H., Kuala Lumpur.
23 Sept.,	1897.	McCausland, C. F., Port Dickson.
15 Jan.,	1906.	MacDougall, Dr. W., c/o the Dispensary, Singapore.
25 Feb.,	1910.	*MacFadyen, Eric, Jugra, Selangor.
24 July,	1908.	Mackray, W. H., Kuala Lumpur.
1 April,	1910.	MacLean, L., Penang.
21 April,	1904.	Mahomed, Hon. Datoh, bin Mahbob, Johor Bahru, Johor.
8 Sept.,	1903.	Makepeace, W., c/o Singapore Free Press, Singapore. (Council, 1914-1916: Hon. Librarian, 1910-1912: Hon. Treasurer, 1909).
15 April,	1908.	Main, T. W., Cheng Estate, Malacca.
10 Feb.,	1916.	Mann, W. E., Hotel Pavillon, Samarang, Java.
12 Feb.,	1902.	Marriott, H., Audit Office, Singapore. (Council, 1907-1908, 1910-1913, 1915-1916).
24 June,	1909.	Marsh, F. E., Municipal Offices, Singapore.
8 Sept.,	1903.	Marshall, F. C., Bentong, Pahang.
12 May,	1909.	Marshall, Harold B., Kepala Islands Estates, c/o Messrs. F. W. Barker & Co., Singapore.
15 July,	1907.	*Marriner, J. T., Kuantan, Pahang.
5 May,	1914.	Martin, T. A., c/o Messrs. Kennedy and Co., Penang.
3 June,	1909.	Mauldon, E. F., c/o the Straits Trading Co., Singapore.
16 Feb.,	1914.	Maundrell, E. B., Brunei.

18 June,	1903.	Maxwell, Eric, Boulogne.
5 Nov.,	1903.	Maxwell, Hon. W. George, C. M. G., Singapore. (Council, 1905, 1915: Vice-President, 1916).
16 Dec.,	1909.	May, C. G., Deputy Colonial Engineer, Penang.
16 Feb.,	1914.	Mead, J. P., Forest Department, Kuala Lumpur.
24 July,	1908.	Millard, H., c/o Messrs. Donaldson and Burkinshaw, Singapore.
7 Feb.,	1910.	Miller, T. C. B., Fairlie, Nassim Road, Singapore.
29 Sept.,	1913.	Mollett, H. B., Labu, P. O., Negri Sembilan.
7 Feb.,	1910.	Money, A. W. Kirle, Asiatic Petroleum Co., Kuala Lumpur, Selangor.
24 May,	1910.	Morant, George C., 17 Palmeira Court, Hove, Sussex, England.
8 Sept.,	1909.	*Moulton, Lt. J. C., 4th Wilthshire Regiment, Choubatir, Raniket, U. P., India.
11 Oct.,	1915.	*Mundell, H. D., c/o Messrs. Sisson and Delay, Singapore.
15 June,	1911.	Munro, R. W., Morib, Selangor.
17 Feb.,	1913.	Murray, Rev. W., M. A., 1 Gilstead Road, Singapore.
10 Feb.,	1916.	Myers, Frank H., Asiatic Petroleum Co., Singapore.
8 Sept.,	1909.	Nathan, J. E., Raub, Pahang.
25 Feb.,	1910.	Niven, W. G., 11 Derby Crescent, Kelvinside, Glasgow, Great Britain.
9 May,	1900.	Norman, Henry, Kelantan.
5 Jan.,	1906.	Nunn, B., Malacca.
26 Jan.,	1911.	O'May, J., Kuala Kangsar, Perak.
10 Feb.,	1916.	Ong Boon Tat, 29 South Canal Street, Singapore.
17 Feb.,	1913.	Overbeck, H.
2 Feb.,	1914.	Panyarjun, Samahu, The Royal State Railways Dept. Standard Gauge, 196 Hluang Road, Bangkok, Siam.
27 Oct.,	1908.	Parr, The Hon. C. W. C., Residency, Pahang.
20 Oct.,	1909.	Peacock, W. Chinese Protectorate, Singapore.
4 Jan.,	1910.	Peirce, R. Municipal Offices, Singapore.
5 May,	1914.	Pepys, W. E., Pasir Puteh, Kelantan.
—	1878.	†Perham, the Ven. Archdeacon J. Chard, Somerset, England.
3 June,	1909.	Plumpton, M. E., c/o Messrs. Adamson Gilfillan and Co., Singapore.
25 Feb.	1910.	Pratt, E., The East India United Service Club, 16 St. James' Square, London, S. W.
22 Jan.,	1912.	Price, William Robert, B. A., F. L. S. Pen Moel, Chepstow, England.
22 March,	1906.	Pringle, R. D., The Y. M. C. A. buildings, Singapore.

5 Oct.,	1906.	PYKETT, Rev. G. F., M. E. Mission, Kuala Lumpur.
3 May,	1915.	RAGGI, J. G., Phlab Phla Jai Road, Bangkok, Siam.
10 Feb.,	1916.	RAYMAN, L. Assistant District Officer, Pekan, Pahang.
27 Jan.,	1910.	*REID, Dr. Alfred, Parit Buntar.
27 Jan.,	1910.	REID, Alex., c/o Messrs. McAlister and Co., Singapore.
20 Oct.,	1909.	RICHARDS, D. S.
15 June,	1911.	RICHARDS, R. M., The Caledonia Estate, Province Wellesley.
27 Jan.,	1890.	†RIDLEY, H. N., C. M. G., F. R. S., 7 Cumberland Road, Kew Gardens, Surrey, England. (Council, 1894-1895: Hon. Secretary, 1890-1893, 1897-1911: Hon. Member, 1912).
14 Sept.,	1911.	ROBERTSON, G. H. M.
14 Aug.,	1912.	ROBERTSON, J. c/o Messrs. Guthrie and Co., Singapore.
16 March,	1911.	ROBINSON, H., c/o Messrs. Swan and Maclaren, Singapore. (Council, 1916).
17 March,	1904.	ROBINSON, H. C., The Museum, Kuala Lumpur. (Vice-President, 1909; 1913).
10 Feb.,	1916.	ROGERS, A., Public Works Department, Singapore.
22 Jan.,	1896.	ROSTADOS, E., Gali Rubber Estate, Raub, Pahang. (Council, 1901).
1 March,	1897.	*ROWLAND, W. R., Pulau Bulang, via Singapore.
29 Sept.,	1913.	RUNCIMAN, Rev. W., M. A., B. D.
7 April,	1909.	SANDERSON, Mrs. R.
—	1878.	†SARAWAK, His Highness The Raja of, Kuching, Sarawak.
10 Feb.,	1916.	†SARAWAK, His Highness The Raja Muda of, Tilney Home, Wimbledon Common, London, S. W.
—	1885.	†SATOW, Sir Ernest M., Beaumont, Ottery St. Mary, Devon, England.
22 Jan.,	1896.	SAUNDERS, Hon. C. J., Official Assignee, Singapore. (Vice President, 1910-1911, 1914-1915: President, 1916).
27 Jan.,	1910.	SCHUDEL, G. c/o Messrs. D. Brandt and Co., Singapore.
17 March,	1904.	SCHWABE, E. M., Cheras Estate, Kajang, Selangor.
27 Jan.,	1910.	SCOTT, R. First Police Magistrate, Singapore.
5 Oct.,	1906.	SCRIVENOR, J. B., Batu Gajah, Perak.
26 March,	1888.	SEAH LIANG SEAH, c/o Chop Chin Hin, Singapore.

12 April,	1915.	See Tiong Wah, c/o Hongkong and Shanghai Bank, Singapore.
30 Jan.,	1894.	Shellabear, Rev. Dr. W. G., D. D. c/o the Methodist Publishing House, Stamford Road, Singapore. (Council, 1896-1901, 1904: Vice-President, 1913: President, 1914-1915).
3 June,	1909.	Sims, W. A., c/o Commercial Union Association Singapore.
10 Nov.,	1909.	Skinner, Capt. R. McK.
20 May,	1912.	Smith, Prof. Harrison W., Massachusetts Institution of Technology, Boston, Mass., U.S.A.
12 Oct.,	1911.	Smith-Steinmetz, G. A. Butterworth, Province Wellesley.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Song Ong Siang, c/o Messrs. Aitken and Ong Siang, Singapore.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Spakler, H. Netherlands Embassy, New York, U. S. A.
20 June,	1910.	StClair, W. G., c/o Singapore Free Press, Singapore. (Council, 1889, 1901, 1903-1906).
24 May,	1910.	Steadman, V. c/o Messrs. Swan and Maclaren, 5 Raffles Place, Singapore.
10 Nov.,	1909.	Steedman, R. S., Duff Development Co. Ltd., Kuala Tui, Kelantan.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Stevens, K. A. c/o Messrs. Caldbeck, MacGregor and Co., Singapore.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Still, A. W., c/o Straits Times, Singapore. (Council, 1914-1915).
3 May,	1915.	Strickland, Dr. C. Malaria Bureau, Kuala Lumpur.
14 Sept.,	1911.	Stuart, E. A. G., Alor Star, Kedah.
24 May,	1910.	Sturrock, A. J.
25 Feb.,	1910.	Sunner, J. H., c/o The Straits Steamship Co., Singapore.
22 Jan.,	1912.	Swayne, J. C., Limbang, Sarawak, Via Labuan.
4 June,	1908.	Tan Cheng Lock, 59 Heeren Street, Malacca.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Tan Jiak Kim, C. M. G., Panglima Prang, River Valley Road, Singapore.
16 June,	1913.	Taylor, Lt. Clarence J., 11th Battalion King's Own Yorkshire Light Infantry, Prince of Wales Hotel, Harrogate, England.
10 Nov.,	1909.	Thunder, M. Tekka Ltd., Gopeng, Perak.
14 Aug.,	1912.	Tomlin, F. L., Messrs. Adamson Gilfillan & Co., Singapore.
14 Aug.,	1914.	Tracy, F. D., c/o The Standard Oil Co., Penang.
—	1887.	van Beuningen van Helsdingen, Dr. R., 484/2 Bukit Timah Road, Singapore. (Hon. Librarian, 1914-1915).
3 June,	1909.	Ward, A. B., Semanggang, Sarawak.

6 July,	1896.	Watkins, A. J. W., c/o Messrs. Swan and Maclaren, Singapore.
10 Feb.,	1916.	Watkins, Mrs. Legrew, Hotel de l'Europe, Singapore.
18 Oct.,	1916.	Watson, Dr. Malcolm, Klang, Selangor.
13 Jan.,	1916.	Watson, J. G., Forest Department, Kuala Lumpur.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Weld, F. J., Johore Bahru.
15 July,	1907.	Welham, H. c/o The Straits Echo, Penang.
15 April,	1912.	Wharton, S. L., c/o The Singapore Club, Singapore.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Whitehead, C. B., Police Office, Butterworth, Province Wellesley.
28 Oct.,	1912.	Williams, Rose Cottage, St. Agnes, Cornwall, England.
25 March,	1913.	Williams, R. B., Bau, Sarawak.
27 Jan.,	1910.	Williams, S. G. Municipal Offices, Singapore.
27 Jan.,	1910.	*Winkelmann, H. Malacca Street, Singapore.
24 Nov.,	1904.	Winstedt, R. O., Kuala Pilah, Negri Sembilan.
25 Feb.,	1910.	Wolferstan, L. E. P., The Residency, Malacca.
28 May,	1902.	Wolff, E. C. H., The Secretariat, Singapore.
4 June,	1908.	*Wood, E. G., Taiping, Perak.
16 June,	1913.	Wood, W. L., Jin Jang Estate, Kepong, Selangor.
14 Sept.,	1911.	Worsley-Taylor, F. E., c/o Messrs. Vade and Co., Singapore.
12 April,	1915.	*Worthington, A. F.
5 May,	1914.	Wyley, A. J., Lebong Tandai, Benkoelen, Sumatra.
25 Feb.,	1910.	Wymodzeff, A de.
24 Nov.,	1904.	*Young, H. S., Bau Sarawak.

Recipients of the Society's Publications, not being Members. (Exchanges with enemy countries, with Belgium and with German Asiatic Society, Tokyo, being in suspense).

Amsterdam. Nederlandsch Aardrijkskundig Genootschap, Domselaerstraat, 19, Amsterdam, Netherlands, in exchange for that Society's Tijdschrift.

Amsterdam. Koloniaal Instituut, Amsterdam (formerly of Haarlem), in exchange for that Institute's publications.

Baltimore. The Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore, U. S. A. in exchange for the University's Circulars, Studies, and American Journal of Philology.

Bangkok. The Vajeranana National Library, Bangkok, in exchange, for the Library's publications.

Batavia. Bataviaasch Genootschap van Kunsten en Wetenschappen, in exchange for that Society's Tijdschrift voor Indische Taal Land-en Volkenkunde and other publications.

BATAVIA. Mijnwezen in Nederlandsch-Indie, Batavia (Chef van het Mijnwezen), in exchange for the Jaarboek of the Department.

BERKELEY. University of California, Berkeley, Cal. U. S. A. (Manager of the University Press), in exchange for the University's " Publications."

BERLIN. Gesellschaft für Anthropologie, Ethnologie und Urgeschichte, Berlin S. W., Königgratzer Strasse 120, in exchange for the Zeitschrift für Ethnologie.

BERLIN. Gesellschaft für Erdkunde, 23 Wilhelmstrasse, Berlin, in exchange for that Society's Zeitschrift.

BOMBAY. Royal Asiatic Society, Bombay Branch, Town Hall, Bombay, India, in exchange for the Branch's Journal.

BREMEN. Geographische Gesellschaft, Bremen, in exchange for that Society's Geographische Blätter.

BRUSSELS. Société Belge d'Etudes Coloniales, Rue de Stassart 34, Bruxelles, Belgium, in exchange for that Society's Bulletin.

CALCUTTA. Geological Survey of India, Indian Museum, Calcutta (Director) for the Survey's Records and Memoirs.

CHICAGO. Field Museum of Natural History, Chicago, U. S. A. in exchange for the Museums " Publications."

COLOMBO. Royal Asiatic Society, Colombo Branch, Colombo, Ceylon, in exchange for the Branch's Journal.

GIESSEN. Oberhessische Gesellschaft für Natur und Heilkunde Giessen, Germany, in exchange for that Society's Berichten.

GOA. The Government of the Portuguese Indies, Goa, India (O Director, Imprensa National), in exchange for the Journal " O Oriente Portugues."

HAMBURG. Hamburgische Wissenschaftlichen Anstalten, in exchange for the Jahrbuch.

HANOI. Ecole Française d'Extrême Orient, Hanoi, Indo-China (Director), in exchange for the School's Bulletin.

HALLE. Kaiserliche Leop.-Carol. Deutschen Akademie der Naturforscher, Halle, Germany, in exchange for that Society's Abhandlungen.

HAGUE. Koninklijk Instituut voor de Taal, Land en Volkenkunde van Ned.-Indie, van Galenstraat 14, S'Gravenhage, Netherlands, in exchange for that Society's Bijdragen.

HAVRE. Société de Geographie Commerçiale du Havre, 131 Rue de Paris, le Havre, France, in exchange for that Society's Bulletin.

HONOLULU. Bernice Pauahii Bishop Museum, Honolulu, Hawaiian Islands, (Librarian) in exchange for the Museum's Occasional Papers, and other publications.

KEW. Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, Surrey, England, in exchange for the official publications of the Gardens.

HELSINGFORS. Finska Vetenskaps Societaten, Helsingfors, Finland, in exchange for the Society's Bidrag till Kannedom, Acta and Ofversigt.

KUALA LUMPUR. The Selangor Museum, Kuala Lumpur, in exchange for the Journal of the F. M. S. Museums.

KUALA KANGSAR. Committee for Malay Studies (pays for publications).

LAHORE. The Panjab Historical Society, The Museum, Lahore, Panjab, India, in exchange for that Society's Journal.

LINCOLN. University of Nebraska, Lincoln, Nebraska, U. S. A. in exchange for that University's publications.

LEIPZIG. Museum für Völkerkunde, Leipzig, Germany, in exchange, for the Museum's Jahrbuch.

LISBON. Sociedade de Geographia de Lisboa, Rue Eugenio dos Santos, Lisboa, Portugal, (Secretary), in exchange for the Society's Bulletin.

LONDON. Royal Anthropological Society of Great Britain and Ireland, 50 Great Russell Street, London, W. C. in exchange for the Society's Journal.

LONDON. Royal Asiatic Society, 22 Albemarle Street, London, W. (Secretary) in exchange for the Society's Journal.

LONDON. Royal Colonial Institute, Northumberland Avenue, London, W. C. (Librarian) in exchange for "United Empire."

MALACCA. The Malacca Library, Malacca (pays for publications).

MANILA. The Bureau of Science Manila, (Director) in exchange for the Philippine Journal of Science.

MARSEILLES. Société de Geographie et d'Etudes Coloniales, Rue de Noailles 5, Marseille, France, in exchange for the Society's Bulletin.

MEXICO. Instituto Geologico de Mexico, Mexico City, in exchange for their Parergones and Boletin.

NEW YORK. American Philosophical Society, 104 South Fifth Street New York, U. S. A. in exchange for the Society's Proceedings.

OTTAWA. The Geological Survey, Department of Mines, Sussex Street, Ottawa, Canada (Librarian) in exchange for the Department's publications.

PARIS. Société Asiatique de Paris, Rue Bonaparte, 28, Paris, in exchange for the Journal Asiatique.

PARIS. Société de Geographie, 120 Boulevard St. Germain, Paris, in exchange for the Society's Bulletin entitled "La Geographie."

PARIS. Société de Geographie Commerçiale de Paris, 8 Rue de Tournon, Paris, in exchange for the Society's Bulletin.

PHILADELPHIA. Academy of Natural Sciences, Philadelphia, U. S. A. (Secretary) in exchange for the Academy's Proceedings.

ROME. Reale Societe Geografica, Via del Plebiscito 102, Roma, Italy, in exchange for the Society's Bolletino.

ST. LOUIS. Academy of Natural Sciences, St. Louis, Mo., U. S. A. in exchange for the Society's Transactions.

ST. LOUIS. Missouri Botanical Garden, St. Louis, Mo. U. S. A. (Director), in exchange for the Garden's Annals.

SARAWAK. The Sarawak Museum, Borneo, in exchange for the Museum's Journal.

SIMLA. Director-General of Archaeology, Simla, India, in exchange for the Archaeological Survey's publications.

SINGAPORE. The Raffles Museum, Singapore.

SHANGHAI. Royal Asiatic Society, N. China Branch, Shanghai, China, in exchange for the Society's Journal.

SYDNEY. Royal Society of New South Wales, Elizabeth Street, Sydney, New South Wales, in exchange for the Society's Proceedings.

TOKYO. Asiatic Society of Japan, 6 Babasaki, Kojimachi, Tokyo, Japan (Hon. Treasurer) in exchange for the Society's Transactions.

TOKYO. Deutsche Gesellschaft für Natur und Völkerkunde Ostasiens, Tokyo, Japan, in exchange for the Society's Mittheilungen.

UPSALA. The University, Bibliothèque de l'Université Royale, Uppsala, Sweden, in exchange for that University's Aarskrift.

VIENNA. Anthropologische Gesellschaft in Wien, I. Burgring 7 (An die Anthropologisch Ethnographische Abtheilung der K. K. Naturhistorischen Hofmuseums, Wien 1, Burgring 7—für die Anthropologische Gesellschaft)—in exchange for the Society's Mittheilungen.

ZURICH. Naturforschende Gesellschaft (Bibliothéque centrale, Bureau d'échange de la Société d'histoire naturelle). Zurich, Switzerland, in exchange for that Society Vierteljahrschrift.

[Closed April 14th, 1916.]

RULES

# of the Straits Branch

OF THE

Royal Asiatic Society.

I. Name and Objects.

1. The name of the Society shall be 'The Straits Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society.'

2. The objects of the Society shall be:—

(a) The increase and diffusion of knowledge concerning British Malaya and the neighbouring countries.

(b) the publication of a Journal and of works and maps.

(c) the formation of a library of books and maps.

II. Membership.

3. Members shall be of two kinds—Ordinary and Honorary.

4. Candidates for ordinary membership shall be proposed and seconded by members and elected by a majority of the Council.

5. Ordinary members shall pay an annual subscription of $5 payable in advance on the first of January in each year. Members shall be allowed to compound for life membership by a payment of $50.

6. On or about the 30th of June in each year the Honorary Treasurer shall prepare and submit to the Council a list of those members whose subscriptions for the current year remain unpaid. Such members shall be deemed to be suspended from membership until their subscriptions have been paid, and in default of payment within two years shall be deemed to have resigned their membership.

No member shall receive a copy of the Journal or other publications of the Society until his subscription for the current year has been paid.

7. Distinguished persons and persons who have rendered notable service to the Society may on the recommendation of the Council be elected Honorary members by a majority at a General meeting. They shall pay no subscription, and shall enjoy all the privileges of a member except a vote at meetings and eligibility for office.

III. Officers.

8. The officers of the Society shall be:—

A President.

Three Vice Presidents, resident in Singapore, Penang and the Federated Malay States respectively.

An Honorary Treasurer. An Honorary Librarian.

An Honorary Secretary. Four Councillors.

These officers shall be elected for one year at the annual General Meeting, and shall hold office until their successors are appointed.

9. Vacancies in the above offices occurring during any year shall be filled by a vote of majority of the remaining officers.

IV. Council.

10. The Council of the Society shall be composed of the officers for the current year, and its duties and powers shall be:—

(a) to administer the affairs, property and trusts of the Society.

(b) to elect ordinary members and to recommend candidates for election as Honorary members of the Society.

(c) to obtain and select material for publication in the Journal and to supervise the printing and distribution of the Journal.

(d) to authorise the publication of works and maps at the expense of the Society otherwise than in the Journal.

(e) to select and purchase books and maps for the Library.

(f) to accept or decline donations on behalf of the Society.

(g) to present to the Annual General Meeting at the expiration of their term of office a report of the proceedings and condition of the Society.

(h) to make and enforce by-laws and regulations for the proper conduct of the affairs of the Society. Every such bye law or regulation shall be published in the Journal.

11. The Council shall meet for the transaction of business once a month and oftener if necessary. Three officers shall form a quorum of the Council.

V. General Meetings.

12. One week's notice of all meetings shall be given and of the subjects to be discussed or dealt with.

13. At all meetings the Chairman shall in the case of an equality of votes be entitled to a casting vote in addition to his own.

14. The Annual General Meeting shall be held in February in each year. Eleven members shall form a quorum.

15. (i) At the Annual General Meeting the Council shall present a Report for the preceding year and the Treasurer shall render an account of the financial condition of the Society. Copies of such Report and account shall be circulated to members with the notice calling the meeting.

(ii) Officers for the current year shall also be chosen.

16. The Council may summon a General Meeting at any time; and shall so summon one upon receipt by the Secretary of a written requisition signed by five ordinary members desiring to submit any specified resolution to such meeting. Seven members shall form a quorum at any such meeting.

17. Visitors may be admitted to any meeting at the discretion of the Chairman but shall not be allowed to address the meeting except by invitation of the Chairman.

VI. Publications.

18. The Journal shall be published at least twice in each year, and oftener if material is available. It shall contain material approved by the Council. In the first number in each year shall be published the Report of the Council, the account of the financial position of the Society, a list of members, the Rules, and a list of the publications received by the Society during the preceding year.

19. Every member shall be entitled to one copy of the Journal, which shall be sent free by post. Copies may be presented by the Council to other Societies or to distinguished individuals, and the remaining copies shall be sold at such prices as the Council shall from time to time direct.

20. Twenty-four copies of each paper published in the Journal shall be placed at the disposal of the author.

VII. Amendments to Rules.

21. Amendments to these Rules must be proposed in writing to the Council, who shall submit them to a General Meeting duly summoned to consider them. If passed at such General Meeting they shall come into force upon confirmation at a subsequent General Meeting or at an Annual General Meeting.

Affiliation Privileges of Members.

Royal Asiatic Society. The Royal Asiatic Society has its headquarters at 22 Albenarle Street, London W., where it has a large library of books. and MSS. relating to oriental subjects. and holds monthly meetings from November to June (inclusive) at which papers on such subjects are read.

2. By rule 105 of this Society all the Members of Branch Societies are entitled when on furlough or otherwise temporarily resident within Great Britain, and Ireland, to the use of the Library as Non-Resident Members and to attend the ordinary monthly meetings of this Society. This Society accordingly invites Members of Branch Societies temporarily resident in Great Britain or Ireland to avail themselves of these facilities and to make their home addresses known to the Secretary so that notice of the meetings may be sent to them.

3. Under rule 84, the Council of the Society is able to accept contributions to its Journal from Members of Branch Societies, and other persons interested in Oriental Research, of original articles, short notes, etc., on matters connected with the languages, archæology, history, beliefs and customs of any part of Asia.

4. By virtue of the afore-mentioned Rule 105 all Members of Branch Societies are entitled to apply for election to the Society without the formality of nomination. They should apply in writing to the Secretary, stating their names and addresses, and mentioning the Branch Society to which they belong. Election is by the Society upon the recommendation of the Council.

5. The subscription for Non-Resident Members of the Society is 30/- per annum. They receive the quarterly journal post free.

Asiatic Society of Bengal. Members of the Straits Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, by a letter received in 1903, are accorded the privilege of admission to the monthly meetings of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, which are held usually at the Society's house, 1 Park Street, Calcutta.

JOURNAL

A Fragment of the History of Trengganu and Kelantan.

The following fragment of the history of Trengganu and Kelantan was written in about 1876 by Haji Abdullah, a court historian in Trengganu. The manuscript is in the possession of Nara Wangsa Mohamed Ali, better known as the Dato' Mata-mata, of Trengganu. The fragment describes the struggles between Kelantan and Trengganu from about 1770 to 1835, when the further intervention by Trengganu in Kelantan affairs was peremptorily stopped by Siam. The Sultan Mahmud of Linggi referred to in the text was the father of Sultan Hussain of Singapore. He was driven out of Rio by the Dutch in 1785, and found a refuge in Trengganu until the capture of Malacca by the English in 1795 permitted his return to his own country. The Tuan Snik of Kampong Raja who was raised by the Siamese to the Raja-ship of Kelantan was the famous Sultan of the Red Mouth who reigned in Kelantan until his death in 1877. The present Sultan is his great-grand-son. The present Sultan of Trengganu is a descendant in the direct male line of Sultan Mansur.

H. Marriott.

MALAY TEXT.

Bi'smi'llahi'r-rahmani'r-rahimi Rabbi al-aras al-Karim. Bahwa ini suatu cherita daripada khabar orang tua-tua akan sa-tengah daripada silasila daripada Petani sampai ka-Kelantan dan akan sa-tengah daripada hal Marhum Besar ia-itu Sultan Mansur bin Zainulabidin bin Abdulmajid tatkala ia berangkat ka-Petani hingga sampai kapada zaman puteri-nya ia-itu Sultan Zainulabidin berangkat ia ka-Kelantan berhenti dalam Besut. Sa-bermula ada-lah asal Raja Kelantan itu ka-turunan-nya daripada Datok Wan di-kata orang ia-lah Raja Petani kemudian daripada Baginda Nam Chayam dan Datok Wan itu beranak akan Datok Pekalan Tua maka ini pula beranak tiga orang ia-itu Datok Pasir dan Tuan Besar dan Tuan Lun Nik. Maka Datok Pasir itu di-Petani dan yang-dua itu datang ia ka-Kelantan karna masa itu Kelantan belum lagi ada beraja. Sa-telah tetap-lah kadua-nya itu di-Kelantan maka Datok Pasir pun beranak ia akan Lun Pandak dan Tuan Besar beranak ia akan Lun Nik dan Lun Nik beranak akan dua orang perempuan dan akan Lun Yunus. Maka kata Tuan Besar akan Lun Nik diri dudok-lah di-Kelantan sini kami hendak langgar sa-belah hulu pulau. Maka pergi-lah ia tiada katentuan tempat-nya tiba-tiba terdengar khabar bahwa-sa-nya ia telah mati. Shahadan ada sa-orang

Raja Legeh ada ia mengalahkan negri. Maka di-panggil orang akan dia Baginda Lun Drahman, ia dua beradek dengan Lun Man kadua-nya anak saudara Datok Pujud. Maka ada-lah Baginda Lun Drahman itu beranak di-Legeh sa-orang nama-nya Lun Nik kemudian datang ia Kelantan dengan sa-lengkap alat senjata-nya. Maka beristeri akan anak Lun Nik Kelantan maka jadi-lah ia kakak ipar kapada Lun Yunus. Sa-telah berapa lama antara-nya datang-lah perbalahan dengan mentua-nya. Maka berkelahi-lah antara kadua-nya maka kalah ia akan mentua-nya. Maka antara berapa lama-nya datang pula perkelahian maka kalah juga ia akan mentua-nya. Maka hendak di-perentah maka tiada di-benarkan oleh mentua-nya kemudian maka Lun Drahman ini menchari tambah akan kuasa-nya berapa lama-nya maka datang pula perkelahian maka kalah mentua-nya. Maka di-bunoh-nya akan mentua-nya. Maka dapat-lah Kelantan itu akan dia. Sa-telah itu Lun Yunus pun undur-lah ia ka-Trengganu dudok ia di-Bukit Datok maka pada masa itu ada ia pakai juru tanak-nya. Maka pindah ia ka-Losong. Maka dapat anak akan Lun Muhammad kemudian beristeri ia akan Tuan Inche' Jumat anak Ungku Tenang Wangsa yang tua-nya. Maka dapat anak akan Inche' Wan Teh dan Inche' Wan Ngah dan Tuan Dagang. Adapun Baginda Lun Drahman sa-telah dapat ka-Kelantan ia letakkan Lun Pandak akan ganti-nya memerentah di-Kelantan dan ia balek ka-Legeh. Shahadan ada-lah pada tarikh Sanat 1186 dengan hisab datang surat dari Datok Jerang akan Sultan Mansur minta tolong kata-nya jika hendak akan Pujud sila-lah patek ada menyertai. Ada-lah umur Sultan Mansur pada masa itu lima puloh tujoh tahun takrib dengan hisab, wa-'llahu'-'lam. Maka Sultan Mansur pun siapkan perahu beberapa puloh haluan maka berangkat-lah ia ka-Petani. Maka Lun Yunus pun di-bawa bersama. Sa-telah sampai ia ka-Penarik, Petani, dairah Ru Sarang Lang naik-lah ia di-itu tempat maka Datok Jerang pun membawa menghadap beberapa persembahan dengan sa-patut bagi Raja berangkat sa-olah-olah akan menolong menyempurnakan hajat-nya. Sa-telah sudah itu maka Sultan pun menyuroh ia akan Inche Aim Losong dan Bandar Abdul Muluk mendapat akan Datok Pujud menyatakan ia datang dan batin-nya akan melihat hal Pujud. Sa-telah berkata-kata-lah kadua-nya itu serta Datok, maka kata Datok "Sembah-lah akan Yang-di-Pertuan baik-lah sila balek. Apa faedah menurut-kan kahendak orang? Apa kahendak Yang-di-Pertuan di-persembahkan. Jika di-turutkan kahendak orang itu pun ta'-dapat Pujud ini. Sudah hendak tengok, adukan-lah sama barat ini; jika tewas boleh di-bela peliharakan lawan-nya itu." Serta di-beri persembahan satu ibu mas tiga puloh tahil. Kemudian di-bawa persembahkan beberapa kerbau dan lembu dan kambing dan beberapa usongan daripada beras dan lain-nya terlebeh daripada persembahan Datok Jerang. Tetapi tiap-tiap orang yang membawa persembahan itu semua-nya beringat dengan lembing sa-rakat-sa-rakat sa-orang ada-nya. Sa-telah itu maka tiada-lah jadi melanggar Pujud maka berangkat-lah balek ka-Terengganu. Maka dapat khabar bahwa-sa-nya dan kakuatan-nya. Maka Lun Pandak pun undur ka-Legeh jua. Maka tatkala itu Lun Yunus ada terhemat akan mengambil Kelantan. Maka ia pohonkan perentah kapada Sultan Mansur akan mengambil Kelantan. Maka Sultan pun membenarkan dia serta di-beri kuasa dan kapit-nya Datok Temenggong sa-telah siap-lah kadua-nya keluar-lah dengan beberapa kalengkapan yang serta-nya. Sa-telah sampai masok Kelantan di-ambil-nya dengan perkelahian-nya dan kakuatan-nya. Maka Lun Pandak pun undur ka-Legeh maka Kelantan pun dapat akan Lun Yunus. Sa-telah itu Temenggong pun balek ka-Terengganu kemudian tiada berapa lama-nya maka Baginda Lun Drahman pun datang dengan beberapa kalengkapan perang akan mengambil balek Kelantan daripada Lun Yunus. Maka Lun Yunus pun undur-lah balek ka-Terengganu dan kata sa-tengah dengan di-lawan-nya berkelahi juga maka tiada tahan Lun Yunus undur-lah ia balek ka-Terengganu dan kata Lun Drahman, " Ada-kah mengambil negeri nanti di-belakang mata bukan hal laki-laki ? " Maka ka-dengaran yang demikian ini akan Sultan Mansur. Maka di-suroh Tuan Inche' Kadir menyampaikan Baginda Lun Drahman suroh ia siapkan bahwa Yang-di-Pertuan mau berangkat mengambil Kelantan. Maka jawab-nya, " Baik-lah jika tiada berangkat hamba akan menghadap mengambil Terengganu." Maka Sultan Mansur pun telah siap delapan-puloh haluan dan beberapa ribu yang berjalan darat. Maka berangkat-lah ia keluar sa-telah sampai ka-laut Setiu maka dapat khabar bahwa-sa-nya Baginda Lun Drahman telah datang sampai ia ka-Telaga Tujoh dengan beberapa ribu rayat dan ka-lengkapan alat senjata akan melanggar Terengganu serta kalihatan orang banyak di-darat maka kasemaran-lah karna orang-kah atau kawan sendiri. Maka ketika itu di-titahkan Inche' Dahmad akan melihat ka-darat tiba-tiba datang Lun Drahman dengan sa-buah sampan tiga belas orang di-kata orang dengan hebat laku berani datang-nya itu hingga sa-tengah daripada perahu angkatan menggantongkan sauh sebab khuatir jua akan dia ada-nya. Dan kata sa-tengah ketika itu orang pun tengah banyak hathir menghadap di-kanaikkan. Maka titah-nya, " Siapa yang boleh naik menengok ka-darat ia-kah seperti khabar atau tidak-nya ? " Maka tiada siapa yang menyahut titah itu maka terpandang ia akan Wan Muhammad Setiu di-haluan kanaikkan maka titah-nya, " Muhammad mari." Maka Wan Muhammad pun masok hingga tiang topang maka titah-nya kamari. Maka Wan Muhammad pun masok dekat. Maka titah-nya, " Engkau boleh naik ka-darat menengok Lun Drahman ia-kah seperti khabar atau tiada ? " Maka ia pun menyembah, " Patek ini mana-mana titah tiada menyangkal." Maka titah-nya, " Pergi-lah." Maka ia pun menyembah sa-lalu turun dari kanaikkan ka-perahu-nya berkata ia kapada anak-anak-nya, " Aku ini entah-kah balek atau tidak wa-'llahu'-'lam." Ia pun layarkan naik ka-darat maka hendak-lah ia bedil orang darat maka kata-nya hamba ini utusan. Sa-telah ia ka-darat tiba-tiba berjumpa akan Baginda Lun Drahman sendiri. Maka sabda-nya, " Wan Muhammad " maka sahut-nya, " Engku." Maka Wan Muhammad pun naik menghadap

Baginda, Lun Drahman pun datang menghampiri akan Wan Muhammad. Maka sabda-nya, "Sekarang nyawa hamba serah di-dalam tangan Wan Muhammad." Maka sembah Wan Muhammad, "Hamba engku pun demikian, nyawa hamba engku sekarang dalam tangan kaus engku." Sa-telah bersetia-lah antara kadua itu sabda-nya, "Jika Wan Muhammad sanggub akan kamurkaan Yang-di-pertuan hamba akan menghadap." Maka Wan Muhammad pun sanggub. Sa-telah itu ia pun turun ka-perahu tigabelas orang kayoh menujukan ka-naikkan. Sa-telah sampai bersama Wan Muhammad maka di-kurniakan naik menghadap bersama. Sa-telah dudok ia seraya menyembah membuangkan ia akan keris di-pinggang persembahkan ia akan Sultan. Maka Sultan pun chabut baju di-tuboh kurniakan Baginda Lun Drahman serta ia pun sembahkan, "Apa hal-nya jadi pergadohan darihal Kelantan itu." "Patek persembahkan akan Duli Yang-di-Pertuan hanya patek pohonkan sa-lama ada hayat patek peliharakan darihal perentah dari bawah Duli Yang-di-Pertuan." Maka Sultan Mansur pun kabul-lah seperti demikian serta di-kurniakan satu peti apiun. Sa-telah itu ia pun menjunjong Duli sa-lalu turun ka-sampan lalu balek ka-Legeh dengan segala angkatan. Maka Sultan Mansur pun berangkat masok Kelantan serta menjadikan Lun Yunus akan Raja Muda di-Kelantan di-bawah Lun Pandak. Sa-telah itu maka Sultan pun ada suka akan anak Lun Dil Pulau Beluru akan isteri-nya nama Tang Senik. Maka di-ambil-nya akan isteri ini-lah yang berpeterakan Tengku Ahmad kemudian lalu berangkat balek ka-Terengganu ada-nya. Shahadan sa-telah itu berapa lama antara-nya maka dapat khabar bahwa Baginda Lun Drahman turun ia ka-Benara menyabong ayam. Maka ia melepaskan ayam-nya yang telah di-bulang taji-nya serta tundok ia meniupkan ayam. Maka melonchat ayam-nya terkenalah taji ayam itu di kepala-nya. Maka kata-nya bagi budak, "Bawalah balek ayam ini; aku ini pematah guru-ku tiada luka jika luka melainkan mati." Maka balek ia ka-Legeh sa-telah sampai ia ka-Legeh maka bertambah sakit yang lain pula. Maka tiada berapa lama-nya maka mati-lah ia. Maka Raja Muda Kelantan tatkala ia dapat khabar, ziarat juga serta tolong membicharakan kamatian Lun Drahman itu ada-nya. Adapun Raja Muda tatkala ia di-Kelantan ini dapat pula anak dengan gundek-nya lima orang ia-itu Lun Usuf dan Lun Zainal dan Inche' Ku Pelembang perempuan dan Lun Tan dan Lun Ismail dan Lun Pandak dan ada-lah Raja Muda di-dalam Kelantan itu sa-olah-olah mata-mata bagi Sultan Mansur hanya ia di-bawah Lun Pandak tatkala hilang Baginda Lun Drahman. Tiada berapa lama maka datang-lah petenah atas Raja Muda daripada perentahan kamurkaan sampai khabar ka-Trengganu. Maka suroh panggil balek ka-Trengganu di-suroh dudok-nya di-hampir bukit Jalan Kaliran tiada berapa lama maka pindah ia ka-Beladu maka tatkala itu tinggal-lah perentahan Lun Pandak sa-orang jua di-Kelantan. Sa-telah itu tiada berapa lama-nya Lun Pandak pun berunol tiada mengikut perentah Terengganu. Maka tatkala itu Sultan pun suroh siapkan perahu akan melanggar Kelantan. Ketika itu hampir bulan duabelas berangkat-lah ia dengan delapan-puloh haluan maka berhenti ia di-perhentian. Maka daripada sa-hari akan sa-hari waktu pun hampir akan gelora. Maka Datok Temenggong mendatangkan sembah hemat patek waktu ini hampirkan tertutup kuala baik-lah sila balek. Maka tiada di-beri jawab kemudian mengulangi ia akan sembah yang kadua serta kata-nya darihal Kelantan itu biar-lah patek tiga berampat beradek ini masok Kelantan ia-itu Raja Muda dan Raja Besut dan To Limbat. Jika tiada dapat Kelantan patek tiada-lah berterengganu melainkan menyelalu pergi haji. Maka titah-nya itu-lah anak-ku maka ia pun menjunjong duli ka-empat-nya sa-lalu turun kaperahu-nya buka layar lalu belayar. Maka beberapa perahu orang yang melawan-melawan mengiring-nya tatkala hampir Kelantan dilihat-nya kubu bertiangan sa-panjang pantai. Sa-telah sampai maka Raja Muda dan To' Limbat pun naik ka-darat malam Temenggong tinggal di-perahu. Maka segala tua-tua kubu itu di-behagi oleh Raja Muda dengan di-beri-nya kain dan baju dan seluar masing-masing dengan pakaian-nya serta kata nasihat-nya, "Apa hal engkau jaga ini kubu darihal angkatan Yang-di-Pertuan yang datang di-laut itu ia-lah yang ampunya Kelantan dan Lun Pandak itu sa-kadar wakil Lun Drahman yang telah mati tiada-kah nama kamu derhakakan Duli Yang-di-Pertuan?" Sa-telah itu benar fikir mereka itu maka dapat-lah bersuaka dan bersetia maka perahu yang bersama Temenggong masok serta di-permaalumkan Duli Yang-di-Pertuan di-laut. Ia pun sa-lalu berangkat masok sa-telah Raja Muda menengar titah sa-lalu-lah ia mudek dengan sakalian yang bersama-nya sa-telah berjumpa lawan berkelahi-lah kadua-nya pihak beberapa yang mati dan luka. Maka Lun Pandak pun undur lari ada-nya. Sa-telah Kelantan pun dapat maka di-kurniakan Raja Muda juga akan jadi Raja di-Kelantan. Maka berangkat-lah balek ka-Terengganu tiada berapa lama maka Inche' Wan Teh pun sa-telah baligh-lah maka di-kawinkan oleh Sultan Mansur akan putera-nya Tungku Muhammad. Sa-telah beberapa lama-nya maka dapat anak akan Tungku Sulong. Sa-telah selesai-lah perajaan negeri kemudian maka Sultan Mansur pun ada suka memperbuatkan istana besar lima ruang. Maka di-suroh panggil Raja Muda Kelantan akan meramu kayu perkakas istana. Maka Raja Muda pun datang-lah ia kira-kira sa-ribu orang berhenti sa-kalian di-Pasir Sa-berang dengan beberapa bangsal dan chemat. Kemudian meramu-lah ia ka-dalam Sungai Nerus sa-telah dapat segala kayu maka Raja Muda pun mohon-lah ia akan balek ka-Kelantan karna bimbang ia akan negeri serta memohonkan sa-orang daripada putera Duli Yang-di-Pertuan akan jadi baja di-dalam Kelantan ada-nya. Sa-telah balek ia beberapa lama-nya maka sampai-lah umur Tungku Sulong itu kira-nya enam tahun katujoh maka Sultan Mansur pun sediakan perahu akan membawa putera-nya Tungku Muhammad serta dengan anak dan isteri dan hamba sahaya ka-Kelantan. Maka pada masa itu Sultan Mahmud Lingga pun ada di-Terengganu maka ia pun berangkat menghantar bersama. Sa-telah sampai angkatan ka-Kelantan lalu di-kerjakan Tungku Muhammad di-Kelantan dengan sa-lengkap pakaian Kerajaan dengan pakaian Sultan Mahmud. Maka datang gemalang tuboh-nya serta lalai rupa-nya. Maka di-pangku oleh Sultan Mahmud. Maka tetap-lah ia sa-telah itu maka seru-nya titah Duli Yang-di-Pertuan Besar mengurniakan nama akan putera-nya Tungku Muhammad dengan nama Yang-di-Pertuan Kelantan dan tatkala hampirkan berangkat balek di-kurniakan nama akan Inche' Wan Teh dengan nama Inche' Puan Kelantan. Kemudian dari itu maka Sultan Mansur pun berangkat balek ka-Terengganu dan Sultan Mahmud pun balek ka-Lingga. Sa-telah sampai tiga bulan maka datang-lah peridaran dunia Sultan Mansur pun gering. Maka di-suroh silakan Yang-di-Pertuan Kelantan maka ia pun berangkat sampai ka-Batu Rakit berbunyi meriam Sultan Mansur kembali ka-rahmat-allah ta'ala afiallahu anhu tarikh Sanat 1208 malam Jumaat 14 hari-bulan Jamada'l-akhir waktu jam pukul 12. Sa-telah esok hari maka di-siram dan sembahyang akan jenazah maka di-naikkan karajaan putera-nya ia-itu Yang-di-Pertuan Besar waktu asar. Sa-telah itu maka di-arak-lah akan jenazah-nya dengan semporna adat Raja di-bawa tanam ka-masjid ada-nya. Sa-telah itu maka sampai-lah khabar hilang marhum itu kapada Raja Muda Kelantan maka sangat-lah ia dukachita akan Marhum hingga membawa kapada berubah hal tuboh badan-nya hingga di-kata orang sampai membawa kapada akhir umur-nya. Sa-telah itu kira-nya delapan bulan ka-sembilan pada bulan Safar tahun 1209 kembali ia ka-rahmat allah afiallahu anhu dan ada-lah kemudian daripada hilang Sultan Mansur itu kira-nya delapan tahun maka Yang-di-Pertuan Besar pun meminang Tungku Sulong akan putera-nya Tungku Che' Muda. Maka Yang-di-Pertuan Kelantan pun bersedia-lah akan bekerja-nya hanya tinggal rumah dapur lagi belum ada. Maka Yang-di-Pertuan pun menyuroh ia akan Lun Drahman dan Lun Zainal dan Tuan Dagang dan Lun Dil akan merombak rumah di-Kota Tras daripada pagi sampai lepas dzohor tiada datang. Maka titah Yang-di-Pertuan choba-gak Abang Lun Muhammad sendiri lihat apa-apa gendala-nya. Maka Lun Muhammad pun pergi melihat tiba-tiba masing-masing bernaung di-bawah pohon kayu. Maka kata Lun Muhammad, "Apa hal Yang di-Pertuan suroh rombak rumah mari berdiam?" Maka kata Lun Drahman, "Mari-gak dahulu." Maka Lun Muhammad pun datang. Maka kata Lun Zainal, "Bagaimana gamak abang orang Trengganu datang ini pendapatan abang gemok-kah atau kurus kita ini? karna yang mari ini Tungku Che' Muda, maka yang di-bawa-nya itu Lun Mydin dan Lun Daud. Maka bapa-nya itu abang membuat-nya dan yang lain ini tidak bagaimana." Maka jawab Lun Muhammad "Hamba apa yang ada sa-suatu?" maka kata yang lain itu, "Semua-nya tiada jadi apa, asal bersuatu kira-nya." Maka jawab Lun Muhammad, "Jika bagitu mana-mana gamak ramai-lah." Sa-telah itu maka masing-masing menghadap akan senjata atas hal kadar-nya dan ubat bedil hanya sa-labu ada-nya. Kemudian Lun Muhammad pun balek menghadap Yang-di-pertuan titah-nya, "Apa khabar?" Maka sembah-nya masing-masing udzur ada yang sakit kepala ada yang bisa perut maka belum-lah lagi terombak. Maka antara itu angkatan Terengganu pun sampai dengan sa-lengkap adat bekerja kawin serta dengan beberapa perempuan. Sa-telah itu Yang-di-Pertuan pun menghadap akan Yang-di-Pertuan Besar di-kanaikkan serta memaalumkan segala perkara daripada hal rumah dan lain-nya. Sa-telah itu Yang-di-Pertuan Kelantan balek. Maka Yang-di-Pertuan Besar pun menyuroh akan Tuan Syed Akil dan Bandar Abdul Muluk dan Datok Mata-mata Inche' Saleh akan memanggil Lun Muhammad. Sa-telah berjumpa di-sampaikan titah panggil. Maka jawab Lun Muhammad, "Titah di-junjong. Darihal segala yang datang ini bapa-lah kapada sahaya. Maka ada-lah sahaya ini telah berjanji dengan Yang-di-pertuan hendak bawa menghadap bersama tiba-tiba ia telah menghadap dahulu maka sekarang ini terlebeh-lebeh maalum hari ini tiada-lah terhemat sahaya sa-orang sangat-lah menakut lagi pula sahaya ini kepala pun sakit." Sa-telah itu hari pun petang maka balek-lah segala yang datang memaalumkan Duli Yang-di-pertuan Besar. Maka ia pun beroleh berubah-lah kira-nya baik-lah bekerja ka-Terengganu titah-nya, "Apabila Lun Muhammad datang tiada-lah apa satu yang lain itu banyak bichara-nya." Maka di-suroh beri tahu akan Yang-di-pertuan Kelantan dan Inche' Puan suroh turunkan barang-barang daripada perkakas dan lain-nya. Shahadan maka ada-lah kemudian daripada balek Syed Akil dan yang serta-nya daripada memanggil Lun Muhammad itu maka Lun Muhammad-nya menghadap akan Yang-di-pertuan Kelantan memaalumkan datang titah itu. Maka titah-nya, "Baik-lah abang Lun Muhammad menghadap," sembah, "Sila-lah Yang-di-pertuan patek mengiring." Maka titah-nya, "Sahaya tidak bersama pun tidak apa satu." Maka Lun Muhammad pun balek mengajak kawan-kawan serta anak Raja empat lima orang bersuatu kira dengan dia hingga sampai empat lima ratus yang mengiring serta ketika itu berkata Inche' Rashad, "Hai apa ini hendak di-hanyutkan kanaikkan ini," sa-telah sampai menghadap maka titah Yang-di-pertuan Besar "Amboi Lun Muhammad baharu datang" hanya-lah sa-titek kahwa pun tiada di-angkatkan. Sa-telah itu tiada berapa jam maka Lun Muhammad pun balek kira-nya tiada berapa lama-nya maka berbunyi bedil sa-puchok sa-belah Pulau Sabar sa-telah malam maka titah suroh mudek mengambil segala perempuan. Maka tatkala itu kadengaran orang mengerat kayu api pun berkelipan. Sa-telah turun segala perempuan maka tatkala esok hari kalihatan kubu. Maka perahu segala perempuan pun hilir mendapatkan kanaikkan. Sa-telah itu esok hari Jumaat pagi maka berbunyi-lah bedil di-perahu Syed Akil menujukan Kampong Laut dan Pulau Sabar. Maka sakalian perahu pun mengikok bedil dari pagi Jumaat ini sampai petang maka tiada berbunyi balas-nya melainkan jarang sa-kali sa-telah malam berhenti. Maka esok pagi membedil pula sa-pagi tiba-tiba datang peluru sa-belah Tikab dari pada perahu Syed Osman lalu di-atas kanaikkan Tungku Che' Muda. Maka gempar-lah ketika itu bagai sa-olah-olah-nya belut kira-nya. Maka di-permaalumkan demikian itu akan Yang-di-pertuan Besar. Maka titah-nya, "Kita datang ini bukan-nya pekerjaan perang maka sakarang sudah tiada bersuatu kira-nya baik-lah kita balek dahulu." Sa-telah itu jadi berhenti-lah daripada membedil-nya maka dengan kurnia Allah Daulat Duli Yang-di-pertuan tiada-lah chachat segala kawan melainkan mati sa-orang di-perahu Wan Muhammad Kebur tengah berkemudi kena peluru di-dalam mulut-nya. Sa-telah itu perahu kanaikkan pun keluar maka sa-kalian pun keluar sa-lalu ka-Terengganu. Sa-telah sampai Yang-di-Pertuan kadua-nya ka-Terengganu maka tiada jadi bekerja Tungku Che' Muda tahun itu hanya bicharakan perang tahun kadua dengan menambahi dan membaiki senjata-nya dan menyuroh ka-Petani minta bantu dari Datok Lun Ismail dan sa-telah terbuka kuala tahun yang kadua maka dihiasi anak raja-raja yang berjalan darat serta penghulu dan rayat-nya ia-itu Ungku Muda dan Tuan Inche' Kepong dan Tuan Jamal Maras dan Tuan Sulaiman dan Tuan Mahmud dan Inche' Ungku Long itu ayami dengan perahu di-laut membawa ubat bedil dan lain-nya takut keputusan. Adapun penghulu yang tahan di-bawa dengan rayat-nya itu Inche' Udin Serada dan Penghulu Bahrul Serada dan Penghulu Deman dan Pa' Sulong Dolah dan juru tunggul peperangan-nya itu Penghulu Sapai Pertang masing-masing itu dengan beberapa ratus rayat-nya melainkan Inche' Udin beribu rayat dan sa-telah siap-lah sakalian akan berjalan maka Duli Yang-di-pertuan pun berangkat-lah keluar dengan beberapa anak raja-raja dan orang besar yang beperahu dengan beberapa puloh kakab dan penjajab dan pengail besar-besar. Maka berhenti di-Besut serta menanti perahu Inche' Aim Losong beberapa hari karna ia udzur sakit. Maka pergi datang-lah Duli Yang-di-pertuan bermain-main di-Besut itu ka-Perhentian belang-belang menchari khabar Panglima Prang Inche' Abdullah yang pergi datang ia dengan kichi ka-Petani kapada Datok Lun Ismail mudah-mudahan berkumpul segala dengan angkatan itu tiba-tiba Inche' Aim datang ia dari Terengganu sembah-nya panas-panas kata-nya, "Ada-kah hendak melanggar negeri ini bergantong dua orang?" Maka tatkala itu Yang-di-pertuan pun panas lalu berangkat ka-pengail Bujang Sa-ribu sa-lalu-lah belayar ka-Kelantan. Maka segala angkatan pun mengiring-lah semua-nya masok ka-Kelantan Duli Yang-di-pertuan berhenti di-Pulau Ketitir di-Sungai Pinang. Shahadan ada-lah segala yang berjalan darat telah melanggar ia dahulu ia-itu mula-nya kubu semua-nya lebeh kurang dua-puloh hari maka lawan-nya undur bertahan di-Lubok Limau Nipis. Maka dapat-lah kubu Semerak. Maka langgar Lubok Limau Nipis maka dapat-lah demikian juga lama-nya. Maka lawan-nya undur bertahan di-Kubu Kandih. Maka dapat-lah Kubu Limau Nipis maka langgar pula Kubu Kandih demikian juga lama-nya maka lawan-nya undur bertahan di-Kubu Kelun Tarak dalam Kelantan. Maka langgar pula kubu ini jadi berkapit-lah dengan yang berperahu angkatan melanggar kampong sa-belah sungai dalam Kelantan semua-nya melainkan tujoh delapan buah tinggal menunggu akan kanaikkan di-Pulau Ketitir jua dan sa-telah perang-lah beberapa hari maka Lun Muhammad beri surat akan Ungku Muda menyatakan ia akan undur ka-Sukui melainkan minta ampun-lah bahwa jangan-lah di-turut akan dia ka-Sukui bahwa-sa-nya ia tiada-lah menderhaka lagi akan anak chuchu Marhum. Jika ia menderhaka lagi biar-lah safan safa ia sampaikan chuchu dan sa-telah undur-lah Lun Muhammad ka-Sukui kemudian maka berjumpa akan Inche' Udin Serada itu Raja-raja perempuan yang-lari bergajah-gajah serta-nya laki-laki kata Inche' Udin. "Kita ambil Raja-raja ini sembahkan tuan penghulu kita." Maka di-tegah oleh anak-nya maka tiada di-pakai-nya. Maka dapat-lah akan Inche' Udin tiba-tiba berjumpa pula Raja laki-laki yang serta perempuan itu serta banyak orang-nya. Maka di-ambil balek dengan perkelahian hingga mati Inche' Udin serta rayat-nya lebeh orang lima enam puloh dan di-sini-lah Inche' Ahmad bin Isahak di-bangkit oleh Inche' Lok kata-nya, "Mana lagi orang yang makan di-balai sorong hidang tarek hidang?" Maka Inche' Ahmad pun terkam dengan Inche' Shariff Pulau Ketam akan meradak akan Lun Dil di-atas gajah. Maka di-tembak-nya dari atas gajah tiada kena maka di-tikam oleh gembala gajah dari bawah gajah akan Inche' Ahmad dan Inche' Sharif maka mati kadua-nya di-jalan orang yang lari ka-Sukui dan sa-telah undur orang Kelantan itu ka-Sukui maka segala yang perang di-darat pun merampas-lah sa-dapat-dapat daripada kerbau dan lembu dan lain-nya. Kemudian lalu membakar segala rumah dairah Kenali dan di-Ja Kechil dan Ja Besar dan di-Balai Jawa Kampong Raja. Kemudian daripada itu berhenti di-Kelantan kira-nya sa-bulan lebeh. Maka jadi jumlah dengan lama di-jalan dan dalam perkelahian lebeh kurang lima bulan sampai balek yang berjalan ka-Terengganu dan segala yang berperahu pun sa-telah perang beberapa hari maka dapat khabar bahwa-sa-nya Lun Muhammad sudah lari ka-Hulni. Maka tatkala itu masing-masing pun merampas sa-chekak-chekak-nya. Kemudian dari itu Yang-di-pertuan Kelantan pun pindah ia dari perahu ka-rumah-nya yang di-Kelantan dan Yang-di-pertuan Besar pun berangkat mudek. Maka tatkala itu Lun Daud pun ada ia berkahendak akan anak Orang Kaya Tandun. Maka telah di-pinta-nya maka jawab bapa-nya sudah tunang orang. Maka menghadap bapa-nya akan Yang-di-Pertuan Kelantan maka titah-nya, "Jika ia kahendakki juga dengan keras tahan akan dia," serta di-beri-nya tombak akan tanda Yang-di-Pertuan. Maka tatkala datang Lun Daud serta Lun Mydin maka di-kahendakki-nya juga dengan kuat. Maka di-tahankan seperti titah Yang-di-pertuan serta dengan tanda-nya. Maka mengadu-lah Lun Daud akan Duli Yang-di-pertuan Besar maka titah-nya "Kawan datang dengan pekerjaan bermati luka sa-kadar orang yang sa-orang itu jadikan bichara." Sa-telah itu Yang-di-pertuan Besar pun hendak berangkat balek hanya di-tinggalkan Tungku Ahmad dan Tungku Endak dan beberapa orang baik-baik serta-nya beberapa rayat akan menanti Datok Lun Ismail akan menyerta-i langgar ka-hulu pula. Sa-telah Duli Yang-di-pertuan berangkat balek maka Datok pun sampai maka di-sampaikan titah akan dia. Maka sa-lalu-lah ia berjalan serta orang Terengganu akan melanggar kubu di-Pasir Mas. Maka di-langgar tiba-tiba tiada sampai berapa hari orang Kelantan sa-belah Lun Muhammad pun datang tindeh dengan beberapa ribu China Galas serta di-rangkak-nya masok tiada tertahan orang Petani dan orang Terengganu hanya sa-lalu undur balek daripada berperahu dan yang berjalan kaki ada-nya. Sa-telah kembali sa-kalian ka-negeri maka pada tahun yang katiga berangkat pula akan perang maka berhenti pula di-dalam Besut beberapa hari tiba-tiba Yang-di-pertuan Besar pun datang gering maka berangkat-lah balek. Shahadan telah selesai-lah daripada pekerjaan perang pada tarikh Sanat 1217 musim bulan sa-belas masok bulan sa-belas pada sa-lekor Rejab sa-telah tetap-lah di-Terengganu maka di-mulai meletakkan kerja kawin Tungku Che' Muda dengan Tungku Sulong. Sa-telah itu beberapa tahun tiada jua dapat anak. Adapun Inche' Puan Kelantan bonda-nya dapat anak akan sa-orang Tungku Sulong itu jua dan Inche' Wan Teh adek Inche' Puan itu dapat sa-orang anak akan nama Meriam bersuami ia akan Tungku Salam dan Tuan Dagang adek Inche' Wan Ngah beranakkan Raja Inche' dan Raja Mai dan Tuan Kechik dan Nang Senik dan Lun Drahman dan Tuan Senik Sungai Pinang. Adapun Lun Muhammad tiada beranak ada-pun Lun Yusuf anak-nya tujoh ia-itu Lun Ahmad dan Tuan Bulat dan Lun Saleh dan Lun Omar dan Lun Ibrahim dan dua perempuan satu jadi isteri Lun Nik Patani anak Lun Koris ia-itu Engku Tiba dan satu lagi jadi isteri Tun Lun Hasan. Adapun Lun Zainal anak-nya lima ia-itu Lun Drahman dan Ungku Lebai dan Ungku Tengah dan Tuan Kling dan Lun Dris. Adapun Inche' Ungku Pelembang tiada beranak ia bersuami akan Ungku Kabong kemudian jadi isteri Ungku Kadir Besut. Adapun Ismail anak-nya tiga ia-itu Tun Besar yang jadi Raja Petani dan Lun Nik Kampong Laut dan Tuan Busu. Adapun Lun Tan anak-nya lima ia-itu Lun Nik Gagah dan Tuan Senik Kota dan Tuan Senik Kampong Sireh dan Tun Busu dan yang perempuan Tuan Besar jadi isteri Tuan Besar Petani. Adapun Lun Pandak anak-nya sa-orang ia-itu Tun Senik Lebar. Shahadan telah kembali Kelantan dapat akan Lun Muhammad ia-itu perang dahulu di-serta oleh China Galas. Maka memerentah-lah ia beberapa tahun maka di-beri-nya nama akan Tuan Dagang itu Ungku Sewa Raja dan akan Lun Drahman Kuala Cha itu di-panggil orang Lun Raja dan akan Lun Zainal itu bernama Raja Bendahara dan akan Lun Tan itu bernama Raja Temenggong dan sa-telah tetap-lah kerajaan Lun Muhammad daripada tarikh Sanat 1216 pada bulan sa-belas masok sa-belas sa-puloh haribulan Rejab hingga sampai kapada tarikh Sanat 1251 waktu tengah malam Rabu 27 Safar Lun Muhammad pun kembali ka-rahmat Allah dan jadi-lah lama karajaan-nya tiga puloh empat tahun tujoh bulan tujoh hari daripada hari hilang Lun Muhammad itu maka anak-anak saudara-nya membenarkan Lun Zainal itu akan jadi Raja dan Lun Ahmad akan jadi Raja

Muda dan Tuan Senik Kota akan jadi Bendahara dan Tun Senik Kampong Sireh akan jadi Temenggong dan Tuan Besar akan jadi Perdana Menteri. Sa-telah itu kira-nya hampir dua bulan maka muafakat kadua Tuan Senik akan mengambil karajaan Lun Zainal dan Lun Hamad. Maka di-langgar-nya kota Raja maka balas-nya dari kota maka undur ia ka-Kelupan serta mengaku ia akan salah-nya. Maka hendak di-tindeh-nya oleh Lun Ahmad tiada di-benarkan oleh Lun Zainal dan orang Siam pun larang kadua pihak. Sa-telah itu Tuan Senik pun balek ka-Banggul tiba-tiba di-buat kubu di-Banggul serta di-lengkongkan kota Raja dengan perang kira-nya terkurong kadua-nya empat bulan di-dalam kota maka keluar Lun Zainal undur ka-Benara dan kira-nya hampir enam bulan baharu keluar Lun Ahmad ka-Sungai Budul diam ia di-masjid. Kemudian undur ia ka-Tumpat kira-nya lebeh empat puloh hari maka ketika itu Tuan Lonik Tapong menyertai Tuan Besar berkubu di-Titian Papan berlawan dengan kubu Tuan Busu Bachok. Maka Tuan Besar mengajak Lun Hamad di-Tumpat itu serta-nya. Maka datang-lah ia ka-Pekan lalu naik ia ka-Kampong Bukit maka di-turut oleh Tun Senik Kota dan Ungku Seri Mas. Maka berjumpa-lah kadua-nya akan Lun Ahmad di-bukit maka berkelahi-lah di-sana beberapa hari hingga kena Ungku Seri Mas di-bawah sudu hati terus ka-belakang lembing daun buloh Tuan Bulat anak Lun Koris. Maka di-usong bawa ka-Limbat di-sini hampir-lah akan dapat Kelantan akan Lun Ahmad karna telah tewas orang sa-belah. Kemudian maka Lun Ahmad turun ia ka-Lekub Titian Papan akan mengambil kubu Tuan Busu Bachok tiba-tiba orang Siam pun sampai membawa surat suroh rajakan Tun Senik Kampong Sireh dan Tuan Senik Kota di-beri nama Sultan Dewa. Maka tatkala itu fikir Lun Ahmad jika bagaimana di-lawan tiadakan dapat karna perentah Siam. Maka ia pun turun-lah ka-Bachok berperahu lalu ka-Terengganu tiada berapa lama diam di-Terengganu maka datang surat Siam ka-Terengganu suroh undurkan Lun Ahmad dari Terengganu karna takut akan jadi pergadohan dengan Kelantan. Maka undurkan-lah akan dia ka-Kemaman ada-nya. Telah selesai-lah daripada menyusunkan sa-tengah daripada sila-sila ini serta kesah-nya itu pada hari Ahad 23 haribulan Rejab biad'-l-fakir-'l-hakir Abdullah Almasjid pada tarikh Sanat 1285.

Tersurat pada hari Sabtu 16 haribulan Shawal 1293.

ENGLISH TRANSLATION.

In the name of Allah the Merciful and Compassionate, the Lord to whom belongs majesty and glory. This is a story related by old men, partly derived from the annals of Petani and Kelantan and partly from the annals of Sultan Mansur the Great the son of Zainalabidin the son of Abdulmajid, from the time when he went to Petani to the time when his son Sultan Zainalabidin went to Kelantan and stayed in Besut. Now the Rajas of Kelantan sprang from Dato' Wan who was called Raja of Petani after the time of

Baginda Nam Chayam. Dato' Wan's son was Dato' Pengkalan Tua and the latter had three sons, Dato' Pasir, Tuan Besar and Tuan Lun Nik. Dato' Pasir remained in Petani and the other two came to Kelantan, for at that time there was no Raja in Kelantan. After they were settled in Kelantan Dato' Pasir had a son Lun Pandak. Tuan Besar had a son Lun Nik, and Lun Nik had two daughters and a son Lun Yunus. Tuan Besar told Lun Nik to stay in Kelantan as he intended to make an expedition to the islands. It is not certain where he went, but suddenly there came news of his death. A certain Raja of Legeh conquered the country. He was called Baginda Lun Drahman, a brother of Lun Man and nephew of the Dato' of Pujud. While in Legeh Lun Drahman had a son named Lun Nik. After this Lun Drahman came with all his forces to Kelantan and there married a daughter of Lun Nik and so closely related himself to Lun Yunus. Not long after he quarrelled with his father-in-law and in the fight that ensued Lun Drahman got the worst of it. Not long after they fought again and once more he was defeated by his father-in-law. After a time he quarrelled again with his father-in-law who would not allow him a share in the government of the country. Lun Drahman still sought means to increase his power and another fight followed in which the father-in-law was worsted. So Lun Drahman killed his father-in-law and obtained possession of Kelantan. Lun Yunus retired to Trengganu and lived at Bukit Dato' and there he took to himself a concubine. From there he moved to Losong where a son named Lun Muhammad was born to him. He subsequently married Tuan Inche' Jumat, the eldest daughter of Ungku Tenang Wangsa. By her he had children, Inche' Wan Teh, Inche' Wan Ngah and Tuan Dagang. After Baginda Lun Drahman had obtained possession of Kelantan he appointed Lun Pandak as his representative to rule in Kelantan and himself returned to Legeh. In A. H. 1186 (A. D. 1771) a letter came from the Dato' of Jeram to Sultan Mansur asking for help and offering to accompany Sultan Mansur if he wished to acquire Pujud. At this time Sultan Mansur's age was 57. Sultan Mansur equipped a fleet consisting of several scores of vessels and proceeded to Petani taking Lun Yunus with him. When they arrived at Penarik in Petani in the district of Ru Sarang Lang he landed and the Dato' of Jeram gave suitable presents to the Raja to further his project. The Sultan then ordered Inche' Aim of Losong and Bandar Abdul Muluk to go to the Dato' of Pujud and inform him that the Sultan and his chiefs were coming to look into the affairs of Pujud. When these two men had conveyed this information to the Dato' he told them to make this humble reply to the Sultan: 'It is better for Your Highness to go back. Why follow the wishes of another? I am ready to follow your own wish but if you wish to follow that of another, even so Pujud will not be won. If Your Highness desires merely to see the contest, match me with my enemy from the West. Whoever is defeated, Your Highness can adopt and cherish his victor." At the same time he sent to the Sultan a present of 30 tahils of gold ore and in addition several buffaloes and bullocks and goats and several loads of rice and other things much exceeding the presents of the Dato' of Jeram. And each of the men who carried the presents was careful to take with him a bundle of spears. So there was no invasion of Pujud and the expedition returned to Trengganu. When it was known that Baginda Lun Drahman was in Legeh and that Lun Pandak alone remained in Kelantan Lun Yunus was very anxious to take Kelantan and asked permission of Sultan Mansur to do so. The Sultan granted his request and allowed the Dato' Temenggong to accompany him. When the expedition was ready they set out with a large force. When they arrived in Kelantan they seized the country and Lun Pandak retired to Legeh and Lun Yunus obtained possession of Kelantan. The Temenggong returned to Trengganu and shortly after Baginda Lun Drahman came with a large force to recover Kelantan from Lun Yunus. Lun Yunus retired to Trengganu (according to some accounts after an unsuccessful resistance) and Lun Drahman asked whether it was a manly act to seize his country when his back was turned. When Sultan Mansur heard the news he sent Inche' Kadir to Baginda Lun Drahman bidding him get ready as His Highness was coming to take Kelantan. Lun Drahman replied that he was glad to hear it as otherwise he would himself have had to go and take Trengganu. So Sultan Mansur collected 80 vessels and several thousands of soldiers were sent overland. The fleet sailed and when they had reached Stiu news was received that Baginda Lun Drahman had reached Telaga Tujoh with several thousands of his subjects fully equipped to attack Trengganu, and there could be seen many persons on the shore but it was doubtful whether they were enemies or friends. So Inche' Dahmad was ordered to go ashore and investigate. Suddenly Lun Drahman approached in a boat manned by 13 men; and some say that because of the bold and fearless manner of his approach, half the fleet began to pull up their anchors in their anxiety; but the other story is as follows:—many people had gone to the Sultan's vessel and the Sultan enquired who would go ashore to find out the truth of the news, but no one replied; the Sultan looked at Wan Muhammad of Stiu who was sitting in the bow of the Sultan's vessel and told him to come forward. Wan Muhammad came as far as the foremast and the Sultan told him to come on. Wan Muhammad approached and the Sultan asked him if he would go ashore and see if the news about Lun Drahman was true. He replied that he would not refuse to do anything that the Sultan ordered. So the Sultan ordered him to go. He saluted the Sultan and got into a boat and told his children that he did not know whether he would ever return. He then sailed to the shore and the people on shore would have fired on him but refrained as they said he might be the bearer of a message. When he landed he met Baginda Lun Drahman himself. Baginda Lun Drahman addressed him by name, and coming close up to him said "I put my life into your hands." Wan Muhammad replied "Your slave does the same. His life is in your hands and at your feet." When they had thus confided in one another, Baginda Lun Drahman said that if Wan Muhammad would answer for the anger of His Highness he would go and see him, and Wan Muhammad accepted the responsibility. They then got into the boat paddled by 13 men and rowed straight to the Sultan's vessel. When they reached it, they were both allowed to go on board. When they sat down before the Sultan, Baginda Lun Drahman presented the kris at his waist to the Sultan and the Sultan pulled off his coat and gave it to Baginda Lun Drahman, at the same time asking him the cause of the trouble in Kelantan. He replied that he submitted to the Sultan, but requested that during his lifetime he might rule on behalf of the Sultan. Sultan Mansur agreed to this and made him a present of a chest of opium. Baginda Lun Drahman then respectfully withdrew and returned in his boat to Legeh with all his followers. Sultan Mansur proceeded to Kelantan and made Lun Yunus Raja Muda of Kelantan under Lun Pandak. At this time the Sultan wished to take to wife Tang Snik the daughter of Lun Dil of Pulau Beluru. So he took her to wife and she bore to him Tengku Ahmad. After this he went back to Trengganu. Not long after the news came that Baginda Lun Drahman had gone to Benara for a cock fight. He was letting go his bird after the spurs had been fixed and was bending down to blow up the feathers, when it slipped from his hands and a spur struck Lun Drahman's head. Lun Drahman told his attendants to take away the bird as he said that his seer had foretold that he would not be wounded, but that if he was wounded he would die. So he returned to Legeh and became ill with another sickness and shortly after died. When the Raja Muda of Kelantan got the news he went over to assist in the matter of Lun Drahman's death. While the Raja Muda was in Kelantan there were born to him five sons by his concubine; Lun Yusuf, Lun Zainal, Inche' Ku Pelembang (daughter), Lun Tan, Lun Ismail, and Lun Pandak. And the Raja Muda was as it were a constable in Kelantan for Sultan Mansur, being under Lun Pandak only, at the time of Baginda Lun Drahman's death. Not long after the Raja Muda got into trouble on account of his government, and there was anger in Trengganu about it, so he was recalled to Trengganu and ordered to live near Bukit Jalan Kaliran, but shortly after he moved to Beladu and during this period Lun Pandak alone carried on the government of Kelantan. Not long after Lun Pandak rebelled and refused to recognise the government of Trengganu. Thereupon the Sultan ordered his fleet to be got ready to invade Kelantan. It was very nearly the twelfth moon when the fleet consisting of 80 vessels set sail and anchored in the harbour, and daily it grew nearer to the stormy season. The Dato' Temenggong went to the Sultan and said that in his opinion it was very near to the time when the river would be closed and that they had better return home. The Sultan however gave no answer, so the Temenggong came a second time and said "With regard to Kelantan let me and my three brothers, Raja Muda, Raja Besut and To' Limbat go to Kelantan. If we do not get Kelantan we will not come back to Trengganu but will go on the pilgrimage to Mecca." The Sultan agreed and he respectfully withdrew and the four of them went to their boats and set sail. They were accompanied by many other vessels and when near to Kelantan they saw a number of stockades along the sea shore. The Raja Muda and To' Limbat went ashore leaving the Temenggong in his boat. To all the commanders of the stockades the Raja Muda apportioned presents of cloth and coats and trowsers and at the same time he gave them advice saying "What are you doing in guarding these stockades against this expedition which is now at sea? His Highness owns Kelantan and Lun Pandak is only the representative of the late Lun Drahman. Will you not all get the reputation of being rebels against His Highness?" They considered that this was true and they agreed to be faithful subjects to His Highness, and the Temenggong's boat came in and reported to His Highness who was at sea. He then came in and when the Raja Muda heard the royal commands they went up river, and when they met the enemy there was a fight and many people were killed and wounded. Lun Pandak retired and fled. When Kelantan was regained the Raja Muda was made Raja in Kelantan. Not long after he had returned to Trengganu, Inche' Wan Teh being now grown up, Sultan Mansur married her to his son Tungku Muhammad. In due time she bore a son Tungku Sulong. After the sovereignty of the country had been settled Sultan Mansur decided to make a large palace on ten pillars. So he sent for the Raja Muda of Kelantan to collect the necessary timber. The Raja Muda came with about a thousand men and stayed at Pasir Sebrang in many sheds and huts. The timber was collected in Sungei Nerus and when it was all got the Raja Muda asked permission to return to Kelantan as he was anxious about the country and he asked that one of the sons of His Highness should be sent to be a good steel blade in Kelantan. After he had been back some time and when Tungku Sulong was six or seven years old, Sultan Mansur equipped a vessel to take his son Tungku Muhammad with his wife and child and their retainers to Kelantan. At this time Sultan Mahmud of Lingga was in Trengganu and he accompanied the expedition. When the expedition reached Kelantan, Tungku Muhammad was dressed in state clothes belonging to Sultan Mahmud. He was overcome with a fit of shivering and seemed about to faint. Sultan Mahmud supported him and when he was composed it was proclaimed that His Highness the great Sultan had granted to his son Tungku Muhammad the title of His Highness of Kelantan and when the Sultan was about to return home he gave to Inche' Wan Teh the title of Inche' Puan of Kelantan. Then Sultan Mansur returned to Trengganu and Sultan Mahmud returned to Lingga. Three months later Sultan Mansur fell sick and he sent for His Highness of Kelantan. When the later had reached Batu Rakit, cannon announced the death of Sultan Mansur which took place at 12 p.m. on the eve of Friday the 14th of Jemadalakhir A. H. 1208 (A.D. 1793). The next day the body was washed and prayers were recited over it and his son (Zainalabidin) was proclaimed Sultan in the afternoon. The body was then carried in procession as befits a Raja and buried in the mosque. When the news of the Sultan's death reached the Raja Muda he was very grieved and it so changed his health that people said he showed the effects of the change until the end of his life. After eight or nine months in the month of Safar A. H. 1209 (A. D. 1794) he returned to his maker. About eight years after the death of Sultan Mansur the Sultan betrothed Tungku Sulong to his daughter Tungku Che Muda. His Highness of Kelantan made all preparations for the wedding and the kitchens alone remained to be made. His Highness ordered Lun Drahman and Lun Zainal and Tuan Dagang and Lun Dil to remove and rebuild the house at Kota Tras but from early morning to noon they did not obey the summons. Accordingly His Highness sent Lun Muhammad to see what was the difficulty. Lun Muhammad went and found them all taking shelter under a tree. Lun Drahman said "How is it that you are doing nothing when His Highness has ordered you to rebuild the house?" Lun Drahman said "Come here." So Lun Drahman went to him. Then Lun Zainal said "What do you think of these Trengganu men coming here? Do you think we shall be lean or fat? It is Tengku Che' Muda who has come and he has brought with him Lun Mydin and Lun Daud, whose father you killed: the others do not count." Lun Muhammad replied "What single resource have I got?" and they said "That does not matter as long as we are all agreed" and Lun Muhammad replied "If that is so, I will fall in with the general opinion." After this each came up with such weapons as he had but there was only one flask of gunpowder. Then Lun Muhammad went back to His Highness who asked him for his report. He told His Highness that all of them were sick, some with head-aches and some with stomach-aches, and that the house was not yet pulled down. In the meantime the Trengganu fleet arrived with all the paraphernalia for the wedding and with many women. His Highness of Kelantan went on board the Sultan's vessel and told him all about the house etc. Then His Highness of Kelantan returned. The Sultan ordered Tuan Syed Akil and Bandar Abdul Muluk and the Dato' Mata-mata Inche' Saleh to call Lun Muhammad. When they met him and gave him the Sultan's summons Lun Muhammad answered "I respect the summons, and you who bring it here are as fathers to me. His Highness of Kelantan promised to take me with him to the Sultan, but he has already gone to the Sultan alone. At this hour, as you see I cannot go; I should be afraid to go alone and moreover I have a head-ache." It was evening and the messengers went back and told the Sultan. The Sultan then changed his plans and thought it would be better to have the wedding in Trengganu, for he said that if Lun Muhammad came there was not likely to be any trouble with the others. So he ordered His Highness of Kelantan and Inche' Puan to be told to get their things on board. After Syed Akil and his companions had returned from summoning Lun Muhammad, Lun Muhammad went to His Highness of Kelantan and informed him of the Sultan's summons. His Highness of Kelantan told him that he had better go to the Sultan. He replied "If Your Highness goes I will go with you." But His Highness said "If I do not go it does not matter." Lun Muhammad went back and induced his friends and four or five young Rajas who sided with him to accompany him until he had a following of four or five hundred men. Inche' Rashad said "Who are these trying to set the Sultan's boat adrift?" and when they came to the Sultan he said "Well, Lun Muhammad, you have come at last," and not a drop of coffee was served. Not many hours later Lun Muhammad retired and shortly after a cannon was fired from Pulau Sabar, and that night the Sultan ordered boats to go up river to bring down all the women. As they went the noise of timber-cutting was heard and the glimmer of lights was seen. The next day when the women were being brought down a stockade was seen. So the boats with all the women proceeded down river and joined the Sultan's vessel. The next day, Friday morning, a cannon was fired from Syed Akil's boat in the direction of Kampong Laut and Pulau Sabar. All the boats then fired their cannon that Friday from morning until evening, but there were only occasional replies from the enemy and at night the firing ceased. Next morning the firing was resumed and a shot came in the direction of Tikat from Syed Osman's boat and fell on Tungku Che Muda's boat. This caused great consternation and there was as great confusion as if there were desertion to the enemy. When the Sultan was informed he replied that he had not come prepared for war but for a wedding and that as there appeared to be a hitch in the proceedings they had better go back to Trengganu. The firing then ceased and by the help of God the Sultan suffered no losses amongst his people except that one man who was steering the boat of Wan Muhammad of Kebur was shot in the mouth and killed. The Sultan's fleet then sailed out and went to Trengganu. When the two rulers arrived back in Trengganu the wedding of Tungku Che Muda was not proceeded with that year and the only business was that of the next year's war and the increase and improvement of weapons. Messages were also sent to Petani asking for help from Dato' Lun Ismail, and in the second year when the harbours were open, they collected the young Rajas who were going by land with their penghulus and followers, viz. Ungku Muda, Tuan Inche' Kepong, Tuan Jamal Maras, Tuan Sulaiman, Tuan Mahamud and Inche' Ungku Long. They were followed by boats with ammunition and other things, as a reserve against a shortage. The fighting penghulus with their followers who were taken were Inche' Udin of Serada and Penghulu Bahrul of Serada and Penghulu Deman and Pa' Sulong of Dunah and the keeper of the war flags was Penghulu Sapai of Pertang. All of them had hundreds of followers and Inche' Udin had a thousand followers. When they were all ready to start the Sultan sailed with his young Rajas and great men and with a large number of boats of all descriptions. The expedition stopped at Besut and waited several days for the boat of Inche' Aim of Losong as he was sick. The Sultan amused himself by going backwards and forwards to Besut while waiting for news of Panglima Prang Inche' Abdullah, who had gone in a boat to Petani to see if Dato' Lun Ismail would collect his fleet. Suddenly Inche' Aim came from Trengganu and roused his Highness by asking if they were going to wait on account of two men before they attacked the country. The Sultan then hastily proceeded in the fishing boat named "Bujang Sa' ribu" and thence sailed to Kelantan. The fleet which accompanied the Sultan went right to Kelantan but the Sultan himself stopped at Pulau Ketitir in Sungei Pinang. Now those who had travelled overland had already got into touch with the enemy and after stockade fighting for about twenty days the enemy had retired and made a stand at Lubok Limau Nipis. The stockade at Semerak was captured and then Lubok Limau Nipis was attacked and in the end similarly captured. The enemy then retired to Kubu Kandih and it was also captured and the enemy retired and made a stand at the stockade of Klun Tarak in Kelantan. This stockade was in turn attacked and here the attackers were supported by the fleet attacking the villages alongside the river in Kelantan, only seven or eight boats remaining to guard the Sultan's vessel at Pulau Ketitir. After the fighting had lasted several days Lun Muhammad gave a letter to Ungku Muda saying that he was retiring to Sukui and asking for pardon and requesting that he should not be followed to Sukui as he would no longer be a rebel against the descendants of the late Sultan. He added that if he rebelled again he trusted that he and his descendants might be entirely ruined. After Lun Muhammad had retired to Sukui, Inche' Udin of Serada met the royal ladies who had fled on elephants with their husbands and Inche' Udin said he would capture them and hand them over to his penghulu. His children tried to dissuade him but he would not listen to them. Suddenly Inche' Udin met the husband of the ladies with a lot of their people. These rescued the ladies and after a fight Inche' Udin and fifty or sixty of his followers were killed. At this place Inche' Lok made Inche' Ahmad bin Isahak get up and said "Where are the rest of the men who gorge their food by trays full at the palace?" Inche' Ahmad rushed with Inche' Sharif of Pulau Ketam in order to thrust a spear at Lun Dil who was on an elephant. They were shot at from the elephant and missed but the driver of the elephant stabbed Inche' Ahmad and Inche' Sharif from underneath the elephant and both were killed, and the fugitives went on to Sukui. After the Kelantan men had retired to Sukui all those who were fighting on land plundered whatever they could get in the way of buffaloes, bullocks etc. And they burnt all the houses in the districts of Kenali and Ja Kechil and Ja Besar and the Balai Jawa at Kampong Raja. After this they remained about a month longer in Kelantan. Altogether including the time on the road and the time of the actual fighting it was about five months before those who went by sea reached Trengganu. Some time after the war news was received that Lun Muhammad had retired to Hulni. And at this time everyone plundered as much as he could. After this His Highness of Kelantan moved from his boat to his house in Kelantan and His Highness of Trengganu went up stream. About this time Lun Daud wanted to marry a daughter of the Orang Kaya of Tandun. But when he asked for her her father said that she was already betrothed. The father then went to His Highness of Kelantan and His Highness said that if Lun Daud attempted to get the girl by force he was to resist him, and, as a sign of His Highness's authority to do so, he gave him a spear. So when Lun Daud came with Lun Mydin and tried forcibly to carry out his wish the father resisted him with the emblem of His Highness's authority. Lun Daud complained to His Highness of Trengganu. The Sultan said "You have come on a business of life and death, and yet in the matter of a single person you are making trouble." The Sultan then wished to go back, and leaving only Tungku Ahmad and Tungku Endak he took with him many good men and followers and waited for Dato' Lun Ismail to accompany him in his attack up river. After the Sultan had started back the Dato' came and the Sultan's commands were conveyed to him. So they all went together to attack the stockade at Pasir Mas. When they had attacked for a few days there suddenly came many people of Lun Muhammad's party supported by several thousands of Chinese from Galas. These crept in and could not be stopped by the Petani and Trengganu people, and both those who had come by boat and those who had come by land had to retreat. After they had returned to their countries, in the third year, there was an armed expedition, but it stopped some days in Besut. Here the Sultan was suddenly taken ill and went back. After the war was over in A. H. 1217 (A. D. 1802) in the 11th moon on the 21st of Rejab the wedding of Tungku Che Muda and Tungku Sulong was celebrated in Trengganu. In many years they got no children. The mother, Inche Puan of Kelantan had only the one son Tungku Sulong, and Inche' Wan Teh (sic) the younger sister of Inche' Puan, had a daughter named Meriam who married Tungku Salam. Tuan Dagang, the younger brother of Inche' Wan Ngah had children: Raja Inche', Raja Mai, Tuan Kechik, Tang Snik, Lun Drahman, and Tuan Snik of Sungei Pinang. Lun Muhammad had no children. Lun Yusuf had seven children; Lun Ahmad, Tuan Bulat, Lun Saleh, Lun Omar, Lun Ibrahim, and two daughters, one Ungku Tiba the wife of Lun Nik Pati the son of Lun Koris, and the other the wife of Tun Lun Hassan. Lun Zainal had five children; Lun Drahman, Ungku Lebai, Ungku

Tengah, Tuan Kling, and Lun Dris; Inche' Ungku Pelembang had no children by her husband Ungku Kakong, and later became the wife of Ungku Kadir of Besut. Lun Ismail had three children: Tun Besar who became Raja of Petani, Lunk Nik of Kampong Laut, and Tuan Busu. Lun Tan had five children: Lun Nik of Gagap, Tun Snik of Kota, Tuan Snik of Kampong Sireh, Tun Busu, and a daughter Tuan Besar who became the wife of Tuan Besar of Petani. Lun Pandak had one son, Tun Snik of Lebar. So Lun Muhammad got back Kelantan in the former war when he was helped by the Chinese of Galas. He ruled for several years and gave to Tuan Dagang the title of Ungku Sewa Raja; Lun Drahman of Kuala Cha was called Lun Raja; Lun Zainal was called the Raja Bendahara, and Lun Tan the Raja Temenggong. And the reign of Lun Muhammad was established from the 10th or 11th of Rejab A. H. 1216 (A. D. 1801) to his death at midnight on the eve of Wednesday the 27th of Safar A. H. 1251 (A. D. 1835). His reign lasted 34 years 7 months and 7 days, and from the date of Lun Muhammad's death his relations allowed Lun Zainal to be Raja, Lun Ahmad to be Raja Muda, Tuan Snik of Kota to be Bendahara, Tun Snik of Kampong Sireh to be Temenggong and Tuan Besar to be Perdana Mantri. About two months later, the two Tuan Sniks conspired to seize the kingdom from Lun Zainal and Lun Ahmad. So they attacked the Raja's fort, but meeting with resistance they retired to Kelupan and admitted their error. Lun Ahmad would have crushed them but Lun Zainal would not allow him and the Siamese intervened. Then the Tuan Sniks went to Banggul and made a stockade there, and surrounded both Lun Zainal and Lun Ahmad in the Raja's fort, and when they had been shut up there for about four months Lun Zainal got out and retired to Benara. After nearly six months Lun Ahmad managed to get out and lived at the mosque at Sungei Budul. Then he retired to Tumpat, and after forty days Tuan Lonik of Tapong with Tuan Besar made a stockade at Titian Papan and attacked the stockade of Tuan Busu of Bachok. Tuan Besar induced Lun Ahmad to accompany him to Tumpat. They came to Pekan and went to Kampong Bukit but they were pursued by Tun Snik of Kota and Ungku Sri Mas. These two met Lun Ahmad on the hill and fought there for several days until Ungku Sri Mas was transfixed with a spear by Tuan Bulat the son of Lun Koris. He was borne on a litter to Limbat and Kelantan was very nearly regained by Lun Ahmad owing to the defeat of the other side. Then Lun Hamad went to Lekub Titian Papan to seize the stockade of Tuan Busu of Bachok, when there suddenly came men from Siam bringing letters appointing Tun Snik of Kampong Sireh as Raja and Tun Snik of Kota was given the title of Sultan Dewa. Then Lun Ahmad realised that however much he resisted he could get nothing owing to the orders from Siam. So he went to Bachok and took boat to Trengganu. He had not been long in Trengganu when letters came to Trengganu from Siam ordering Lun Ahmad to be removed for fear of a disturbance with Kelantan. So he was removed to Kemamam. This collection of tales from the annals was finished on Sunday the 23rd of Rejab A. H. 1285 (A. D. 1868) by the hand of Abdullah, a poor and humble mosque official.

Written on Saturday 16th Shawal A. H. 1293 (A. D. 1876).

A Naning Wedding-Speech.

J. L. HUMPHREYS,
Straits Settlements Civil Service.

I first heard this speech in the year 1908, at a wedding in Naning. It was recited by a Malay, Ungkai Lisut, local headman of the Mungkar tribe at Kelemak, Alor Gajah. The bridegroom was one of his clansmen. After the usual fencing, fireworks, and show of resistance below the house, in which, I remember, some Hailam kulis gave an amusing display of Chinese boxing, Ungkai Lisut, with several of his tribesmen, led the bridegroom up the steps on to the verandah of the bride's house. The headman of her clan was seated at the far end with the party of the bride, and to him Ungkai Lisut addressed this recital, pausing after each period, and raising his hands together in salute with each repetition of the words "*Sembah, Dato'*!"

The ritual was conducted with considerable solemnity, and was followed with close attention: doubtless portions of it had a semi-religious significance in pre-Muhammadan days. On its conclusion the usual wedding ceremonies were continued.

I asked Ungkai Lisut some time afterwards to repeat the speech, and took it down in writing: he had no record of it but his own memory. In the year 1914, meeting him in Singapore, I again asked him to recite it: he did so without hesitation, and with hardly the alteration of a word.

This set speech is an interesting exposition of the domestic Menangkabau custom still surviving in Naning. A very complete discussion of the fuller exogamic custom of Negri Sembilan is given in *Rembau*, Parr and Mackray, volume 56 of the Journal.

The homely precepts of the recitation recall more than one passage in the Second Georgic: among the Naning, as among the Virgilian, peasantry are still found

> ....*patiens operum exiguoque assueta juventus,*
> *Sacra deum sanctique patres.*

I am indebted to Mr. W. H. Mackray, of the F. M. S. Civil Service, who has kindly read through this paper, for several valuable suggestions, which I have adopted.

The following is a short summary of the recital:—

Our lives are guided by religious law, and by ancient Menangkabau custom. (Lines 1-47.)

I tell of the customs that govern our marriages and the upbringing and wedding of our children. (Lines 48-94.)

Lastly, I tell of the making of this marriage, to fulfil which I am now come. (Lines 95-131.)

A few notes have been added to elucidate obscure passages.

TEXT.

Ada-lah pebilangan adat,
Hujan berpohon,
Kata berpangkal;
Sakit bermula,
Mati bersebab:
Mengaji ka-pada alif,
Membilang ka-pada esa;
Pebilangan pada nang tua-tua,
Perkhabaran pada nang kechil-kechil.

Maka ada-lah pebilangan,
Sa-pertama kala Allah,
Ka-dua kala Nabi,
Ka-tiga kala tua,
Ka-empat resam negeri:
Hidup berperuntongan,
Mati berhukum Allah.

Nama mana kala Allah?
Rezeki di-makan,
Pertemuan di-nikahi.
Tanah terbaris di kuburi.

Nama mana kala Nabi?
Berhadis berdalil,
Berlepar bermaana.

Nama mana kala tua?
Berlukis berlembaga,
Berturas berteladan;
Nang di-ucha di-pakai,
Nang di-pesar di-biasakan,
Turun-menurun dari-pada nenek moyang:
Di-anjak layu,
Di-chabut mati.

Nama mana resam negeri?
Shariat palu-memalu,
Berbudi orang berbahasa kita:
Dunia berganti-ganti,
Sa-kali di orang sa-kali di kita.
Sembah, Dato'!

Maka lepas dari-pada itu ada pebilangan pula;
Sa-lilit Pulau Percha,

TRANSLATION.

The saying of the custom runs,
Rain from a rain-cloud,
Speech from a prelude;
Sickness from a beginning,
Death from a cause:
Spell from letter A,
Count from figure I;
The old men know tradition,
The young men hear report.

And there is a saying runs,
First, the law of God,
Second, the law of the Prophet,
Third, the law of tradition,
Fourth, the custom of the land:
Living we work our fate,
Dead we abide the doom of God.

What is the law of God?
To eat the daily bread,
To wed the destined mate,
To lie below the heaped-up sod.

What is the law of the Prophet?
The sayings, the commentary,
The text, the interpretation.

What is the law of tradition?
The pattern becomes the mould;
The example becomes the type;
Precept passing into usage,
Practice passing into custom,
The custom handed down by our fore-fathers from generation to generation:
Transplanted it withers,
Uprooted dies.

What is the custom of the land?
Duty gives and receives again,
Courtesy repays kindness:
The hap of this life goes by turns,
Awhile to him, anon to me.
Homage, O Chief!

And after that there is another saying;
Round the circle of the isle of Sumatra,

40. Sa-lembang tanah Melayu,
Sa-alam Menangkabau,
Untong sa-kali malang berturut:
Untong ta'boleh di-raih,
Malang ta' boleh di-tolakkan,
Untong melambong, malang menimpa,
Hidup di-kandong adat,
Mati di-kandong bumi.

Maka beruntong-lah kita,
Bersuku berwaris,
50. Jauh pun ada, dekat pun ada:
Jika jauh di-dengar-dengarkan,
Jika dekat di-pandang-pandangkan.

Maka kemudian dari-pada itu,
Menerima pula orang semenda.
Tiap-tiap menerima orang semenda itu,
Di-tentukan pula dengan benar dengan muafakat:
Kalau ada berkata ada,
Kalau tidak berkata benar.
Ka-baroh sawah yang sa-lepah lantak yang bertukul,
60. Ka-darat kampong yang sa-sudut pinang yang sa-batang,
Tempat ka-bukit menchari minum,
Tempat ka-lurah menchari makan,
Bagi orang semenda:
Menchari kepala yang ta' terserungkap,
Menchari belakang yang ta' tersauk,
Menchari perut yang ta' berisi.
Sembah, Dato'!

Maka lepas dari-pada itu,
Lama-kelamaan mengadakan anak,
70. Si-laki-laki pun ada, si-perempuan pun ada:
Sa-hari ada sa-hari bernama,
Sa-hari berhutang dengan mak bapa-nya.

Apa hutang mak dengan bapa?
Hutang-nya di-atas lima perkara:
Sa-pertama kerat pusat,
Ka-dua upah bidan,
Ka-tiga bedak langir,
Ka-empat akhir baligh,
Ka-lima nikah kawin.
80. Yang kechil di-gedangkan,
Yang bingong di-cherdekkan:
Ibarat ayam,
Pagi lepas, petang di-reban.
Yang jantan di-serah mengaji,

Through the stretch of Malay land,
O'er the realm of Menangkabau,
Weal comes once, woe times and again:
Weal may not be wooed,
Woe may not be denied,
Weal soars away, woe comes crushing down;
Living we bide in the womb of custom,
Dead we lie in the womb of earth.

This then is our lot,
Clansmen of a clan, tribesmen of a tribe,
With kin both far and near:
To those afar we hearken,
Those near we mark and obey.

And after that,
A stranger weds into our clan(1.)
For every stranger that weds into our clan
A share is set with just consent:
If there be land a share is proclaimed,
If there be none we deny it not.
To the low land a rice-plot with planted posts,
To the high land an orchard-square with betel-palm for mark;
A place for the bride-groom to win his daily bread (2.),
To the hill for drink,
To the valley for meat:
To win a cover for the bare head,
A coat for the naked back,
A meal for the empty belly.
Homage, O Chief!

And after that,
The years pass by, children are born,
Both boys and girls:
The day of birth is a day of naming (3.),
A day of debt for mother and sire.

What is the debt of mother and sire?
The debt is five-fold:
First, to sever the navel,
Second, to pay the midwife,
Third, to wash and cleanse,
Fourth, to circumcise,
Fifth, to give in wedlock.
To make small folk big,
To make dull wits keen:
After the manner of fowls,
Let loose at dawn, penned at eve.
The boys learn the Koran,

Yang betina di-serah menjahit.
Kechil 'dah gedang,
Bingong 'dah cherdek,
Karna hutang mak dengan bapa-nya,
Adat yang benar bekas semenda yang tahu.

90. Maka ada pebilangan pula,
Yang jantan di-semendakan ka-orang,
Yang betina di-semendai orang:
Yang betina di-iras-iraskan,
Yang jantan di-gurau-sendakan di-arah-arahkan.

Chukup pula gedang panjang,
Di-arahkan sudah di-gurau-sendakan sudah.

Maka di-sebut pula,
Risek yang berlusus,
Gamit yang berkechapi.
100. Pada pemandangan andai-andai
Tali tidak merentang,
Batang tidak tergalang.
Maka di-rupai pula dengan chinchin,
Sah lalu batal kembali.
Maka kata adat:—
Sah lalu berterima
Adat di-isi,
Anak buah di-hantar,
Orang di-nikahkan.

110. Maka lepas dari-pada itu,
Rupa lalu, kata di-rundingkan,
Orang hendak bersemenda.
Adat tidak menggalang,
Hukum tidak menghambat,
Boleh-lah di-terima:
Chinchin di-terima berkebulatan waris,
Jauh berpanggilan,
Dekat berimbauan;
Sah lalu batal kembali.

120. Maka kemudian dari-pada itu,
Kata bulat, janji di-laboh;
Janji di-laboh di-muliakan;
Janji sampai di-tepati.

Maka ini-lah saya datang,
Laksana jaring kurang pengena,
Laksana sikat kurang pendapat,
Laksana singkal kurang pembalik,

The girls learn needlework.
Folk that were small are big,
Wits that were dull are keen,
Because of the debt of mother and sire,
Paid well or ill the clansmen know.

90. And then the saying runs,
Our boys we wed to other clans,
For our girls wooers come;
For our girls whispered hints,
For our boys jokes and jests.

And now our boy is tall and straight,
The jokes and jests have passed and sped.

And so my tale proceeds,
Of the ceaseless whispering word([4].),
Of the restless beckoning hand.
100. To the eye of the messenger
There was no string across the path([5].),
No log athwart the track.
And so a ring was sent for a token,
Received to enter, rejected to return.
The custom says:—
When a pledge is received and taken,
A bride-price is paid,
A bride-groom is sent,
A pair are wed.

110. And so it was, that
The pledge passed in, the prayer was weighed,
The prayer of my clan for a bride.
When custom bars not,
When religion bans not,
The pledge is taken.
The pledge-ring is taken when the tribesmen are agreed,
The distant summoned,
The near sent for and called:
Received the pledge-ring enters, rejected returns.

120. And after that
The tribe was at one, a bond was made;
The bond made was proclaimed;
The bond due is fulfilled.

And therefore come I now,
Like a net that snares but ill,
Like a harrow that harrows amiss,
Like a ploughshare that turns but little sod,

Saya datang menepati janji,
Mengisi adat serta anak buah.

130. Habis kata.

Sembah, Dato':

I come and fulfil the bond,
I pay the bride-price, I bring the bride-groom my kinsmen.

130. My tale is told.

Homage, O Chief!

NOTES.

(1) Line 54. Under Menangkabau exogamic custom, the bride-groom on marriage is severed from his own tribe, and enters into the tribe of the bride.

(2) Line 61. The husband is subject to the family of his wife, (*tempat semenda,*) lives in her house, and tills her fields. On divorce the children of the marriage remain with her; joint earnings or debts are divided; he removes the personal property brought by him to the marriage.

(3) Line 71. A Malay child, immediately on birth, before the severance of the umbilical cord, is given a name by one of the parents; that is, a baby name or pet name; the true name is given subsequently.

The meaning of lines 71 and 72 is that the peculiar debt of the parents commences to run from the moment of birth: it ends with the marriage of the child. The clan is the judge of its proper fulfilment. (Line 89.)

(4) Lines 98 and 99 are customary phrases to describe the activities of the go-betweens, who make the informal advances that precede a formal proposal of marriage.

Kechapi is a Chinese string instrument, played after the fashion of a guitar. The continuous 'beckonings' of the marriage-maker suggest the twitching fingers of the lute-player.

(5) Lines 101 and 102 mean that no obstacle to the union was found either in religious law or exogamic custom. See lines 113 and 114.

Trengganu.
November, 1915.

Note on the name Kuala Lumpur.

By E. Macfadyen.

Kuala Lumpur is generally assumed to be a descriptive title—'Muddy Mouth'—but the use of a descriptive epithet to qualify the word Kuala is so unusual, that one frequently hears ingenious explanations put forward to account for it in this instance.

Kuala in place names is commonly qualified by the name of the river or tributary which debouches at that point into the sea or a main river; Kuala Perak for instance or Kuala Kubu. If one met a Kuala Merah it would naturally be the name of a place where a Sungei Merah flowed into some larger river. I do not think it would occur to Malays to speak of a place as Kuala Merah because the water there had a red tinge.

Some old residents of Kuala Lumpur have even gone the length of suggesting that a small stream known as the Sungei Lumpur once flowed into the Klang where the Selangor Government offices now stand. If so the name Kuala Lumpur would be quite natural; but I much doubt there being any historical basis for this hypothesis.

An old Malay who worked for me in Kuala Langat used to speak of Kuala Lumpur as Pengkalen Lumpur and I have once or twice questioned Malays on the subject who said that old-fashioned people used that name for the place. It is to be noted, moreover, that the town of Klang was formerly known as Pengkalen Batu; a name by which it is still considered good form to describe the place in full dress writing.

At a time when there were only two settlements on the Klang river it appears probable enough that one should be called Pengkalen Batu and the other Pengkalen Lumpur. The place up stream, however, was from the first almost exclusively a Chinese settlement and anyone who has heard Chinese residents of places like Pengkalen Durian or Pengkalen Kempas refer to these places will agree that 'Kalen Lumpur is about as near an approximation to the correct form as they would be at all likely to attain.

I suggest that this is possibly the origin of the name. The transition, by a false analogy, to Kuala Lumpur would be tempting to people much more accustomed to Malay place names beginning with a Kuala than with a Pengkalen; and at a time when the 'tulisan Roman' was an undiscovered art there would be few obstacles to the mistaken version becoming stereotyped. No large or indigenous Malay element existed in the population to correct such tendency.

Hikayat Marong Maha Wangsa.

or

Kedah Annals.

EDITED
BY
A. J. STURROCK
F. M. S. Civil Service.

Bismillahi'rahmani rahim. Alhamduli'llahi rabbi'l-alamin dĕngan nama tuhan yang amat murah lagi yang amat mĕngasehani akan sakalian hamba-nya sĕgala puji bagi Allah tuhan sĕru sakalian alam wassalatu wassalam ala nabihi, dan rahmat dan salam-nya atas yang di-ambil-nya akan Nabi Muhammadini'llazi la nabi baadah. Ada pun Nabi Muhammad itu yang tiada ada Nabi kĕmudian. Waala alaihi wasah bihi'ladzi yuja hiduna bihamdeh dan atas kĕluarga-nya dan sĕgala sahabat-nya mĕreka itu-lah yang usahakan mĕmuji dia wabaada kala fakira wabil fukhara wa taksir kĕmudian dari-pada itu tĕlah bĕrkata fakir yang insaf akan lĕmah kĕadaan diri-nya, dan sangkut pĕngĕtahuan ilmu-nya. Ada-lah pada suatu masa zĕman Sultan Maadzam Shah ibni Sultan Mudzalpal Shah yang maha mulia kĕrajaan nĕgĕri Kĕdah, pada suatu hari baginda kĕluar-lah ka-pĕnghadapan di-hadapi oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang sĕrta alim mustaallim, maka fakir pun hadzir-lah mĕngadap baginda pĕnoh sĕsak di-pĕnghadapan itu mĕmbicharakan nĕgĕri dan mĕngaji kitab. Sa-tĕlah itu, maka titah duli baginda yang maha mulia junjongkan ka-atas jĕmala fakir, dĕmikian titah yang maha mulia; "Bahwa hamba pinta pĕrbuatkan hikayat ka-pada tuan, pĕri pĕraturan sĕgala raja-raja Mĕlayu dĕngan istiadat-nya sa-kali, supaya boleh di-kĕtahui oleh sĕgala anak chuchu kita yang kĕmudian dari-pada kita ini sĕrta di-kurniai dĕngan sĕjarah-nya." Sa-tĕlah fakir pun pĕrkĕjap-lah diri pada mĕngusahakan dia. Shahadan mĕmohonkan taufik-lah fakir ka-hadzarat tuhan sani'eol alam dan mĕminta hara ka-pada said-al-ĕnam dan mĕminta afwa ka-pada kĕĕmpat sahabat yang akram. Hata maka fakir pun mĕngarang-lah hikayat ini; maka di-namaï akan dia Salalatu'Salatin ya-itu pĕraturan sĕgala raja-raja.

Ini-lah mutia sĕgala chĕrita dan sĕgala chahaya dari-pada pĕrumpamaan-nya.

Maka barang siapa mĕmbacha dia jangan-lah di-bicharakan lagi tĕrlalu amat sĕmpurna bichara-nya, karna hikayat ini tahu-lah kami akan pĕrkataan karna sabda nabi sal'l-llahu alaihi wassalam tafakaru fi dzati'llahi ya'ni bicharakan oleh-mu pada sĕgala kĕbĕsaran Allah jangan Kamu fikirkan pada dzatu'llah kĕtahui oleh mu ka-pada zĕman dahulu kala dan pada masa yang tĕlah lalu, kata yang ĕmpunya chĕrita ini. Maka ada-lah ka-pada suatu masa sĕdang zĕman Nabi Allah Sulaiman alaihi'ssalam naik jadi raja yang tĕtap di-atas takhta kĕrajaan di-kurnia Allah taala di-dalam dunia ini, mĕmĕrentahkan sĕgala makhlok khalayak yang bĕrjĕnis-jĕnis bangsa yang di-jadikan Allah subhanahu wataala di-dalam dunia ini di-titah-kan oleh tuhan sĕru sakalian alam mĕmĕrentahkan isi alam dunia ini di-dalam hukum Nabi Allah Sulaiman alaihi'ssalam tiada boleh hĕndak mĕlalui dari-pada hukum-nya baik dari-pada binatang yang mĕlata di-bumi dan yang tĕrbang di-udara sakalian-nya di-dalam hukuman Nabi Allah Sulaiman bĕbĕrapa bukit pulau gunong yang mĕnjadi pasak dunia ini yang di-diami oleh makhlok.

Sa-bĕrmula maka tĕrsĕbut-lah pĕrkataan Pulau Langkapuri itu sa-lama pĕninggal pĕrang Sĕri Rama dan Anduman itu jadi sunyi-lah pulau itu tiada siapa-siapa dudok. Maka datang-lah sa-ekur burong gĕroda yang amat bĕsar-nya, ya-itu asal-nya dari-pada anak chuchu maharaja dewata. Maka burong gĕroda itu-lah yang diam di-pulau itu mĕnchari makan. Maka burong gĕroda itu pun pada zĕman Sĕri Rama dan Anduman biasa masok pĕrang banyak juga kĕsaktian dan banyak juga sĕgala binatang yang tĕrbang dan bĕrjalan di-bumi takut akan dia. Maka pada suatu hari datang-lah sa-ekur burong rajawali ka-pada burong gĕroda itu, kata-nya, " Ada-kah tuan hamba bĕroleh khabar bahwa Raja Rum itu bĕroleh sa-orang anak laki-laki? Sĕkarang ini ia hĕndak mĕminang anak raja bĕnua China karna nĕgĕri kĕdua itu tĕrlalu-lah jauh-nya, sa-buah nĕgĕri sa-bĕlah matahari naik dan sa-buah nĕgĕri sa-bĕlah matahari mati. Maka kĕhĕndak Raja Rum itu hĕndak mĕnghantarkan anak-nya itu bĕrpĕrahu dan bĕrlayar." Maka kata burong gĕroda itu ka-pada burong rajawali, " Mana tuan hamba bĕroleh warta ini? " Maka kata burong rajawali, " Hamba bĕroleh warta dari-pada burong kakaktua ia-lah yang mĕlihat orang membawa utusan dan pĕndomah dari bĕnua Rum hĕndak pĕrgi ka-bĕnua China. Maka hamba pun tĕrbang mĕlintas mĕlihat kĕlakuan itu nyata-lah ada-nya sĕpĕrti warta itu karna raja Rum itu hĕndak mĕnunjokkan kĕbĕsaran-nya mana yang tiada dapat di-kĕrjakan oleh sĕgala raja-raja di-dalam dunia ini, ia-lah konon hĕndak mĕngadakan dan mĕnghantarkan." Maka kata burong gĕroda ka-pada burong rajawali, " Di-mana dapat ia sakalian hĕndak mĕngĕrjakan pĕkĕrjaan itu? Pada fikiran-ku tiada boleh jadi; tĕtapi nanti-lah dahulu, aku hĕndak pĕrgi mĕngadap Nabi Allah Sulaiman, karna ia Raja bĕsar di-dalam alam dunia ini. Jikalau sudah ada pĕkĕrjaan yang dĕmikian itu, tiada-lah aku bĕri jadi pĕkĕrjaan nikah kĕdua-nya anak raja dua buah nĕgĕri itu." Sa-tĕlah di-dĕngar oleh burong rajawali kata burong gĕroda itu, maka ia pun bĕrmohon ka-pada burong gĕroda lalu ia tĕrbang. Sa-tĕlah itu lalu burong gĕroda itu pun tĕrbang naik ka-udara sampai pĕrgi mĕngaras awan udara bĕrasap-lah kĕlihatan dunia ini bahwa pada kĕtika itu datang-lah sa-ekur burong gĕroda yang amat bĕsar turun mĕngadap Nabi Allah Sulaiman sĕmbah-nya, "Ya Nabi Allah, hamba dĕngar warta raja Rum mĕnaroh sa-orang anak laki-laki dan raja bĕnua China ada mĕnaroh sa-orang anak pĕrĕmpuan. Maka sĕkarang raja Rum itu hĕndak mĕminang anak raja bĕnua China konon akan rupa kĕdua anak raja itu tĕrlalu amat elok-nya tiada-lah bagi banding-nya akan rupa kĕdua-nya itu, dan kĕdudokan nĕgĕri itu tĕrlalu-lah jauh, pada fikiran hamba bukan-lah jodo pĕrtĕmuan-nya." Maka sabda Nabi Allah Sulaiman, "Hai, burong gĕroda dĕmi tuhan yang mĕnjadikan aku, ada-pun jodo pĕrtĕmuan itu di-dalam batu atau pun di-dalam kayu sa-kali pun tiada siapa yang dapat mĕnchĕraikan dia." Maka sĕmbah burong gĕroda, "Ya Nabi Allah akan pĕkĕrjaan itu atas hamba-mu-lah mĕnchĕraikan dia; jika tiada dapat mĕnchĕraikan anak raja kĕdua itu, nĕschaya hamba undur-lah dari-bawah langit dan atas bumi daerah tĕmpat kĕdiaman sĕgala manusia sakalian ini." Maka sabda Nabi Allah Sulaiman, "Baik, pĕrbuat-lah oleh tuan hamba barang kuasa ĕngkau; tĕtapi pĕsan-ku ka-pada ĕngkau tatkala sudah tĕtap ĕngkau boleh mĕnchĕraikan jodo pĕrtĕmuan manusia itu hĕndak-lah ĕngkau datang ka-mari chĕritakan ka-pada aku." Maka sĕmbah burong gĕroda, "Baik-lah, ya Nabi Allah."

Sa-tĕlah sudah maka burong gĕroda pun bĕrmohon-lah ka-pada Nabi Allah Sulaiman lalu tĕrbang-lah ia pĕrgi ka-bĕnua China. Hata bĕbĕrapa lama-nya ia tĕrbang itu, maka sampai-lah ka-bĕnua China lalu di-lihat-nya sĕgala pĕrĕntah raja bĕnua China itu, nyata-lah sĕpĕrti kata burong rajawali itu ada-nya jadi bĕrkahwin. Maka ada-lah ka-pada suatu hari pĕrgi-lah tuan putĕri anak raja China itu bĕrmain ka-taman lalu mĕmungut bunga-bungaan dan buah-buahan. Sa-tĕlah di-lihat oleh burong gĕroda tuan putĕri dudok di-dalam taman mĕmungut bunga-bungaan dan buah-buahan lalu ia tĕrbang mĕnuju pĕrgi ka-pada tuan putĕri itu ka-dalam taman lalu di-sambar-nya tuan putĕri itu dĕngan mulut-nya sĕrta di-gĕnggam dĕngan kuku-nya yang kanan. Maka mak inang tuan putĕri sĕrta dĕngan kundang-nya sa-orang budak pĕrĕmpuan di-gĕnggam-nya dĕngan kuku yang kiri, lalu di-bawa-nya tĕrbang mĕreka itu mĕnuju ka-pulau Langkapuri hala-nya itu ka-sa-bĕlah laut sĕlatan. Sa-tĕlah sampai ka-pulau Langkapuri itu lalu di-bawa turun karna ada tĕmpat-nya sĕpĕrti sa-buah mahaligai tĕmpat itu di-tarohkan-lah tuan putĕri itu barang di-kĕhĕndaki-nya di-chari oleh burong gĕroda itu di-bĕri ka-pada tuan putĕri dan sahaya-nya kĕdua itu.

Sa-bĕrmula maka tĕrsĕbut-lah pĕrkataan raja Rum sĕdang di-hadapi oleh sĕgala raja-raja yang bĕsar-bĕsar yang bĕrmahkota dĕngan mĕntĕri dan para pĕnggawa hulubalang sida-sida bĕntara biduanda sakalian pĕnoh sĕsak di-balai pĕseban agong bĕrmĕshuarat bichara hĕndak mĕnghantarkan anakanda baginda itu ka-bĕnua China sĕrta mĕnghadzirkan sĕgala kĕlĕngkapan bahtĕra dan kapal dan mĕnchari harapan akan ganti baginda itu. Maka ada-lah di-dalam sĕgala raja-raja yang dudok mĕngadap itu ada sa-orang raja yang bĕsar lagi bĕrmahkota sahabat ka-pada-nya, yang bĕrnama raja Marong Mahawangsa. Ada-pun raja itu ayah-nya dari-pada indĕra dan bonda-nya itu asal-nya dari-pada dewa-dewa. Maka tĕrbuka-lah pintu hati-nya gĕmar dan suka ia bĕristĕri akan anak raja gĕrgasi karna putĕri itu kĕchil lagi baik rupa paras-nya dan asal bonda-nya dari-pada raksasa. Maka jadi tiada-lah suka ayah bonda-nya Raja Marong Mahawangsa akan dia bĕristĕrikan tuan putĕri itu. Maka oleh raja Marong Mahawangsa barang ka-mana ia pĕrgi di-bawa-nya istĕri itu bĕrsama-sama dĕngan dia tiada ditinggalkan dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri para pĕnggawa sida-sida biduanda rayat sakalian, karna raja Marong Mahawangsa itu ia kĕtahui ilmu kĕsaktian dan di-takuti oleh sakalian raja-raja. Maka titah raja Rum ka-pada raja Marong Mahawangsa, "Hai, Saudara hamba hĕndak-lah saudara pĕrgi ka-bĕnua China ganti hamba mĕmbawa pĕrgi paduka anakanda ini kahwinkan dĕngan anak raja bĕnua China." Maka sĕmbah raja Marong Mahawangsa, "Baik-lah tuanku barang yang di-titahkan itu patek kĕrjakan tuanku." Sa-tĕlah itu, maka Sultan Rum pun mĕnghadzirkan sa-buah bahtĕra akan kĕnaikan anakanda baginda itu dĕngan sĕgala anak mĕntĕri pĕnggawa hulubalang dĕngan ĕmpat puloh ĕmpat anak raja-raja dan sabuah bahtĕra akan kĕnaikan raja Marong Mahawangsa dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri para pĕnggawa hulubalang rayat mĕngiringkan anak raja Rum itu. Lain dari-pada bahtĕra dua itu bĕbĕrapa pula banyak kapal dan kechi yang bĕrsama-sama mĕngiring akan anak raja itu.

Hata sa-tĕlah sudah lĕngkap ka-pada kĕtika hari saat yang baik, maka raja Marong Mahawangsa mĕngangkatkan layar sĕrta sĕgala kapal dan kechi yang bĕrsama-sama mĕngiringkan itu sĕmua di-suroh naikkan layar-nya. Maka sĕgala kapal itu pun mĕmbongkarkan sauh-nya sĕrta mĕnaikkan layar-nya masing-masing, lalu bĕrlayar-lah sakalian mĕngikut bahtĕra anak raja Rum dan bahtĕra raja Marong Mahawangsa, sa-tĕngah dahulu sa-tĕngah kĕmudian bĕrtaburan pohon-lah laut mĕnuju hala-nya ka-bĕnua China. Hata bĕbĕrapa lama-nya bĕrlayar dari-pada nĕgĕri Rum itu, maka sampai-lah ka-tĕngah arongan dĕngan bĕbĕrapa mĕlalui kuala nĕgĕri raja-raja yang taalok ka-pada raja Rum. Maka sakalian raja-raja itu pun datang-lah mĕnghantar makanan dan hadiah bĕrbagai-bagai jĕnis dari-pada sa-buah nĕgĕri ka-pada sa-buah nĕgĕri karna sakalian itu nĕgĕri yang bĕsar-bĕsar jua taalok ka-pada bĕnua Rum. Maka dĕngan hal yang dĕmikian pĕlayaran pun sampai ka-laut sabĕlah Hindustan. Maka tĕrlalu banyak sĕgala yang ajaib-ajaib dan yang indah-indah kĕlihatan pada mata sakalian-nya itu. Maka di-pintasi juga mĕrĕntas sĕgala tanjong-tanjong tĕrlalu-lah ramainya bĕrlayar itu. Ada pun pĕlayaran angkatan anak raja Rum hĕndak pĕrgi kahwin ka-bĕnua China itu ada-lah sĕpĕrti burong tĕrbang ka-sarang dan tiang-nya sĕpĕrti batang para rupa lakunya, barang di-mana bĕrlaboh dan bĕrhĕnti itu sĕpĕrti pulau yang bĕsar sĕrta dĕngan sĕgala bunyi-bunyian pun di-palu orang-lah tĕrlalu adzmat bunyi-nya sĕpĕrti akan tĕrangkat-lah lautan itu tambahan pula dĕngan bunyi bĕdil mĕriam pun tĕrlalu banyak. Maka bahana-nya bunyi bĕdil mĕriam yang di-pasang itu sĕpĕrti guroh dan tagar tĕrlalu amat gĕmpita alamat di-dalam laut itu tiada-lah dĕngan kĕmashghulan-nya mĕlainkan dĕngan kĕsukaan bĕlaka, barang di-mana bĕrjumpa dĕngan pulau, singgah bĕrlaboh naik kadaratan mĕngambil ayer dan kayu sĕrta mandi sakalian dan mĕmungut dari-pada kĕtam siput karangan sĕrta mĕngambil tali akar dan umbut kayu puchok kayu akan makanan sĕgala yang bĕrnafsu di-dalam kapal dan bahtĕra tĕrlalu-lah kĕsukaan sakalian-nya. Ada pun sakalian-nya bĕlayar itu tiada jauh dari tanah daratan hingga kĕlihatan jua daratan itu. Maka sampai-lah ka-laut Kuala Changgong nama-nya dan nama raja-nya nĕgĕri itu Kĕlinggi. Maka kĕlihatan-lah pada mata sakalian datang tĕdoh rĕdum dari sa-bĕlah matahari hidup itu sĕpĕrti hĕndak mĕnimpa atas sĕgala kapal kechi bahtĕra. Maka tĕngah bĕlayar itu datang-lah kĕlam kabut guroh pĕtir dĕngan hebat dahshat datang-nya itu, sĕpĕrti pohon ribut angin yang bĕsar rupa-nya. Maka bahtĕra kĕnaikan anak raja Rum pun mĕndĕkati kĕnaikan raja Marong Mahawangsa. Maka titah anak raja Rum Suroh bĕrtanya apa juga yang datang dihadapan itu sĕpĕrti hĕndak mĕnimpa di-atas sĕgala pĕrahu itu. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa sĕgĕra-lah naik ka-atas bĕranda bahtĕra-nya dĕngan alat sĕnjata-nya. Dĕmi di-lihat-nya yang datang itu bukan-nya dari-pada angin ribut tofan hanya bunyi sayap burong tĕrbang juga akan datang rupa-nya hĕndak mĕrosakkan sĕgala pĕrahu sakalian-nya. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun bĕrtitah ka-pada sakalian-nya suroh bĕringat-ingat alat sĕnjata masing-masing tangan sĕrta mĕngisi ubat bĕdil mĕriam jangan dilĕpakan. Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh sakalian-nya titah raja Marong Mahawangsa itu, maka ia pun mĕngĕrahkan sakalian orang-nya suroh bĕringat-ingat sĕrta mĕmĕgang sĕnjata masing-masing tangan.

Ada pun burong gĕroda itu sa-tĕlah nyata-lah angkatan anak raja Rum itu, maka datang-lah marah-nya, lalu ia pun tĕrbang datang mĕnyambar langsong di-halakan-nya ka-sa-bĕlah matahari jatoh. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun mĕnarek busar anak panah-nya yang bĕrnama ayun-ayunan itu ka-udara bĕrgĕmurohlah bunyi sĕpĕrti halilintar mĕmbĕlah. Maka sĕgĕra-lah di-tĕpiskan dĕngan sayap-nya tiada kĕna. Maka sĕgala yang mĕmasang bĕdil mĕriam itu pun di-pasang-nya hala ka-langit tiada bĕrhĕnti lagi, jikalau guroh pĕtir di-langit pun tiada kĕdĕngaran lagi bunyi adzmat-nya. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh burong gĕroda tĕrlalu banyak alat sĕnjata yang datang hĕndak mĕngĕnaï dia, maka ia pun tiada ambil tahu karna tiada mĕmbĕri guna ka-pada burong gĕroda itu habis bĕrtĕrbangan pĕrgi hala ka-lain ka-sana ka-mari. Sa-tĕlah itu datang-lah pula burong gĕroda itu sĕrta mĕnurunkan guroh hujan angin ribut datang-nya itu dari sa-bĕlah sĕlatan lantas ka-utara. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh raja Marong Mahawangsa hal kĕlakuan burong gĕroda itu kĕsaktian mĕnurunkan hujan angin ribut guroh pĕtir itu, maka sĕgĕra-lah ia mĕngambil anak panah yang bĕrnama ayunayunan bichara mĕnahankan angin ribut burong gĕroda itu hujong-nya merah sĕpĕrti api. Dĕmi di-tarek-nya busar-nya lalu di-panahkan-nya ka-udara bĕrgĕmuroh sĕpĕrti tofan bunyi-nya di-udara itu. Sa-kĕtika lagi datang-lah sa-buah gunong dari udara mĕnahani dari-pada angin ribut tofan yang datang dari-pada burong gĕroda itu pun tĕrlĕpas-lah ia ka-sa-bĕlah utara mĕncharikan alpa anak raja Rum tiga buah bahtĕra itu hĕndak di-rosak tĕnggĕlamkan kapal anak raja Rum itu ka-dalam laut. Maka dari-pada tiada bĕrhĕnti datang sĕnjata kĕna ka-pada tuboh-nya burong gĕroda itu, maka ia pun tiada mĕmbĕri guna ka-pada-nya. Maka burong gĕroda itu pun raib-lah pĕrgi hala-nya ka-darat lantas ka-hutan rimba bĕlantara. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa hĕndak mĕmbalas panah sa-kali lagi tiada sĕmpat karna burong gĕroda itu tĕrlalu chĕpat dan tangkas-nya ia tĕrbang itu. Maka hari pun malam-lah lalu bĕrhĕnti sakalian-nya pada malam itu. Tĕlah kĕesokan hari-nya di-nanti-nanti-nya kalau-kalau datang burong gĕroda itu mĕlanggar pula tiada datang. Maka sakalian-nya pun bĕlayar-lah pula tiada juga jauh dari-pada daratan. Antara bĕbĕrapa hari bĕlayar sakalian-nya itu dĕngan tĕmpek sorak sĕrta mĕmalu sĕgala bunyi-bunyian sa-panjang laut. Maka sampai-lah ka-laut Kuala Tawai nama-nya. Maka datang-lah burong gĕroda itu dĕngan hebat dan garang-nya sĕpĕrti tiada bĕrlawan-lah kĕlakuan rupa-nya datang dĕngan angin ribut guroh pĕtir kilat sabong mĕnyabong. Maka oleh raja Marong Mahawangsa sĕgĕra di-suroh kĕmbarkan bahtĕra itu dĕngan bahtĕra kĕnaikan anak raja Rum itu. Maka sĕgala kapal dan kechi pun bĕrlaboh-lah bĕrkĕliling bahtĕra kĕnaikan dua buah itu masing-masing mĕmĕgang sĕnjata. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun naik-lah ka-atas bĕranda bahtĕra-nya itu dĕngan alat sĕnjata sĕrta mĕmĕgang panah-nya yang bĕrnama “ bĕran pura ” itu bĕrnyala-nyala api di-hujong-nya sĕgĕra di-tarek busar-nya. Maka di-kĕnakan-nya anak panah bĕran pura itu lalu di-panahkan-nya naik ka-udara bĕrgĕmuroh-lah bunyi-nya. Maka turun-lah anak panah itu mĕnĕrbangkan sĕgala yang kĕlam kabut dzalmat dan angin ribut hujan itu pun habis-lah sakalian-nya hilang. Maka kĕlihatan-lah burong gĕroda itu sudah mĕnĕrbangkan kapal tiga buah di-dalam kĕlam dzalmat itu juga. Maka sorak tĕmpek pun tĕrlalu-lah adzmat tambahkan dĕngan bunyi bĕdil mĕriam pun sĕpĕrti bĕrteh dan tagar di-langit sa-kali pun tiada juga kĕdĕngaran ka-pada sangat adzmat itu hingga dĕngan kĕlam kabut asap bĕdil juga di-dalam banyak pĕluru mĕriam dan bĕdil itu dĕngan bĕbĕrapa pula anak panah sĕgala raja-raja sĕpĕrti hujan yang lĕbat rupa-nya datang mĕngĕnaï ka-pada tuboh burong gĕroda itu suatu pun tiada singgah habis bĕrtaburan dan bĕrkibaran mĕlayang di-dalam laut itu, jika kĕna ka-tuboh burong gĕroda itu jangan pun hĕndak luka tuboh-nya bulu-nya pun tiada luroh barang sa-hĕlai jua pun. Maka tĕrlalu-lah ramai dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya mĕreka itu bĕrgĕmpita di-dalam laut itu. Sa-kĕtika lagi datang pula burong itu tĕrbang mĕlayangkan diri-nya sĕpĕrti angin tofan yang bĕsar bunyi-nya dan suara-nya sĕpĕrti bunyi guroh dan halilintar mĕmbĕlah. Maka tuli pĕkak sakalian tĕlinga itu. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun sĕgĕra mĕmanahkan dĕngan anak panah-nya bĕran pura itu ka-udara bĕrgĕmuroh bunyi-nya hĕndak mĕngĕnaï burong gĕroda itu sĕgera di-kibarkan-nya dĕngan sayap-nya. Maka anak panah itu pun jatoh ka-dalam laut, lalu burong gĕroda pun mĕnyambar pula tiga buah kapal itu dĕngan paroh-nya dan kaki-nya kĕdua bĕlah itu mĕmbawa tĕrbang ka-atas udara sĕpĕrti tangkas tiada sĕmpat mĕlihat rupa-nya dari-pada sangat tangkas itu sĕpĕrti angin ribut yang bĕsar. Maka rosak-lah ĕnam buah kapal itu tĕnggĕlam, orang-nya habis mati tiada lagi hidup. Di-dalam itu pun susah juga burong gĕroda itu hĕndak mĕmintaskan angkatan anak Raja Rum itu langsong-lah ia tĕrbang ka-hutan rimba gunong mĕnchari bichara hĕndak mĕrosakkan kĕnaikan anak raja Rum itu.

Sa-bĕrmula sĕgala kapal dan bahtĕra kĕnaikan anak raja Rum itu di-nanti-nanti-nya sĕrang langgar gĕroda itu tiada-lah akan datang. Maka hari pun malam-lah. Maka bĕrkampong-lah sakalian-nya bĕrsuatu pula sa-mĕntara hari hĕndak siang. Tĕlah kĕesokan hari-nya, maka sakalian-nya bĕlayar-lah sĕrta mĕmbaiki sĕgala tali akar yang rosak binasa itu jadi kĕmashghulan-lah anak raja Rum dan raja Marong Mahawangsa mĕlihat kapal dan kechi banyak yang habis rosak dĕngan orang-nya sa-kali habis binasa tiada kĕlihatan barang sa-orang pun. Antara bĕbĕrapa hari sakalian-nya bĕlayar itu, maka sampai-lah ka-laut Kuala Parit nama-nya. Maka kĕlihatan pula kĕlam kabut turun dĕngan hujan angin ribut yang amat gĕmuroh jadi gĕmpar-lah sĕgala isi kapal dan kechi dan bahtĕra itu pun bĕrkampong jadi suatu pula sĕrta mĕlabohkan sauh-nya masing-masing sĕrta mĕmĕgang alat sĕnjata pada sa-gĕnap tangan dan bĕrjaga tali akar dan mĕngisi ubat sĕgala bĕdil mĕriam. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa tĕrlalu-lah sĕbal hati-nya mĕlihat kĕlakuan burong gĕroda itu hĕndak mĕmbinasakan ia sakalian itu lalu ia sĕgĕra naik ka-atas bĕranda itu sĕrta mĕmĕgang panah-nya yang bĕrnama "pusar sĕmpani gĕmbira," anak panah itu merah mĕnyala-nyala api di-hujong-nya kata-nya, "Hai pusar sĕmpani gĕmbira, pĕrgi-lah ĕngkau lawan burong gĕroda itu." Maka sĕgĕra-lah di-tarek-nya busar panah itu lalu di-buboh anak panah di-panahkan naik ka-udara bĕrgĕmuroh bunyi-nya sĕpĕrti tofan. Sa-kĕtika kĕluar-lah kĕlam kabut datang-lah hantu shaitan di-dalam kĕlam kabut itu mĕnyakit burong gĕroda itu. Maka burong gĕroda pun sudah di-kĕtahui-nya anak panah pusar sĕmpani gĕmbira itu. Maka sĕgĕra di-kibarkan oleh burong gĕroda dĕngan sayap-nya sĕrta mĕnĕrkam datang-nya itu mĕnyambar tiga buah kapal dan kechi dĕngan mulut-nya dan kuku-nya dan di-tĕrbangkan ka-udara mĕnghambatkan sĕgala kaum shaitan dan hantu kĕsaktian itu dan sĕgala bĕdil dan tikam dan panah anak raja-raja yang sĕpĕrti hujan yang lĕbat mĕngĕnai pada tuboh gĕroda dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya tĕrlalu gĕmpita bunyi-nya sĕpĕrti guroh di-langit bahana-nya itu pun tiada mĕmbĕri gĕntar dan dahshat di-hati burong gĕroda itu sa-bagai jua ia tĕrbang datang mĕngusir hantu shaitan itu. Sa-kĕtika habis-lah sakalian hilang chĕrah tĕrang sampai ka-dalam laut. Maka kapal yang tĕrsĕngkangkang di-paroh-nya dan yang di-gĕnggam ka-pada kaki-nya itu pun habis-lah bĕrtaburan dan bĕrpĕchah pada sĕgala laut itu dan sa-tĕngah jatoh sa-gĕnap hutan rimba habis-lah luloh lantak sĕgala tulang jadi sĕrbok sakalian-nya.

Dĕmi di-lihat oleh raja Marong Mahawangsa hal anak panah-nya tewas tiada jua mĕmbĕri bĕkas pada burong gĕroda itu, maka tĕrlalu-lah marah-nya lalu di-balas-nya pula suatu anak panah-nya di-panahkan naik ka-udara bĕrgĕmpita gĕmuroh bahana-nya di-dalam laut itu. Sa-kĕtika datang-lah sa-ekur burong jĕntayu mĕngambat burong gĕroda. Maka burong gĕroda itu pun sudah-lah ia kĕtahui bahwa anak panah itu juga mĕnjadi burong jĕntayu itu. Maka bĕrtĕmu-lah kĕdua-nya mĕnyambar dĕngan paroh-nya bĕrkibar-kibaran dĕngan sayap-nya tĕrlalu amat bĕrdahĕnam gĕmuroh bunyi-nya di-udara itu, hairan-lah sĕgala yang mĕlihat burong gĕroda itu bĕrpĕrang jikalau burong gĕroda di-atas burong jĕntayu mĕmagut sĕrta kĕluar dari mulut-nya api bĕrnyala-nyala, tĕrbakar-lah burong jĕntayu itu lalu hilang-lah kĕmbali ka-pada tarkash-nya.

Maka sa-kali lagi hĕndak di-balaskan oleh raja Marong Mahawangsa hari pun sudah malam. Maka burong gĕroda itu pun dudok mĕnanti kalau-kalau datang pula sĕnjata raja Marong Mahawangsa tiada juga datang-nya lalu ia pun pulang-lah tĕrbang ka-gunong bĕrhĕnti akan lĕlah-nya sĕrta mĕncharikan kira-kira hĕndak mĕmbinasakan sĕgala kĕnaikan anak raja Rum itu karna banyak sangat raja-raja yang kĕsaktian bĕrsama-sama dĕngan anak raja Rum itu pun dapat jua ia mĕlawan mĕlainkan raja Marong Mahawangsa yang susah sĕdikit di-hati-nya hĕndak mĕlawan akan dia itu karna ia raja kĕsaktian tĕrlĕbeh dari-pada sĕgala raja-raja yang lain pada zĕman itu. Maka burong gĕroda itu pun dudok diam mĕnchari alpa hĕndak di-rosakkan juga. Ada pun anak raja Rum dĕngan raja Marong Mahawangsa itu pun bĕrkampong-lah pada malam itu sĕrta mĕnanti burong gĕroda itu kalau-kalau datang mĕlanggar ia sakalian tiada jua akan datang, lalu bĕlayar-lah pula dari-pada laut Kuala Mĕrib mĕnuju susur daratan jua. Antara bĕbĕrapa hari lama-nya bĕlayar itu lalu kĕlihatan-lah pulau Salang antara laut Bang Tofan nama-nya oleh raja Marong Mahawangsa di-suroh orang pĕrgi ka-pada anak raja Rum itu mĕngatakan ia sa-buah bahtĕra hĕndak singgah ka-pada pulau itu karna kĕputusan ayer dan kayu dan sĕgala kĕnaikan anak raja Rum itu jangan-lah bĕrhĕnti bĕlayar karna burong gĕroda tiada sudah ia mari mĕlanggar sĕpĕrti yang tĕlah lalu itu. Maka utusan itu pun bĕlayar-lah pĕrgi mĕnuju bahtĕra anak raja Rum itu. Maka titah anak raja Rum ka-pada orang itu, " Baik-lah." Maka utusan itu pun mĕnyĕmbah lalu kĕmbali ka-pada raja Marong Mahawangsa maalumkan sĕpĕrti titah anak raja Rum itu. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun singgah-lah ka-pada suatu pulau mĕngambil ayer. Maka sakalian anak raja Rum itu pun bĕlayar mĕnuju ka-pada Tanjong Hujong Salang. Maka kapal dan kechi sakalian pun mĕngiringkan bahtĕra anak raja Rum itu.

Hata tiada bĕrapa lama-nya bĕlayar itu ada-lah kira-kira sa-hari sa-malam lagi hĕndak sampai ka-pulau Langkapuri itu maka tĕrlihat-lah ka-pada burong gĕroda angkatan pĕlayaran anak raja itu, lalu di-nantikan hari malam. Sa-tĕlah itu bahtĕra raja Marong Mahawangsa pun singgah ka-pada suatu pulau mĕngambil ayer kayu. Maka gĕroda pun datang-lah sĕpĕrti ribut tofan yang tĕramat bĕsar mĕnyambar dan mĕmukul dĕngan sayap-nya dan mĕnĕndang dĕngan kaki-nya ka-hadapan bahtĕra anak raja Rum itu hingga habis-lah karam tĕnggĕlam sĕgala kapal dan orang pun banyak-lah mati dari-pada hidup bĕrtaburan sa-panjang laut itu. Maka tatkala itu anak raja Rum pun bĕrpĕgang pada suatu papan di-dalam laut itu dĕngan sa-orang diri-nya habis-lah binasa sĕgala kapal dan kechi sĕrta sakalian bahtĕra anak raja Rum itu, pada sangka hati burong gĕroda mati-lah sudah anak raja Rum itu. Maka ia pun kĕmbali-lah ka-pulau Langkapuri. Ada pun akan raja Marong Mahawangsa sa-tĕlah hari sudah siang lalu ia pun bĕlayar mĕnurut anak raja Rum itu ada-nya.

Shahadan tiada bĕrapa lama-nya bĕrlayar itu sampai-lah ka-pada tĕmpat anak raja Rum itu rosak lalu bĕrtĕmu dĕngan orang bĕrĕnang di-ambil-nya dan bĕrtanya. Maka di-hikayatkan orang itu sĕgala hal-nya yang di-binasakan oleh burong gĕroda malam tadi. Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh raja Marong Mahawangsa yang dĕmikian itu, maka di-suroh layar kapal pĕrgi mĕnchari kalau-kalau bĕrtĕmu dĕngan anak raja Rum itu. Maka di-charikan orang-lah tiada bĕrjumpa sa-hingga bĕrtĕmu dĕngan orang lain juga bĕrtaburan pada sĕgala laut itu. Hata bĕrapa hari lama-nya anak raja Rum itu tiada bĕrjumpa dĕngan siapa-siapa jua pun. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun tĕrlalu-lah kĕmashghulan hati-nya karna ia suatu harapan yang bĕsar ka-pada Sultan Rum itu. Maka di-suroh-nya chari pada sĕgala mĕntĕri para pĕnggawa hulubalang sakalian tiada juga bĕrtĕmu. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun bĕlayar-lah hala ka-sa-bĕlah timur dĕngan bahtĕra-nya mĕnyusur daratan tanah bĕsar itu sambil mĕnchari anak raja itu. Hata dĕngan hal yang dĕmikian, maka sampai-lah ka-pada suatu tĕlok dĕngan suatu tanjong. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun bĕrtanya pada sa-orang malim yang tua di-dalam bahtĕra-nya itu. Maka kata-nya, " Bahwa pulau yang bĕsar itu baharu hĕndak bĕrsatu dĕngan daratan itu bĕrnama Pulau Sĕri, dan pulau kĕchil itu bĕrnama Pulau Jambul dan ka-darat-nya sĕdikit bĕrnama Pulau Lada, tuanku." Maka titah raja Marong Mahawangsa " Jikalau dĕmikian, singgah-lah bĕrlaboh kita di-tanjong pulau itu." Maka bĕlayar-lah bahtĕra itu mĕnuju ka-tĕmpat yang di-titah oleh raja Marong Mahawangsa itu. Sa-tĕlah sampai maka bĕrlaboh-lah bahtĕra itu. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang naik ka-darat. Maka tatkala itu datang-lah kaum gĕrgasi orang-nya bĕsar-bĕsar tĕrlalu banyak datang mĕngadap raja Marong Mahawangsa. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun sudah kĕtahui bangsa-nya gĕrgasi lalu di-tĕgur-nya dĕngan manis suara-nya mĕngambil hati-nya. Maka sĕgala kaum gĕrgasi itu pun takut-lah akan raja Marong Mahawangsa itu sĕrta hebat sikap-nya tiada bĕrlawan pada zĕman itu dan yang mĕlihat akan dia takut dan gĕntar sakalian-nya. Maka titah-nya ka-pada kaum gĕrgasi yang datang itu, "Ada pun beta singgah di-sini jikalau baik-baik bichara-nya mahu-lah beta dudok bĕrhĕnti di-sini dahulu sa-mĕntara mĕnanti khabar anak raja Rum itu kalau-kalau ada hidup-nya." Maka sĕmbah sĕgala kaum gĕrgasi itu, "Patek sakalian lĕbeh lagi kĕsukaan karna patek sakalian ini tiada mĕnaroh raja pada tĕmpat ini; jikalau dĕmikian itu baik-lah duli tuanku sila bĕrangkat mĕlihat tanah ini yang patut tĕmpat hĕndak dudok." Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun bĕrangkat hĕndak mĕlihat susok tanah itu tĕmpat hĕndak di-pĕrbuat kota parit balai istana di-iringkan oleh kaum gĕrgasi dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri lalu bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan tanah bumi yang baik tĕrlalu-lah indah tĕmpat-nya dĕngan tanah-nya mĕnjadi tiada-lah turun ka-bahtĕra-nya gila dĕngan mĕmbuat kota istana dĕngan balai-nya yang tĕrlalu amat bĕsar-nya lagi dĕngan indah-nya. Sa-tĕlah sudah balai itu maka di-namai akan dia Langkasuka karna mĕngĕrjakan itu dĕngan makan minum dan bĕrsuka-sukaan sĕrta dĕngan bĕbĕrapa binatang bĕrjĕnis-jĕnis sĕpĕrti rusa kijang pĕlandok napoh sapi dĕngan sĕgala pĕrburuan yang di-makan oleh sakalian-nya tĕrlalu amat kĕsukaan sĕrta dĕngan tĕpok tari sĕgala kaum itu karna mĕreka itu tiada bĕraja hanya bĕrpĕnghulu sahaja dan lagi pun dĕngan baik bahasa-nya raja Marong Mahawangsa itu. Sa-tĕlah sudah lĕngkap kota istana kĕmudian sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang pun masing-masing pĕrbuat-lah rumah dan kampong di-atur-nya bĕrkĕliling kota raja-nya. Sa-tĕlah sudah sakalian-nya itu maka masing pun datang mĕngadap raja-nya sa-hari-hari. Maka tĕrmashhur-lah raja Marong Mahawangsa itu sudah dudok mĕnjadi raja pada tĕmpat itu. Maka sĕgala dagang sĕntĕri pun bĕrhimpun-lah datang bĕrniaga ka-dalam nĕgĕri itu dĕngan baik budi bahasa baginda itu sĕrta dĕngan mĕntĕri sakalian itu tiada-lah mĕrasaï kĕsakitan sĕgala rayat mĕnchari makan pĕrgi mari ka-nĕgĕri itu. Maka banyak-lah orang yang tĕlah pindah dĕngan anak istĕri-nya pĕrgi dudok bĕrsama-sama raja Marong Mahawangsa makin bĕrtambah-tambah rayat-nya dari-pada sa-bulan ka-pada sa-bulan, dari-pada sa-tahun ka-pada sa-tahun makin banyak sĕgala orang pindah ka-nĕgĕri itu. Maka tĕtap-lah raja Marong Mahawangsa di-atas takhta kĕrajaan dĕngan adil murah-nya dĕmikian-lah di-pĕrentahkan oleh baginda itu tiada-lah lagi bĕrubah mĕlainkan bĕrtambah-tambah kĕbajikan di-dalam nĕgĕri itu.

Sa-bĕrmula maka tĕrsĕbut-lah pĕrkataan anak raja Rum di-atas papan ia bĕrgantong tiada makan dan minum kurus kĕring tuboh badan-nya dĕngan di-hinggap oleh kapang dan tĕritip pada sĕgala badan-nya datang pasang di-sorong oleh pasang datang surut di-bawa surut dĕngan di-julang pula oleh ombak angin. Dĕngan hal yang dĕmikian itu jatoh-lah di-chĕlah batu yang di-pulau Langkapuri dĕngan lĕteh lĕsu dan lapar dahaga-nya. Maka mĕngĕrang pun tiada kĕdĕngaran suara lagi karna sangat dzaif itu.

Maka ada-lah ka-pada suatu hari kĕtika burong gĕroda itu pĕrgi mĕnchari makan tiada ia di-pulau itu, maka turun-lah tuan putĕri anak raja China itu sĕrta dĕngan inang pĕngasoh-nya datang ka-tĕpi laut itu mĕnchari kĕtam siput di-susur pantai itu, tiba-tiba kĕdĕngaran-lah bunyi suara orang mĕngĕrang pĕrlahan-lahan. Maka titah tuan putĕri ka-pada inang-nya, "Aku mĕndĕngar bunyi suara orang mĕngĕrang pĕrgi-lah mak inang chari bĕri bĕrtĕmu dĕngan suara itu." Sa-tĕlah rata sudah di-chari-nya lalu bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan manusia yang tiada bĕrkĕtahuan rupa-nya pĕnoh dĕngan kapang sa-gĕnap tuboh-nya mata-nya juga tĕrkĕlip-kĕlip. Maka inang itu pun tĕrkĕjut-lah lalu bĕrlari-lari ka-pada tuan putĕri mĕngatakan hal itu, "Maka patek lihat akan dia tiada boleh patek sĕmbahkan yang khusus ka-pada tuan karna patek takut hĕndak pĕrgi mĕlihat hampir-nya dĕngan sĕbab rupa-nya tiada bĕrkĕtahuan orang-kah atau jin shaitan." Maka tuan putĕri pun tĕrsĕnyum mĕndĕngar sĕmbah inang-nya itu. Maka titah tuan putĕri, "Hai mak inang pĕrgi juga lihat manusia-kah atau bukan jika manusia boleh kita mĕngambil khabar." Maka mak inang pun pĕrgi juga dĕngan gagah-nya sĕrta di-hampiri lalu dudok dĕkat pĕrtanya kata-nya, "Siapa tuan ini bĕrkata bĕnar-lah jin-kah atau manusia-kah?" Maka sahut anak raja Rum itu dĕngan pĕrlahan-lahan, "Hai ibu-ku bahwa dĕngan sa-sunggoh-nya beta ini manusia juga beta-lah anak raja Rum hĕndak pĕrgi kahwin dĕngan tuan putĕri anak raja bĕnua China dĕngan bĕbĕrapa banyak bahtĕra dan kapal kechi kĕnaikan beta habis-lah di-sĕrang oleh gĕroda di-binasakan sakalian-nya. Maka dĕngan sĕbab itu-lah, hai ibu-ku jadi yang dĕmikian ini." Maka tĕrlalu-lah bĕlas kasehan hati mak inang mĕndĕngarkan hal anak raja Rum itu lalu ia pun kĕmbali ka-pada tuan putĕri pĕrsĕmbahkan hal itu sakalian-nya dĕngan suka tĕrtawa-nya. Maka tuan putĕri pun tundok sambil tĕrsĕnyum. Sa-tĕlah itu maka tuan putĕri pun bĕrtitah ka-pada mak inang itu, "Hĕndak-lah sĕgĕra mak inang pĕrgi ambil anak raja itu sĕmbunyi-kan sa-bĕlum datang burong gĕroda itu. Siapa tahu kalau tĕrlihat pada-nya tĕntu-lah mati anak raja itu? Maka jangan-lah ĕmak inang bĕrikan dia nasi yang bĕrbiji, bĕri-lah ayer nasi sahaja dahulu sĕrta ĕmak inang mandikan dia." Maka inang itu pun pĕrgi bĕrdua dĕngan budak kundang tuan putĕri itu mĕngusong anak raja itu masok ka-dalam suatu goa lalu di-tutup dĕngan batu yang kĕchil ka-pada pintu goa itu supaya jangan di-lihat oleh burong gĕroda itu. Maka ayer pun di-angkat-nya lah di-mandikan dan di-kikis-nya buang sĕgala kapang dan tĕritip pada tuboh-nya itu sĕrta di-bĕri oleh mak inang kain yang di-pakai-nya. Maka pada hemat-nya waktu kĕtika burong gĕroda itu datang baharu-lah hĕndak di-katupkan pintu goa itu lalu kĕdua-nya pun kĕmbali-lah mĕngadap tuan putĕri itu, dĕmikian-lah tiap-tiap hari mak inang itu mĕmĕliharakan anak raja Rum dĕngan tiada di-kĕtahui-nya oleh gĕroda itu dari-pada sa-hari ka-pada sa-hari makin bĕrtambah baik rupa paras-nya dan badan-nya pun kuat-lah. Maka tatkala boleh anak raja Rum itu makan dan minum sĕpĕrti sĕdia kala rupa paras-nya pun baik sĕpĕrti sa-lama-nya hanya yang kurang pakaian sahaja. Maka sĕmbah mak inang ka-pada tuan putĕri, "Nyata-lah anak raja Rum patut sangat dĕngan budi pĕkĕrti-nya dan pĕrkataan-nya bĕrtambah pula dĕngan rupa paras-nya dari-pada sa-hari ka-pada sa-hari bĕrlainan dari-pada anak raja yang kĕbanyakan di-bĕnua China atau raja lain-lain pun hanya sayang sĕdikit dĕngan sĕbab tiada bĕrpakaian sahaja." Maka titah tuan putĕri, "Hai, mak inang, sabar-lah dahulu, nanti datang burong ka-mari kita pinta ka-pada-nya sĕgala pakaian." Sa-tĕlah hari sudah malam maka burong gĕroda datang-lah mĕnghantarkan makanan akan tuan putĕri. Maka kata tuan putĕri, "Hai, burong gĕroda, bĕtapa nenek-ku bawa akan kami kĕtiga ini ka-sini mĕmbĕri kĕsakitan di-atas kami? Bahwa sa-sunggoh-nya nenek-ku mĕmbĕri makan dĕngan sĕrba aneka makanan sakalian, tĕtapi sĕgala pakaian aku hĕndak-lah nenek ambil bĕri boleh-lah aku bĕrsalin hal kami kĕtiga orang di-sini." Maka burong gĕroda pun tĕrtawa mĕndĕngar kata tuan putĕri itu sĕrta bĕrkata, suara-nya sĕpĕrti halilintar mĕmbĕlah dari langit, "Hai chuchu-ku, tiada apa yang nenek hĕndak bĕrbuat di-atas chuchu-ku yang tiga bĕrhamba ini, hanya nenek mĕnanti janji dĕngan Nabi Allah Sulaiman jua, tiada bĕrapa lama nenek hĕndak kĕmbalikan chuchu-ku kapada ayah bonda chuchu-ku di-bĕnua China." Maka kata tuan putĕri, "Hai nenek-ku, ada-lah di-dalam istana bĕsar ayah-ku raja di-bĕnua China itu di-dalam suatu bilek yang bĕrdinding chĕrmin ada suatu pĕti bĕsar yang bĕrsĕndi gading dan bĕrsĕndi dĕngan pĕrmata yakud di-situ-lah sakalian ada pakaian-ku boleh nenek-ku ambil bĕri ka-pada aku, maka tĕrlalu-lah kĕsukaan hati kami tiga orang ini." Maka kata burong gĕroda, "Baik-lah hai chuchu-ku biar-lah nenek pĕrgi ambil bĕri ka-pada chuchu-ku jangan sĕpĕrti istana ayah bonda chuchu-ku di-bĕnua China itu, jika tĕrlĕbeh sukar dari-pada tĕmpat itu pun kĕhĕndak chuchu-ku itu nenek pĕrgi ambil jua." Maka tuan putĕri tĕrlalu-lah sukachita mĕndĕngar kata burong gĕroda itu. Sa-tĕlah sudah maka burong gĕroda pun tĕrbang-lah pĕrgi hala-nya ka-bĕnua China di-tuju-nya. Sa-tĕlah sampai lalu ia bĕrtinggir ka-pada sa-buah gunong bĕrhĕntikan lĕlah-nya. Sa-kĕtika lagi lalu tĕrbang-lah pula mĕnuju mahaligai raja China itu sĕrta ia mĕnurunkan angin ribut tofan hujan kilat guroh pĕtir halilintar sĕrta dĕngan kĕlam kabut adzmat bĕrdahĕnan bunyi-nya tiada siapa mĕngĕnal siapa lagi. Maka tatkala itu raja bĕnua China tĕngah ramai di-hadap oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa sida-sida bĕntara biduanda sakalian pĕnoh sĕsak dĕngan rayat bala tĕntĕra di-balai pĕseban agong hĕndak mĕndĕngarkan surat utusan datang dari bĕnua Rum bertanya khabar anak-nya sampai atau tidak. Ada pun orang mĕmbawa surat itu bĕrjalan tiba-tiba datang angin ribut tofan itu yang amat bĕsar sĕrta dĕngan hujan yang tĕramat lĕbat. Maka sĕgala yang dudok hampir itu tiada bĕrkĕnalan lagi di-buat oleh kĕlam kabut itu mĕnjadi haru-hara-lah sakalian mĕreka itu tĕrkĕjut masing-masing hingga dĕngan mĕmĕliharakan diri-nya habis bĕrgonchang-gonchang balai rong raja itu, tĕrlalu-lah hebat dan dahshat-nya pĕkak tuli tĕlinga sakalian yang mĕndĕngar itu. Maka di-lihat oleh burong gĕroda itu sakalian orang itu di-dalam lorat bĕlaka ka-sana ka-mari tiada bĕrkĕtahuan. Maka burong gĕroda pun turun-lah di-dalam kĕlam kabut itu mĕnuju istana bĕsar itu sĕrta mĕnchabut suatu papan dinding istana itu mĕnghulur kĕpala-nya mĕngangkatkan pĕti itu dĕngan paroh-nya sĕpĕrti di-pĕsan oleh tuan putĕri itu tiada bĕrsalahan lagi. Sa-tĕlah dapat sudah pĕti itu maka ia pun tĕrbang-lah kĕmbali ka-atas udara sĕpĕrti angin yang maha tangkas mĕnuju ka-pulau Langkapuri itu. Maka tiada bĕrapa lama-nya ia tĕrbang itu sampai-lah ka-hadapan tuan putĕri itu lalu mĕlĕtakkan pĕti itu di-hadapan-nya. Dĕmi di-lihat tuan putĕri pĕti-nya sudah datang itu, maka tĕrlalu-lah suka hati-nya sĕrta mĕnĕrkam dan mĕnchapai pĕti-nya itu dĕngan anak kunchi-nya; lalu di-ambil oleh tuan putĕri sĕgala pakaian-nya yang di-gĕmar-nya bĕrtimbun-timbun di-hantarkan di-hadapan-nya. Maka burong gĕroda pun tĕrbang-lah naik ka-atas mĕrchu pulau itu bĕrtinggir bĕrhĕntikan lĕlah-nya. Tĕlah kĕesokan hari-nya maka burong gĕroda itu pun tĕrbang ka-darat mĕnchari makan. Maka tuan putĕri pun mĕngambil sa-pĕranggu pakaian-nya dari-pada jĕnis pĕta ratna yang kĕĕmasan lĕngkap dĕngan alat-nya pakaian sĕgala raja-raja, disuroh-nya mak inang hantarkan ka-pada anak raja itu. Maka oleh inang itu pun di-bawakan sĕgala pakaian sĕrta dĕngan nasi sa-kali akan anak raja Rum, lalu di-hantarkan sĕgala pakaian dan nasi di-hadapan-nya lalu ia pun mĕnyĕmbah ka-pada anak raja Rum itu. Maka anak raja itu pun tĕrlalu-lah sukachita hati-nya bĕroleh pakaian itu. Sa-tĕlah datang antara ĕnam tujoh hari-nya kĕtika burong gĕroda tiada ia pĕrgi mĕnchari makan. Maka anak raja Rum pun datang-lah mĕngadap di-bawa oleh mak inang. Sa-tĕlah di-lihat oleh tuan putĕri akan anak raja itu maka ia pun tundok kĕmalu-maluan rupa-nya. Maka anak raja Rum pun jatoh-lah hati-nya jadi tiada takut kĕdua-nya itu akan burong gĕroda itu. Maka apakala hari pĕtang pada kĕtika burong gĕroda hĕndak kĕmbali maka kĕdua-nya bĕrpĕlok bĕrchium bĕrtangis-tangisan. Sa-tĕlah sudah maka anak raja Rum itu pun kĕmbali pĕrgi ka-dalam goa tĕmpat dudok-nya itu di-bawakan oleh inang tuan putĕri itu sĕrta dĕngan makanan anak raja itu hĕndak makan ka-pada malam itu. Sa-tĕlah sudah sampai maka sĕgala makanan itu pun di-hantarkan ka-hadapan-nya sĕrta mĕnangis bĕlas hati-nya mĕmandang hal kĕdua-nya lalu ia mĕnyĕmbah kĕluar dari dalam goa itu sambil mĕnutupkan pintu goa itu dĕngan batu lalu ia pun kĕmbali ka-pada tuan putĕri di-dapati-nya sĕdang mĕnangis bĕrkĕnangkan untong nasib-nya. Tĕlah di-lihat oleh inang maka ia pun sĕgĕra mĕnyapu akan ayer mata-nya. Maka sa-kĕtika ia dudok itu burong gĕroda pun datang-lah mĕmbawa makanan akan tuan putĕri tiga bĕranak itu, lalu ia pun tĕrbang ka-atas mĕrchu pulau itu dĕmikian-lah kĕlakuan tuan putĕri dan anak raja Rum itu tiap-tiap hari burong gĕroda pun tiada-lah khali mĕngantarkan makanan, akan tĕtapi tiada di-kĕtahuï oleh burong itu, bahwa anak raja

Rum itu ada hidup tiada mati dan pĕri ia hanyut sampai sudah ka-pulau itu, dan pĕri tuan putĕri bĕrtĕmu dĕngan dia. Hata antara bĕrapa lama-nya maka ka-pada suatu hari datang-lah burong gĕroda ka-pada tuan putĕri sĕraya bĕrkata, "Hai chuchu-ku tinggal-lah chuchu-ku dudok baik-baik beta hĕndak pĕrgi mĕngadap Nabi Allah Sulaiman." Maka kata tuan putĕri, "Baik-lah hai nenek-ku." Maka burong gĕroda pun tĕrbang-lah naik ka-udara mĕngaras awan mĕnuju pĕrgi ka-tĕmpat Nabi Allah Sulaiman, sĕrta sampai langsong mĕnyĕmbah. Maka sabda Nabi Allah Sulaiman, "Hai burong gĕroda apa khabar-nya yang ĕngkau bĕrjanji hĕndak pĕrgi rĕbut ada-kah dapat ĕngkau pĕrbuat sĕpĕrti chakap-mu atau tidak"? Maka sĕmbah burong gĕroda, "Ya, nabi Allah, sudah-lah hamba-mu kĕrjakan sĕpĕrti kĕhĕndak hamba-mu itu." Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman, "Bĕtapa pĕri-nya pĕrbuatan ĕngkau atas kĕdua-nya anak raja dua buah nĕgĕri itu?" Maka sĕmbah burong gĕroda, "Ada-lah hamba-mu ambil anak raja bĕnua China tiga bĕrhamba kĕtiga-nya hamba bawa pĕrgi ka-pulau Langkapuri hamba dudok diam itu, ya nabi Allah, sĕrta hamba-mu pĕliharakan chari bĕri sĕgala makanan akan dia tiap-tiap hari tiada lagi khali-nya sĕrta hamba-mu ambil pula bĕri sĕgala pakaian-nya suatu pĕti yang bĕsar tiada-lah hamba-mu bĕri ia kĕsakitan di-atas kĕtiga orang itu dudok dĕngan kĕsukaan juga, ya Nabi Allah." Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman, "Ada-kah anak raja Rum itu bĕlayar pĕrgi ka-bĕnua China atau tidak?" Maka sĕmbah burong gĕroda "Ya Nabi Allah Sulaiman dĕngan bĕbĕrapa banyak kapal dan kechi bahtĕra di-alatkan oleh raja Rum itu sĕrta dĕngan raja yang bĕsar-bĕsar sĕrta pula ada sa-orang raja yang sangat bĕsar lagi pula dĕngan kĕsaktian-nya bĕrnama raja Marong Mahawangsa jadi harapan mĕmbawa anak raja Rum itu sa-buah bahtĕra kĕnaikan-nya dĕngan mĕntĕri hulubalang rayat sakalian. Maka bĕlayar-lah anak raja itu di-iringkan raja Marong Mahawangsa sĕrta sĕgala kapal dan kechi yang banyak itu pun bĕlayar sakalian-nya. Hata apabila sampai pĕrtĕngahan jalan lalu bĕrtĕmu dĕngan hamba-mu. Maka hamba pun mĕrosakkan sakalian kapal kĕnaikan mĕreka itu sa-hingga karam tĕnggĕlam ka-dalam laut itu habis-lah mati orang bĕrhamburan pada sa-gĕnap lautan tiada lagi hidup barang sa-orang jua pun." Maka nabi Allah Sulaiman pun tĕrtawa mĕ-mandang ka-pada mĕntĕri-nya sakalian. Maka sĕgala orang bĕsar-bĕsar yang ada mĕngadap nabi Allah Sulaiman itu pun suka tĕr-tawa gĕlak-gĕlak mĕndĕngarkan sĕmbah burong gĕroda itu mĕngata-kan sudah habis mati itu tiada sa-kali-kali ia bĕrpĕgang pada kuasa tuhan sĕru sakalian alam. Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman ka-pada burong gĕroda, "Kalau-kalau ada hidup, apa jua kata-mu?" Maka sĕmbah burong gĕroda, "Jikalau ada hidup anak raja Rum itu sĕrta bĕrtĕmu dĕngan anak raja China yang pĕrĕmpuan tiga bĕrhamba itu, bahwa sa-sunggoh-nya tiada hamba ubahkan sĕpĕrti janji hamba-mu dari-pada zĕman ini hĕndak bĕrundur dari-pada sĕgala kaum sifat manusia itu. Dan di-mana-kah boleh hamba-mu mungkirkan janji hamba-mu dĕngan nabi Allah hĕndak undur dari bawah langit dan atas bumi yang di-diami oleh sĕgala manusia, ya Nabi Allah bĕrani-kah hamba mĕmbuat dusta ka-pada nabi Allah?" Maka nabi Allah pun tĕrsĕnyum mĕndĕngarkan sĕmbah burong gĕroda itu. Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman ka-pada raja jin yang bĕrnama Harman Shah, "Hĕndak-lah tuan hamba suroh akan mĕntĕri tuan hamba barang sa-ratus orang pĕrgi ambil putĕri anak raja China itu. Maka hĕndak-lah di-buboh ka-dalam pĕti-nya kĕtiga bĕrhamba itu sĕrta dĕngan anak raja Rum itu. Pada kĕtika ini juga mau sampai sakalian itu mari di-hadapan hamba." Maka raja jin Harman Shah pun mĕnyurohkan mĕntĕri-nya dĕngan sa-ratus jin bĕrsama-sama pĕrgi mĕngambil anak raja itu. Maka mĕnyĕmbah-lah sakalian itu lalu tĕrbang ka-udara raib dĕngan sa-saat itu juga pĕrgi mĕnuju ka-pulau Langkapuri, sĕrta sampai di-lihat-nya ada sunggoh anak raja Rum itu bĕrsama-sama putĕri anak Raja China. Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri jin sakalian itu, "Hĕndak-lah tuanku kĕĕmpat bĕrhamba ini masok ka-dalam pĕti ini boleh patek sakalian bawa mĕngadap nabi Allah Sulaiman; dĕngan titah-nya juga patek sakalian datang ini, dan burong gĕroda itu ada-lah ia tĕngah mĕngadap nabi Allah Sulaiman." Sa-tĕlah di-dĕngar oleh anak raja Rum akan pĕrkataan jin itu lalu ia mĕmasokkan sĕgala harta yang di-luar ka-dalam pĕti itu sĕrta dĕngan diri-nya kĕĕmpat orang sa-kali masok ka-dalam-nya sĕrta di-kunchi-nya pĕti itu dari dalam. Tĕlah sudah lalu di-usongkan oleh jin mĕmbawa tĕrbang mĕnuju hala-nya ka-pĕnghadapan nabi Allah Sulaiman. Tiada bĕrapa lama-nya sampai-lah ia lalu di-lĕtakkan oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri jin itu di-hadapan nabi Allah itu sĕrta mĕnyĕmbah lalu undur sakalian-nya. Dĕmi di-lihat nabi Allah Sulaiman pĕti itu tĕrhantar di-hadapan-nya dan di-hadapan burong gĕroda itu, maka titah nabi Allah Sulaiman suroh kĕluarkan sakalian-nya. Maka kĕluar-lah kĕĕmpat mĕreka itu dudok mĕnyĕmbah ka-pada Nabi Allah Sulaiman sĕrta tundok kĕpala-nya. Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman ka-pada burong gĕroda, "Hai burong gĕroda, laki-laki yang mana dan anak siapa ini?" Dĕmi di-lihat oleh burong gĕroda yang dĕmikian itu maka ia pun tiada tĕrkata-kata lagi datang-lah kĕtakutan yang amat sangat gĕmĕntar mĕnggĕligis sĕndi tulang-nya dari-pada amat takut-nya akan nabi Allah Sulaiman sĕrta dĕngan kĕmaluan-nya ka-pada sĕgala raja-raja yang kĕbanyakan dan dari-pada bangsa raja yang bĕsar bĕrmahkota itu bĕribu-ribu mĕnjadi tiada-lah tĕrkata lagi. Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman, "Hai sĕgala raja-raja dan mĕntĕri-ku bangsa yang baik-baik hĕndak-lah ĕngkau dan kamu sakalian kĕtahui dĕmi tuhan-ku yang mĕnjadikan aku dan kamu sakalian di-atas sĕgala makhlok-nya dalam ĕmpat pĕrkara ini hĕndak-lah jangan sa-kali-kali di-tĕntukan jikalau tiada dĕngan janji dari-pada tuhan alam pĕrtama rĕzki sadikit atau banyak pada sa-hari sa-malam itu tiada-lah sĕgala makhlok hĕndak tĕntukan mĕlainkan dĕngan janji juga: kĕdua pĕrkara yang mĕmutuskan rĕzki-nya sĕpĕrti yang akan datang mara dan maut hĕndak itu pun tiada-lah boleh sa-sa-orang jua pun dari-pada makhlok mĕngĕtahuïkan dia dan hĕndak-lah jangan kamu tĕntukan bumi tĕmpat kĕmatian-nya mĕlainkan kĕsudahan-nya dĕngan janji Allah juga: kĕtiga pĕrkara jodo pĕrtĕmuan satu-satu makhlok-nya jikalau bĕrhimpun-lah sa-isi alam dunia ini dari-pada sĕgala bangsa yang di-jadikan Allah taala hĕndak mĕnchĕraikan tiada akan dapat hĕndak mĕnantikan esok hari-nya tiada boleh mĕlainkan dĕngan kĕhĕndak tuhan yang mĕnjadikan sakalian alam jua dĕngan janji-nya: kĕĕmpat pĕrkara pĕnchĕraian yang sudah sampai waktu saat hari-nya tiada akan dapat hĕndak mĕnĕntukan esok hari-nya tiada boleh mĕlainkan dĕngan sakalian-nya itu pun dĕngan janji-nya juga.” Maka sĕmbah sĕgala raja-raja dan hulubalang sakalian-nya, “Sa-bĕnar-lah sĕpĕrti sabda nabi Allah pĕngajar di-atas sakalian hamba-mu ini.” Maka burong gĕroda itu pun bĕrdatangkan sĕmbah, “Ya, Nabi Allah, hamba-mu pohonkan ampun bĕribu-ribu ampun di-atas nyawa badan hamba-mu dari-pada kĕsalahan hamba-mu yang tĕlah lalu itu, ya, Nabi Allah, mohon-lah hamba-mu pada tahun bulan hari ini hĕndak pĕrgi kĕluar dari bawah langit dan bumi ini barang ka-mana hamba-mu bawa diri hamba-mu di-bĕri izin oleh nabi Allah di-atas hamba-mu ini.” Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman, “Akan hal raja kĕdua ini bĕtapa jua kĕhĕndak ĕngkau?” Maka sĕmbah burong gĕroda, “Ya nabi Allah, tĕlah hamba-mu pulangkan-lah ka-pada nabi Allah ia sakalian ini: di-dalam itu pun lĕbeh maalum-lah pada nabi Allah juga.” Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman, “Jikalau dĕmikian, pĕrgi-lah ĕngkau pada hari ini kĕluar dari ini, biar-lah jauh dari-pada tanah yang di-dudok oleh sĕgala manusia ka-pada laut yang bĕrnama Kulzum yang tiada di-hampiri oleh manusia.” Maka sĕmbah burong gĕroda “Jikalau dĕmikian titah di-atas hamba-mu baik-lah, ya nabi Allah,” lalu ia tundok kĕpala-nya ka-bawah sĕpĕrti laku orang mĕnyĕmbah, bĕrmohonkan ka-pada nabi Allah Sulaiman, lalu ia pĕrgi hala-nya ka-laut Kulzum yang tiada pĕrnah sampai oleh sĕgala manusia di-situ-lah dia dudok mĕnchari makan. Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman ka-pada sa-orang mĕntĕri-nya bĕrbuat satu surat dĕngan bahasa China hĕndak di-hantarkan anak-nya dan anak raja Rum sĕrta bĕri khabar hal ahual-nya sakalian pĕrbuatan burong gĕroda itu di-atas anak raja Rum itu. Maka di-surat-lah oleh mĕntĕri itu. Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman bĕrtanya ka-pada anak raja Rum kalau-kalau ada raja-raja yang di-harap oleh raja yang bĕrsama-sama mĕngiringkan. Maka sĕmbah anak raja Rum, “Ada tuanku raja yang tua yang bĕrnama raja Marong Mahawangsa ka-pada waktu malam hamba-mu rosak itu ia singgah ka-pada suatu pulau mĕngambil ayer dan kayu, kalau-kalau ia ada hidup tiada binasa, tuan-ku.” Maka sĕmbah sa-orang mĕntĕri dari-pada dewa-dewa, “Ada tuanku pada daratan tanah bĕsar sa-bĕlah pulau Sĕri nama-nya ia mĕmbuat nĕgĕri.” Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman, “Khabar itu pun buboh-lah juga di-dalam surat itu supaya boleh di-suroh-nya panggil kĕmbali oleh raja Rum ka-nĕgĕri-nya itu.” Maka di-surat oleh mĕntĕri itu sakalian-nya di-sĕmbahkan ka-pada nabi Allah Sulaiman surat itu tĕrlalu-lah baik bunyi-nya. Maka sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman ka-pada raja jin Harman Shah, "Hĕndak-lah tuan hamba dĕngan sa-ribu tĕntĕra jin bawakan anak raja kĕdua ini ĕmpat bĕrhamba lima dĕngan pĕti-nya itu hantarkan ka-pada raja bĕnua China sĕrta tuan hamba suroh kahwin kĕdua-nya ini sĕpĕrti adat anak raja-raja yang bĕsar, dan suroh raja bĕnua China itu mĕmbĕri surat ka-bĕnua Rum nyatakan khabar hal ahual anak-nya kĕdua ini." Maka sĕmbah raja jin Harman Shah, "Baik-lah, ya nabi Allah, tĕrjunjong-lah sabda nabi Allah itu." Maka anak raja Rum dan anak raja bĕnua China ĕmpat bĕrhamba itu pun mĕnjunjong duli lalu masok ka-dalam pĕti-nya dan mĕngunchikan pĕti dari dalam-nya. Maka raja Harman Shah pun mĕnyĕmbah ka-pada nabi Allah Sulaiman lalu mĕnyuroh hulubalang-nya mĕngusong pĕti itu tĕrbang hala-nya mĕnuju ka-bĕnua China dĕngan sa-ribu orang tĕntĕra-nya. Ada pun tatkala itu raja bĕnua China tĕngah ramai di-hadap oleh raja-raja mĕntĕri hulubalang pĕnoh sĕsak di-balai rong itu muafakat bichara mĕnanti sĕgala mĕntĕri pĕrgi mĕnchari khabar anakanda baginda tuan putĕri dan anak raja Rum itu di-mana juga khabar-nya, dan utusan dari-pada bĕnua Rum itu pun ada lagi tiada kĕmbali ka-bĕnua Rum ada hadzir sakalian-nya dudok mĕngadap raja China itu karna tiada di-lĕpas oleh raja bĕnua China sakalian kĕmbali lagi hĕndak bĕri tĕntu juga warta itu. Tatkala itu maka datang-lah raja jin Harman Shah tĕrdiri di-hujong balai rong langsong ka-tanah lantas pĕrgi ka-pintu gĕrbang itu pĕnoh sĕsak dĕngan tĕntĕra jin. Dĕmi di-lihat mangkubumi raja bĕnua China hal yang dĕmikian kaum jin tĕrlalu banyak datang itu maka ia pun sĕgĕra-lah bangun dĕngan sa-orang raja bĕrsama-sama dĕngan dia datang mĕngalu-ngalukan jin sakalian itu sĕrta raja-nya jin Harman Shah pĕrgi ka-hujong balai rong itu sĕrta bĕrtanya kata-nya, "Siapa tuan hamba ini dan dari mana tuan datang ini maka tiba-tiba timbul sudah ada tĕrdiri di-balai rong raja kami ini?" Maka kata raja jin Harman Shah, "Hamba ini nama-nya raja jin Harman Shah hamba ka-mari ini mĕmbawa surat titah dĕngan di-titahkan oleh raja kami raja sĕgala makhlok di-dalam dunia ini ya-itu nabi Allah Sulaiman mĕnyuroh bawa titah ini ka-pada raja tuan hamba di-sini." Sa-tĕlah di-dĕngar oleh mangkubumi dan raja itu dĕmikian maka sĕgĕra di-pĕgang tangan raja jin Harman Shah itu sa-orang sa-bĕlah di-bawa ka-hadapan raja China. Maka raja China pun bangun mĕmbĕri hormat taadzim sĕrta dĕngan hairan mĕlihat pĕti-nya di-bawa orang di-lĕtakkan ka-hadapan raja yang banyak itu sĕrta bĕrkata, "Silakan tuan hamba dudok." Maka di-unjokkan oleh raja jin Harman Shah surat dari-pada nabi Allah Sulaiman itu. Maka di-sambut oleh raja bĕnua China surat itu di-junjong dan di-chium-nya lalu di-unjokkan ka-pada mangkubumi-nya. Maka sĕgĕra-lah di-tĕrima oleh mangkubumi akan surat itu, di-pĕrmulia-nya pula dĕngan sa-ribu kĕmuliaan lalu di-buka-nya bachakan sambil bĕrdiri juga dĕmikian-lah bunyi-nya, "Bahwa ini-lah surat dari-pada nabi Allah Sulaiman datang ka-pada raja bĕnua China hĕndak-lah tuan hamba kĕtahui pĕrbuatan burong gěroda di-atas anak pěrěmpuan tuan hamba dan di-atas měnantu tuan hamba anak raja Rum děngan sěgala raja-raja dan měntěri para pěnggawa hulubalang sida-sida běntara biduanda rayat sakalian běrapa kapal kechi dan bahtěra yang sudah di-pěrbinasakan oleh burong gěroda itu sěkarang ini kědua-nya sa-kali hamba běrtěmu. Maka ini-lah hamba suroh hantarkan ka-pada měntěri hamba raja jin Harman Shah ini ka-pada tuan hamba. Maka hěndak-lah pinta tuan hamba kěrjakan pěkěrjaan kěbajikan itu kědua-nya děngan sěgěra sěmpurna měngikut sěpěrti adat anak raja-raja yang běsar-běsar jangan di-běri běrkurangan měngikut adat istiadat-nya juga dan sěrta pula hěndak tuan hamba běri surat pěrgi ka-běnua Rum itu suroh panggil himpunkan sakalian raja-raja dan těntěra-nya yang pěchah bělah itu bawa kěmbali ka-běnua Rum; sěrta hěndak-lah tuan hamba těrima ambil anak dan měnantu tuan hamba kěěmpat běrhamba di-dalam pěti dari-pada hamba tuan juga. Maka ini-lah hamba nyatakan." Sa-tělah sudah di-bacha surat itu, lalu dudok sakalian-nya itu běrjabat tangan. Maka raja China pun měnyorongkan puan-nya sireh pěrsantapan ka-pada raja jin Harman Shah kata-nya, "Makan-lah sireh, hai saudara-ku raja Harman Shah," sěrta měminta kěluar ia itu. Maka sěgěra-lah ia měmbukakan kunchi-nya lalu ia pun kěluar-lah kěěmpat-nya měnyěmbah ka-pada ayahanda baginda raja běnua China itu. Maka di-pělok di-chium-nya oleh baginda akan anakanda itu kědua děngan gěmar kaseh rasa-nya mělihat rupa anak raja Rum itu lalu di-pěgang tangan di-bawakan dudok ka-sa-bělah iringan kanan-nya kědua-nya sěrta měnyuroh orang bawa pěti itu masok ka-dalam istana. Sa-tělah itu maka titah raja China suroh panggil utusan dari běnua Rum itu. Maka utusan itu pun datang děngan sěgěra-nya dudok běrtělut měnyěmbah. Maka titah raja běnua China ka-pada utusan itu, "Ya-kah ini tuan-mu?" Maka sěmbah utusan itu, "Ya-lah ini tuan patek anak raja Rum yang bělayar děngan běběrapa banyak kapal dan kechi bahtěra yang di-alatkan oleh tuan patek raja Rum akan anakanda baginda ini sěrta pula raja-raja měntěri hulubalang para pěnggawa sida-sida běntara biduanda dan běrlaksa-laksa těntěra tuan patek ini: patek pun hamba-nya di-titahkan oleh tuan patek raja běnua Rum tiga tahun sudah lama-nya, patek datang ini hěndak měngambil khabar dan měnchari akan tuan patek ini." Maka titah anak raja Rum "Hai shahbandar, bahawasa-nya sa-pěnoh-pěnoh kaseh tuan hamba akan hamba sudah untong nasib-ku akan jadi yang děmikian sa-moga-moga-nya aku běrtěmu děngan nabi Allah Sulaiman raja alam ini, maka aku sampai ka-mari měngadap paduka ayahanda baginda ka-běnua China ini, jikalau tiada ěntahkan di-mana aku mati di-pěrbuat oleh gěroda itu." Maka sěmbah raja Shahbandar, "Děngan sěbab itu maka sangat-lah pěrchintaan duli paduka ayahanda baginda di-běnua Rum." Sa-tělah sudah yang děmikian itu maka raja běnua China pun měmběri kurniai makan minum dan měmběri pěrsalinan ka-pada raja jin Harman Shah. Maka ia pun běrmohon ka-pada raja běnua China dan ka-pada anak raja bĕnua Rum kĕmbali mĕngadap nabi Allah Sulaiman. Maka pĕninggal raja jin itu maka raja bĕnua China pun mĕmbĕri surat ka-pada raja shahbandar ka-bĕnua Rum dĕngan nama raja bĕnua China dan nama anak raja Rum mĕnyuroh mĕmbĕri surat pada sa-gĕnap nĕgĕri yang taalok ka-pada bĕnua China sĕrta mĕnyuroh mĕmbawa jĕnis dari-pada sĕgala makanan dan hadiah, di-suroh-nya bĕrhimpun raja-raja sakalian hĕndak mĕngĕrjakan anakanda kĕdua-nya itu hĕndak mĕnurut sĕpĕrti sabda nabi Allah Sulaiman itu tiada mau raja bĕnua China itu mĕlaluï, hĕndak mĕngĕrjakan ikut istiadat raja-raja yang bĕsar-bĕsar. Sa-tĕlah itu maka raja bĕnua China pun mĕmbawa anakanda kĕdua itu masok ka-istana-nya.

Sa-bĕrmula maka tĕrsĕbut-lah pula pĕrkataan raja Marong Mahawangsa mĕmbuat nĕgĕri ka-timur pulau Sĕri itu hĕndak mĕnĕntukan khabar anak raja Rum itu kalau-kalau ada hidup-nya atau tidak. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun dudok di-dalam nĕgĕri yang baharu di-pĕrbuat-nya sa-hingga sampai ia bĕroleh sa-orang putĕra laki-laki tĕrlalu amat baik rupa paras-nya sĕrta dĕngan bĕsar panjang nipis agong-agongan di-takuti pula oleh orang sakalian. Maka nĕgĕri itu pun dari-pada sa-bulan ka-pada sa-bulan dari-pada sa-tahun ka-pada sa-tahun maka bĕrtambah-tambah ramai-nya sĕrta dĕngan banyak sĕgala dagang sĕntĕri dari-pada sa-gĕnap nĕgĕri bĕrniaga dan pindah ka-nĕgĕri itu. Maka ada-lah pada suatu hari tĕngah ramai raja Marong Mahawangsa itu sĕdang di-hadap oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri pĕnggawa hulubalang sida-sida bĕntara biduanda sakalian pĕnoh sĕsak dan mĕntĕri yang tua pun mĕngadap di-balai Langkasuka itu. Maka titah raja Marong Mahawangsa ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat itu, "Di-mana juga ada nĕgĕri yang bĕsar hampir dĕngan kita di-sini? kalau ada ia mĕnaroh anak pĕrĕmpuan boleh kita pinang akan anak kita ini." Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri tua yang kĕĕmpat, "Tiada tuanku nĕgĕri yang dĕkat-dĕkat ini patek sakalian bĕroleh khabar hanya yang ada nĕgĕri pun khabaran di-pulau Pĕrcha nĕgĕri Acheh nama-nya tuanku ada sa-buah di-susur ada juga nĕgĕri itu banyak taalok-nya dan jauh pĕlayaran-nya dua puloh lima hari lama-nya dari sini. Dan hala-nya sa-bĕlah tanah daratan kita ini ada sa-buah nĕgĕri pula nama raja Kĕlinggi, laut-nya dari sa-bĕlah kita datang jua nĕgĕri itu pun jauh-lah jua pĕlayaran itu hingga sa-bulan bĕlayar. Maka sampai-lah tĕrlalu banyak sĕgala yang ajaib di-dalam-nya nĕgĕri itu dari-pada tĕmpayan dan guri dan pohon kayu yang bĕr-nama malau tahi sĕmut dan lagi pun banyak kayu yang bĕsar-bĕsar dan di-ulu sungai-nya jauh sĕrta dĕngan luas-nya tuanku." Maka titah raja Marong Mahawangsa, "Jikalau dĕmikian hĕndak-lah tuan hamba pĕrbuat surat kita pinta sa-biji tĕmpayan yang bĕsar dari-pada sĕgala tĕmpayan yang banyak itu ka-pada raja Kĕlinggi itu, kĕmudian boleh kita dapat khabar anak-nya. Dan nĕgĕri Acheh pun pĕrbuat juga surat kita bĕri akan dia tanda kita tulus ikhlas hĕndak bĕrkaseh-kasehan dĕngan dia lagi mĕnyatakan kita baharu buat nĕgĕri ini pinta tolong mana ada sĕgala yang ajaib dari-pada harta atau dagangan boleh ia hantar mari ka-nĕgĕri kita ini, itu-lah tanda kita bĕrkaseh-kasehan raja sama raja." Sa-tĕlah dĕmikian titah raja Marong Mahawangsa, maka di-alatkan oleh mĕntĕri dua buah pĕrahu sĕrta sĕgala barang-barang dagangan mana yang patut-nya sĕrta pula dua orang mĕntĕri mĕnjadi utusan-nya. Sa-tĕlah itu lalu mĕntĕri kĕdua yang mĕnjadi utusan itu pun bĕlayar-lah sa-orang sa-buah pĕrahu hala-nya masing mĕnuju ka-nĕgĕri yang di-kĕhĕndaki-nya itu.

Hata pĕrahu utusan yang bĕlayar ka-nĕgĕri Bĕrma itu tĕlah sampai ka-kuala nĕgĕri Kĕlinggi itu. Maka di-lihat-nya ada sa-buah kapal bĕsar yang bĕrtiang tiga dudok bĕrlaboh. Sa-tĕlah ia masok ka-kuala langsong mĕngadap raja Kĕlinggi. Maka tatkala itu raja Kĕlinggi pun tĕngah ramai di-hadap oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa sida-sida bĕntara biduanda rayat sakalian pĕnoh sĕsak hĕndak mĕndĕngar surat dari-pada raja Rum bĕrtanyakan khabar raja Marong Mahawangsa di-mana juga ia diam. Maka utusan itu pun di-bawa orang-lah mĕngadap raja Kĕlinggi itu lalu di-titahkan oleh raja Kĕlinggi ka-pada mĕntĕri mĕngambil surat itu bachakan. Maka dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh raja Kĕlinggi akan surat raja Marong Mahawangsa itu lalu di-pandang-nya ka-pada utusan itu di-kĕnal-nya. Maka kata orang utusan itu ka-pada utusan raja Marong Mahawangsa, " Tiada-kah tuan hamba kĕnal hamba ini?" Maka sĕgĕra di-pandang oleh utusan itu di-kĕnal-nya-lah bahwa utusan itu mĕntĕri raja Rum; lalu kata-nya, " Bahwa hamba kĕnal juga tuan hamba mĕntĕri ka-pada raja Rum; sĕkarang ini lama-kah sudah tuan hamba sampai ka-nĕgĕri ini?" Maka kata mĕntĕri Rum itu, " Baharu juga hamba datang tiga ĕmpat hari ini, hamba sakalian singgah pada sa-gĕnap nĕgĕri karna hĕndak mĕngambil khabar raja tuan hamba juga." Maka kata utusan itu, " Jikalau dĕmikian bĕruntong-lah tuan hamba sakalian bĕrtĕmu dĕngan hamba di-nĕgĕri ini boleh kita pĕrgi bĕrsama ka-nĕgĕri yang baharu raja beta pĕrbuat sa-mĕntara hĕndak mĕnanti mĕndĕngar khabar anak raja Rum yang di-rosakkan oleh burong gĕroda itu kalau-kalau hidup lagi tuan kita itu." Maka kata mĕntĕri raja Rum, " Maka ini-lah hamba sakalian datang mari hĕndak mĕncharikan raja tuan hamba itu dĕngan pĕnyuroh anak raja Rum juga karna ia sudah ada di-dalam bĕnua China dĕngan sa-orang diri-nya." Maka kata utusan itu, " Jikalau dĕmikian nanti-lah tuan hamba sakalian karna hamba baharu datang mĕngadap duli raja nĕgĕri ini ada-kah boleh sĕpĕrti yang di-maksudkan oleh raja hamba barang-barang itu atau tidak." Maka utusan itu pun pĕrgi-lah mĕngadap raja Kĕlinggi. Maka titah raja Kĕlinggi pada utusan itu, " Banyak-kah orang bĕsar di-dalam nĕgĕri raja tuan hamba itu?" Maka sĕmbah utusan itu, " Ada, tuanku, dari-pada kaum gĕrgasi jua." Maka titah raja Bĕrma, " Baik-lah jika dĕmikian ada-lah sa-biji tĕmpayan yang bĕsar dari-pada orang tuan hamba, itu-lah hamba bĕrikan raja tuan hamba."

Lalu di-suroh oleh raja Kĕlinggi ambil tĕmpayan itu. Maka dĕngan bĕbĕrapa banyak orang mĕngusong tĕmpayan bĕsar itu, di-bawa-nya ka-kapal orang Rum itu, karna pĕrahu utusan itu tiada di-muat mĕlainkan barang-barang yang lain juga di-muat-nya. Adapun tĕmpayan sa-biji itu di-pĕrbuat-nya sangat bĕsar ya-itu tukang-nya dari-pada gĕrgasi di-tanah itu, ada-lah kira-kira dua puloh anak tangga-nya naik. Maka ka-pada orang yang akhir zĕman akan datang-nya di-hadapan lagi ada tĕrsĕbut pada kĕmudian hari. Sa-tĕlah sudah di-muat tĕmpayan itu ka-kapal, maka bĕrapa hari lama-nya raja Kĕlinggi pun mĕmbĕri surat balas ka-pada raja Marong Mahawangsa itu tanda bĕrkaseh-kasehan. Maka titah raja Kĕlinggi ka-pada utusan, " Katakan-lah ka-pada raja tuan hamba hĕndak-lah di-suroh orang pĕrgi datang ka-nĕgĕri beta ini jangan bĕrputusan biar sampai ka-pada anak chuchu." Dĕmikian-lah bunyi bĕrpĕsan dan tĕrsurat. Sa-tĕlah itu maka oleh raja Kĕlinggi di-sĕrah-nya-lah surat ka-pada utusan raja Marong Mahawangsa itu. Maka utusan pun bĕrmohon-lah sĕrta mĕnyĕmbah lalu turun ka-kapal mĕntĕri Rum itu. Ada pun pĕrahu-nya yang ia datang itu mĕngiring kapal bĕsar itu bĕlayar di-tĕpi daratan juga.

Hata bĕrapa lama ia bĕlayar itu, maka sampai-lah ka-nĕgĕri raja Marong Mahawangsa lalu bĕrlaboh di-laut itu. Sa-tĕlah ia bĕrlaboh itu maka utusan itu dĕngan mĕntĕri raja Rum pun naik ka-darat mĕngadap raja Marong Mahawangsa. Maka baginda itu tĕngah ramai di-hadap oleh sakalian mĕntĕri hulubalang pĕnoh sĕsak di-balai itu dan anakanda baginda pun ada juga dudok mĕngadap ayahanda baginda hĕndak mĕndĕngar khabar kapal bĕsar yang bĕrlaboh itu. Sa-kĕtika datang-lah mĕntĕri raja Rum dĕngan utusan yang pĕrgi ka-nĕgĕri Kĕlinggi itu mĕngadap raja Marong Mahawangsa. Maka sĕgĕra-lah di-kĕnal-nya dan di-tĕgur-nya, " Datang-lah saudara-ku mĕntĕri Rum, di-mana-tah tuan hamba bĕrtĕmu dĕngan orang hamba ini datang bĕrsama-sama ? " Maka dudok kĕdua-nya mĕnyĕmbah sĕrta tĕrtawa sĕmbah-nya, " Patek bĕrtĕmu dĕngan saudara patek ini di-hadapan raja nĕgĕri Kĕlinggi sa-moga-nya untong tuah patek singgah di-kuala nĕgĕri itu hĕndak bĕrtanya khabar duli tuanku di-nĕgĕri mana atau di-tĕlok rantau yang mana boleh patek dapati tiba-tiba bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan saudara patek ini jadi tiada-lah patek kĕdua ini bĕrchĕrai lagi makan dan tidur bĕrsama-sama. Maka ada-lah hadiah raja Kĕlinggi sa-biji tĕmpayan yang bĕsar itu pun di-muat ka-kapal patek datang mĕnchari dan mĕnyĕmbah duli tuanku dĕngan titah raja Rum suroh bawa pulang dĕngan sĕbab raja bĕnua China ada mĕngantar surat nyatakan anak-nya sudah nikah dĕngan anak raja Rum. Maka patek di-suroh datang ka-pada sa-gĕnap nĕgĕri orang mĕnchari duli tuanku sĕrta mĕnyĕmbahkan surat dari-pada raja Rum." Maka sĕgĕra-lah di-sambut oleh raja Marong Mahawangsa di-bacha-nya. Sa-tĕlah pĕham sakalian-nya sĕrta titah-nya sambil tĕrtawa, " Beta pun tĕrlalu-lah suka hĕndak kĕmbali mĕngadap duli Sultan Rum itu tĕtapi hĕndak-lah saudara-ku nanti, beta hĕndak rajakan anak beta ganti beta di-dalam nĕgĕri ini karna beta sudah tĕrlangsong mĕmbuat nĕgĕri di-tanah ini asal rupa-nya lautan juga laku-nya sĕlama ini baharu-lah baik sa-dikit." Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri Rum, "Sa-bĕnar juga tuanku ganti akan paduka anakanda itu mĕnjadi raja di-dalam nĕgĕri ini jika lain dari-pada bangsa duli tuanku mĕnjadi raja di-bumi ini nĕschaya tiada lama-nya pada pandangan patek." Maka titah raja Marong Mahawangsa, "Pada fikiran hati beta pun dĕmikian juga," sĕrta mĕnitah ka-pada mĕntĕri-nya suroh pĕrgi mĕlihat bahtĕra kĕnaikan yang datang dahulu itu di-galang dĕngan batang kayu itu nama kayu-nya sadim hĕndak di-turunkan. Maka mĕntĕri pun mĕnyĕmbah lalu bĕrjalan pĕrgi mĕlihat sudah-lah mĕnjadi daratan dĕngan di-tumboh oleh sĕgala pohon kayu yang bĕsar bĕrkĕliling-nya. Sa-tĕlah di-lihat oleh mĕntĕri itu hal yang dĕmikian, maka ia pun kĕmbali-lah mĕngadap raja-nya pĕrsĕmbahkan sakalian yang di-lihat-nya. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun suka tĕrtawa gĕlak-gĕlak mĕnĕngarkan hal itu. Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri sakalian itu-lah "sudah lama-nya tuanku diam di-sini mĕmbuat nĕgĕri di-bumi ini." Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri Rum, "Tiada apa tuanku dĕngan kapal patek pun padalah kĕnaikan tuanku bĕrangkat ka-bĕnua Rum itu." Maka titah raja Marong Mahawangsa, "Pada fikiran beta pun dĕmikian-lah."

Sa-bĕrmula ada pun utusan yang di-suroh pĕrgi ka-nĕgĕri Acheh itu pun datang-lah mĕngadap raja Marong Mahawangsa mĕmbawa surat dan bingkisan hadiah dari-pada raja Acheh itu. Sĕrta mĕngunjokkan surat itu di-pĕrsĕmbahkan ka-pada baginda dĕngan sĕgala bingkisan itu. Maka di-suroh oleh raja Marong Mahawangsa mĕmbacha surat itu pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat. Sa-tĕlah sudah di-bacha-nya dan di-dĕngar oleh baginda sakalian yang tĕrsĕbut di-dalam surat itu sĕrta mĕlihat sĕgala bingkisan itu dĕngan bĕrbagai aneka jenis dari-pada pĕrbĕndaharaan pĕrhiasan yang indah-indah; maka tĕrlalu-lah sukachita-nya lalu bĕrtitah ka-pada biduanda suroh bawa masok ka-dalam istana. Maka hidangan pĕrsantapan pun di-angkat orang-lah ka-hadapan. Sa-tĕlah sudah makan minum, maka mĕntĕri Rum pun bĕrmohon kĕmbali ka-kapal-nya. Maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun bĕrangkat masok ka-istana di-iringkan oleh anakanda baginda itu sĕrta mĕnyuroh mĕlayani kĕrja bĕrjaga-jaga mĕngĕrjakan anakanda baginda itu dĕngan makan minum dan bĕrsuka-sukaan dĕngan bĕbĕrapa banyak pĕrburuan yang di-sĕmbĕleh jadi timbul orang bĕrjaga-jaga itu sĕrta dĕngan pĕrmainan sakalian dari-pada gong gĕndang sĕrunai nafiri hĕrbab kĕchapi dandi muri kopak chĕrachap sĕrdam bangsi mĕnjadi ĕmpat puloh hari ĕmpat puloh malam yang bĕrjaga makan minum dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa sakalian tĕrlalu-lah ramai-nya. Sa-tĕlah gĕnap-lah ĕmpat puloh hari maka ka-pada hari yang baik, saat yang sĕmpurna pada kĕtika itu-lah di-kahwinkan anakanda baginda itu dĕngan sa-orang anak raja pĕrĕmpuan sĕrta di-renchanakan gĕlar-nya bĕrnama raja Marong Mahapodisat sĕrta di-ambil sĕgala anak mĕntĕri yang ada sĕdia ibu bapa-nya yang tua-tua dudok bĕrsama-sama dĕngan ayahanda baginda raja Marong Mahawangsa itu-lah jadi ganti ibu bapa-nya mĕnjadi mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa-nya. Maka titah raja Marong Mahawangsa ka-pada mĕntĕri Rum, "Sudah-lah beta rajakan anakanda ini. Maka sĕkarang akan nĕgĕri ini patut-lah kita namakan sa-suatu akan dia." Maka sĕmbah sĕgala mĕntĕri, "Patut sangat tuanku mĕnamakan nĕgĕri ini supaya tiada sĕsat dari-pada sĕbutan-nya." Maka sĕmbah pula mĕntĕri Rum, "Bukankah dĕngan kĕmudahan juga mĕndapat nĕgĕri ini dĕngan tiada sukar-nya. Jikalau ka-pada nama-nya pun dĕmikian juga." Maka titah raja Marong Mahawangsa, "Jika dĕmikian kita namakan nĕgĕri ini nĕgĕri Kĕdah Zamin Dzuran sĕbutan-nya," sĕrta titah-nya, "Hai anak-ku, raja Marong Mahapodisat, jikalau anak-ku bĕroleh anak pada zĕman ini, hĕndak anak-ku rajakan dia sa-orang sa-bĕlah utara barat laut sa-orang sa-bĕlah sĕlatan timur mĕnĕnggara dari-pada nĕgĕri Kĕdah ini dan sa-orang sa-bĕlah matahari naik antara timur laut. Maka di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah ini pun jangan sakali-kali anak-ku suroh tinggalkan karna zĕman ini banyak sangat bumi yang hampa yang tiada orang diam baharu sangat-lah mĕnjadi tanah daratan supaya tĕrmashhur nama kita pada sĕgala nĕgĕri jangan jadi sia-sia pĕkĕrjaan ayahanda yang sudah tua ini tĕrlangsong ramai mĕmbuat nĕgĕri di-tanah bumi ini." Maka sĕmbah sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang, "Sa-bĕnar-lah sĕpĕrti titah duli tuanku itu." Maka tĕmpayan bĕsar itu pun di-bawa orang-lah naik dari-pada kapal Rum itu ka-darat di-sandarkan ka-pada sa-pohon kayu yang bĕrnama rukum yang bĕsar, maka di-pĕrsĕmbahkan orang-lah tĕmpayan itu ka-pada raja Marong Mahawangsa. Maka ia pun diam-lah hingga bĕrsimpan siap sĕgala pĕrkakas dan kĕlĕngkapan di-bawa turun ka-kapal hĕndak bĕlayar. Maka sampai-lah pada hari yang baik saat yang sĕmpurna maka raja Marong Mahawangsa pun bĕlayar ka-nĕgĕri Rum. Tatkala itu di-pandang oleh raja Marong Mahawangsa ka-sa-bĕlah tanah daratan pulau Lada itu pun sudah mĕnjadi daratan akhir-nya di-sĕbut orang Bukit Lada nama-nya dan pulau Jambul itu pun boleh sĕmpurna juga akhir-nya nama Bukit Jambul sa-laku pulau Sĕri itu sangat-lah sudah hĕndak mĕnjadi bĕrtĕmu dĕngan daratan akhir-nya bĕrnama gunong Jĕrai karna sĕbab tinggi-nya. Maka di-pandang-nya pula ka-sa-bĕlah utara barat laut hingga sĕpĕrti tanjong bara yang laku-nya lagi ka-tĕngah laut dĕngan pulau Kĕrabang itu pun rupa-nya tiada lama hĕndak bĕrsatu dĕngan tanah daratan juga akhir-nya bĕrnama Bukit Tanjong.*

Sa-bĕrmula maka ada pun raja Ong Mahapodisat sa-lama pĕninggal ayahanda baginda itu, maka ia pun dudok di-atas takhta kĕrajaan di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah Zamin Dzuran tĕrlalu-lah adil dan murah pada sĕgala dagang sĕntĕri rayat bala sakalian. Maka sakalian mĕreka itu pun mĕmuji-muji akan dia banyak-lah datang sĕgala mĕreka bĕrniaga dari sa-bulan ka-pada sa-bulan makin bĕrtambah-tambah ramai-nya sĕrta banyak orang datang ka-nĕgĕri itu.

Hata bĕrapa tahun lama-nya, maka baginda itu pun bĕroleh sa-orang putĕra laki-laki tĕrlalu baik rupa paras-nya dan sikap-nya tiada-lah tolok banding-nya. Maka di-pungut oleh baginda inang pĕngasoh-nya dari-pada sĕgala anak mĕntĕri hulubalang juga tĕmpat bĕrmain-main itu. Hata tiada bĕrapa lama-nya bĕroleh sa-orang putĕra laki-laki juga. Maka akan anakanda baginda itu pun di-pungut oleh baginda pĕngasoh-nya, maka dudok bĕrmain sĕpĕrti saudara bĕrsaudara juga. Maka di-pĕliharakan sĕpĕrti ikut adat anak raja-raja yang bĕsar-bĕsar. Maka tiada bĕrapa lama-nya sĕlang sa-tahun maka baginda pun bĕroleh sa-orang anak pĕrĕmpuan tĕrlalu baik rupa paras-nya chantek manis puteh kuning panjang nipis sukar di-chari sĕpĕrti rupa-nya pada zĕman itu, di-bĕri pĕlihara dĕngan inang pĕngasoh-nya mĕngikut istiadat raja yang bĕsar-bĕsar juga. Kĕmudian dari-pada bĕbĕrapa tahun pula mĕndapat lagi sa-orang putĕra laki-laki yang tĕrlalu baik rupa paras-nya mĕngikut kakanda baginda kĕdua itu. Maka tĕrlalu-lah suka hati baginda mĕlihat anakanda yang bĕrĕmpat saudara itu bĕrmain-main dan bĕrkaseh-kasehan bĕrtambah-tambah bĕsar-nya. Maka budi pĕkĕrti sĕrta akal bichara pun tĕrlalu-lah amat baik jika ayahanda baginda itu dudok di-balai rong mĕmbicharakan hukum maka ia kĕĕmpat pun ada bĕrsama-sama dudok mĕnĕngar hukum adat pĕrentah orang. Maka sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang tĕrsangat gĕmar mĕlihat budi pĕkĕrti sĕrta dĕngan pandai mĕngambil hati sakalian mĕntĕri hulubalang tambahan pula di-atas sĕgala fakir miskin dagang sĕntĕri sĕrta dĕngan tĕgur sapa siapa yang bĕrtĕmu dĕngan dia. Jikalau ada ayahanda baginda sĕmayam di-dalam istana, maka ia kĕĕmpat pun tiada bĕrchĕrai dudok bĕrkĕliling ayahanda baginda dan bonda mĕngadap dĕngan sofan santun. Maka tĕrlalu-lah suka-chita baginda laki istĕri mĕlihat kĕlakuan anakanda itu pandai mĕlakukan chĕritĕra dĕngan tĕrtib kĕĕmpat-nya. Maka tatkala ayahanda baginda bĕrangkat kĕluar kota maka anakanda itu pun bĕrsama-sama pĕrgi mĕngiringkan tiada bĕrchĕrai. Maka di-bĕri oleh ayahanda baginda akan anakanda itu sa-orang sa-ekur kuda di-suroh-nya bĕrmain-main sĕnjata di-atas kuda bĕrtikam batang tĕratai dan mĕlarikan kuda-nya. Maka tĕrlalu-lah ramai-nya ia bĕrtiga saudara itu sĕrta dĕngan kundang-nya masing-masing bĕlajar bĕrtikamkan batang tĕratai dan bĕrmain panah dari atas kuda-nya. Maka sĕlang tiga hari sa-kali ia kĕluar bĕrmain sĕnjata dĕngan sĕgala anak mĕntĕri hulubalang.

Hata dĕngan hal yang dĕmikian maka anak raja yang kĕĕmpat itu bĕsar-lah patut rĕmaja putĕra mĕnanggong kĕrajaan. Maka pada suatu hari tĕngah ramai raja Marong Mahapodisat di-hadap oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang-nya. Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri yang tua kĕĕmpat ka-pada raja Marong Mahapodisat, "Pada fikiran patek baik-lah tuanku bichara akan paduka anakanda ini hantarkan ka-pada masing-masing tĕmpat-nya mĕnurut sĕpĕrti pĕsan ayahanda baginda raja Marong Mahawangsa itu karna sangat-lah bunyi-nya sĕgala tanah bumi daerah yang sĕpĕrti titah paduka ayahanda baginda itu hampa sakalian-nya tiada bĕrisi orang, sunggoh pun ada orang-nya tĕtapi jarang sahaja, dan raja tiada juga." Sa-tĕlah di-dĕngar oleh raja Marong Mahapodisat sĕmbah mĕntĕri itu lalu ia bĕrtitah ka-pada mĕntĕri-nya, "Jikalau dĕmikian hĕndak-lah saudara kĕrahkan sĕgala kaum gĕrgasi himpun sakalian-nya dan panggil pĕnghulu Phra Che Siam dan pĕnghulu Nang Su Taman itu ka-mari kita bĕri ia pĕrgi bĕrsama-sama anak kita dan orang kita Mĕlayu sa-tĕngah kita suroh pĕrgi bĕrsama anak kita yang tua ini kita antarkan ka-ulu di-sa-bĕlah utara barat laut. Maka tanah itu lanjut jauh jua pĕrjalanan-nya." Sa-kĕtika lagi maka pĕnghulu Phra Che Siam datang kĕdua laki istĕri-nya lalu dudok mĕnyĕmbah. Maka titah raja Marong Mahapodisat ka-pada pĕnghulu Phra Che Siam, "Pĕrgi-lah tuan hamba sakalian bĕrsama-sama dĕngan anak kita yang tua itu kĕrahkan sĕgala kaum gĕrgasi sakalian bawa mĕnchari tanah akan tĕmpat kota parit dan nĕgĕri tĕmpat hĕndak diam." Maka sĕmbah Phra Che Siam dua laki istĕri dĕngan Nang Su Taman, "Sunggoh-lah tuanku sĕpĕrti titah tuanku itu karna tanah nĕgĕri ini kĕchil tiada luas: akan kaum patek gĕrgasi itu makin bĕrtambah-tambah banyak ada-nya anak patek sa-orang laki-laki Parak nama-nya, tiada-kah tuanku ambil tinggal bĕrsama-sama anakanda baginda di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah ini?" Maka titah raja Marong Mahapodisat, "Ia itu pun jangan di-tinggalkan bawa bĕrsama-sama." Ada pun Phra Che Siam itu anak Mĕlayu, ia bĕristĕri akan Nang Su Taman gĕrgasi. Maka ia bĕroleh sa-orang anak laki-laki, Parak nama-nya. Maka Parak itu baik paras-nya. Maka tatkala itu datang-lah sa-orang pĕrĕmpuan gĕrgasi yang bĕrnama Tang Miri, ia pun anak raja juga. Maka Tang Miri itu pun tua sadikit sudah bĕroleh anak chuchu di-ambil oleh raja bawa naik ka-rumah anak chuchu-nya sakalian yang pĕrĕmpuan, karna rupa sakalian-nya baik. Maka Tang Miri itu sangat-lah gila bĕrahi akan Parak itu. Maka sa-tĕlah dĕmikian titah raja Marong Mahapodisat, maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun bĕrsama-sama Phra Che Siam laki istĕri mĕngĕrahkan sĕgala kaum gĕrgasi dan rayat-nya dari-pada kaum manusia dĕngan sa-kira-kira di-lĕngkapkan sĕgala kĕlĕngkapan dĕngan alat sĕnjata-nya. Sa-tĕlah siap dĕngan gajah kuda-nya lalu bĕrjalan-lah sambil bĕrmain-main sĕrta bĕrburu sĕgala binatang pada sa-gĕnap kaki bukit gunong tĕmpat bĕrhĕnti itu mĕnchari tanah tĕmpat yang baik hĕndak buat nĕgĕri itu tiada juga bĕrtĕmu bagai maksud lalu bĕrjalan pula ka-hadapan lalu bĕrtĕmu dĕngan suatu tasek dan wilahar dĕngan bĕbĕrapa banyak ikan di-dalam-nya; maka singgah bĕrhĕnti mĕngambil ikan dĕngan sukachita sakalian-nya bĕrmain itu sa-hingga lupa-lah makan minum. Maka bĕbĕrapa di-lihat oleh anak raja akan sĕgala yang ajaib-ajaib hingga sampai dua ratus hari bĕrjalan itu sambil bĕrmain juga baharu-lah bĕrtĕmu dan bĕrhĕnti pada tanah yang baik ka-pada suatu anak sungai ayer-nya lĕpas ka-laut lagi pun tanah-nya rata lagi pun orang-nya banyak.

Maka di-situ-lah sakalian bĕrbuat istana dĕngan kota parit sĕrta di-himpunkan sĕgala orang yang dudok bĕrtaburan pĕchah bĕlah itu, maka di-satukan sakalian-nya mĕnjadi nĕgĕri bĕsar. Maka di-namaï tĕmpat itu Siam Lanchang tĕmpat mĕmbuat kota istana itu. Maka datang-lah orang bĕrkhabar ka-pada raja Marong Mahapodisat mĕngatakan sudah-lah tĕtap anakanda baginda yang tua itu di-atas takhta kĕrajaan bĕnua Siam: mana yang tiada mahu taalok ka-pada bĕnua Siam itu di-suroh-nya rosak langgar ka-pada pĕnghulu gĕrgasi Phra Che Siam mĕnjadi ia mĕnurut juga. Shahadan lagi raja-raja nĕgĕri yang kĕchil sakalian-nya datang mĕngadap sĕrta mĕmbawa ufti dan hadiah nĕgĕri-nya ka-pada raja bĕnua Siam. Maka ka-pada suatu hari di-titahkan oleh raja Marong Mahapodisat ka-pada mĕntĕri yang kĕĕmpat suroh mĕnghadzirkan orang sĕrta dĕngan alat sĕnjata dan gajah kuda di-suroh-nya lĕngkap kĕlĕngkapan kĕrajaan. Sa-tĕlah lĕngkap maka di-pĕrsĕmbahkan-nya.

Hata maka di-suroh oleh baginda akan anakanda yang tĕngah itu pula bĕrjalan. Maka baginda pun bĕrmohon lalu bĕrjalan mĕnuju hala-nya antara sĕlatan mĕnĕnggara mĕnchari tanah bumi yang patut hĕndak di-pĕrbuat nĕgĕri kota istana. Maka bĕrjalan-lah paduka anakanda baginda dĕngan mĕntĕri hulubalang-nya sambil di-dalam sa-gĕnap hutan rimba dĕngan bĕbĕrapa mĕlangkah bukit gunong singgah bĕrmain dan bĕrburu sĕgala binatang dan bĕrmain-main ikan jika bĕrtĕmu dĕngan wilahar dan tasek singgah mĕngambil ikan. Hata sudah bĕbĕrapa lama-nya bĕrjalan mĕnchari bumi yang baik, maka bĕrtĕmu-lah suatu sungai yang bĕsar tali ayer-nya tĕrus turun ka-dalam laut. Maka bĕrtĕmu pula tasek dan wilahar mĕngĕlilingi pulau yang bĕratur tiga ĕmpat biji. Maka anak raja itu pun suka mĕlihat kĕlakuan pulau itu. Maka di-ambil-nya sa-biji anak panah-nya buatan dari-pada perak yang amat puteh lalu di-kĕnakan-nya ka-pada busar-nya yang bĕrnama panah indĕra sakti kata-nya, "Hai indĕra sakti, jatoh-lah ĕngkau ka-pada bumi pulau tiga ĕmpat biji itu, di-mana ĕngkau jatoh sĕkarang di-situ-lah aku pĕrbuat nĕgĕri dan kota parit tĕmpat aku diam. Maka di-tarek-nya busar itu sĕrta mĕmanahkan ka-udara bĕrdĕngong-dĕngong bunyi-nya sĕpĕrti kumbang mĕnyĕring bunga laku-nya hilang raib. Sa-kĕtika datang-lah jatoh pada suatu tĕmpat pulau, sĕbab itu-lah di-namaï pulau Indĕra Sakti. Ka-pada tĕmpat itu di-pĕrbuat kota parit di-jadikan nĕgĕri dan di-surohkan mĕmbuat istana sĕrta mĕnghimpunkan sĕgala orang yang dudok bĕrtaburan pĕchah bĕlah tiada bĕrkĕtahuan. Maka bĕrhimpun-lah sĕgala orang itu tĕrlalu ramai-nya orang bĕrbuat kota istana jadi-lah sa-buah nĕgĕri. Maka di-namaï dĕngan nama nĕgĕri Perak karna anak panah itu mata-nya perak.

Sa-tĕlah tĕtap-lah anak raja itu di-atas takhta kĕrajaan nĕgĕri Perak itu datang-lah khabar-nya ka-pada paduka ayahanda baginda raja Marong Mahapodisat mĕngatakan sudah anakanda baginda itu mĕnjadi raja sĕrta di-namakan nĕgĕri-nya Perak jadi tĕtap-lah anakanda baginda itu di-atas takhta kĕrajaan dĕngan mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa rayat sakalian pun makin bĕrtambah-tambah bĕrhimpun dagang ka-nĕgĕri Perak dĕngan adil murah-nya raja itu.

Shahadan maka titah raja Marong Mahapodisat ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, "Hĕndak-lah saudara-ku ambil gajah kĕsaktian kĕnaikan ayahanda baginda raja Marong Mahawangsa itu yang bĕrnama gajah Gĕmala Johari itu alatkan dĕngan takhta kĕrajaan sĕrta langit-langit tirai-nya dan tabur-nya dĕngan di-hiasi dan sentok limau pula badan-nya, kita naikkan anak kita yang pĕrĕmpuan dan himpunkan sĕgala rayat bala tĕntĕra dan tuan hamba kĕĕmpat mĕngiringkan bĕrsama-sama anak kita ka-sa-bĕlah matahari hidup kita ini hĕndak-lah di-rajakan. Sa-tĕlah sudah tĕtap ia mĕnjadi raja hĕndak-lah saudara-ku yang kĕĕmpat kĕmbali ka-pada bĕta biar-lah tinggal Gajah Gĕmala Johari bĕrtunggu tuan-nya lagi pun pantas ia mĕmbĕri khabar hal anak kita." Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat itu lalu bĕrmohon pĕrgi mĕnghadzirkan dan bĕrsiapkan sĕpĕrti titah itu. Sa-tĕlah lĕngkap sakalian maka di-pĕrsĕmbahkan ka-pada baginda. Maka raja Marong Mahapodisat pun naikkan anakanda baginda itu ka-atas gajah Gĕmala Johari dĕngan sa-bilah kĕris kĕsaktian yang bĕrnama Lela Mĕsani; ada pun kĕris itu asal-nya pĕsaka juga, di-lĕtakkan ka-hadapan sahaja di-takuti oleh sĕgala sĕtĕru-nya tiada dapat mĕngangkat kĕpala-nya. Ada-pun mata kĕris itu sĕpĕrti api bĕrnyala-nyala rupa-nya. Maka di-pĕsankan oleh baginda ka-pada gajah Gĕmala Johari, titah-nya, "Hai Gajah Gĕmala Johari, jikalau sudah tuan ĕngkau ini mĕnjadi raja ĕngkau jangan bĕri bĕrputusan pĕrgi mari ka-pada aku khabar sĕgala hal ahual tuan ĕngkau itu." Maka gajah itu pun mĕngangkatkan kĕpala-nya lalu bĕrjalan mĕnuju matahari hidup di-iringkan oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang rayat tĕntĕra masok ka-hutan rimba bĕlantara yang bĕsar dan tĕrbit padang yang luas dan mĕlangkahkan bĕbĕrapa bukit dan gunong di-bawa oleh gajah Gĕmala Johari. Hata bĕbĕrapa lama-nya bĕrjalan itu hampir-lah hĕndak bĕrtĕmu dĕngan laut, maka bĕrtĕmu pula dĕngan suatu sungai bĕsar tĕrus ka-laut juga. Maka bĕrhĕnti-lah gajah Gĕmala Johari ka-pada tĕmpat itu tanah-nya rata. Maka sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang rayat sakalian pun bĕrhĕnti-lah masing-masing mĕmbuat istana dan kota parit sĕrta mĕnghimpunkan sakalian orang yang ada pada jajahan yang dĕkat dan yang jauh pula habis datang mĕngadap dan mĕmbawa pĕrsĕmbahan akan raja pĕrĕmpuan itu. Sa-tĕlah sudah di-pĕrbuat balai istana sĕrta dĕngan kota parit-nya, maka raja pĕrĕmpuan pun naik-lah ka-istana ka-balai rong mĕlĕtakkan kĕris itu ka-hadapan-nya, lalu sĕmayam. Sa-tĕlah itu bĕrhimpun-lah sĕgala orang yang jauh-jauh mĕngadap masing-masing mĕmbawa pĕrsĕmbahan dan hadiah. Ada pun sĕgala yang datang itu tiada sa-kali-kali mĕmanggongkan kĕpala-nya sĕpĕrti ada orang mĕnĕkankan ka-pada pĕrasaan-nya sĕrta dĕngan takut ngĕri-nya dari-pada kĕsaktian kĕris Lela Mĕsani itu sĕrta dĕngan takut akan gajah Gĕmala Johari itu. Maka bĕrtambah-tambah ramai orang datang mĕngadap itu. Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, “ Patek ini mohon-lah kĕmbali : ” sĕrta ia bĕrtanya nĕgĕri itu. Maka titah raja pĕrĕmpuan, “ Baik-lah mamaku, patut sangat mama-ku kĕmbali mĕngadap paduka ayahanda baginda itu di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah sĕmbahkan nĕgĕri ini Pĕtani namanya dĕngan sĕbab tuah kĕris Lela Mĕsani itu jadi di-namakan nĕgĕri ini Pĕtani.” Maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat mĕnyĕmbah lalu bĕrjalan kĕmbali mĕngadap raja Marong Mahapodisat maalumkan sĕgala pĕrentah itu. Maka apabila di-dĕngar oleh raja Marong Mahapodisat sĕmbah mĕntĕri maka tĕrlalu-lah kĕsukaan-nya jadi sĕlamat sĕmpurna-nya sakalian anakanda baginda pada masing-masing tĕmpat-nya. Maka yang sangat mĕmbĕri kĕdukaan oleh mĕlihat anak yang muda itu tinggal dĕngan sa-orang diri-nya sunyi nĕgĕri-nya tiada banyak rayat. Akan hal diri pun tiada-lah sudah bĕroleh anak lagi karna badan-nya sudah tua. Maka baginda pun dudok-lah dĕngan kĕsukaan pĕrgi ka-hutan bĕrburu dan mĕmikat burong tiada-lah lagi bĕrputusan-nya ia pĕrgi itu akan nĕgĕri itu anakanda baginda-lah dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa sakalian mĕmĕrentahkan dia.

Hata tiada bĕrapa lama-nya sĕlang tahun maka gĕring-lah raja Marong Mahapodisat lalu pulang ka-rahmatu'llah taala. Maka oleh anakanda baginda dĕngan mĕngikut adat raja yang bĕsar-bĕsar. Maka dudok-lah anakanda baginda dĕngan kĕmashghulan lalu mĕmbuat surat mĕnghantarkan ka-pada saudara-nya yang di-dalam tiga buah nĕgĕri itu mĕngatakan pĕri ayahanda baginda itu sudah hilang. Maka mĕntĕri hulubalang pun bĕrmuafakat hĕndak di-namakan raja. Maka anak raja itu pun mĕlĕtakkan nama sĕndiri raja Sĕri Mahawangsa pada nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu supaya mudah mĕntĕri hulubalang mĕngantar surat dĕngan nama raja itu. Maka raja Sĕri Mahawangsa pun tiada-lah suka hĕndak dudok di-kota Langkasuka itu karna jauh sangat dari laut. punkan kapur dan kulit kĕpah hĕndak di-perbuat kota ka-hilir karna sungai itu bĕsar dĕngan luas-nya bĕrtambah-tambah dĕngan ayer-Maku lalu di-titah-nya ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat suroh chari him-sungai itu bĕsar dĕngan luas-nya bĕrtambah-tambah dĕngan ayer-nya tĕrlalu dĕras. Maka di-kĕrjakan-lah oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang bagai titah itu. Maka raja Sĕri Mahawangsa pun tiada khali bĕrulang-ulang ka-hilir mĕlihat tĕmpat tanah bumi yang hĕndak di-pĕrbuat kota parit. Maka di-pĕrbuat-nya istana kĕchil ka-hulu ka-pada tanah bumi itu yang bĕrnama Sĕrukum. Maka tatkala itu raja Sĕri Mahawangsa pun bĕroleh sa-orang putĕra laki-laki dĕngan sa-orang anak raja pĕrĕmpuan dari-pada anak raja Mĕlayu. Maka anakanda baginda itu pun tĕrlalu baik rupa paras-nya. Maka di-pĕlihara-lah dĕngan bĕbĕrapa inang pĕngasoh-nya sĕpĕrti istiadat raja yang bĕsar-bĕsar juga.

Hata antara bĕbĕrapa lama-nya datang-lah surat dĕngan bingkisan yang indah-indah dari-pada paduka kakanda yang tua itu di-bĕnua Siam mĕngatakan ia sudah bĕroleh sa-orang anak laki-

laki jua tĕrlalu baik rupa paras-nya itu sudah bĕsar panjang sampai-lah umur-nya tujoh tahun. Maka raja Sĕri Mahawangsa pun tĕrlalu-lah kĕsukaan hati-nya mĕlihat sĕgala bingkisan itu dĕngan bĕrbagai jĕnis pĕrbuatan sĕgala pĕrmainan kanak-kanak dan orang tua dan banyak pula harta-nya itu. Maka ia pun bĕrfikir di-dalam hati-nya itu, " Apa juga yang baik aku hĕndak mĕmbalaskan akan anak saudara-ku itu," dĕngan tilek nazar-nya dan fikir-nya yang putus di-dalam hati-nya, " biar-lah jangan lagi tĕrsĕbut nama kĕjahatan pada sa-isi alam dunia ini supaya jangan jadi bĕrputusan dari-pada umur aku ini boleh sampai ka-pada anak chuchu hingga sampai ka-pada kĕmudian hari-nya datang ka-pada akhir zĕman jangan tĕrsĕbut nama kĕjahatan pada sĕgala raja-raja dan pada khalayak sakalian." Tĕlah putus fikiran-nya itu maka di-titah-nya mĕnyuroh orang tĕrima ambil sĕgala bingkisan bawa masok ka-istana. Maka sĕgala orang itu pun di-pĕrjamukan makan minum sĕrta di-suroh-nya bĕri tĕmpat ka-pada sa-orang mĕntĕri sa-mĕntara hĕndak mĕnanti balas surat. Maka ka-pada suatu hari raja Sĕri Mahawangsa pun tĕngah ramai di-hadap oleh sĕgala raja-raja dan mĕntĕri hulubalang rayat sakalian. Maka titah raja Mahawangsa ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, " Hĕndak-lah tuan hamba suroh bĕrhimpun sĕgala tukang ĕmas dan perak beta hĕndak suroh kĕrjakan ĕmas dan perak ka-pada tukang itu." Maka tukang kayu pun di-suroh-nya bĕrhimpun dĕngan tukang bĕsi sakalian. Maka di-himpunkan oleh mĕntĕri sakalian tukang yang di-kĕhĕndaki itu. Maka raja Sĕri Mahawangsa pun mĕngadapi pĕkĕrjaan itu dĕngan mĕnyuroh sĕgala tukang-tukang yang tiga ĕmpat bangsa mĕmbuat sĕgala pĕrbuatan itu jika tiada boleh sĕpĕrti kĕhĕndak hati-nya di-suroh hanchurkan dan bangunkan ka-pada rupa yang lain pula. Dĕngan hal yang dĕmikian hingga sampai bĕrtahun-tahun maka pĕkĕrjaan yang hĕndak di-pĕrbuat kota parit dan balai istana itu tiada mĕnjadi karna leka dĕngan mĕmbuat sa-pohon bunga ĕmas dan sa-pohon bunga perak dĕngan tombak chabang yang bĕrsimpul ĕmas saga mĕrkah dan bĕrchinchin perak dan tombak yang bĕrmata pipis bĕrsimpul ĕmas dan perak juga. Dan lagi di-pĕrbuat lĕmbing yang bĕrnama buang-buangan bĕrsimpul ĕmas juga dan lagi lĕngkap dĕngan pĕrisai dan utar-utar sĕpĕrti kĕlĕngkapan orang bĕrangkat pĕrang laku-nya. Maka bĕrkĕnan-lah pada hati baginda itu akan jadi pĕrmainan anak saudara-nya itu sĕrta mĕmbĕri suka hati raja bĕnua Siam dĕngan orang sakalian supaya tĕrmashhur-lah ka-pada hari kĕmudian. Sa-tĕlah sudah siap sakalian itu maka di-sĕrahkan ka-pada sa-orang mĕntĕri dĕngan sa-ratus orang rayat-nya dĕngan utusan dari-pada paduka kakanda baginda itu. Maka utusan itu pun di-bĕri-nya pĕrsalinan hadiah akan paduka kakanda pula dĕngan bĕbĕrapa pakaian yang indah-indah dan kain yang halus-halus sĕrta di-pĕsan pula oleh raja Sĕri Mahawangsa dĕngan titah-nya, " Hĕndak-lah tuan hamba sakalian sĕmbahkan ka-pada saudara kita jika ia bĕroleh anak bĕri jua khabar ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah ini, dĕmikian-lah kita hantarkan. Jikalau kita tiada sakali pun kita pĕsan taroh ka-pada anak chuchu kita biar sampai ka-akhir zĕman nĕschaya tĕrsĕbut-lah nama kita pada alam dunia ini tanda kita bĕrkaseh-kasehan." Maka sĕgala mĕntĕri dan utusan yang pĕrgi itu tĕrjunjong-lah di-atas jĕmala sakalian pĕrsĕmbahkan ka-bawah chĕrpu duli baginda di-bĕnua Siam. Maka raja Sĕri Mahawangsa pun mĕnitahkan suroh bĕrjalan dĕngan sa-ratus orang rayat mĕngiringkan harta itu. Maka ia bĕrjalan sakalian mĕnuju hala-nya ka-bĕnua Siam.

Hata maka dĕngan bĕbĕrapa antara-nya maka sampai-lah ia ka-bĕnua Siam langsong masok mĕngadap sa-kali. Maka tatkala itu raja bĕnua Siam pun tĕngah ramai di-hadap oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang pĕnoh sĕsak di-balai pĕnghadapan. Maka anakanda baginda pun ada ia dudok mĕngadap hĕndak mĕlihat ayahanda baginda mĕnyambut surat dari-pada ayahanda baginda di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu. Sa-tĕlah datang sĕgala surat dan bingkisan ka-hadapan baginda, maka tĕrlalu-lah sukachita-nya mĕlihatkan sĕgala pĕrbuatan saudara-nya itu akan pĕrmainan anakanda baginda sĕrta titah-nya ka-pada mĕntĕri yang mĕmbawa surat dan pohon bunga ĕmas bunga perak bĕrtanya khabar saudara-nya dan hal nĕgĕri Kĕdah. Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri sakalian dĕngan sĕgala pĕsanan raja-nya itu. Maka raja bĕnua Siam pun suka tĕrtawa gĕlak-gĕlak mĕndĕngar itu sĕrta mĕnyuroh mĕmbĕri pĕrsalinan ka-pada sĕgala mĕntĕri utusan itu dan ka-pada orang sa-ratus. Maka di-suroh-nya ka-pada mĕntĕri-nya pĕlihara dan pĕbĕla baik-baik akan orang utusan itu apa kĕhĕndak-nya di-suroh bĕri jangan di-tĕgah larang barang apa pĕrbuatan-nya. Maka mĕntĕri itu pun mĕnyĕmbah ka-pada baginda lalu turun mĕngĕrjakan sĕpĕrti yang di-titahkan itu. Tiada bĕrapa lama-nya sa-tĕlah lĕngkap sakalian kĕlĕngkapan dan bingkisan sĕrta bĕbĕrapa pakaian yang akan di-balas-nya. Sa-tĕlah di-pĕrbuat surat lalu di-sĕrahkan ka-pada utusan itu sĕrta bĕrpĕsan ka-pada saudara-nya, "Barang kali kita bĕroleh putĕra; maka hĕndak-lah saudara kita pĕrbuat bĕri sĕpĕrti bunga ĕmas bunga perak itu antarkan mari ka-pada kita karna pĕkĕrjaan itu tĕrlalu amat kĕsukaan bĕrmain akan dia." Maka sĕmbah utusan nĕgĕri Kĕdah, "Baik-lah tuanku, barang titah duli yang maha mulia boleh patek sĕmbahkan ka-pada tuan patek dan sampaikan ka-pada paduka bonda itu." Maka di-sĕmbahkan pula oleh utusan, "Ya tuanku siapa tahu kalau-kalau datang kĕlak sa-suatu hal kĕsakitan di-atas nĕgĕri atau di-atas paduka adinda itu, tiada-lah lain lagi tĕmpat yang akan di-harap pĕrtolongan." Maka titah raja Siam, "Jikalau ada sa-kira-nya datang di-dalam nĕgĕri saudara kita itu sa-suatu hal sĕpĕrti datang ka-bĕnua Siam inilah; jika sakit ia, sakit-lah kita karna pula adinda itu saudara kita dĕmikian-lah pada fikiran kita siang dan malam. Maka kamu sakalian pun hĕndak-lah dĕmikian jua fikiran-nya supaya mĕnjadi baik di-sĕbut orang nama kita." Sa-tĕlah itu maka mĕntĕri utusan itu pun bĕrmohon kĕmbali ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu.

Hata antara bĕbĕrapa lama-nya bĕrjalan itu, maka ia sampai ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah lalu masok mĕngadap raja-nya mĕmpĕrsĕmbahkan sĕgala bingkisan yang di-bawa dari bĕnua Siam itu sĕrta dĕngan surat dan pĕsanan paduka kakanda itu pun di-pĕrsĕmbahkan pada ka-bawah chĕrpu raja Kĕdah. Maka dĕmi di-lihat oleh raja Sĕri Mahawangsa sĕgala bingkisan yang datang itu, maka baginda pun tĕrlalu-lah amat sukachita-nya dĕngan tĕrtawa gĕlak-gĕlak mĕnĕngar sĕmbah dan pĕsan yang di-sĕmbahkan oleh mĕntĕri itu. Hata dĕmikian-lah di-pĕrentah oleh raja Sĕri Mahawangsa itu ka-pada tiap-tiap kali paduka kakanda raja Siam itu mĕndapat putĕra sĕrta di-pĕsan taroh ka-pada anak chuchu-nya turun sĕpĕrti yang di-pĕrentahkan-nya. Maka dudok-lah raja Sĕri Mahawangsa itu bĕrsuka-sukaan dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang sakalian di-atas takhta kĕrajaan sĕrta mĕnghimpunkan kapur dan kulit kĕpah hĕndak di-pĕrbuat kota batu rasa-nya itu, sĕrta mĕmbĕri surat dan bingkisan ka-pada paduka kakanda ka-nĕgĕri Perak, dan ka-pada paduka kakanda ka-nĕgĕri Pĕtani mĕngatakan paduka kakanda di-bĕnua Siam itu bĕroleh putĕra laki-laki dan ia pun di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah sudah bĕroleh sa-orang putĕra laki-laki juga. Maka anakanda baginda itu antara bĕrapa lama-nya maka bĕsar-lah patut rĕmaja putĕra bĕristĕri. Hata maka ada-lah sa-orang budak pĕrĕmpuan chuchu ka-pada Tang Miri Gĕrgasi karna datok-nya Tang Miri itu gĕrgasi pĕrgi ka-bĕnua Siam hantarkan raja bĕnua Siam itu, kärna Tang Miri itu pun suatu pĕnghulu dan raja ka-pada sĕgala tĕntĕra gĕrgasi. Maka chuchu-nya itu di-ambil oleh raja Sĕri Mahawangsa tinggal di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah karna rupa-nya tĕrlalu amat baik paras-nya lagi tuboh-nya puteh kuning rĕndah mintal sifat-nya tiba-tiba datang-lah gĕmar pada hati anak raja Sĕri Mahawangsa itu akan dia hĕndak di-jadikan istĕri-nya. Maka oleh raja Sĕri Mahawangsa bĕbĕrapa di-tĕgahkan anakanda baginda itu dari-pada bĕristĕri akan budak itu mĕngatakan tiada sama bangsa-nya, kalau-kalau siapa tahu akhir-nya, bĕroleh anak dĕngan pĕrĕmpuan itu mĕnurut hawa nafsu kaum-nya ya-itu gĕrgasi masok fitenah makan-nya itu; dĕngan sĕbab itu di-tĕgahkan oleh ayahanda baginda raja Sĕri Mahawangsa akan anakanda baginda itu. Maka tiada juga di-dĕngar-nya kata ayahanda baginda itu, di-pĕristĕrikan juga akan pĕrĕmpuan itu. Hata maka raja Sĕri Mahawangsa pun tiada pĕrdaya lagi, sĕrta mĕlihatkan kĕlakuan anakanda baginda itu di-tĕgahkan pun tiada mahu dĕngar oleh anakanda baginda itu, maka baginda pun dukachita-lah di-dalam hati-nya, sĕraya jatoh-lah gĕring yang tĕramat sangat, lalu hilang-lah baginda itu. Maka di-simpankan oleh anakanda baginda itu dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang-nya mĕnurut istiadat tamdim raja yang bĕsar-bĕsar. Sa-tĕlah itu maka ia pun dudok-lah mĕmĕrentahkan mĕngikut adat yang di-pĕrentahkan oleh ayahanda baginda, sĕrta di-namaï oleh mĕntĕri yang tua dĕngan nama raja Sĕri Indĕra Wangsa. Maka baginda itu pun dudok-lah di-atas takhta kĕrajaan mĕmĕrentahkan ganti ayahanda baginda dĕngan adil murah-nya. Maka sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang sakalian pun kaseh gĕmar akan baginda itu.

Hata antara bĕrapa lama-nya raja Sĕri Maha Indĕra Wangsa dudok dĕngan tĕtap-nya di-atas takhta kĕrajaan, tiba-tiba ka-pada suatu hari baginda pun dudok tĕngah ramai di-hadap oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang pĕnoh sĕsak dĕngan sĕgala rayat bala di-balai rong itu. Maka datang-lah pula orang bĕrkhabar mĕngatakan di-hilir-nya ada-lah suatu anak sungai tĕrus tali-nya turun ka-laut juga. Maka tanah bumi itu tĕrlalu amat elok bĕrnama Sungai Ĕmas. Dĕmi di-dĕngar-nya sĕmbah mĕreka itu maka baginda pun pĕrgi-lah dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang mĕlihat tanah bumi itu datang-lah gĕmar hati-nya tanah itu baik di-pĕrbuat kota parit dan istana lalu bĕrulang-ulang hilir mudek hĕndak bĕrbuat kota sĕrta di-suroh-nya sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa pĕrgi datang. Maka pada kĕtika itu baginda pun bĕroleh sa-orang putĕra laki-laki dĕngan chuchu gĕrgasi itu, tĕrlalu bĕsar panjang dĕngan hebat sikap-nya jika sa-kira-nya ia bĕsar tiada-lah rupa-nya mĕmbilangkan orang laku-nya. Maka tĕrlalu-lah sukachita hati baginda mĕlihat rupa paras-nya itu; maka di-pĕlihara-lah dĕngan bĕbĕrapa inang pĕngasoh-nya sĕrta di-namakan anakanda baginda itu Ong Maha Pĕrita Dĕria maka di-pĕlihara-lah sĕpĕrti adat anak raja yang bĕsar-bĕsar juga. Shahadan ayah-nya pun kaseh sabagai akan dia. Maka ia bĕrulang mĕmbuat kota parit di-Sungai Ĕmas itu pun bĕlum sudah lagi. Hata dĕngan hal yang dĕmikian pada suatu hari tiba-tiba datang-lah gĕring, tiada bĕrapa lama-nya langsong mangkat. Maka anak-nya raja Ong Maha Pĕrita Dĕria mĕmĕrentahkan pula dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang mĕngikut adat yang dahulu itu. Sa-tĕlah itu dudok-lah raja Ong Maha Pĕrita Dĕria dĕngan kĕmashghulan akan ayahanda baginda. Maka kota parit yang hĕndak di-pĕrbuat oleh ayahanda baginda itu pun tiada bĕrkĕnan ka-pada hati-nya sĕrta dĕngan nakal-nya tiada-lah apa lain kĕrja mĕlainkan pĕrgi bĕrmain-main ka-hutan dan hilir mudek bĕrmain itu sambil mĕlihat tanah bumi hĕndak di-pĕrbuat nĕgĕri kota parit kota istana tĕmpat kĕdudokan sĕrta tĕmpat kĕdudokan mĕntĕri hulubalang rayat sakalian. Shahadan tiada bĕrapa lama-nya maka bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan tanah bumi di-hilir daerah sungai bĕsar hampir dĕngan laut kĕdĕngaran-lah bunyi alun ombak mĕmukul pada tĕlinga orang, tĕtapi kuala-nya yang bĕrhala ka-laut itu ada jauh sadikit sampai-lah ikan hidup. Maka di-situ-lah di-pĕrbuat oleh Raja Ong Maha Pĕrita Dĕria kota parit rumah istana dan sĕgala rumah mĕntĕri dan hulubalang sĕrta muafakat dan mĕshuarat dĕngan mĕntĕri bĕsar hĕndak mĕnyuroh orang dari nĕgĕri Kĕdah pĕrgi ka-nĕgĕri Acheh mĕnchari batang yang elok sĕrta dĕngan pĕngukur-nya hĕndak di-pĕrbuat kota itu, karna banyak tukang mĕngĕrjakan batu di-dalam nĕgĕri Acheh itu. Maka di-alatkan oleh mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pĕrahu dĕngan orang-nya dan dagangan sĕrba sa-dikit, di-muatkan ka-dalam pĕrahu itu. Sa-tĕlah sudah lĕngkap maka oleh raja Ong Maha

Pĕrita Dĕria di-suroh pĕrbuat surat kapada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat karna hĕndak mĕngirim sĕgala bingkisan hadiah ka-pada raja nĕgĕri Acheh itu pinta tolong chari bĕri batu yang indah-indah yang bĕrukiran hantar ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah, dan akan harga-nya itu tiadalah di-salahkan lagi. Sa-tĕlah sudah surat itu, maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun mĕnyĕrahkan ka-pada orang utusan itu, lalu ia pun mĕnuju ka-bĕnua Acheh. Ada pun baginda raja Ong Maha Pĕrita Dĕria sangat-lah bĕsar hati-nya hĕndak di-buboh chĕrmin sĕgala batu kota-nya itu, tĕtapi pĕrangai-nya makin bĕsar panjang makin kahar laku-nya banyak sangat mĕnganiayaï akan orang sĕdikit jua tiada adil-nya tiada-lah boleh bĕrsilapan sadikit jua pun sĕgala rayat bala-nya di-suroh rantai di-suroh pĕnjarakan. Sa-tĕlah tĕtap-lah Ong Maha Pĕrita Dĕria di-atas takhta kĕrajaan maka dinamakan kota itu dĕngan nama Kota Aur dĕngan sĕbab banyak buloh aur mĕnjadi hutan bĕrkĕliling kota-nya itu. Maka ia pun naik-lah ka-atas gajah kĕnaikan-nya hĕndak bĕrjalan bĕrmain-main di-iringkan oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang hĕndak pĕrgi mĕlihat ka-tĕpi laut langsong ka-tanah daratan hĕndak mĕlihat sĕgala pulau-pulau itu. Maka di-dapati-nya tĕlah habis pulau-pulau itu mĕnjadi tanah daratan dĕngan banyak pula pohon kayu. Maka sa-tĕngah pohon kayu itu dapat sudah orang mĕmakan buah-nya. Maka pulau Sĕri itu pun sudah mĕnjadi gunong Jĕrai nama-nya dan pulau Jambul itu mĕnjadi daratan mĕngulur ka-laut bĕrnama Bukit Jambul dan Pulau Kĕring itu lagi di-tĕngah sa-dikit, dan pulau Tanjong itu pun sudah mĕnjadi daratan. Maka raja Ong Maha Pĕrita Dĕria pun bĕrjalan-lah mĕngĕlilingi gunong Jĕrai itu langsong pula ka-sa-bĕlah daratan. Maka banyak-lah di-lihat-nya yang indah-indah dan yang ajaib-ajaib sambil ia sa-kalian mĕmungut buah-buahan. Maka tatkala itu datang-lah gajah Gĕmala Johari itu mĕmbawa anak-nya jantan sa-ekur yang amat bĕsar datang dari nĕgĕri Pĕtani itu. Maka di-dalam orang yang banyak itu kĕnal-lah oleh sa-orang mĕntĕri yang tua sĕmbah-nya, "Gajah itu gajah paduka adinda, tuanku, gajah kĕsaktian yang bĕrnama Gĕmala Johari yang di-nĕgĕri Pĕtani itu, tuanku." Sa-tĕlah itu maka oleh raja Ong Maha Pĕrita Dĕria sĕrta di-dĕngar sĕmbah mĕntĕri dĕmikian itu lalu di-lambai dĕngan tangan-nya sĕrta ia pun turun dari atas gajah kĕnaikan-nya itu. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh Gajah Gĕmala Johari orang mĕlambaikan dia, maka ia kĕdua bĕranak pun mĕnggulongkan bĕlalai-nya ka-atas kĕpala-nya sĕrta ia bĕrlari-lari datang mĕnĕrumkan diri-nya kĕdua ekur sakali ka-hadapan baginda bagai mĕnyĕmbah laku-nya. Maka di-sapukan oleh baginda kĕpala dan bĕlalai-nya sĕrta naik ka-atas bĕlakang-nya. Maka bĕrtitah ia, "Hai Gĕmala Johari, mana kala ĕngkau datang dari Pĕtani itu?" Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh gajah itu, di-patah-nya sa-hĕlai daun kayu lalu di-kĕrat dua di-bĕrikan ka-pada baginda sa-kĕrat, hĕrti-nya baharu sa-kĕrat hari-nya ini baharu-lah ia sampai. Maka tatkala itu sĕgala binatang tiada boleh bĕrkata-kata ka-pada zĕman itu karna yang bĕrnama Nabi

Muhammad rasul Allah Sal'lallah alaihi was-' salam itu sudah di-lahirkan Allah subhanahu wataala ka-dalam dunia ini. Sa-tělah děmikian itu di-kětahui oleh raja Ong Maha Pěrita Děria maka di-namakan-lah anak gajah itu gajah Pulang Hari. Maka kědua ekur gajah itu pun měngangkat kěpala-nya. Maka titah raja, " Hai Gěmala Johari, bawa-lah aku dahulu běrmain-main di-dalam hutan rimba ini kita měngambil buah-buahan." Maka ia pun běrjalan-lah běrmain-main di-iringkan oleh měntěri hulubalang rayat sakalian sambil běrburuan děngan těmpek sorak-nya. Maka banyak-lah di-pěroleh daging pěrburuan, jika běrtěmu děngan wilahar dan kolam kubang itu pun suatu juga ramai-nya di-ambil ikan kěchil běsar di-pěrbuat makan. Maka ada-lah antara sa-puloh lima bělas hari lama-nya raja Ong Maha Pěrita Děria běrmain di-dalam hutan rimba itu, lalu di-hantarkan oleh gajah itu akan raja-nya hingga sampai ka-balai rong ia měněrumkan dirinya dan barang-barang dari-pada sěgala buah-buahan di-ambil orang di-bawa masok ka-dalam istana. Sa-tělah sudah sakalian di-ponggah maka di-titahkan oleh raja ka-pada sěgala dayang-dayang měnyuroh měmbawa hidangan pěrsantapan yang lěbeh dari-pada di-santap baginda di-suroh běri ka-pada gajah itu; lalu ia pun běrmohon kěmbali ka-hutan langsong ka-gunong Jěrai. Maka pada malam itu pun gajah Gěmala Johari měmasokkan mimpi ka-pada raja Ong Pěrita Děria dan ka-pada měntěri yang kěěmpat tělah ada-lah diam kědua-nya itu di-gunong Jěrai jika ia tiada di-gunong Jěrai, ia pěrgi kědua-nya ka-Pětani měndapatkan raja-nya. Di-dalam itu pun jika běrkěhěndak raja měntěri akan dia maka hěndak-lah bakar dupa dan istanggi sěrta hadzirkan sentok limau, maka sěbut-lah nama dia dan nama anak-nya dari něgěri Pětani něschaya datang-lah ia kědua ka-něgěri Kědah. Maka dudok-lah raja Ong Maha Pěrita Děria děngan sěgala měntěri hulubalang měměrentahkan něgěri Kědah itu.

Hata antara itu tiada boleh silap sadikit jua pun sakalian rayat habis-lah kěna tangkap rantai di-pěnjarakan-nya těrlalu kěmashghulan di-hati měntěri kěěmpat akan pěrangai baginda itu těrlalu kahar akal-nya tiada měnurut pěrangai raja yang dahulu-dahulu itu. Maka ia běristěri pula děngan sa-orang anak Mělayu baik juga rupa-nya. Maka di-situ-lah ia sakalian běrhimpun děngan sěgala orang měngadukan hal-nya yang baik budi pěkěrti-nya. Maka těrsangkut-lah hati měntěri yang kěěmpat akan raja pěrěmpuan itu. Maka di-suroh anak istěri-nya masok ka-dalam měngadap raja pěrěmpuan pinta měmběri nasihat kalau-kalau mau ia sabar pada hati supaya adil, itu pun tiada běrguna ka-pada-nya. Ada pun batu yang hěndak di-pěrbuat kota itu pun tělah sampai dari něgěri Acheh běrbagai rupa jěnis sakalian dari-pada batu bukit jua yang di-bělah di-ukir. Maka kota itu pun di-kěrjakan orang-lah. Hata ka-pada satu hari raja těngah di-hadap oleh orang sakalian, maka titah-nya ka-pada sa-orang měntěri, " Hěndak-lah tuan hamba mari děkat hamba lihat gigi hamba ini tĕrlalu-lah sakit antara gigi manis kĕdua-nya itu baharu tumboh pula bakat-nya sahaja baharu jadi." Maka di-lihat oleh mĕntĕri di-sĕmbah-nya, "Siong, tuanku." Maka titah-nya pula, "Pada fikiran rasa beta tiada patut tumboh siong." Maka ia bĕrkata-kata itu sambil tĕrtawa pula, "Jika hĕndak tumboh siong pun tĕntu-lah ada dari-pada mula jadi atau dari-pada masa sĕdang kĕchil dahulu." Maka sĕmbah sa-orang mĕntĕri, "Apa yang kĕgĕmaran tuanku di-dalam pĕrsantapan lauk nasi di-dalam sa-hari-hari ini?" Maka titah-nya sambil tĕrtawa, "Ada-lah yang kĕgĕmaran beta makan itu hanya gulai lechek yang bĕrtumis ya-itu batang bayam juga dĕngan daun-nya." Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri itu, "Jikalau boleh pĕrkara itu hĕndak-lah tuanku tinggalkan dia barangkali sayur itu mĕnjadi ulat gigi tuanku." Maka titah-nya pula, "Bagaimana beta hĕndak tinggal? karna dari muda beta sudah mĕmakan dia sampai-lah masa ini sudah sampai sa-tĕngah umur beta tiada pĕrnah beta tinggalkan, jikalau tiada barang sa-pagi atau sa-pĕtang tiada lalu beta makan." Maka sakalian pun diam-lah. Maka masing-masing pun kĕtahui-lah raja Ong Maha Pĕrita Dĕria itu tumboh siong-nya, maka di-namakan dĕngan nama raja Bĕsiong. Maka sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang pun bĕrmohon kĕmbali ka-rumah-nya.

Hata ka-pada suatu hari raja Bĕsiong dudok di-balai rong-nya, sa-tĕlah datang tĕngah hari rĕmbang maka raja Bĕsiong masok-lah ka-istana pĕrgi mandi. Maka tatkala itu gĕrau yang di-dapur itu pun tĕngah mĕmotong sayur bayam dĕngan gopoh-nya hĕndak di-pĕrbuat gulai lechek. Maka tĕrleha-lah mata-nya sĕdikit, maka lalu tĕrsayat-lah hujong jari-nya. Maka sĕgĕra-lah di-ambil-nya kain, di-balut sĕrta di-ikat-nya. Maka pada sangka-nya tiada kĕluar darah itu. Sa-tĕlah di-buboh-nya rĕmpah-rĕmpah ka-dalam sayur itu lalu di-jĕrangkan ka-atas api. Maka pada waktu itu tĕngah mĕlechek sayur itu dĕngan di-lihat-nya, hĕndak di-pĕrbuat lain sayur pun tiada sĕmpat karna baginda sudah datang dari-pada mandi hĕndak santap. Maka di-buboh-nya ka-dalam hidangan dĕngan gopoh-nya lalu di-angkat-nya-lah hidangan itu di-hantarkan ka-hadapan raja. Maka raja Bĕsiong pun santap-lah nasi itu mĕnuangkan gulai lechek dĕngan isi kuah-nya sakali. Sa-tĕlah sudah santap maka raja Bĕsiong pun tĕrlalu amat lazat chita rasa-nya tĕrlĕbeh dari-pada sĕdia kala hingga habis-lah gulai di-dalam bĕlanga itu. Tĕlah sudah maka ia pun basoh tangan santap sireh lalu di-ambil pĕdang di-chabut mata-nya sĕrta bĕr-titah, "Mana gĕrau mĕnanak mĕnggulai?" Maka gĕrau itu pun datang dudok mĕnyĕmbah. Maka bĕrtitah raja Bĕsiong, "Hai gĕrau bĕrkata bĕnar-lah ĕngkau ka-pada aku, apa juga ĕngkau buboh rĕmpah-rĕmpah di-dalam sayur itu tadi? Maka tĕrlalu-lah amat bĕrlainan rasa-nya dari-pada tiap-tiap kali, jikalau tiada ĕngkau bĕrkata bĕnar nĕschaya jatoh-lah pĕdang ini mati-lah ĕngkau." Maka pĕrĕmpuan tukang masak bĕrfikir di-dalam hati-nya, "Jika tiada aku bĕrkata bĕnar tĕntu-lah mati; jika bĕrkata-pun mati juga: maka baik-lah aku katakan dĕngan sa-bĕnar-nya." Maka lalu di-sĕmbah-nya, "Ampun tuanku, ada-lah duli tuanku pĕrgi bĕsiram itu tadi patek mĕngiris sayur lalu tĕrhiris-lah hujong jari patek. Maka patek balut dĕngan kain, pada fikiran patek sadikit jua luka-nya. Maka akan hal rĕmpah-rĕmpah patek buboh ka-dalam sayur itu tiada lain dari-pada yang biasa hari-hari. Maka patek jĕrangkan ka-api. Maka tatkala patek mĕlechek itu, maka tĕrtitek-lah darah yang di-hujong jari patek itu sa-titek jua tuanku. Maka patek hĕndak pĕrbuat lain pun tiada sĕmpat karna duli tuanku sudah datang dudok hĕndak santap, hingga itu-lah boleh patek sĕmbahkan jikalau tuanku bunoh patek mati." Dĕmi raja Bĕsiong mĕndĕngar sĕmbah pĕrĕmpuan itu maka ia pun mĕnyarongkan pĕdang-nya sĕrta bĕrtitah, "Baik-lah" lalu bĕrangkat kĕluar ka-balai rong bĕrtitah, "Mana pĕnghulu biduanda sakalian?. Bukan-kah orang yang kita suroh bunoh sulakan itu pada hari ini ambil chawan itu isikan darah-nya bawa ka-mari ka-pada aku." Maka pĕnghulu biduanda pun mĕnyĕmbah lalu mĕngambil chawan pĕrgi mĕndapatkan orang yang hĕndak di-bunoh itu. Maka orang itu pun di-kĕrjakan orang-lah dan darah itu di-isikan ka-dalam chawan lalu di-bawa mĕngadap pĕrsĕmbahkan ka-pada baginda raja Bĕsiong itu. Maka di-ambil-nya lalu di-bawa langsong ka-dapur mĕnyuroh gĕrau itu mĕmbuat sayur itu. Sa-tĕlah masak maka di-hidanglah oleh gĕrau itu di-hantarkan ka-pada raja Bĕsiong. Maka ia pun santap-lah tĕrasa oleh-nya tĕrlĕbeh pula sĕdap dari-pada yang dahulu itu. Maka kĕesokan hari-nya di-suroh pula bunoh sa-orang ambil darah-nya sĕrta dĕngan hati-nya di-pĕrbuat gulai dan panggang dan darah di-pĕrbuat kuah-nya. Maka apabila di-makan-nya tĕrlĕbeh pula lazat chita rasa-nya. Maka tiada-lah lagi dapat di-tinggalkan oleh raja Bĕsiong itu dari-pada mĕmakan hati darah orang jua: jikalau tiada yang dĕmikian tiada-lah dapat ia santap nasi pada hari itu jikalau bĕrapa banyak lauk sa-kali pun. Maka jadi-lah sa-orang raja tĕrbunoh oleh-nya sampai ka-pada habis orang yang tiada bĕrdosa pun, dan di-luar kota pun sunyi-lah karna sudah habis orang-nya, tiada-lah apa kira-nya hanya hĕndak mĕmakan hati darah manusia sahaja sa-hingga orang di-dalam pĕnjara itu pun habis-lah di-bunoh-nya. Maka mashhur-lah ka-pada khalayak yang banyak hingga ka-nĕgĕri yang lain. Maka tĕrlalu amat kĕmashghulan sĕgala rayat bala tĕntĕra datang dĕngan tĕriak tangis ka-pada sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang mĕngatakan anak-nya tĕrbunoh ada yang sa-tĕngah mĕngatakan bapa-nya tĕrbunoh. Dĕmikian itu-lah habis mati sakalian orang di-bunoh di-makan darah-nya.

Bĕrmula ada-lah sa-orang orang Sĕri Gunong Ledang bĕrnama Kampar yang amat jahat-nya, ia mĕngĕtahui dari-pada sĕgala ilmu jadi-jadian dan lagi tiada di-makan oleh bĕri tuboh-nya. Maka di-kĕtahui-lah oleh orang itu pĕrangai raja Bĕsiong itu. Maka ia pun mĕmbuat-lah suatu kĕsalahan supaya ia tĕrtangkap. Maka di-tangkap orang-lah akan dia lalu di-bawa ka-hadapan raja itu. Maka raja Bĕsiong sĕgĕra-lah turun dĕngan pĕdang-nya yang sudah tĕrhunus sĕraya bĕrtitah, " Bunoh-lah orang itu." Maka kata Kampar itu, " Hai, raja ini mĕmbunoh dĕngan tiada di-pĕreksa." Maka raja Bĕsiong pun marah-lah datang hampir dĕngan Kampar itu mĕngangkatkan pĕdang-nya hĕndak mĕnĕtak ka-pada-nya. Maka kata Kampar, " Hai raja Bĕsiong, gila-kah mĕmbunoh orang tiada dĕngan pĕreksa sunggoh pun mĕmakan hati darah orang, lĕpaskan-lah ikatan aku ini sĕrta aku tiada dĕngan sĕnjata ada-kah boleh aku mĕlawan; bunoh-lah sĕkarang nĕschaya puas-lah raja mĕmakan hati darah-ku." Dĕmi raja Bĕsiong mĕndĕngar kata yang dĕmikian itu, maka marah-lah ia, di-jatohkan mata pĕdang-nya ka-atas Kampar itu habis putus sĕgala ikatan itu bĕrluchutan tiada ia mĕrasai luka. Maka tĕrtawa gĕlak Kampar itu kata-nya, " Pada hari ini kĕnyang-lah pĕrut raja mĕmakan hati darah-ku." Maka sĕgĕra di-parang oleh raja Bĕsiong di-elak-nya tiada kĕna mata pĕdang itu. Maka ditĕtak-nya pula bĕrturut-turut itu pun sabagai juga Kampar itu tĕrtawa gĕlak-gĕlak tuboh-nya tĕrdiri tiada bĕrgĕrak. Maka dititahkan oleh raja Bĕsiong ka-pada sĕgala orang suroh mĕnikam dan mĕnĕtak. Maka sakalian mĕreka itu pun datang-lah mĕnikam dan mĕnĕtak bĕrtimpa-timpa sĕnjata kĕna pada tuboh-nya itu suatu pun tiada mĕmbĕri luka tuboh-nya, sabagai jua ia tĕrtawa gĕlak-gĕlak kata-nya, " Lihat raja ini gila hĕndak mĕmakan hati darah orang rasa-nya tiada dapat kalau bĕrtĕmu hati babi sĕkarang ini." Maka lalu ia mĕngambil tombak-nya mĕnikam makin-lah orang datang banyak mĕnikam mĕnĕtak. Sa-kĕtika jadi haru-hara dan tĕrkĕjut sĕgala orang mĕngatakan orang mĕngamok di-dalam kota raja. Maka hal Kampar itu pun tiada dapat hĕndak mĕngelak dan mĕnyalahkan tĕtak tikam itu. Maka sĕgĕra ia mĕnggĕrakkan tuboh-nya maka jadi-lah sa-ekur babi tunggal tĕrlalu bĕsar panjang-nya. Maka ia bĕrtaring dua siong-nya sĕgĕra ia bĕrlari-lari datang mĕnyundul-nyundul di-chĕlah kangkang raja Bĕsiong. Maka raja Bĕsiong pun tĕrguling-guling tombak-nya pun patah tĕrpĕlanting mata-nya tiada juga luka tuboh babi tunggal itu. Maka babi itu pun sa-bagai juga mĕnyundul ka-pada raja Bĕsiong. Maka raja Bĕsiong pun tĕrlĕntang di-guling oleh babi tunggal itu. Maka raja itu pun tiada tĕrkira lagi sa-hingga bĕrluchutan dan bĕrtaburan kain baju-nya dari tuboh-nya. Maka ramai-lah orang datang mĕnĕtak dan mĕnikam babi itu. Hata maka babi itu pun salah pĕrasaan-nya sĕgĕra-lah ia mĕnggĕrakkan tuboh-nya lalu mĕnjadi sa-ekur ular tĕdong sĕlar bĕsar sĕpĕrti pĕrdu nyiur dĕngan lidah-nya panjang tĕrjulur mata-nya sĕpĕrti kĕromong. Sĕrta di-lihat oleh sĕgala orang ular itu tĕrlalu amat bĕsar, maka bĕrlarian-lah sakalian oleh kĕtakutan-nya. Maka ada sa-tĕngah-nya mĕnchari kayu sa-orang sa-kĕrat akan pĕmalu-nya dan pĕnggodam ular itu. Maka makin bĕrtambah-tambah gĕmpar-nya hingga bĕrgĕmuroh bunyi-nya dĕngan sorak tĕmpek hĕndak mĕmbunoh ular itu. Maka ular itu pun mĕnchari raja Bĕsiong. Maka ia sudah lari mĕnyĕmbunyikan diri-nya ka-pada balek sa-pohon kayu. Sa-kĕtika lagi datang-lah mĕntĕri hulubalang masing-masing dĕngan mĕmĕgang sĕnjata bĕlaka mĕnĕrkam masok ka-dalam kota sĕrta dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya mĕnchari lawan. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh ular itu orang makin banyak datang maka ia pun sĕgĕra-lah mĕnjadikan diri-nya sa-ekur harimau garang tĕrong kasau rupa-nya dĕngan bĕsar panjang-nya lalu bĕrtĕmpek dĕngan bĕrgĕmuroh bunyi-nya bagaikan kiamat suara-nya itu tiada sangka bunyi lagi dĕngan suara manusia. Maka di-tĕrkam oleh harimau itu akan kĕtumbokan orang yang banyak itu. Maka orang itu pun bĕrtaburan lari bĕrtimpa-timpa kĕna sĕnjata sama sĕndiri-nya di-tĕrkam pula kanan dan kiri itu pun dĕmikian juga. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat harimau rupa-nya itu mĕngamok, maka kĕĕmpat-nya sakali mĕmasang pĕmuras-nya mĕnuju tuboh harimau itu. Maka harimau itu tĕrkĕjut sunggoh pun tiada luka tĕtapi sangat-lah sakit pĕluru-nya itu pun habis tĕrpĕlanting ka-sana ka-mari mĕnjadi kĕmek pĕluru itu. Maka harimau itu pun sĕgĕra hĕndak mĕlĕpaskan diri-nya sĕrta bĕrtĕmpek dan mĕnyepak tampar sampai ka-pintu kota sambil mĕnuju hala-nya ka-luar kota. Maka ia pun lĕpas-lah sĕrta mĕlompat masok ka-dalam hutan, di-turut oleh orang juga tiada bĕrjumpa tiada-lah mati Kampar lĕpas-lah lari. Ada pun mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat itu lĕpas dari-pada ia mĕmbĕdil sa-orang sa-kali itu harimau itu pun lĕpas ka-luar kota, maka ia kĕĕmpat pun datang-lah ka-hadapan balai rong mĕnchari kalau-kalau ada orang yang mĕngamok itu lagi lain dari-pada harimau itu. Maka ia kĕĕmpat pun bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan raja Bĕsiong di-balek kayu dĕngan tĕlanjang tiada bĕrkain. Maka sĕgĕra di-ambil sa-orang sa-hĕlai kain di-bĕrikan ka-pada raja itu lalu di-ajak-nya naik ka-atas balai dudok sĕrta suroh sĕgala orang himpun ambil sĕgala harta alat sĕnjata yang bĕrtaburan pĕchah bĕlah itu. Sa-kĕtika orang pun datang mĕngatakan harimau itu sudah lĕpas ka-dalam hutan. Maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun kĕtahui-lah pĕrangai raja Bĕsiong itu sĕbab ia hĕndak mĕmakan hati darah orang itu-lah yang jadi yang dĕmikian dĕngan tiada ia mĕnaroh fikir hemat lagi. Maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun muafakat-lah langsong pĕrgi mĕngadap raja Bĕsiong. Tatkala itu raja Bĕsiong pun kĕluar-lah ka-pĕnghadapan. Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri yang tua, "Ada pun patek-patek ini kĕĕmpat bĕrsaudara datang mĕngadap tuanku di-pohonkan duli tuanku rĕntikan-lah dari-pada mĕmbunoh sĕgala orang ka-pada sa-hari sa-orang itu. Maka sangat-lah tĕriak ibu bapa-nya sakalian dan anak dan saudara-nya." Maka titah raja Bĕsiong ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, "Jangan di-tĕgah larang akan beta pada jalan itu tiada-lah beta mĕndĕngarkan lagi." Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, "Jikalau dĕmikian tuanku, akhir-nya sampai-lah ka-pada anak chuchu patek kĕĕmpat ini karna orang kĕluaran tĕntu ia bĕrpindah ka-nĕgĕri lain; pada masa itu dĕngan siapa lagi tuanku hĕndak dudok bĕrkata-kata dan mĕmbuat kĕrja akan tuanku jika sudah habis hamba sahaya duli tuanku tĕrbunoh makan hati darah itu." Maka titah raja Bĕsiong, "Jika sampai ka-pada beta sa-orang tinggal sakali pun, apa-lah beta hĕndak katakan lagi shukur-lah beta yang pĕkĕrjaan itu tiada dapat beta hĕndak tinggalkan." Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, "Jika dĕmikian mĕlainkan jadi-lah lawan patek kĕĕmpat ka-pada tuanku karna dari-pada zĕman dato nenek moyang tuanku pun tiada pĕrnah mĕmbunoh makan hati darah orang." Maka titah-nya, "Jika tuan hamba hĕndak langgar dan bunoh beta pun tĕntu-lah beta tahan mana yang sa-boleh-nya." Sa-tĕlah dĕmikian titah-nya maka raja Bĕsiong pun masok-lah ka-istana bĕrkata ka-pada istĕri-nya dan ka-pada sĕgala isi istana yang ada hadzir mĕngadap, lalu di-titahkan ka-pada sĕgala pĕnghulu biduanda itu pun di-dalam kota, "Aturkan oleh-mu sĕgala bĕdil mĕriam di-atas kota ini dan kĕluarkan sĕgala sĕnjata dan suroh tunggu jaga pada kĕĕmpat pĕnjuru kota ini." Ada pun banyak-nya hamba sahaya yang di-dalam kota itu ada-lah kadar lima ratus banyak-nya yang di-harap oleh raja Bĕsiong itu. Sa-tĕlah siap sakalian-nya maka ia dudok mĕnanti. Ada pun mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat itu sa-tĕlah kĕesokan hari-nya di-suroh kĕrah sĕgala rayat bala dari-pada hilir sampai ka-ulu sungai sĕrta mĕmukul gĕndang raya bĕsar tanda bĕrkĕrah di-suroh bawa alat sĕnjata sa-kali. Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh orang mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat hĕndak mĕlanggar raja Bĕsiong itu, maka masing-masing pun sĕgĕra-lah turun bĕrhimpun dĕngan sĕnjata karna sakalian-nya itu sangat-lah bĕnchi ka-pada raja Bĕsiong itu. Hata ada pun akan raja pĕrĕmpuan istĕri raja Bĕsiong itu sangat-lah ia mĕnaroh pĕrchintaan di-dalam hati-nya kalau-kalau habis mati sakalian isi istana atau rosak binasa dĕngan sĕbab pĕrangai suami-nya itu. Maka di-panggil ĕmpat orang dayang di-suroh pĕrgi ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat itu mĕngatakan takut rosak isi istana sakalian. Maka kata mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, "Baik-lah, jika raja pĕrĕmpuan suka masok champur dĕngan kira-kira kami ini, maka sĕlamat-lah sakalian isi istana itu, hanya yang kami hĕndak bunoh raja Bĕsiong sahaja." Maka sĕmbah dayang-dayang itu, "Muafakat yang sa-macham mana dato kĕhĕndaki itu tĕntu di-ikut oleh raja pĕrĕmpuan." Maka kata mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, "Hĕndak-lah ĕngkau sampaikan sĕmbah kami kĕĕmpat pada ka-bawah duli raja pĕrĕmpuan hĕndak-lah sĕgala bĕdil mĕriam itu isi ubat sahaja jangan buboh pĕluru, nĕschaya tiada-lah rosak kami sakalian dan rayat. Sa-tĕlah dĕmikian kata mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat di-dĕngar oleh dayang-dayang itu, maka ia pun bĕrmohon pulang mĕngadap raja pĕrĕmpuan sĕmbahkan sakalian itu. Maka suka-lah raja pĕrĕmpuan suroh panggil sĕgala pĕnghulu yang di-dalam kota mĕnitahkan sakalian kĕhĕndak itu. Maka sĕmbah pĕnghulu, "Bagaimana bichara tuanku maka boleh-lah patek hamba tua muafakat pada sakalian yang di-dalam kota ini suroh mĕngĕrjakan bagaimana titah duli tuanku itu." Hata maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun sa-tĕlah datang-lah sĕgala rayat-nya dĕngan siap alat sĕnjata-nya, maka ia pun bahagi-lah ĕmpat kĕtumbokan kota raja itu ka-pada masing-

masing suku-nya dĕngan alat sĕnjata tĕrlalu banyak. Sa-tĕlah sudah siap maka tunggul panji-panji pun bĕrkibaran-lah sĕrta di-suroh palu gĕndang pĕrang mĕnaikkan bĕrani hati yang takut. Maka di-langgar-lah sĕrta dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya tĕrlalu bĕrgĕmuroh bĕrdahĕnam bunyi-nya. Maka datang-lah ĕmpat kĕtumbokan pada ĕmpat pĕnjuru kota itu sakali datang kĕsĕmua-nya itu. Maka raja Bĕsiong pun mĕmakai-lah alat sĕnjata pĕpĕrangan. Tatkala itu di-pakai-nya ikat pinggang dari-pada kain izĕrang kashmiri yang panjang ĕmpat puloh hasta itu dan tĕngkolok bulang randi dan kĕris tĕtĕrapang ĕmas dan bĕrsĕlendang sawat sandang kiri kanan, dan mĕmakai baju antĕlas yang bĕrĕmas biji bayam tĕrlalu hebat sikap-nya, dan mĕmĕgang tombak yang bĕrmata kait bĕrkilat-kilat rupa mata-nya itu. Maka sĕgĕra-lah ia kĕluar dari dalam istana bĕrlari-lari datang bĕrkĕliling kota mĕnyuroh mĕmasang sĕgala bĕdil mĕriam yang sudah bĕrisi ubat itu dan mĕnyuroh orang tikam dĕngan lĕmbing buang-buangan itu dari atas pĕlarian kota-nya, dan pintu kota itu habis-lah tĕrkunchi. Sa-tĕlah dĕmikian itu, maka di-kerjakan orang lima ratus itu dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya tĕrlalu ramai-nya sĕpĕrti akan tĕrchabut kota itu dari-pada kĕbanyakan tĕntĕra yang mĕlanggar ĕmpat pĕnjuru kota itu jikalau guroh halilintar di-langit sa-kali pun tiada kĕdĕngaran lagi dari-pada sangat adzmat bunyi-nya itu. Ada pun akan mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat kĕtumbokan itu sangat-lah rasa-nya kĕmashghulan di-dalam hati-nya oleh mĕlihat rayat-nya tiada boleh hampir dĕngan kota karna lichin sĕpĕrti minyak laku-nya hingga bĕrtaburan sĕgala kayu yang di-pĕrtajam itu turun mĕnimpa di-atas orang-nya, tĕtapi sunggoh pun tiada sakalian luka tĕtapi bĕngkak bĕngkil juga rasa-nya, maka sa-orang pun tiada mati. Maka sangat-lah marah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat di-suroh-nya sa-tĕngah rayat-nya pĕrgi mĕnĕtak kayu hĕndak di-pĕrbuat sigai tangga hĕndak mĕragang kota itu. Dĕmi di-dĕngar sĕgala orang kata pĕnghulu-nya yang dĕmikian maka dĕngan sĕgĕra-lah di-pĕrbuat sigai tangga hĕndak naik ka-atas kota itu dĕngan sorak tĕmpek tiada-lah sangka bunyi lagi gĕmuroh-nya, dan yang di-dalam kota itu pun ramai di-lawan juga, di-tolong-nya mana yang lĕpas ka-atas kota itu pun gugur-lah sĕpĕrti buah masak luroh dari-pada tangkai-nya, sĕpĕrti budak bĕrmain laku-nya. Maka tiada-lah mĕmbĕri takut dan ngĕri ka-pada sakalian itu hanya mĕlawan juga di-dalam asap bĕdil mĕriam itu; maka tiada-lah bĕrhĕnti mĕlawan lagi hingga sampai dĕlapan hari. Maka lĕpas-lah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat dan orang-nya ka-atas pĕlarian kota. Tatkala itu raja Bĕsiong pun bĕrlari-lah ka-sana ka-mari suroh orang mĕmasang bĕdil mĕriam mĕnikam ka-pada orang itu. Maka di-lihat-nya sa-orang pun tiada mati dan luka sa-bĕlah lawan-nya itu. Maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat itu sa-tĕlah lĕpas ia masok ka-dalam kota itu lalu mĕnchari raja Bĕsiong. Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh raja Bĕsiong maka lari-lah ia mĕnchari tĕmpat hĕndak sĕmbunyikan diri-nya lalu di-buka suatu pintu maling kĕchil dari sa-bĕlah matahari naik lari mĕnuju ka-dalam hutan. Maka datang-lah orang bĕrkhabar ka-pada mĕntĕri mĕngatakan raja Bĕsiong sudah lari mĕmbawa diri-nya ka-hutan. Maka oleh mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat dua orang dudok mĕnchari di-dalam kota dan dua orang mĕnurut ka-dalam hutan bĕrgĕmuroh bunyi-nya sĕpĕrti orang mĕmburu rusa. Maka raja Bĕsiong apabila di-kĕtahui orang mĕngambat dia itu, maka di-lari-nya sunggoh hati susup lurup tiada bĕrkĕtahuan jatoh bangun lari pula habis sĕgala sĕnjata dan pakaian bĕrhamburan pada sa-gĕnap jalan lari dari-pada siang sampai malam sampai esok hari-nya itu pun di-turut orang juga. Ada pun mĕntĕri yang dua orang tinggal di-dalam kota istana itu mĕnchari raja Bĕsiong juga kalau-kalau ada mĕnyĕmbunyikan diri-nya di-chari sampai ka-rumah dapur. Maka sakalian itu pun dudok-lah bĕrkampong di-balai rong itu mĕnanti mĕntĕri yang kĕdua itu. Tĕlah kĕesokan hari-nya maka mĕntĕri kĕdua itu pun sudah tiada bĕrtĕmu dĕngan raja Bĕsiong, maka balek-lah ia lalu tĕrsĕrah-lah kota itu ka-pada-nya. Maka sĕgala rayat bala pun bĕrmohon kĕmbali pulang ka-tĕmpat-nya mĕnchari makan.

Ada pun nĕgĕri itu tiada-lah bĕraja mĕlainkan dĕngan pĕrrentah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat itu-lah sampai pada sĕgala isi kota istana itu pun di-bĕla-nya dĕngan sa-chukup-nya oleh sĕbab raja Bĕsiong itu tiada bĕroleh anak laki-laki atau pĕrĕmpuan sa-orang jua pun. Maka ada-lah ka-pada suatu hari bĕrhimpun-lah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat muafakat mĕshuarat bichara pĕrbuat suatu surat dĕngan namanya kĕĕmpat dan nama raja pĕrĕmpuan di-hantarkan pĕrgi ka-bĕnua Siam mĕngatakan nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu sudah tiada bĕraja pinta tolong chari raja hĕndak di-rajakan. Maka dudok-lah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat mĕmĕliharakan nĕgĕri sĕrta mĕnanti jawab dari nĕgĕri Siam.

Sa-bĕrmula maka tĕrsĕbut-lah pĕrkataan raja Bĕsiong lari itu dĕngan lapar dahaga-nya tiada makan dan minum dan sĕgala alat sĕnjata pun habis bĕrtaburan. Hata tiada bĕrapa lama-nya tĕrus-lah ia bĕrjalan itu ka-huma orang bĕrtanam sireh hampir dĕngan pĕrĕnggan nĕgĕri Pĕtani. Maka raja Bĕsiong pun pĕrgi-lah ka-dusun rumah yang ada di-situ hĕndak bĕrsama buat kĕrja barang yang di-kĕrjakan oleh orang dusun itu. Maka dudok-lah ia di-situ pada hal tiada di-kĕtahui oleh orang itu akan raja Bĕsiong. Maka ia bĕkĕrja itu tiada di-nanti di-suroh orang lagi hingga bĕrpanggil makan minum; lĕpas makan minum ia bĕkĕrja pula hingga sampai malam. Maka sĕgala kĕpĕnatan ia itu tiada-lah ia hĕndak upah lagi sa-kadar boleh ia makan minum sahaja. Dĕmikian-lah raja Bĕsiong itu mĕngirim diri pada orang itu anak bĕranak. Maka ada-lah tuan rumah itu tiga bĕranak juga, maka sa-orang anak-nya pĕrĕmpuan tĕrlalu amat elok rupa paras-nya puteh kuning panjang nipis tuboh-nya mĕmbĕri bĕrahi pada sĕgala mata mĕmandang akan bangsa-nya dari-pada biapĕri anak raja yang kĕchil bapa-nya. Maka ia mĕrajok dĕngan kaum kĕluarga-nya yang baik itu, jadi-lah ia laki istĕri pĕrgi bĕrbuat rumah bĕrhuma ka-pada hutan di-hulu sungai Kĕdah itu. Hata budak pĕrĕmpuan itu-lah bĕrbuat bĕri makan ka-pada raja Bĕsiong itu, karna ibu bapa-nya pĕrgi bĕrbuat huma. Maka tinggal-lah ia kĕdua di-rumah itu mĕnanam sireh dan mĕmbĕla pokok sireh dan sĕgala pokok yang lain pun. Maka ada-lah ka-pada suatu hari datang-lah ashek bĕrahi-nya raja Bĕsiong. Maka budak pĕrĕmpuan itu pun suka-lah, datang nafsu-nya dĕngan tiada di-kĕtahui oleh ibu bapa-nya; maka kĕhĕndak kĕdua itu pun di-lakukan-lah.

Shahadan sampai ka-pada hamil tujoh bulan baharu-lah di-kĕtahui oleh ibu bapa-nya. Maka kata bapa budak itu ka-pada istĕri-nya, "Pada fikiran-ku baik anak kita sudah hamil dĕngan laki-laki ini baik juga budi-nya ka-pada kita." Sa-tĕlah sampai bulan-nya maka bĕranak-lah sa-orang laki-laki mĕnurut rupa ayahanda baginda raja Bĕsiong itu juga. Maka di-pĕliharakan-lah sĕpĕrti anak orang kĕluaran. Tatkala itu ada-lah sa-orang yang mĕngĕnal raja Bĕsiong itu. Maka orang itu pun datang bĕrkhabar ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat mĕngatakan ada-lah raja Bĕsiong itu di-hulu sungai, bĕrdiam ka-pada suatu dusun rumah-nya sa-buah tiada baik. Maka mĕntĕri mĕnyuroh orang sa-ratus pĕrgi tangkap raja Bĕsiong itu bawa, jikalau ia mĕlawan di-bunoh. Maka orang sa-ratus itu pun pĕrgi-lah ka-ulu sungai itu. Tatkala ia sampai maka raja Bĕsiong pun tĕngah dudok mĕnyangkul kĕbun sireh-nya. Dĕmi di-lihat-nya orang banyak sangat hĕndak mĕnangkap dan mĕmbunoh akan dia, maka ia pun lari-lah mĕmbuangkan changkul-nya bĕrlari dĕngan sa-sunggoh hati-nya. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh orang sa-ratus itu maka sakalian pun sĕgĕra-lah di-usir-nya dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya sĕrta dĕngan bĕbĕrapa sakalian-nya mĕngusir itu tiada jua di-pĕroleh-nya raja Bĕsiong itu. Ada pun raja Bĕsiong itu lari mĕnuju ka-pada pihak pĕrdu buloh bĕtong yang banyak lagi bĕrbanjar-banjar dan bĕrsusun banyak-nya. Maka di-tĕmpat itu-lah ia mĕmasokkan diri-nya. Maka orang yang sa-ratus orang itu pun mĕngĕlilingi pĕrdu buloh bĕtong itu, di-chari-chari tiada jua bĕrtĕmu. Maka bĕbĕrapa di-chĕrah di-chari dan di-tunggu-nya sampai di-binasakan hutan buloh bĕtong itu tiada jua bĕrtĕmu. Maka sĕgala tĕntĕra itu pun tiada juga mĕngĕtahui kata raja Bĕsiong itu bĕristĕri dan bĕroleh anak itu. Maka masing-masing pun kĕmbali mĕngadap mĕntĕri yang kĕĕmpat mĕngatakan raja itu sudah lari masok ka-dalam hutan buloh bĕtong sĕrta pula ia tiada boleh bĕrtĕmu dĕngan dia, jadi-lah hilang raja Bĕsiong di-dalam buloh bĕtong. Maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun diam-lah mĕndĕngar kata orang itu. Maka mĕreka itu pun sakalian pun pulang-lah ka-rumah masing-masing. Hata maka pĕrĕmpuan anak orang huma itu dudok-lah mĕmĕliharakan anak-nya makin sahari makin bĕsar sĕrta dĕngan chĕrdek-nya lagi baik rupa paras-nya. Maka di-dalam itu pun bĕrulang-ulang juga dato-nya laki istĕri mĕlihat chuchu-nya itu.

Sa-bĕrmula maka tĕrsĕbut-lah pĕrkataan surat mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat dan raja pĕrĕmpuan yang tĕlah di-bawa oleh utusan ka-bĕnua Siam itu. Maka tiada bĕrapa antara-nya itu sampai-lah ia lalu masok mĕngadap raja bĕnua Siam. Maka raja Siam pun kĕtika itu tĕngah ramai di-hadap oleh sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa pĕnoh sĕsak di-pĕseban agong mĕngatakan surat tĕlah sampai dari nĕgĕri Kĕdah. Maka titah baginda ka-pada sa-orang mĕntĕri suroh bachakan surat itu. Maka ia pun mĕnyĕmbah lalu ambil surat itu di-bacha di-hadapan khalayak itu. Maka ini-lah bunyi surat itu, " Bahwa ini-lah surat dari-pada patek-patek hamba yang hina mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat dan raja pĕrĕmpuan di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah maalumkan sĕmbah hal nĕgĕri itu sudah-lah tiada raja yang bĕrasal mĕlainkan patek-patek pohonkan duli yang maha mulia gantikan raja-nya boleh-lah patek-patek hamba sakalian sĕmbah-kan sĕrta dapat pĕrentah nĕgĕri dĕngan sa-chukup-nya. Ini-lah patek-patek maalum tĕriakkan ka-bawah duli yang maha mulia." Sa-tĕlah sudah di-bacha-nya surat itu, maka titah raja bĕnua Siam ka-pada sa-orang mĕntĕri yang tua, " Hĕndak-lah saudara hamba panggil ahl'ul nujum." Maka sa-kĕtika juga datang ahl'ul nujum dudok mĕnyĕmbah. Maka titah baginda, " Hai ahl'ul nujum hĕndak-lah tuan hamba lihat di-dalam nujum itu ka-mana juga raja di-dalam nĕgĕri itu dan siapa patut kita gantikan mĕnjadi raja." Maka ahl'ul nujum pun mĕnyĕmbah lalu mĕmbuka suatu nujum-nya di-tilek. Sa-kĕtika lagi maka bĕrdatang sĕmbah, " Ampun tuanku, ada pun raja yang hĕndak di-rajakan di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu jangan di-chari raja yang lain nĕschaya tiada boleh kĕkal dan tĕtap sa-kadar dua tiga tahun sahaja tĕntu mati atau mĕnjadi haru." Maka titah pula baginda, " Sakarang bagimana kita hĕndak kĕtahui asal raja-nya yang dapat kita rajakan dia." Maka ahl'ul nujum pun tilek nujum-nya pula, sa-kĕtika bĕrdatang-kan sĕmbah, " Ampun tuanku ada lagi ia kanak-kanak di-dalam umur ĕnam tujoh tahun. Ada pun hĕndak mĕngĕtahui akan dia itu tiada boleh manusia kĕtahui mĕlainkan dĕngan margastua jua." Sa-tĕlah dĕmikian maka datang-lah fikir hemat yang mĕmbĕri sĕmpurna di-dalam hati Raja Siam itu, maka ada-lah pĕsanan dato nenek-nya ada sa-ekur gajah di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah atau Pĕtani yang bĕrnama Gĕmala Johari itu kalau-kalau ia dapat mĕngĕtahui orang yang hĕndak di-rajakan dari-pada yang bĕrasal itu. Maka titah raja Siam ka-pada orang yang mĕmbawa surat itu, " Ada-kah ĕngkau sakalian kĕtahui gajah kĕsaktian itu?" Maka sĕmbah-nya " Ada tuanku, dia bĕrulang-alek antara Kĕdah dĕngan Pĕtani baharu ini juga ia mĕmbĕri mimpi ka-pada pĕng-hulu patek mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat tuanku." Maka titah raja Siam ka-pada sa-orang mĕntĕri yang tua, " Hĕndak-lah tuan hamba pĕrbuat sa-puchok surat hantarkan ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah ka-pada mĕntĕri itu hĕndak-lah ia sakalian hiasi dĕngan alat gajah Gĕmala Johari itu dĕngan sĕpĕrti-nya, kĕmudian lĕpaskan ia pĕrgi mĕnchari raja yang patut; barang siapa yang di-ambil-nya, itu-lah raja nĕgĕri Kĕdah. Kĕmudian kita dari sini boleh antarkan mĕntĕri yang bĕsar pĕrgi rajakan dia. Maka mĕntĕri pun mĕnyĕmbah lalu mĕnyurat surat di-sĕrahkan ka-pada utusan itu. Maka ia pun bĕrmohon-lah kĕmbali lalu bĕrjalan mĕnuju ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah. Tiada bĕrapa lama-nya maka sampai-lah ia ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah lang-song masok mĕngadap mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat lalu mĕnunjokkan surat dari bĕnua Siam itu. Maka di-ambil-lah oleh mĕntĕri lalu di-bacha-nya. Sa-tĕlah sudah maka ia sakalian pun suka-lah mĕndĕngar pĕrkataan surat itu. Maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun muafakat-lah pula dĕngan raja pĕrĕmpuan mĕnghiasi balai rong dĕngan tabir tirai langit-langit dĕngan mĕmasang sĕgala kandil pĕlita sĕpĕrti siang rupa-nya tĕrang bĕndĕrang chĕrah-nya tambahan pula dĕngan sĕgala pĕrmainan tanda bĕrsuka-sukaan mĕnchari raja itu tujoh hari tujoh malam bĕrjaga makan minum maka pada malam yang kĕtujoh itu di-bakar dupa istanggi dĕngan sĕgala bau-bauan sĕrta mĕnyĕbut gajah kĕsaktian Gĕmala Johari mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat bĕrkĕhĕndak akan dia. Maka dĕngan sa-saat kĕtika itu jua maka bĕrbunyi-lah sĕpĕrti angin ribut tofan yang bĕsar hĕndak turun laku-nya dari sa-bĕlah matahari naik bĕrgĕmuroh bunyi-nya kĕdĕngaran ka-pada tĕlinga orang sakalian, sa-konyong-konyong tĕrdiri-lah gajah kĕsaktian Gĕmala Johari di-tĕlĕmpa balai rong itu mĕngantarkan bĕlalai-nya ka-atas balai rong. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat maka ia pun mĕnĕrkam datang mĕnyintokkan limau dan langir maka yang sa-tĕngah itu mĕmandikan dĕngan bĕdak dan minyak bau-bauan di-gosokkan pada sĕgala tuboh-nya maka lalu di-hantarkan hidangan nasi dan juadah dari-pada sĕgala makanan yang indah-indah di-tuangkan ka-dalam mulut-nya. Tĕlah sudah lalu di-kĕnakan pula rengka kubu dĕngan alat pĕrhiasan. Maka di-gantongkan tabir langit-langit sĕrta di-bachakan oleh sa-orang mĕntĕri surat dari bĕnua Siam itu hampir dĕngan tĕlinga-nya mĕngatakan gajah Gĕmala Johari juga yang dapat tolong charikan raja yang bĕrasal hĕndak mĕnjadikan raja di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah dan bagimana sifat yang di-bawa oleh gajah Gĕmala Johari itu-lah yang di-sĕmbah oleh mĕntĕri hulubalang rayat sakalian hina dina. Sa-tĕlah di-dĕngar oleh gajah Gĕmala Johari bunyi surat yang datang dari bĕnua Siam itu maka ia pun anggok kĕpala-nya dan tarek bĕlalai-nya, lalu bĕrjalan mĕnuju tanah sa-bĕlah matahari naik di-iringkan oleh sĕgala orang sĕrta dĕngan alat kĕrajaan. Maka tunggul panji-panji pun bĕrkibaran-lah mĕlayang, maka tĕrlalu ramai-nya sakalian mĕngiringkan gajah Gĕmala Johari itu. Maka gajah itu pun tiada-lah mĕnyimpang lagi hanya lurus ka-hadapan sahaja hala ka-hutan huma dan rumah yang di-diami oleh raja Bĕsiong itu. Hata tatkala itu anak raja Bĕsiong dudok sa-orang diri-nya di-dalam rumah-nya, maka dato-nya kĕdua bĕlum lagi balek dari huma padi-nya dan bonda-nya pun dudok di-dalam kĕbun sireh-nya. Sa-tĕlah sampai gajah Gĕmala Johari itu, maka ia pun mĕnghulurkan bĕlalai-nya di-dalam rumah itu mĕngambil budak itu. Maka budak itu pun sĕgĕra mĕngambil kain ikat pinggang ayah-nya raja Bĕsiong itu yang panjang ĕmpat puloh hasta yang bĕrnama izĕrang kashmiri dapat pada tuboh-nya. Maka gajah itu pun di-pĕlok dĕngan bĕlalai-nya lalu di-hantarkan ka-atas bĕlakang-nya di-dalam kubu tabiran itu. Sa-tĕlah sudah ia mĕrasaï tĕtap maka gajah itu pun mĕmalingkan tuboh-nya bĕrjalan kĕmbali.

Ada pun istěri raja Běsiong těrlihat oleh-nya sa-ekur gajah těrlalu amat běsar datang ka-rumah-nya děngan orang běratus-ratus itu. Maka ia pun lari-lah dari dalam kěbun sireh tiada-lah ingat akan anak-nya lagi. Sa-kětika itu di-lihat-nya sakalian orang itu běrpaling balek měnurut gajah itu, baharu-lah ia těringatkan anak-nya itu tinggal di-rumah. Maka ia pun běrlari-lari datang mělihat anak-nya sudah tiada lagi di-atas rumah. Maka sěgěra-lah ia měnurut gajah itu tiada kělihatan lagi. Maka di-turut-nya juga měngikut běkas tapak kaki gajah itu. Maka di-dapati-nya kain charek sadikit-sadikit sa-panjang-panjang jalan itu. Maka di-kěnal-nya ya-itu kain ikat pinggang suami-nya di-charek oleh anak-nya di-taburkan měnjadi tanda ia yang di-bawa oleh gajah itu karna ia hěndak těrjun dari atas gajah takut sěbab gajah itu tinggi. Maka tiada běrapa lama-nya běrjalan itu maka sampai-lah ka-kota langsong ka-balai pěnghadapan. Pada masa itu měntěri kěěmpat pun ada hadzir měnanti hěndak měnyambut raja-nya. Děmi di-lihat měntěri kěěmpat gajah itu datang děngan pěrlahan-lahan sěpěrti orang běrarak laku-nya děngan těmpek sorak sěgala rayat yang měngiringkan kiri kanan měmbawa sěgala tunggul panji-panji sěrta děngan bunyi-bunyian těrlalu ramai, maka měntěri kěěmpat pun sěgěra-lah datang měnyambut anak raja itu di-bawa naik ka-pěnghadapan langsong di-kěnakan sěgala pakaian raja-raja yang běrmahkota yang běrkěmunchak manikam yang běrěmas pakaian raja yang běsar-běsar makin pula běrtambah-tambah baik-nya. Sa-tělah sudah ia měmakai maka di-dudokkan-nya pada těmpat kědudokan raja Běsiong itu. Maka sěgala měntěri hulubalang rayat těntěra hina dina sakalian pun běrhimpun měnyěmbah měngatakan, " Daulat tuanku makin běrtambah-tambah daulat." Maka akan hal-nya itu běrtambah-tambah baik běrsěri-sěri ayer muka-nya itu běrchahaya warna-nya, maka hairan-lah sěgala yang mělihat. Sa-tělah itu maka měntěri kěěmpat pun bangun-lah měměgang anak raja itu dua-dua orang sa-bělah tangan měmbawa masok ka-dalam istana měnyěrahkan ka-pada raja pěrěmpuan. Maka raja pěrěmpuan pun sangat-lah suka mělihat anakanda baginda itu, lalu měntěri kěěmpat pun kěluar ka-balai rong pěrjamu makan minum ka-pada gajah Gěmala Johari dan orang sakalian. Sa-tělah sudah maka di-suroh oleh měntěri kěěmpat kěmbali ka-těmpat-nya. Maka raja pěrěmpuan těrlalu amat hairan mělihat rupa paras-nya anak raja itu tiada běrsalahan lagi děngan raja Běsiong itu. Maka apabila di-lihat oleh raja pěrěmpuan kain ikat pinggang raja Běsiong itu ada lagi tinggal panjang lima hasta, maka di-kěnal-lah oleh raja pěrěmpuan budak itu anak raja Běsiong, maka kata raja pěrěmpuan, " Hai anak-ku, ada-kah lagi ayahanda anak-ku itu? ". Maka kata-nya, " Bahawasa-nya ayah beta itu, ěntah-kah ia měnurut datang ka-mari ini. Děngan sěbab itu kain ini tinggal sadikit sahaja karna beta charek champakkan sa-panjang jalan beta ka-mari ini." Maka kata raja pěrěmpuan, " Ta'dapat tiada těntu-lah bonda anak-ku itu měnurut ka-mari." Maka titah raja pěrěmpuan ka-pada sěgala dayang-

dayang-nya, "Hĕndak-lah ĕngkau sakalian pĕrgi mĕlihat ada-kah bonda anak-ku di-luar kota ini atau di-dalam-nya." Maka sĕgala dayang-dayang pun mĕnyĕmbah lalu pĕrgi. Ada pun bonda anak raja yang baharu itu datang mĕnurut anak-nya dari-pada tapak kaki gajah itu hingga sampai masok ka-dalam kota. Maka ia pun bĕrhĕnti-lah bĕrsandar di-kaki kota itu di-bawah pohon kayu bĕringin yang bĕsar dĕngan tĕriak tangis-nya hĕndak bĕrtĕmu dĕngan anak-nya. Maka hari pun hampir akan malam; maka datang-lah dayang-dayang itu dari dalam kota. Maka di-lihat-nya sunggoh pĕrĕmpuan itu bonda anak raja itu. Maka kata dayang-dayang itu, "Ya tuan, mari-lah raja pĕrĕmpuan panggil mĕndapatkan anakanda baginda itu sudah mĕnjadi raja di-dalam nĕgĕri ini." Dĕmi di-dĕngar kata dayang-dayang itu maka ia pun sĕgĕra-lah bangun bĕrjalan masok ka-dalam kota mĕngadap raja pĕrĕmpuan itu sĕrta datang lalu dudok mĕnyĕmbah. Maka di-lihat-nya anak-nya dudok di-hadap oleh sĕgala dayang-dayang dan orang banyak di-tĕngah mĕngadap. Maka kata raja pĕrĕmpuan, "Mari-lah dudok hampir di-sini, saudara-ku." Maka sĕmbah-nya "Tuanku." Maka dudok-lah ia kĕdua bĕranak di-pĕlihara dan di-bĕlakan oleh raja pĕrĕmpuan sĕrta mĕngajarkan isharat orang mĕnjadi raja itu dari-pada sa-hari ka-pada sa-hari dari-pada sa-bulan ka-pada sa-bulan sampai-lah ka-pada sa-tahun bĕrtambah-tambah baik budi bahasa-nya, jika siang hari di-bawa-nya kĕluar ka-pĕnghadapan oleh mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat tĕrlalu-lah mĕsra kaseh akan dia. Maka mĕntĕri yang tua pun mĕngantarkan sa-orang anak-nya pĕrĕmpuan yang tĕrlalu elok rupa paras-nya akan mĕnjadi istĕri anak raja itu karna mĕntĕri itu pun dari-pada bangsa anak raja juga asal-nya yang bĕrsama pĕrgi ka-nĕgĕri tiga buah dahulu ya-itu bĕnua Siam, nĕgĕri Perak dan nĕgĕri Pĕtani, ia-lah yang mĕnjadi istĕri bĕsar pada zĕman raja Marong Mahawangsa itu; sĕbab itu-lah mĕnjadi baik rupa paras-nya; dan ia-lah yang mĕnjadi mĕntĕri bĕsar ka-pada raja Bĕsiong itu. Maka dudok-lah anak raja itu mĕmĕrentah nĕgĕri itu sĕrta dĕngan mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat dan raja pĕrĕmpuan ada-nya.

Sa-bĕrmula maka tĕrsĕbut-lah pĕrkataan sa-orang raja Kĕlana Hitam nama-nya, ia dudok pada suatu pulau yang bĕrnama Pulau Ayer Tawar karna bĕrkĕliling pulau itu ada-lah tasek ayer-nya pun tawar. Maka akan pulau itu kĕchil dudok-nya ka-timur nĕgĕri Kĕlinggi ka-sĕlatan bĕnua Siam. Maka raja itu ka-nĕgĕri Kĕlinggi tiada ia tundok karna hati-nya kĕras hingga ia dudok mĕnghimpunkan rayat dari-pada bangsa sĕmang dan wila dan rayat bukit dan sabagai-nya di-kĕluar-nya nama pĕnghulu yang bĕsar-bĕsar-nya di-suroh dudok, bĕrkĕliling tasek pada masing-masing pĕnghulu sĕmang. Maka nama-nya maharaja Dahar Al Alam, dan pĕnghulu rayat wila itu nama-nya maharaja Dar Al Salam dan pĕnghulu rayat bukit itu bĕrnama maharaja Dar Al Gunong dan pĕnghulu sakai di-namaï maharaja Jĕkajaku Jaraja. Maka raja Kĕlana Hitam pun mĕnyuroh panggil pĕnghulu kĕĕmpat itu muafakat bichara hĕndak mĕnchari nĕgĕri tĕmpat hĕndak dudok tanah bumi yang baik. Maka sĕmbah maharaja Dahar Al Alam, " Ampun tuanku, ada-lah orang kita datang dari sĕlatan mĕnanggara tanah itu sudah amat baik sĕpĕrti nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu siap dĕngan kota parit-nya. Maka nĕgĕri itu sudah tiada bĕraja lama. Maka fikir patek baik juga tuanku pĕrgi mĕnjadi raja ka-pada nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu." Maka sĕmbah maharaja Dar Al Salam, " Sunggoh tuanku baik nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu duli tuanku dudok mĕnjadi raja orang-nya ramai nĕgĕri itu." Maka titah raja Kĕlana Hitam, " Kalau-kalau ada mĕntĕri yang tua-nya baik-lah kita suroh antarkan surat dahulu muafakat kita hĕndak mĕnjadi raja di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu." Maka sĕmbah maharaja Dar Al Gunong, " Pada fikiran hati patek jika sudah duli tuanku suka hĕndak mĕnjadi raja di-dalam nĕgĕri itu, mari-lah kita pindah pĕrgi sakali, apa guna-nya mĕmbĕri khabar ka-pada mĕntĕri dan orang isi nĕgĕri itu, jika ia sakalian tiada suka kita langgar pĕrang sakali yang kita mau masok juga bĕrapa-tah jantan-nya janganlah duli tuanku mĕnaroh susah hati pĕrgi sahaja duli tuanku mĕnjadi raja-lah." Maka sĕmbah maharaja Jĕkajaku Jaraja, " Jangan dĕmikian mari-lah kita sakalian suku laki-laki dĕngan alat sĕnjata pĕrgi dahulu; jikalau sudah duli tuanku jangan susah, kĕmudian kita ambil-lah sĕgala pĕrĕmpuan bawa pĕrgi." Maka titah raja Kĕlana Hitam, " Baik bichara yang dĕmikian sĕpĕrti bichara Jĕkajaku Jaraja itu, hĕndak-lah kita sakalian bĕrsiap di-dalam ini juga tiada bĕrapa lama-nya kita hĕndak bĕrjalan pĕrgi ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu." Hata maka masing-masing pun bĕrmohon-lah kĕmbali mĕngĕrahkan sĕgala rayat sĕrta dĕngan pĕrbaiki sĕgala alat sĕnjata-nya akan bĕrpĕrang dari-pada bĕdil dan pĕdang tombak lĕmbing pĕrisai utar-utar dan pĕdang parang chipan dan panah sumpitan dan batu ali-ali yang di-pĕrbuat batu pĕlotar itu ka-pada sĕgala raja dan tĕntĕra-nya itu dari-pada banyak kaum itu. Maka mĕnjadi sa-bulan lama-nya baharu-lah lĕngkap sĕgala alat pĕrkakasan dan alat angkatan orang yang hĕndak pĕrgi bĕrpĕrang. Sa-tĕlah sudah lĕngkap sakalian itu maka raja Kĕlana Hitam pun bĕrangkat kĕluar-lah dari-pada tĕmpat-nya dudok itu dĕngan rayat bala tĕntĕra-nya sĕpĕrti ombak mĕngalun dari-pada kĕbanyakan rayat-nya bĕrjalan itu mĕnuju jalan ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah pĕrjalanan sa-hari itu mĕnjadi sa-bulan lama-nya.

Sa-bĕrmula raja bĕnua Siam itu sa-tĕlah tiada bĕrapa lamanya lĕpas kĕmbali orang Kĕdah yang mĕmbawa surat dari-pada nĕgĕri Siam itu, maka raja bĕnua Siam pun mĕnitahkan ka-pada sa-orang mĕntĕri yang tua lagi yang bĕsar sa-bĕlah matahari naik mĕnaalokkan sĕgala nĕgĕri orang yang bĕrnama Kĕlaham itu dĕngan bĕbĕrapa banyak raja-raja dan rayat pĕgangan-nya turun ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah sĕrta mĕnchari raja yang bĕrasal itu sĕrta dĕngan surat bĕri gĕlar-nya raja itu. Sa-tĕlah sudah surat dan kĕlĕngkapan maka di-sĕrahkan oleh raja bĕnua Siam ka-pada mĕntĕri Kĕlaham itu. Maka mĕntĕri itu bĕrmohon lalu bĕrjalan ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah dĕngan bĕbĕrapa laksa rayat bala tĕntĕra-nya bĕrjalan itu dĕngan bĕbĕrapa mĕlaluï gunong padang hutan rimba bĕlantara.

Hata ka-pada suatu hari sampai-lah sĕgala rayat itu ka-pada suatu padang antara ka-barat nĕgĕri Lĕgur nama-nya tiba-tiba kĕlihatan-lah suatu pasokan tĕntĕra bĕrjalan tĕrlalu banyak rayat-nya. Maka oleh mĕntĕri Kĕlaham di-suroh orang bĕrtanya suku mana dan hĕndak ka-mana pĕrgi-nya dan apa nama kĕtua-nya dan apa nama raja-nya. Maka orang itu pun pĕrgi-lah bĕrtanya itu, maka bĕrtĕmu lalu bĕrtanya di-khabarkan orang itu tĕntĕra Sakai Maharaja Jĕkajaku Jaraja. Maka bĕrtanya pula suku mana; maka jawab orang itu suku raja Kĕlana Hitam hĕndak pĕrgi mĕnjadi raja di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah karna nĕgĕri itu tiada bĕraja. Maka orang mĕntĕri Kĕlaham itu pun balek-lah mĕndapat tuan-nya bĕrkhabarkan sĕgala khabaran itu. Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh mĕntĕri Kĕlaham yang dĕmikian itu maka di-suroh orang-nya mĕmukul gong gĕndang sambil bĕrhĕnti sakalian-nya. Maka tĕrkĕjut-lah maharaja Kĕlana Hitam mĕlihat orang-nya habis bĕrhĕnti itu. Maka ia bĕrtanya hal itu lagi. Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh maharaja Kĕlana Hitam sĕmbah orang itu, maka ia pun diam-lah lalu bĕrhĕnti sakalian-nya. Hata maka mĕntĕri Kĕlaham mĕmbuat surat lalu di-bĕri ka-pada orang-nya mĕmbawa bĕrjalan ka-bĕnua Siam nyatakan ia bĕrtĕmu dĕngan raja Kĕlana Hitam sĕrta dĕngan tĕntĕra-nya ĕmpat bangsa tiada-lah tĕpĕrmanaï banyak-nya hĕndak pĕrgi mĕnjadi raja di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah kĕhĕndak-nya. Maka bĕrpĕrang-lah dĕngan raja Kĕlana Hitam antara ka-barat nĕgĕri Lĕgur. Sa-tĕlah sudah surat itu di-pĕrbuat lalu di-bĕri-nya ka-pada sa-orang suroh bawa pĕrgi dĕngan sĕgĕra-nya. Maka orang itu pun mĕnyĕmbah mĕntĕri Kĕlaham itu, lalu ia bĕrjalan-lah siang malam tiada bĕrhĕnti mĕnuju jalan ka-bĕnua Siam. Sa-tĕlah itu maka mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pun suroh orang pĕrgi ka-pada raja Kĕlana Hitam katakan suroh-lah ia kĕmbali ka-tĕmpat-nya, jangan ia pĕrgi ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah karna raja-nya sudah ada turun ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu pun dĕngan titah raja bĕnua Siam hĕndak mĕnabalkan nama raja itu. Maka orang yang di-suroh itu pun pĕrgi-lah sĕrta orang itu maka di-lihat-nya sudah tĕrdiri kota tanah lĕngkap dĕngan orang yang tĕrtunggu ka-pada ĕmpat pĕnjuru kota-nya itu. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh orang mĕnunggu pintu itu, maka kata-nya, " Siapa tuan hamba ini, dan hĕndak ka-mana? " Maka sahut orang itu, hĕndak-lah tuan hamba mĕmbĕri tahu raja tuan hamba kami datang ini dĕngan surohan pĕnghulu kami mĕntĕri Kĕlaham mĕndapatkan raja tuan hamba." Maka orang itu pun sĕgĕra ia pĕrgi maalumkan ka-pada raja Kĕlana Hitam. Sa-tĕlah di-dĕngar oleh raja sĕmbah orang itu, maka titah-nya suroh bawa masok orang itu. Maka sĕgĕra pĕnunggu pintu itu kĕmbali lalu mĕmbawa orang itu masok. Sa-tĕlah sampai orang itu lalu ia mĕnyĕmbah. Maka titah raja Kĕlana Hitam, " Apa khabar tuan hamba di-suroh oleh mĕntĕri Kĕlaham mari ka-pada kami sakalian ini? ". Maka sĕmbah orang itu, " Ada pun patek di-suroh oleh pĕnghulu patek sampaikan ka-pada tuanku hĕndak-lah tuanku kĕmbali ka-tĕmpat bumi istana tuanku: akan hal tuanku hĕndak pĕrgi ka-Kĕdah mĕnjadi raja itu tiada-lah di-pĕroleh karna raja-nya sudah ada.

Sĕbab itu-lah pĕnghulu patek mĕntĕri Kĕlaham di-suroh oleh raja bĕnua Siam sĕrta dĕngan surat-nya bawa pĕrgi ka-Kĕdah mĕnamakan raja Kĕdah itu." Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh raja Kĕlana Hitam maka naik-lah marah-nya muka-nya merah sĕpĕrti bunga raya sĕrta di-titah-nya, "Main yang mana kamu tewas dan pĕpĕrangan yang mana kamu sudah alah tiada patut-kah aku mĕnjadi raja di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah? Jika tiada boleh aku mĕnjadi raja dĕngan baik maka ku ambil juga dĕngan sĕnjata-ku. Maka hĕndak-lah kamu katakan ka-pada pĕnghulu ĕngkau itu jikalau ia hĕndak mĕnggalang-galang atau mĕnyĕkati kami sakalian ini hĕndak pĕrgi ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu, kĕluar-lah ia ka-medan pĕpĕrangan mĕlihatkan pĕrtikaman kami baik esok atau sĕkarang ini, itu pun mana-mana kĕsukaan kamu." Maka orang itu pun bĕrmohon kĕmbali. Tĕlah datang ka-pada pĕnghulu-nya mĕntĕri Kĕlaham sakalian-nya di-sĕmbahkan sĕgala pĕrkataan raja Kĕlana Hitam itu. Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pĕsan raja Kĕlana Hitam itu, maka sangat-lah marah-nya sĕrta hĕndak bĕrpĕrang dan mĕngajak ia ka-medan pĕpĕrangan sĕrta mĕnyuroh siap sa-buah kota yang kukoh. Sa-tĕlah sudah sa-buah kota itu dĕngan alat sĕnjata-nya dan orang-nya pun bĕrtunggu ka-pada ĕmpat pĕnjuru kota itu, maka pada malam waktu kĕtika saat yang baik pada pĕtang itu di-ambil oleh mĕntĕri Kĕlaham sa-orang anak raja yang bĕrnama Phra Surin di-jadikan kĕpala pĕrang di-suroh-nya arak pada kĕliling kota sĕrta mĕmalu bunyi-bunyian dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya yang amat gĕmpita bunyi sĕrta mĕmalu gĕndang pĕrang. Tĕlah sampai tiga kali lalu di-bawa orang-lah masok dudok. Maka pada malam itu di-pukul orang-lah gĕndang pĕrang itu sa-malam-malaman maka kĕdĕngaran ka-kota raja Kĕlana Hitam bunyi tanda mĕngajak pĕrang itu. Maka ia pun mĕnyuroh maharaja Dahar al alam mĕmalukan gĕndang pĕrang ka-pada malam itu tĕrlalu-lah sayu bunyi-nya. Sa-tĕlah datang-lah pada waktu tuan putĕri Shahrin Maghrib masok bĕradu ka-dalam mahaligai-nya maka sĕmayam raja Shah Alam di-sĕri takhta singgasana di-tĕpi langit-nya. Hata maka kĕdua pihak kĕluar-lah dari dalam kota bĕrdiri bĕrsaf-saf di-tĕngah mĕdan. Maka mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pun mĕnyuroh tampil raja Angsurin mĕngikat pĕpĕrangan. Maka ia pun mĕngaturkan sĕgala raja-raja dan hulubalang para pĕnggawa pahlawan yang bĕrnama Chakar Dĕngki Kala, raja Phra Angsurin sĕndiri jadi saf sa-bĕlah kanan dan raja Phra Angkurin jadi saf kiri raja Phra Angkunirat jadi tuboh dĕngan sĕgala raja-raja pĕrdana mĕntĕri Kĕlaham sakalian-nya, dan raja Phra Alu Alangna mĕnjadi ekur-nya. Tĕlah ikat-lah pĕpĕrangan masing-masing bĕrkĕmas diri-nya. Sa-tĕlah di-lihat oleh raja Kĕlana Hitam maka ia pun mĕngikatkan pĕpĕrangan sĕpĕrti ikatan lawan-nya juga, maharaja Dahar al Alam mĕnjadi saf kanan dan maharaja Dahar al Salam jadi saf kiri dan maharaja Dar al Gunong dĕngan sĕgala hulubalang dan raja Kĕlana Hitam. Maka maharaja Jĕkajaku mĕnjadi ekur-nya. Sa-tĕlah sudah mĕngikat pĕrang maka lalu bĕrsama tampil bĕrpĕrang laksana kala tĕrapit bĕramok-amokan dan ekur sama ekur pun bĕrsimbat-lah bĕkarang mĕmbicharakan bisa sĕnjata-nya. Maka kĕdua pihak pun sama mĕnyĕrbukan diri-nya tiada bĕrundur sama bĕrkisar sama bĕrpusing sĕpĕrti gasing-gasing. Maka rioh gugup-lah jika tagar di-langit pun tiada-lah kĕdĕngaran lagi oleh kĕsangatan tĕmpek sorak-nya bĕrchampur pula dĕngan bunyi suara sĕgala gajah kuda. Maka lĕbu duli pun bĕrbangkit-lah ka-udara siang chuacha mĕnjadi kĕlam kabut, maka tĕrlindong-lah rupa-nya tĕrbangan panji-panji di-bawah payong itu. Maka di-situ jua ada sa-orang laki-laki Pandak Tukan nama-nya mĕmakai pakaian sa-lĕngkapan mĕmĕgang sĕnjata chĕroboh bĕrantai di-pĕrmain-main ia bĕrkĕndĕraan bĕrĕbaan suara sikap-nya sangat mĕmbĕri gĕli hebat laku-nya, itu-lah laku raja gĕrgasi yang bĕrnama Sang Wira, ĕmpat bĕrsaudara sa-orang laki-laki bĕsar panjang rupa-nya dudok di-atas wilmana sakti mĕmĕgang sĕnjata-nya tĕrlalu dahshat sikap-nya itu-lah saudara-nya tĕngah yang bĕrnama Sang Dati Kuasa, dan sa-orang pula dudok di-atas baghal angkasa mĕmĕgang sĕnjata-nya chakĕra sakti dan mĕmakai sa-lĕngkapan itu-lah yang bĕrnama Phra Sang Che Siam; dan sa-orang dudok di-atas singa angkara mĕmĕgang sĕnjata-nya panah sakti bĕrnama Phra Sang Mangsa Upaya. Maka kĕdua pihak orang bĕrpĕrang itu pun bĕrhĕnti-lah dari-pada bĕrpĕrang mĕnyurohkan solo bĕrtanya kaum siapa dan dari mana datang-nya raja-nya. Maka jawab tĕntĕra yang datang kata-nya, "Raja kami raja gĕrgasi datang dĕngan pĕnyuroh raja Siam mĕmbantukan mĕntĕri Kĕlaham dan mĕnyuroh tangkap sĕgala raja lawan-nya bawa pulang ka-bĕnua Siam." Sa-tĕlah sudah dĕngan solo kĕdua pihak, maka ia pun kĕmbali-lah mĕmbĕri tahu akan pĕnghulu-nya. Sa-tĕlah dĕmikian maka kata Phra Sang Wira Angkara ka-pada hulubalang dan rayat-nya di-suroh sĕrbu masok sakali ka-dalam tĕntĕra raja Kĕlana Hitam itu jangan pandang mĕmandang lagi. Sa-tĕlah itu datang-lah langgar dari bĕlakang raja Kĕlana Hitam. Maka raja Kĕlana Hitam pun mĕnyuroh orang-nya bĕrbahagi dua kĕtumbokan bĕrhadap balek ka-bĕlakang-nya mĕnjadi sĕrba salah-lah kaum tĕntĕra raja Kĕlana Hitam hĕndak mĕlawan kaum gĕrgasi itu karna dĕras datang sĕrbu-nya. Sa-kĕtika ia bĕrpĕrang maka bangkit pula lĕbu duli naik ka-udara dan bĕrasap-lah kĕlihatan tĕntĕra-nya sĕpĕrti laut laku-nya ĕmpat puloh payong bĕrkĕmbangan rĕbah rempoh rupa tunggul-nya di-bawakan bĕrlari dan bĕrjuluran rupa panji-panji-nya itu-lah raja yang taalok ka-bĕnua Siam. Maka tiada-lah sakalian bĕrtanya lagi datang sĕrbu mĕngamok ka-dalam tĕntĕra raja Kĕlana Hitam. Maka tĕntĕra-nya sakalian pun tĕrkĕpong-lah di-kĕlilingi oleh tĕntĕra raja Siam, di-dalam itu pun di-lawan-nya juga.

Ada pun rayat bala tĕntĕra raja Kĕlana Hitam banyak tuboh-nya tiada di-makan oleh bĕsi karna tuboh-nya itu bĕrlĕbu dan rambut-nya kuning dan hati pĕrut-nya banyak kĕtĕgar. Sa-tĕlah di-lihat oleh pĕnggawa maharaja Dahar al Alam dan maharaja Dar al Salam itu pun sĕgĕra-lah mĕngikat pĕrang sama-lah tĕgoh-nya tiada bĕrurak kĕdua kaum itu sĕrta pula sama sabar hati-nya lalu tampil-lah masok mĕngamok ka-dalam tĕntĕra gĕrgasi yang tiada tĕpĕrmĕnai banyak-nya itu. Maka banyak-lah kaum gĕrgasi itu mati bĕrtimbun-timbun bangkai-nya darah pun banyak tumpah ka-bumi sĕpĕrti ayeh sĕbak laku-nya dan mĕnghanyutkan bangkai lintang pukang. Maka ikatan pĕrang raja Phra Angsurin dan raja Phra Angkurin pun lĕmah-lah oleh tĕrundur-lah ka-bĕlakang. Maka sorah kaum raja Kĕlana Hitam itu pun tĕrbakar-lah lalu mĕngguling pĕrlahan-lahan karna takut akan sĕrbu pĕnggawa gĕrgasi itu. Maka pĕnggawa gĕrgasi yang tiga ribu itu pun sĕgĕra mĕnyĕrbukan diri-nya ka-dalam tĕntĕra pĕnggawa raja Dahar al Alam lima ribu pĕnggawa-nya itu. Sa-kĕtika ia mĕngamok maka banyak-lah mati-nya. Maka bangkai sĕgala Sĕmang Wila itu pun bĕrtimbun-timbun sĕpĕrti bukit; maka darah pun banyak-lah tumpah ka-bumi. Maka sĕgala tĕntĕra Sĕmang Wila itu pun pĕchah-lah pĕrang-nya undur lari ka-bĕlakang pĕnggawa lima ribu itu. Maka bĕrtĕmu-lah pĕnggawa sama pĕnggawa. Maka tĕmpek-lah kĕdua-nya bĕramok-amokan tĕrlalu ramai. Maka sĕgala pĕnggawa Sĕmang dan Wila itu pun tiada mĕndĕrita hĕndak mĕnahani lagi di-amok oleh pĕnggawa gĕrgasi itu sĕpĕrti harimau mĕnĕrkam dan mĕngĕrahkan kĕpala kambing rupa-nya. Maka sakalian pun undur-lah lain dari-pada itu habis mati hanya tinggal tiga ribu lagi sĕrta tiga orang pĕnglima-nya. Maka kĕtiga orang itu pun tĕrlalu-lah marah-nya, lalu tĕmpek pula mĕlawan pĕrang mĕmĕchahkan tĕntĕra gĕrgasi yang datang mĕngguling itu baharu sa-orang dua orang ia mĕmbunoh lalu bĕrtĕmu dĕngan pĕnglima gĕrgasi Jangkani Kala sa-orang nama-nya Pĕrjang Kala sa-orang nama-nya Kĕjang Kala sa-orang nama-nya Hasing Kala sa-orang nama-nya tĕngah mĕngusir dĕngan gada-nya. Maka di-lintangi oleh pĕnglima Sĕmang Wila kĕtiga orang pĕnglima Sĕmang Pĕkĕrma Bukit bĕrpukul-pukul gada dĕngan Jangkani Kala Sĕri Nira Gunong pĕnglima Wila bĕrtĕmu dĕngan pĕnglima gĕrgasi Pĕrjang Kala bĕrpalu-palukan gada juga. Maka Biru gunong pĕnglima Sĕmang tĕrmasa dĕngan pĕnglima Kĕrjang Kala. Maka tinggal-lah pĕnggawa kĕĕnam itu. Maka pĕnglima gĕrgasi lima orang itu pun tĕrlantas-lah ka-dalam tĕntĕra pĕnglima Sĕmang Wila tiga ribu itu. Ada pun pĕnglima gĕrgasi kĕĕnam itu bĕrpĕrang-lah dĕngan Pĕkĕrma Bukit bĕrkisar-kisaran. Maka datang-lah marah pĕnglima Jangkani Kala lalu mĕmbuangkan gada-nya mĕlompat mĕnangkap pĕnglima Pĕkĕrma Bukit. Maka ia pun sĕgĕra mĕnangkap akan Jangkani Kala gĕrgasi dĕngan bĕrkĕras-kĕrasan kĕdua-nya. Sa-kĕtika dapat-lah di-tangkap oleh pĕnglima gĕrgasi, maka di-sĕrahkan ka-pada orang-nya. Maka bĕrtagar-lah bunyi sorak sĕgala tĕntĕra gĕrgasi bĕrgĕmuroh. Maka pĕnglima gĕrgasi pun mĕnĕmpoh pula masok mĕlawan tĕntĕra maharaja Dahar al Alam dan maharaja Dar al Salam. Maka kĕdua-nya tĕrkĕjut-lah mĕlihat tĕntĕra-nya lari pĕchah bĕlah. Maka maharaja Dahar al Alam pun sudah tĕrtangkap-lah di-ikat orang pĕlarikan pada kĕtumbokan mĕntĕri Kĕlaham itu. Maka sorak tĕntĕra gĕrgasi pun bĕrgĕmuroh bunyi-nya. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh maharaja Dar al Salam sahabat-nya sudah tĕrtangkap, maka tĕrlalu-lah sayu bĕlas hati-nya lalu mĕmbuangkan panah yang ditangan-nya mĕngambil pĕdang pula mĕmarang ka-kiri ka-kanan sĕpĕrti orang gila rupa-nya maka datang-lah marah raja gĕrgasi Sang Wira Angkara. Maka sĕgĕra ia mĕngambil sĕnjata-nya yang bĕrnama chakĕra itu bĕrlari-lari datang kĕdua-nya ka-hadapan Phra Angsurin. Maka sĕgĕra di-chakar oleh Sang Dati Kuasa khanjar yang di-tangan raja Kĕlana Hitam itu patah dua tĕrpĕlanting dari-pada tangan-nya. Maka raja Kĕlana Hitam pun bĕrbalek hĕndak mĕngunus kĕris-nya pula. Maka sĕgĕra di-lotarkan oleh Sang Wira Angkasa dĕngan chĕroboh bĕrantai-nya kĕna tuboh raja Kĕlana Hitam bĕrbĕlit-bĕlit sĕnjata itu mĕnjadi tĕrikat-lah raja Kĕlana Hitam rĕbah tĕrguling-guling ka-tanah. Maka di-bawa orang-lah raja Kĕlana Hitam ka-hadapan mĕntĕri Kĕlaham. Maka mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pun mĕnyuroh himpunkan sĕgala rayat raja Kĕlana Hitam bawa ka-hadapan-nya. Maka sakalian mĕreka itu pun datang mĕnyĕrahkan diri-nya. Sa-tĕlah itu maka mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pun bĕrangkat-lah masok ka-dalam kota-nya. Maka kata mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pada raja gĕrgasi, "Hĕndak-lah tuan hamba kĕĕmpat bawa raja Kĕlana Hitam dĕngan sĕgala raja-raja dan mĕntĕri hulubalang rayat sakalian yang tĕrtangkap itu ambil tuan hamba singgah ka-pada tĕmpat raja Kĕlana Hitam ini ambil dari-pada sĕgala anak pĕrĕmpuan dan harta bĕnda-nya sakali pĕrsĕmbahkan ka-pada duli tuan kita raja yang maha bĕsar itu bo̊leh di-bĕri-nya satu-satu bumi tanah yang bĕrkĕnan pada hati-nya karna kaum raja Kĕlana Hitam tĕrlalu-lah kĕras hati-nya sĕrta tuboh-nya tiada di-makan oleh sĕnjata." Maka sĕmbah raja Sang Wira Angkasa, "Bahawa sa-sunggoh-nya jikalau lain orang dari-pada tuanku mĕnjadi lawan-nya nĕschaya alah olehnya." Maka kata mĕntĕri Kĕlaham, "Itu-lah hamba katakan pada tuan hamba jangan di-alpakan sakalian ikatan pĕpĕrangan kita dan jangan di-lĕpaskan dia biar-lah sampai ka-pada tuan kita boleh ia sakalian mĕmbĕri janji ka-pada tuan kita." Maka sĕmbah Phra Sang Dati Kuasa, "Tiada-kah duli tuanku kĕmbali bĕrsama-sama ka-bĕnua Siam?". Maka kata mĕntĕri Kĕlaham, "Akan hamba ini hĕndak langsong ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah mĕrajakan raja didalam nĕgĕri itu, maka sĕkarang ini bĕrtĕmu dĕngan raja Kĕlana Hitam ia pula kunun hĕndak mĕnjadi raja di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah ini dĕngan angkatan sakali, maka bĕrtĕmu dĕngan hamba pada tĕmpat ini di-suroh ia sakalian kĕmbali ka-tĕmpat-nya di-katanya pula hamba mĕnggalang-galangkan kĕhĕndak-nya sĕrta disuroh-nya pula hamba kĕluar ka-medan pĕpĕrangan itu-lah yang tĕlah jadi ini." Maka sĕmbah raja Lĕgur dan sĕgala raja-raja suku yang hadzir lima buah nĕgĕri itu yang hampir kota mĕntĕri Kĕlaham, "Jikalau dĕmikian hal tĕngku di-titahkan oleh raja yang maha bĕsar sa-patut-lah bagi hamba sakalian saudara bĕrsaudara lima ĕnam buah nĕgĕri ka-sa-bĕlah sĕlatan mĕnanggara ini mĕngiringkan duli tĕngku hĕndak turun ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu, siapa tahu kalau-kalau datang pula sĕtĕru musoh boleh-lah hamba tumpu sakalian ini mĕnjadi kawan dan mĕramaikan tĕngku." Maka kata mĕntĕri Kĕlaham ka-pada raja Lĕgur, "Jangan-lah saudara-ku sakalian mĕnaroh susah hamba hĕndak pĕrgi ini sakadar bantu hamba mĕramaikan pĕpĕrangan raja Kĕlana Hitam itu pun ada-lah, hĕndak-lah saudara-ku pulang ka-tĕmpat masing-masing, jika datang haru hara hamba bĕri khabar ka-pada saudara hamba sĕrta himpunkan sĕgala rayat mana yang ada hidup."

Sa-tĕlah itu maka mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pun bĕrjamu makan minum bĕrsuka-sukaan tiga ĕmpat hari lama-nya di-kota itu. Maka raja gĕrgasi kĕĕmpat itu pun bĕrmohon-lah kĕmbali mĕmbawa raja Kĕlana Hitam Pĕrut itu ka-bĕnua Siam, dan sĕgala raja-raja Lĕgur sakalian-nya pun bĕrmohon-lah kĕmbali ka-nĕgĕri-nya sĕrta mĕngantarkan makanan pada mĕntĕri Kĕlaham. Maka mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pun bĕrjalan-lah dĕngan sĕgala tĕntara-nya sĕrta dĕngan bĕbĕrapa pula sĕgala raja-raja yang lain. Hata maka tĕrus-lah mĕntĕri Kĕlaham bĕrjalan ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah mĕngikut susur tĕpi laut. Maka tatkala itu gunong Tanjong itu sudah jauh ka-daratan dan ka-habisan pulau itu Pulau Kĕring itu pun sudah mĕnjadi daratan. Maka ia sakalian pun bĕrjalan-lah susur tĕpi laut itu di-lihat-nya banyak sĕgala pĕrahu bĕlayar pĕrgi mari. Maka sampai ka-pada suatu tanah yang tinggi sadikit maka pada tĕmpat itu ada-lah anak sungai. Maka banyak ikan dan binatang pĕrburuan ada-lah di-situ, maka mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pun bĕrhĕnti-lah mĕnyuroh orang-nya pĕrbuat sa-biji kota parit-nya akan tĕmpat ia hĕndak bĕrmain sĕrta mĕnyuroh orang pĕrgi mĕmbawa surat ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat jikalau ada sudah raja di-dalam kota nĕgĕri itu pun bawa-lah sĕrta raja itu bĕrmain-main ambil ikan dan bĕrburu sĕgala binatang di-dalam hutan karna banyak sudah sakalian-nya siap dĕngan kota parit ia sakalian pĕrbuat tanah di-sungai Sala nama-nya. Maka orang yang di-suroh itu pun bĕrmohon lalu bĕrjalan mĕnuju ka-kota raja Bĕsiong. Tiada bĕrapa lama-nya ia bĕrjalan itu, maka sampai-lah ka-kota raja Bĕsiong. Tatkala itu maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat dĕngan raja-nya pun dudok mĕngorek Sungai Kuala Muda nama-nya karna sakalian-nya pun hĕndak mĕndĕkatkan dĕngan kota aur raja Bĕsiong itu dĕngan laut sĕrta hĕndak mĕmbĕtulkan tali ayer sungai bĕsar itu, karna sungai lama-nya itu sangat bĕrbĕlit, lagi pun hĕndak di-kambuskan mĕnjadi sungai tua-lah. Maka orang itu pun datang-lah mĕmbĕri surat pĕnghulu Kĕlaham itu, maka di-suroh raja oleh mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat. Sa-tĕlah sudah maka masing-masing pun kĕmbali-lah ka-kota sakalian-nya bĕrsiapkan sĕgala kĕlĕngkapan raja hĕndak bĕrangkat ka-hutan rimba bĕlantara itu sĕrta mĕmbawa alat pĕrburuan dan alat mĕngambil ikan. Sa-tĕlah sudah maka bĕrangkat-lah sakalian mĕngiringkan raja-nya itu tĕrlalu-lah ramai-nya bĕrjalan itu sambil mĕmungut sĕgala bunga-bungaan dan buah-buahan barang di-mana hari malam bĕrhĕnti-lah sakalian bĕrbuat pondok tĕratak, jika hari siang mĕnchari wilahar dan kubang mĕnangkap ikan tĕrlalu-lah ramai-nya, maka antara tiga ĕmpat hari bĕrhĕnti di-situ, maka bĕrjalan-lah pula hingga sampai ka-kĕpala gunong Jĕrai. Maka di-situ pun tĕrlalu ramai-nya sakalian mĕmungut buah-buahan; lalu bĕrjalan pula ka-tĕpi laut itu pun bĕrhĕnti pula mĕngambil ikan laut dan kĕtam siput pun tĕrlalu-lah banyak sa-kali. Hata maka sampai-lah ka-Sala itu, maka di-lihat-nya sudah tĕrdiri sa-buah kota dĕngan balai-nya yang di-pĕrbuat oleh tĕntĕra Siam. Maka sĕgala mĕntĕri Siam pun sĕgĕra-lah kĕluar mĕnyambut raja Kĕdah dĕngan mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat itu bawa masok ka-dalam kota langsong naik dudok ka-balai pĕnghadapan sĕmayam-lah raja-nya. Maka mĕntĕri hulubalang sakalian pun dudok mĕnyĕmbah sĕrta mĕnjunjong duli raja-nya, lalu mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pun mĕngĕluarkan surat dari-pada raja bĕnua Siam itu lalu di-unjok ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat. Maka mĕntĕri pun mĕnyambut di-junjong-nya sĕrta di-suroh bacha surat itu. Tĕlah sudah maka tĕtap-lah nama raja itu Raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat. Tĕlah dĕmikian maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun mĕnchĕritakan pĕrentah bĕroleh anak raja itu dĕngan di-ambil oleh gajah kĕsaktian itu dari-pada mula-nya datang ka-akhir-nya ka-pada mĕntĕri Kĕlaham. Maka mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pun bĕrkata, “ Datang ini pun dĕngan di-titah oleh raja maka bĕsar dĕngan dĕmikian jua kĕhĕndak-nya. Maka sĕkarang ini tĕlah sĕmpurna-lah sudah. Di-dalam itu pun sa-muga-muga-nya pantas hamba sakalian datang bala ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah ini; jika tiada, alang-kah susah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat dĕngan raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat bĕrpĕrang dĕngan raja Kĕlana Hitam ia datang hĕndak mĕnjadi raja di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah? ” Maka kata mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, “ Sĕkarang mana juga raja Kĕlana Hitam itu? ” Maka kata mĕntĕri Kĕlaham, “ Sudah hamba bĕrpĕrang dĕngan dia, lalu hamba suroh tangkap sakalian-nya hamba hantarkan ka-bĕnua Siam ka-pada raja yang maha bĕsar.” Maka kata mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, “ Jika dĕmikian bĕruntong-lah hamba sakalian tiada hĕndak mati.” Sa-tĕlah itu lalu di-pĕrjamukan makan minum pula ka-pada sakalian-nya itu sĕrta dĕngan mĕmalu bunyi-bunyian dan mĕngajarkan raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat itu sharat orang mĕnjadi raja mau-lah baik-baik mĕnaroh banyak sabar dan mĕngasehani di-atas sĕgala rayat bala dan dari-pada hamba sahaya sakali pun mau-lah dĕngan adil dan murah hati dĕngan mĕmbĕri dĕrma kurnia sĕdĕkah akan fakir miskin; dan yang patut di-bunoh sa-hari itu pun hĕndak-lah di-taroh sampai tiga ĕmpat hari supaya di-halusi baik-baik baharu di-bunoh; dan yang mana jadi raja di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah bumi tanah itu itu pun jangan dudok sa-tĕmpat buat kota parit tĕmpat diam itu dan mau-lah ada sa-orang raja yang mĕmĕgang nĕgĕri mau-lah suatu kota; maka mĕnjadi ramai-lah orang bumi tanah Kĕdah, baharu-lah sangat mĕnjadi tanah daratan; yang tĕmpat kita dudok ini pun baik tĕmpat bumi tanah yang baik dĕngan rata-nya boleh di-pĕrbuat sĕpĕrti kota parit akan tĕmpat sĕgala raja-raja hĕndak buat nĕgĕri dudok itu. Tĕlah dĕmikian pĕngajaran mĕntĕri Kĕlaham, maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat dan sakalian-nya pun mĕmbĕnarkan dĕngan pĕngajaran itu. Maka dudok-lah raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat dĕngan mĕntĕri Kĕlaham bĕrmain-main ikan laut dan ikan darat sĕrta mĕmburu sĕgala binatang dari-pada rusa kijang tĕrlalu-lah suka hati raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat bĕrmain-main itu, jika malam di-bawa tidur dudok bĕrsama-sama, jika siang bangun dari-pada tidur-nya di-bawa bĕrjalan naik gajah sa-orang sa-ekur naik dĕngan aring dan anjing pĕmburu di-iringkan oleh mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa sakalian tĕrlalu ramai dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya pun bĕrgĕmuroh tĕrlalu-lah adzmatnya.

Hata ka-pada suatu hari maka sampai waktu tĕngah hari rĕmbang, maka sakalian-nya pun bĕrhĕnti-lah lĕlah-nya dari-pada mĕngambat rusa dan kijang itu. Maka raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat pun bĕrhĕnti di-atas gajah kĕnaikan-nya, maka tĕrlihat ada sa-buah rumah orang tua bĕrdua laki istĕri-nya. Maka adalah pula sa-batang buloh bĕtong di-dalam buloh yang banyak itu dudok tĕrsandar ka-pada susur rumah orang itu. Maka adalah sa-batang kĕchil pĕrdu-nya dan kĕchil hujong dan sama tĕngahnya bĕsar sa-ruas buloh. Maka di-titahkan oleh raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat di-suroh kĕrat ambil buloh yang bĕsar itu sa-ruas di-suroh-nya bawa pulang ka-kota-nya di-dalam hati-nya tĕrlalu-lah kaseh akan buloh itu. Sa-bĕlah pĕtang hari matahari pun tĕdoh-lah sadikit maka masing-masing pun mĕngusir pula sĕgala pĕburuan tĕrlalu-lah ramai-nya dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya. Maka hari pun malam-lah, sakalian-nya kĕmbali ka-kota dan ka-tĕmpat pĕrhĕntian-nya masing-masing; dĕmikian-lah pada tiap-tiap hari pĕkĕrjaan raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat di-bawa oleh mĕntĕri Kĕlaham dĕngan mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat bĕrmain ka-hutan Sala itu dan ka-laut bĕrmain mĕngambil ikan laut itu pun dĕmikian juga sĕrta mĕnanti orang mĕmbuat pohon bunga ĕmas dan bunga perak tanda pĕrsĕmbahan raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat sudah jadi raja di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu. Antara lima bulan lama-nya maka raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat dĕngan mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun bĕrmohon-lah ka-pada mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pulang ka-nĕgĕri Kota Kuala Muda itu. Maka mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pun dĕmikian juga dĕngan bĕbĕrapa pĕngajarnya orang mĕnjadi raja itu. Maka ia pun mĕmbawa pulang pohon bunga ĕmas bunga perak itu akan raja bĕnua Siam sĕrta tanda ia datang mĕrajakan raja di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu; dĕngan sĕbab itu-lah mĕntĕri Kĕlaham lama bĕnar ia diam di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah tolong mĕlĕngkapkan sĕgala jĕnis bunga ĕmas itu mĕnjadi ia pĕrbuat kota dan rumah di-sungai Sala itu sĕrta bĕrmain-main ka-hutan bĕrburu mĕngambil ikan sĕrta mĕnanti sudah bunga ĕmas itu. Sa-tĕlah sudah di-pĕrbuat-nya maka mĕntĕri Kĕlaham pun sama-sama bĕrjalan kĕmbali ka-bĕnua Siam mĕngadap raja yang maha bĕsar pĕrsĕmbahkan sakalian hal yang tĕlah tĕrlalu itu di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah dĕngan pĕrsĕmbahan bunga ĕmas itu. Hata tiada-lah bĕrputus raja bĕnua Siam dari-pada mĕngantar surat utusan ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah tiada-lah lagi bĕrsĕlang tahun tanda bĕrkaseh pĕrgi datang pada tiap-tiap tahun-nya. Ada pun raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat dĕngan mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pulang ka-kota Kuala Muda itu. Maka tĕrlalu-lah banyak-nya masing-masing bĕroleh daging pĕrburuan dan ikan. Maka dudok-lah raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat dĕngan mĕntĕri keĕmpat di-kota Kuala Muda itu mĕmĕrentahkan sangat-lah murah-nya. Maka raja pĕrĕmpuan sangat-lah kaseh-nya akan raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat tĕtapi pun sunggoh dĕmikian ada sa-dikit tiada suka dĕngan sĕbab anakanda baginda itu tiada di-pĕroleh anak itu. Maka raja pĕrĕmpuan dĕngan bĕbĕrapa kaul dan bĕrnadzar dĕngan bĕrtapaan mĕminta doa akan datok nenek orang tua dan raja yang dahulu-dahulu biar boleh anak raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat itu. Hata antara bĕrapa tahun dan bulan-nya maka istĕri raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat pun hamil-lah lalu di-adakan oleh raja pĕrĕmpuan dan raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat dĕngan sĕpĕrti-nya. Sa-tĕlah gĕnap-lah bulan-nya, maka istĕri raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat pun bĕranak-lah sa-orang laki-laki yang tĕrlalu elok rupa paras-nya mĕnurut rupa nenda baginda raja yang tua Marong Mahapodisat tĕrlalu-lah baik rupa-nya. Maka tĕrlalu-lah suka raja pĕrĕmpuan mĕlihat chunda baginda itu, lalu di-pungut oleh raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat anak mĕntĕri hulubalang jadi inang pĕngasoh-nya. Maka raja Ong Mahapodisat pun mĕnamakan anakanda baginda itu dĕngan nama raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa. Dĕmi raja pĕrĕmpuan dan sakalian-nya mĕndĕngar nama chunda baginda itu sĕpĕrti gĕlaran nama raja yang bĕsar itu, maka masing-masing pun tĕrlalu-lah suka. Maka di-pĕlihara-lah oleh raja pĕrĕmpuan chunda baginda itu dĕngan sĕpĕrti-nya. Dĕngan hal yang dĕmikian makin sa-hari makin bĕsar-lah bĕrtambah dĕngan rupa paras-nya. Maka sakalian yang mĕmandang pun gĕmar kaseh akan dia. Ada pun ayah-nya raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat akan buloh bĕtong itu di-taroh-nya susur dĕngan tĕmpat pĕraduan-nya tiada-lah bĕrjauh dĕngan dia karna sangat kaseh akan-nya sĕrta pula buloh itu pun makin sahari makin bĕsar. Sa-tĕlah dĕmikian maka gĕnap-lah bilangan dan waktu yang sĕjahtĕra maka buloh bĕtong itu pun pĕchah-lah lalu kĕluar sa-orang kanak-kanak laki-laki tĕrlalu sakali baik rupa paras-nya. Maka sakalian pun tĕrkĕjut-lah dĕngan hairan mĕlihat budak itu. Maka raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat pun sĕgĕra mĕngambil mĕnjadikan anak-nya sĕrta dĕngan inang pĕngasoh-nya; maka di-namakan budak itu raja Buloh Bĕtong; maka di-pĕliharakan-nya lah dĕngan sĕpĕrti-nya mĕngikut istiadat anak raja yang bĕsar-bĕsar juga dari-pada sa-hari ka-pada sa-bulan bĕrtambah-tambah-lah rupa-nya dĕngan elok sĕgala budi- pĕkĕrti-nya itu. Maka raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat kĕdua laki istĕri pun tĕrlalu-lah mĕnaroh sayang-nya ka-pada raja Buloh Bĕtong itu sĕpĕrti anakanda baginda raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa itu-lah di-pĕrbĕla-nya tiada bĕrlainan lagi. Maka baginda muafakat dĕngan mĕntĕri keĕmpat tiada suka hĕndak dudok di-kota raja Bĕsiong karna ia bĕroleh putĕra itu. Maka mĕntĕri keĕmpat pun mĕngajak raja itu pĕrgi bĕrjalan mĕnchari ikan ka-tĕpi laut sambil bĕrmain-main mĕmburu sĕgala binatang. Sa-tĕlah dĕmikian maka bĕrjalan-lah sakalian-nya dari-pada tĕpi laut Kuala Muda itu maka sampai-lah ka-Tanjong Putĕri. Maka di-lihat-nya tanah bumi itu tiada jua bĕrkĕnan di-hati-nya; maka bĕrjalan langsong ka-bukit Mĕriam, maka masok-lah di-hati-nya lalu di-pĕrbuat kota istana di-atas Bukit Mĕriam itu hĕndak hampir dĕngan bukit Pĕnjara raja Bĕsiong. Maka raja Bĕsiong pun bĕrkota juga di-bukit Pĕnjara itu sungai pun elok yang bĕrnama sungai Dĕdap. Maka tĕmpat itu pun di-pĕrbuat suatu kota tanah kalau-kalau ada di-langgar orang. Maka raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat pun bĕrtitah ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat mĕnyuroh orang pĕrbuat kota istana ka-pada tĕmpat itu. Sa-tĕlah itu maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun mĕnyuroh-lah sakalian orang pĕrbuat-lah. Maka baginda itu pun tiada khali lagi bĕrulang-ulang mĕngadapi orang bĕkĕrja itu.

Bĕrmula maka ada-lah ka-pada suatu hari datang ayer bah sangat-lah bĕsar-nya. Maka raja pĕrĕmpuan istĕri raja Bĕsiong pĕrgi ka-sungai. Maka di-lihat-nya ada sa-buah bukit yang kĕchil sĕpĕrti sa-buah rumah rupa-nya hanyut hilir dari hulu sungai Kuala Muda itu yang tĕramat puteh rupa-nya mĕnuju ka-pada raja pĕrĕmpuan. Dĕmi di-lihat-nya bueh jua rupa-nya yang datang itu, maka di-harong oleh raja pĕrĕmpuan bueh itu. Hata maka sampai ka-tĕngah bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan sa-orang budak pĕrĕmpuan yang tĕramat baik rupa paras-nya. Maka sĕgĕra di-ambil oleh raja pĕrĕmpuan budak itu di-bawa kĕmbali ka-istana. Sa-tĕlah itu di-namai oleh raja pĕrĕmpuan budak itu Putĕri Sĕluang. Maka di-pĕliharakan sĕpĕrti anak di-jadikan sĕrta di-bĕri inang pĕngasoh-nya. Maka raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat tĕrlalu-lah kaseh mĕsĕra-nya oleh mĕlihat rupa paras-nya sĕpĕrti anakan indĕra dewa rupa sĕrta dĕngan laku-nya Putĕri Sĕluang itu. Maka di-kĕnakan oleh raja pĕrĕmpuan sĕgala kĕlĕngkapan pakaian anak raja-raja. Maka makin sangat bĕrtambah-tambah baik rupa-nya dari-pada sa-hari ka-pada sa-hari makin bĕsar dan chĕrdek-nya. Maka raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat pun tiada bĕrhĕnti dĕngan bĕrulang-ulang mĕngĕrahkan sĕgala rayat mĕngĕrjakan kota istana di-bukit Mĕriam itu dan mĕnyuroh orang aturkan rumah dan pondok tĕratak sĕgala orang pĕrgi mĕngambil ikan. Maka tĕrlalu-lah ramai-nya sakalian ka-pada masa itu di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah karna sangat adil dan insaf raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat di-atas sĕgala rayat bala sĕrta pula dĕngan baik budi bahasa-nya. Maka tiada-lah tĕraniaya lagi sĕgala isi nĕgĕri itu dan sĕgala makanan dari-pada aneka jenis pun tĕrlalu maamur-nya. Hata maka maharaja Phra Ong Mahawangsa pun bĕsar-lah sĕdang rĕmaja putĕra patut ia bĕroleh rumah sudah dĕngan baik budi pĕkĕrti-nya sĕrta dĕngan tĕgur sapa-nya. Maka di-suroh oleh ayah-nya bĕrmain-main sĕnjata bĕrtikam-tikaman di-atas kuda dan bĕrlawan dĕngan raja Buloh Bĕtong. Maka jadi pandai-lah kĕdua-nya naik kuda dan bĕrmain sĕnjata pada sa-gĕnap tĕpi laut itu. Maka raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat pun mĕnchari sa-orang anak raja pĕrĕmpuan yang baik paras-nya di-kahwinkan dĕngan raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa di-bawa-nya dudok bĕrsama-sama di-kota yang baharu di-pĕrbuat itu. Maka raja Buloh Bĕtong pun di-nikahkan dĕngan Putĕri Sĕluang itu. Maka di-sĕrah oleh baginda kota istana lama yang bĕkas raja Bĕsiong itu ka-pada anakanda baginda kĕdua-nya itu. Maka mĕnjadi pĕrgi datang-lah raja Buloh Bĕtong mĕngadap ayah-nya dan bĕrmain dĕngan saudara-nya raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa. Maka kota kĕdua buah itu pun makin ramai tiada bĕrputus sĕgala dagang sĕntĕri pĕrgi datang. Maka di-dalam itu pun raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat pun mĕnyuroh lagi orang pĕrgi mĕnchari tanah bumi sa-bĕlah matahari hidup antara barat laut yang dapat di-pĕrbuat kota istana buat nĕgara akan anakanda baginda raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa dan raja Buloh Bĕtong yang lain dari-pada tanah bumi Kuala Muda itu, karna badan-nya sudah tua lagi pun mĕntĕri yang tua itu pun sudah dzaif badan-nya. Maka di-dalam dudok bĕrkira-kira itu maka raja pĕrĕmpuan sakit-lah yang amat sangat sampai ka-pada hilang-nya. Sa-tĕlah itu maka di-pĕrentahkan oleh raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat dĕngan mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat mĕngikut sĕpĕrti istiadat raja yang bĕsar di-simpankan di-hulu sungai pulau Tiga itu sĕrta di-suroh oleh raja pĕrbuat langgar dan kacha puri akan raja pĕrĕmpuan itu. Maka raja Ong Mahapodisat pun dudok-lah dĕngan anakanda baginda kĕdua sĕrta dĕngan mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat di-dalam kĕmashghulan. Tiada bĕrapa lama-nya maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat sa-orang ka-pada sa-orang datang-lah sakit sampai ka-pada hilang-lah kĕĕmpat-nya. Tatkala dĕmikian maka bĕrtambah-tambah kĕmashghulan-lah baginda itu. Sa-tĕlah itu maka di-ambil pula oleh baginda akan anak-anak mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat itu di-jadikan ganti ayah-nya. Maka anak mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun mĕmĕrentahkan mĕngikut ayah-nya masing-masing tiada bĕrsilapan lagi. Maka raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat pun hilang-lah sĕdikit pĕrchintaan-nya. Maka baginda pun mĕrajakan anakanda baginda raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa itu mĕnjadi raja di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah sĕrta mĕnyuroh anakanda baginda raja Buloh Bĕtong bĕrjalan mĕlihat bumi tanah yang baik hĕndak di-pĕrbuat kota istana sĕrta di-bĕri-nya dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang rayat bala tĕntĕra mĕngiringkan anakanda baginda itu. Maka raja Buloh Bĕtong pun bĕrjalan-lah bĕrsama-sama dĕngan orang yang di-suroh oleh baginda itu. Maka pĕninggal raja Buloh Bĕtong bĕrjalan itu, maka raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat pun datang-lah gĕring-nya langsong hilang-lah baginda itu. Maka di-pĕrentahkan oleh anakanda baginda raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang dĕngan adil murah-nya mĕmĕliharakan sĕgala rayat bala tĕntĕra-nya. Ada pun raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa itu sangat-lah gĕmar ia mĕminum arak api dan arak nasi akan mĕnjadi tuboh-nya sihat dari-pada pĕnyakit. Maka di-taroh-nya bĕrtĕmpayan banyak-nya tiada-lah kurang, bahawa sa-sunggoh-nya ia mĕminum arak itu hingga bangun sahaja dari-pada tidur-nya sabĕlum ia mĕmbasoh muka pada kĕtika itu di-minta-nya suatu piala chawan kacha yang bĕrisi arak. Maka di-tuang-nya ka-mulut-nya. Sa-tĕlah sudah ia minum itu baharu-lah mĕmbasoh muka-nya dan makan sireh, dĕmikian-lah pada tiap-tiap hari sa-lama-lama-nya; tĕtapi ka-pada waktu ia makan minum tiada sakali-kali di-pĕrbuat-nya, mĕlainkan pada kĕtika ia sakalian bĕrsuka-sukaan makan minum dĕngan mĕntĕri hulubalang-nya, baharu-lah ia mĕminum arak api dan arak nasi, tĕtapi raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa itu tiada mau mĕndatangkan khial dan mabok kalau-kalau mĕnjadi gila atau pĕning ka-pada-nya hingga sa-hari sa-kali jua ia mĕminum itu ada-nya.

Sa-bĕrmula maka tĕrsĕbut-lah pĕrkataan nĕgĕri Baghdad itu sa-lama pĕninggal nabi Muhammad rasul Allah sal'llahu alaihi wasalam antara lima tahun nabi Allah wafat di-nĕgĕri Mĕdinah itu, maka banyak-lah sĕgala aulia dan kĕramat dĕngan shareat nabi Muhammad rasul Allah di-dalam isi nĕgĕri Baghdad itu. Maka tatkala itu tuan shaikh Nur Aladin turun dari Mĕkah datang ka-nĕgĕri Jawi ya-itu nĕgĕri Acheh mĕmbawa kitab shareat ugama islam. Maka di-nĕgĕri Baghdad itu ada-lah sa-orang tuan shaikh Abdullah Baghdad nama-nya ya-itu sa-orang aulia lagi dĕngan mustajab dan makbul sĕgala doa-nya sĕrta dĕngan bĕbĕrapa banyak anak murid-nya hingga sampai bĕratus-ratus. Maka tuan shaikh itu sudah tua sadikit dĕngan bĕrbuat amal ibadat sahaja ka-pada Allah subhana wataala dĕngan mĕmbawa shareat nabi Muhammad rasul Allah dĕngan kĕbĕtulan kitab yang mulia lagi yang kĕramat ya-itu-lah di-namakan koran dĕngan di-takuti pula oleh shaitan iblis dĕngan sĕbab kĕbĕnaran lagi jalan yang bĕtul dari-pada ugama islam lagi akan datang ka-hadapan, dan lagi tĕrsĕbut pula kĕbĕnaran koran di-dalam-nya dĕngan bĕbĕrapa ratus kitab dan kĕbĕnaran yang di-tinggal oleh nabi Muhammad rasul Allah akan sĕgala umat-nya. Maka jadi bĕrsalahan dari-pada umat nabi yang dahulu-dahulu itu dari-pada kĕramat kitab koran habis-lah hilang hikmat dan ubatan-nya sĕgala orang yang dahulu-dahulu itu dari-pada ludani ya'ni yang tĕrbang di-udara dan yang mĕlata di-bumi di-dalam laut dan dari-pada sĕgala elmu Seher ya'ni elmu yang raib dari-pada yang tiada di-kĕtahui, maka hĕndak tau tiada-lah hamba-nya pada zĕman nabi akhir zĕman ini boleh mĕngĕtahui sĕgala umat-nya mĕlainkan dĕngan janji-nya juga; dan lagi sĕgala ubatan dan hikmat orang tua-tua yang dahulu itu tiada-lah mĕnjadi guna; dĕmikian-lah sĕpĕrti itakad yang tiada bĕrbĕtulan itu sĕpĕrti orang tua-tua yang dahulu kala-nya yang mĕnyĕmbah bĕrhala yang di-pĕrbuat yang boleh bĕrkata-kata atau tiada dapat bĕrkata-kata sĕpĕrti pohon kayu yang di-sĕmbah-nya dan sĕpĕrti matahari yang di-sĕmbah-nya dan sĕpĕrti binatang yang di-sĕmbah-nya dan sĕpĕrti binatang yang bĕrjalan di-bumi ĕmpat kaki itu pun di-kata-nya tuhan sĕru Alam yang di-sĕmbah-nya. Maka sakalian-nya itu jalan yang tiada bĕrbĕtulan pada itakad-nya habis-lah hilang dan binasa umur shareat turun kitab koran ka-pada nabi Muhammad rasul Allah itu karna habis-lah sĕgala kitab dan hikmat dan ubatan orang tua-tua yang dahulu kala yang jadi itu pun di-buangkan oleh sĕgala malaikat ka-laut yang bĕrnama Kulzum itu dĕngan sĕbab hĕndak mĕnĕtapkan shareat nabi Muhammad rasul Allah dĕngan kĕramat kitab koran dan hĕndak mĕnĕntukan itakad yang sa-bĕnar-nya yang bĕrnama ugama islam wa rahmatu'l-llahi wabarakatoh. Shahadan maka ada-lah sa-orang Shaikh Abdullah anak imani. Maka ia turun dari Makah bĕrguru ka-pada shaikh Abdullah tua di-dalam nĕgĕri Baghdad itu dari-pada Kitab fatihah dan kitab sufi dan mĕngajarkan koran tafsir. Maka karna tuan shaikh Abdullah itu sĕdia ia mĕmbacha koran yang tiga puloh juz itu hafadz di-mulut-nya jua tiada lagi ia mĕlihat koran. Maka tiada-lah ia bĕrhĕnti dari-pada mĕmbacha koran hingga tidur dan makan dan ka-sungai ia diam, lĕpas dari-pada itu tiada ia diam mulut-nya dari-pada mĕmbacha koran. Maka sangat-lah shaikh Abdullah imani mĕnghafadzkan koran itu. Maka ia mĕmbacha tafsir. Maka bĕrtĕmu-lah shaikh Abdullah dĕngan iblis mĕngharu-hara akan sĕgala manusia di-dalam tafsir itu, dapat-lah iblis itu mĕndayakan sĕgala elmu dan hikmat dan alim pandita dĕngan bĕbĕrapa pula tipu daya sa-olah-olah dĕngan tiada bĕrsakit di-dalam tafsir itu. Maka pada suatu hari pĕrgi-lah shaikh Abdullah mĕngadap guru-nya shaikh Abdullah tua, kata-nya, "Hamba tuan pohonkan tuan pĕrtĕmukan pĕnghulu shaitan dan iblis itu dĕngan hamba tuan hĕndak bĕlajar dan mĕlihat dari-pada sĕgala ubatan yang di-jalankan di-atas sĕgala manusia dan makhlok dĕngan izin kadam tuan juga pĕrtĕmukan hamba tuan. Dĕmi shaikh Abdullah tua mĕndĕngar kata dan kĕhĕndak murid-nya itu, maka ia pun tĕrtawa kata-nya, "Tiada dapat tuan hamba bĕrtĕmu dĕngan pĕnghulu shaitan dan iblis itu, nĕschaya habis-lah tĕrtinggal sĕgala ajal dan ibadat tuan hamba ka-pada Allah taala di-bawakan ka-pada jalan yang sĕsat." Maka sĕmbah shaikh Abdullah ka-pada guru-nya, "Biar-lah ia hambamu tinggalkan dahulu, mĕlainkan hamba pohonkan bĕri-lah izin akan hamba hĕndak bĕrjalan mĕlihat sĕgala pĕrbuatan itu, boleh-lah hamba tuan kĕtahui sakalian-nya." Maka kata guru-nya, "Jikalau dĕmikian, pĕrgi-lah tuan ka-tĕngah padang di-bawah pohon kayu yang bĕsar itu dĕngan sĕgala pakaian tuan hamba jangan tinggal barang suatu jua pun. Ada pun kĕtika waktu sunyi tĕngah hari sĕdikit nĕschaya datang-lah ia yang bĕrnama pĕnghulu shaitan iblis itu, insha'llah taala sĕpĕrti rupa manusia juga, bĕrtanya-lah tuan hamba barang yang di-kĕhĕndaki ka-pada-nya." Tĕlah dĕmikian maka tuan shaikh Abdullah pun bĕrmohon-lah ka-pada guru-nya pĕrgi makan minum lalu mĕmakan dĕngan sa-lĕngkap pakaian dan mĕngambil ayer sĕmbahyang lalu bĕrjalan mĕnuju ka-bawah pohon kayu bĕsar itu dudok dĕngan sa-orang diri-nya sĕrta mĕmbacha ayat koran. Ada pun tuan shaikh Abdullah itu sa-tĕlah sudah bĕrjalan murid-nya itu, maka ia pun mĕngambil ayer sĕmbahyang dua rakaat satu salam sĕrta mĕngangkatkan tangan mĕminta doa ka-pada Allah subhana wataala pinta di-pĕrtĕmukan shaitan iblis itu dĕngan murid-nya yang dudok mĕnanti di-bawah pohon kayu bĕsar itu. Sa-tĕlah sudah ia mĕmbacha doa hajat pula. Bĕrmula shaikh Abdullah imani itu ia dudok-lah di-bawah pohon kayu itu sampai-lah ka-pada waktu rĕmbang matahari sambil mĕmbacha koran dĕngan pĕrlahan-lahan tiada bĕrhĕnti, tiada juga datang-nya makin sangat di-bacha-nya koran itu. Hata sa-kĕtika datang-lah bunyi sĕpĕrti orang bĕrjalan datang mĕnampar pipi yang kanan dĕngan amat kĕras sĕpaknya tĕrlalu sakit rasa-nya. Maka di-paling ka-kiri ka-kanan tiada juga kĕlihatan orang mĕnampar ia itu. Maka di-gosokkan hĕndak mĕnghilangkan sakit itu sa-bagai jua ia mĕmbacha koran itu tiada bĕrhĕnti mulut-nya. Sa-tĕlah datang pula sĕpĕrti orang mĕnampar pipi-nya sa-bĕlah kiri juga dĕngan tĕrlalu amat sakit-nya hingga tĕrkĕjut tiada di-lihat orang yang mĕnampar-nya itu. Maka ia pun sĕgĕra bangun lari pulang, pada fikir-nya jika sakali lagi ia kĕna tampar itu, tĕntu-lah mati ia. Maka ia pun sampai-lah datang mĕngadap guru-nya. Maka di-tanya oleh guru-nya mĕngapa tiada bĕrtĕmu sĕpĕrti hajat yang di-kĕhĕndaki itu. Maka kata shaikh Abdullah, " Sunggoh pun tiada bĕrtĕmu tĕtapi sarasa bĕrtĕmu-lah karna sa-hingga sĕpak tampar-nya pun sĕpĕrti akan tĕrchabut rasa-nya gigi hamba kĕdua bĕlah pipi." Maka kata guru-nya, " Apa juga tuan hamba kĕrjakan dudok itu ? " Maka kata shaikh Abdullah, " Tiada apa-apa hanya diam juga dĕngan mĕmbacha ayat koran sahaja." Maka kata guru-nya, " Harus-lah tiada kĕlihatan di-mata, karna ia takut dan bĕnchi tiada boleh mĕndĕngar ayat koran itu." Maka kata tuan shaikh Abdullah, " Tiada-lah hamba kĕtahui ia takut atau bĕnchi akan ayat koran itu hamba bacha pĕrlahan-pĕrlahan sahaja." Maka kata guru-nya, " Jikalau pĕrlahan sakali pun di-kĕtahui-nya juga nĕschaya undur-lah ia dari-pada kita." Maka kata shaikh Abdullah, " Biar-lah, jika dĕmikian esok-lah hamba pĕrgi pula bĕrdiam akan diri hamba dĕngan tiada bĕrkata-kata suatu pun." Maka shaikh Abdullah pun bĕrhĕnti-lah pada malam itu. Tĕlah kĕesokan harinya, maka shaikh Abdullah pun pĕrgi-lah mĕminta izin ka-pada guru-nya lalu bĕrjalan-lah ia ka-pada pohon kayu. Maka guru-nya pun sĕmbahyang pula sĕpĕrti dahulu itu. Maka shaikh Abdullah pun dudok-lah mĕnanti dĕngan bĕrdiam diri-nya tiada ia bĕrkata-kata suatu jua pun hingga sampai tĕngah hari rĕmbang waktu sunyi, maka datang-lah sa-orang shaikh yang bĕrjanggut panjang hingga mĕnyapu ka-pĕrut-nya sĕrta dĕngan bĕsar panjang. Maka pakaian-nya sĕrban hijau dan baju jubah hijau sĕrta ada suatu tongkat di-tangan-nya, tĕrlalu-lah hebat laku-nya mĕmbĕri dahshat ka-pada yang mĕlihat-nya. Maka sĕrta ia datang itu ia mĕmbĕri salam ka-pada shaikh Abdullah. Maka sĕgĕra di-sahut oleh shaikh Abdullah, sĕrta kata-nya, " Siapa juga tuan hamba ini ? " Maka jawab-nya, " Bukan-kan tuan hamba bĕrhajat hĕndak bĕrtĕmu dĕngan hamba ? " Maka kata shaikh Abdullah, " Tuan hamba-kah pĕnghulu shaitan iblis itu ? " Maka kata-nya, " Hamba-lah pĕnghulu sĕgala shaitan iblis. Apa jua kĕhĕndak tuan hamba ka-pada hamba ini ? " Maka kata shaikh Abdullah, " Hajat hamba hĕndak bĕrguru ka-pada tuan hamba." Sabagai mana dapat tuan hamba hĕndak bĕrguru ka-pada hamba karna mana-mana yang tiada tuan hamba gĕmar, itu-lah yang hamba kĕrjakan sa-hari-hari ini nĕschaya kĕtĕguran-lah tuan hamba sakalian pĕkĕrjaan hamba itu, tiada-lah boleh tuan hamba bĕrguru karna bĕrlainan pĕrangai hamba dĕngan anak chuchu hamba sakalian sangat-lah banyak di-dalam alam dunia ini." Maka kata shaikh Abdullah, "Ajarkan-lah juga ka-pada hamba. Maka sakalian pĕrbuatan tuan hamba itu hamba turut-lah ikut kĕhĕndak tuan hamba jikalau tiada, mana-tah dapat sa-suatu pĕlajaran itu?" Maka kata pĕnghulu iblis, "Jika mau tuan hamba dĕmikian itu, ambil-lah tongkat hamba ini, pĕgang di-tangan, mari-lah kita bĕrjalan." Sa-tĕlah itu maka shaikh Abdullah pun sĕgĕra mĕngambil tongkat itu, lalu mĕnurut di-bĕlakang iblis bĕrjalan tiada kĕlihatan ka-pada mata-nya. Maka pĕrjalanan yang sa-bulan itu mĕnjadi sa-saat jua pĕrgi-nya, jikalau malam kĕlam ka-pada manusia maka chĕrah tĕrang ka-pada-nya. Maka bĕrjalan-lah kĕdua-nya masok ka-dalam suatu kampong rumah yang baik datang-datang sahaja pĕnghulu shaitan anak chuchu-nya sudah ada hadzir bĕribu-ribu kĕti banyak-nya. Maka tatkala itu tuan kampong itu tĕngah hĕndak bĕrkĕlahi bĕrbabil sa-orang sa-kĕrat kampong dan dusun itu. Maka anak chuchu kĕdua pihak sama banyak. Maka pĕnghulu shaitan pun mĕnyuroh anak chuchu-nya bĕrhimpun bĕrkĕliling itu dari-pada kĕdua pihak kaum itu pun di-hunjam-nya dĕngan rahsia yang raib oleh pĕnghulu iblis itu di-suroh bĕrkĕlahi. Tĕlah jadi sakalian-nya bĕrbunoh-bunoh dĕngan sorak tĕmpek bĕrgĕmuroh bunyi-nya dĕngan tiada di-kĕtahui oleh manusia dan sa-tĕngah mĕminum darah-nya sa-hingga habis mati sĕgala laki-laki kĕdua kaum itu. Maka sampai di-suroh dan di-hunjamkan ka-pada anak pĕrĕmpuan dan ibu sĕgala yang mati mĕnuntuti bela anak laki-laki dan saudara kĕdua pihak. Maka jadi bĕrkĕlahi pula sĕgala pĕrĕmpuan yang tĕramat ramai-nya sampai bĕrbunoh-bunoh pula tiada mĕmbĕri takut dan ngĕri lagi sĕgala pĕrĕmpuan itu mĕmĕgang sĕnjata dan mĕnikam sĕnjata-nya dari-pada bĕsar fitĕnah shaitan iblis itu hingga habis-lah sakalian-nya rĕbah bĕrkĕhantaran. Maka tĕrtinggal-lah kampong dusun itu tiada bĕrorang lagi. Maka bĕrjalan pula pĕnghulu shaitan iblis ka-pada orang tĕmpat yang lain, tinggal-lah anak chuchu-nya di-tĕmpat itu. Maka sampai-lah ia ka-tĕmpat orang bĕrjual bĕli dari-pada sĕrba dagangan dan makanan, dan apabila sampai ka-pada tĕmpat yang chayer di-situ-lah yang amat banyak berak kĕnching-nya sĕrta di-suroh anak chuchu-nya mĕreka itu. Maka bĕrjalan pula pĕnghulu iblis itu sampai-lah ka-pada sa-orang pĕrĕmpuan yang baik rupa paras-nya, maka kata-nya, "Sĕkarang aku hĕndak mĕmbacha kitab-ku." Maka di-hampir dĕkat pĕrĕmpuan itu, lalu di-isharatkan oleh pĕnghulu iblis dĕngan di-selakkan kain di-dada-nya, lalu di-tolakkan sa-orang laki-laki yang muda bĕrkata-kata dan bĕrgurau sĕnda dĕngan pĕrĕmpuan itu. Sa-kĕtika datang laki-nya pĕrĕmpuan itu. Maka marah-lah ia langsong mĕnchari bĕrkĕlahi dĕngan orang itu. Maka sĕgĕra di-suroh ka-pada anak chuchu-nya mĕngachum orang itu suroh bĕrtikam. Maka jadi bĕrbunoh-bunohan orang itu. Maka bĕrjalan pula pĕnghulu iblis itu lalu kata-nya, "Aku hĕndak mĕngaji sadikit di-sini." Maka di-hampiri ka-pada orang tĕngah bĕrmain judi, mana yang alah di-suroh-nya jual gadai sĕgala kain baju-nya sĕrta sĕgala harta bĕnda-nya suroh lawan juga bĕrjudi itu. Maka datang-lah marah orang yang alah itu karna banyak sangat ia tĕlah habis itu mau-lah ia mati dari-pada hidup rasa-nya, hĕndak pulang pun harta anak istĕri sudah habis. Maka di-achum pula oleh iblis itu mana yang alah di-suroh bĕrhutang pula pada orang yang lain. Maka marah-lah orang itu mĕnghunus kĕris pada tangan orang lain bĕrtikaman mĕnjadi ramai-lah orang yang bĕrjudi itu bĕrtikam sama sĕndiri-nya. Sa-tĕlah tĕntu-lah pĕngajaran pĕnghulu iblis itu, maka ia undur-lah dari-pada tĕmpat itu, pĕrgi pula ka-pada suatu kĕdai sa-orang saudagar yang bĕsar lagi pandai ia mĕniaga. Maka banyak-lah dagang sĕntĕri datang ka-kĕdai itu bĕrjual bĕli sĕgala dagangan. Maka saudagar itu pun ada-lah ia mĕnaroh kati kĕchil satu dan bĕsar satu dan mĕnaroh chupak kĕchil bĕsar. Maka ia pun bĕrtimbang dan bĕrsukat dĕngan hak kĕchil itu dan mĕnĕrima dĕngan hak bĕsar itu. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh dagang yang di-tĕmpat saudagar itu bĕrjual bĕli akan hal pĕrangai saudagar itu dĕmikian, maka di-achum oleh pĕnghulu shaitan itu akan orang itu jangan bĕri saudagar itu mĕmbuat chupak kĕchil itu. Dĕmi saudagar itu mĕnĕngar kata orang dagang itu maka di-achum-nya oleh pĕnghulu iblis akan saudagar dĕngan rahsia raib tiada di-kĕtahui oleh orang. Maka saudagar itu pun sa-konyong mĕmaki dĕngan kata tutur tiada bĕrkĕtahuan. Maka datang-lah marah orang dagang itu lalu mĕnghunus kĕris mĕnikam dada saudagar itu luka akan mati. Maka ada-lah saudagar itu banyak anak chuchu-nya. Maka sakalian-nya pun datang bĕrtikam dĕngan orang dagang itu; dĕmikian juga orang dagang banyak kawan-nya. Maka bĕrhimpun-lah sakalian-nya sama bĕrtikam sa-hingga mati bĕrtimbun-timbun bĕrusong kĕmatian pulang ka-rumah-nya masing-masing. Maka hal saudagar itu luka sampai pĕchah kĕpala-nya lalu mati di-tanamkan orang. Maka bĕrbunyi-lah suara dari dalam kubur saudagar itu dĕngan kata-nya, "Kati kĕchil, kati bĕsar, gantang kĕchil gantang bĕsar" yang dĕmikian itu sampai tujoh hari tujoh malam, dĕmikian-lah orang yang mĕnurut hawa nafsu shaitan iblis dĕngan haloba dan tama' akan harta orang, dĕmikian-lah di-pĕroleh-nya mĕnjadi rakan shaitan iblis itu. Maka di-bawa-nya ka-dalam nuraka. Maka pĕnghulu iblis bĕrjalan pula bĕrsama-sama tuan shaikh Abdullah itu sampai-lah ka-pada suatu hutan tĕmpat pĕnchuri mĕnyĕmbunyikan diri-nya sa-puloh sa-bĕlas orang hingga bĕbĕrapa tahun ia diam di-dalam hutan itu sampai bĕrtimbun-timbun sĕgala jĕnis yang di-churi-nya itu. Maka tatkala itu ia sakalian tĕngah mĕmbahagikan harta. Maka kata sa-orang, "Engkau banyak," kata sa-orang, "Aku ini sadikit." Maka jadi bĕrbantah-lah sakalian-nya. Maka kata iblis, "Biar-lah aku hĕndak bĕri ia sakalian mĕnjadi pĕrgadohan." Maka di-hunjamkan pada hati mĕreka itu dĕngan ingatan yang jahat. Maka bĕrbunoh-bunohan-lah mĕreka itu sama sĕndiri-nya. Ada pun sakalian itu bĕrtikam dĕngan kĕjamkan mata-nya sĕpĕrti babi luka-lah rupa-nya tĕrlalu-lah ramai anak chuchu shaitan itu bĕrsorak dan bĕrtĕpok tangan dĕngan tĕmpek oleh sĕbab sakalian-nya pĕnchuri itu tĕlah mĕngikut ajaran hingga sampai bĕrkaparan mayat sakalian orang itu. Maka pĕnghulu iblis pun bĕrjalan pula dĕngan shaikh Abdullah masok ka-dalam sa-buah nĕgĕri. Maka kata pĕnghulu iblis, "Ini hamba hĕndak pĕrgi ka-misjid hamba," lalu ia masok ka-pajak chandu. Maka banyak-lah ia bĕrjumpa dĕngan orang main judi dan makan chandu, itu-lah nama-nya misjid shaitan. Sa-tĕlah itu maka bĕrjalan-lah pula ia kĕdua maka bĕrtĕmu dĕngan bĕbĕrapa pĕrĕmpuan muda-muda lalu di-hampiri dan di-suroh-nya mĕmbuat kĕjahatan. Apabila sampai bagai kĕhĕndak shaitan itu, maka anak chuchu-nya yang banyak-banyak itu pun suka-lah sĕrta mĕnĕpok tangan dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya. Sa-tĕlah itu maka ia bĕrjalan pula sampai sa-buah kampong rumah orang bĕsar yang sangat dzalim dan lagi mĕntĕri ka-pada raja nĕgĕri itu. Maka ramai-lah orang bĕrhimpun mĕngadap bĕrtanya hukum hak-nya di-ambil orang; dan sa-orang bĕrtanya hukum dusun tanah kampong rumah-nya di-ambil orang; dan sa-tĕngah bĕrtanya akan pĕrahu-nya di-situ orang tiada mahu pulangkan balek; dan sa-orang bĕrtanya hamba-nya di-larikan orang di-pĕrbuatkan bini-nya. Sa-tĕlah itu maka datang-lah pĕnghulu shaitan di-hampiri dudok pada kadzi di-susur tĕlinga-nya kadzi itu lalu di-hunjamkan rahsia pada hati kadzi itu sĕgala harta orang itu di-suroh-nya himpunkan ambil ka-sĕmua-nya dari-pada sĕgala jĕnis orang yang bĕrtanya itu bawa ka-rumah kadzi itu. Maka oleh pĕnghulu iblis di-surohkan anak chuchu-nya, sakalian pĕrgi ambil harta bĕnda dan anak istĕri-nya dan hamba sahaya-nya di-bawa masok ka-kampong-nya; dan jikalau pada orang yang bĕsar harta itu tĕrdudok sakali pun di-suroh-nya ambil juga bawa pulang ka-rumah-nya: maka di-kĕrjakan orang-lah. Dĕngan sa-kĕtika itu juga bĕrhimpun ka-pada rumah kadzi itu di-buat oleh haloba dan tama' akan harta orang yang tiada dĕngan sa-bĕnar-nya itu. Maka pĕrgi-lah pĕnghulu shaitan ka-pada tuan ĕmpunya harta laki-laki dan pĕrĕmpuan dan ka-pada sakalian yang ada bichara antara kĕdua pehak itu yang mĕnuntuti jua harta-nya dan yang mĕnahan tuntuti itu. Maka tiada mau kadzi itu jatohkan hukum. Maka tiba-tiba di-himpun ambil sĕgala jĕnis harta itu. Sakĕtika maka datang-lah sakalian mĕminta di-kĕmbalikan sĕgala harta-nya itu. Maka kadzi itu pun tiada bĕrkata-kata lagi hingga masok-lah ka-rumah-nya hĕndak makan nasi. Maka tiada ia tĕrtunggu yang ĕmpunya harta itu mĕngatakan hĕndak masok makan nasi; maka sa-konyong-konyong raib-lah kadzi itu masok ka-rumah-nya. Maka pada fikiran tuan yang ĕmpunya harta itu akan kĕmbali harta-nya. Maka datang-lah marah sakalian-nya itu, lalu mĕnghunus sĕnjata-nya mĕngamok masok ka-rumah kadzi itu. Maka kadzi itu pun mati-lah tiada sĕmpat ia makan nasi lagi. Maka akan anak chuchu-nya dan sahaya-nya ramai-lah sakalian-nya bĕrtikam-tikam dĕngan orang mĕngamok itu dan bĕrbunoh-bunohan tiada-lah sĕmpat sĕgala orang yang harapan mĕntĕri itu hĕndak mĕnolong dan mĕmĕliharakan rumah kampong tĕrbakar itu karna banyak sangat orang mĕngamok. Dan mĕntĕri itu pun mati-lah di-dalam tĕrbakar dan kampong rumah-nya habis tĕrbakar mĕnjadi abu angin. Dĕmikian itu pĕroleh-nya orang yang haloba dan tama' itu. Maka pĕnghulu shaitan itu pun bĕrjalan-lah pula dĕngan Shaikh Abdullah itu pĕrgi ka-pada sa-buah nĕgĕri; maka bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan orang fakir mĕminta sĕdĕkah lima orang di-dalam hutan rimba sĕsat yang tiada sampai ka-pada tĕmpat sĕgala manusia itu. Maka masing-masing bĕrdukong sĕgala pĕrbĕkalan makanan. Maka bĕrtĕmu-lah fakir itu dĕngan sa-pohon kayu bĕrbuah dan bĕrbunga ĕmas merah dan perak dari-pada pĕrdu-nya hingga sampai ka-puchok-nya kayu itu yang bĕrsangkutan gĕlang subang dan kĕronchong gĕndit dan dari-pada pĕnding agok sa-gĕnap ranting dahan-nya itu. Maka bĕrhĕnti-lah lima orang fakir itu di-bawah pohon itu. Maka pĕnghulu shaitan pun hampir-lah ka-pada-nya. Maka kata fakir itu, "Apa juga kita chari dari-pada sa-buah nĕgĕri ka-pada sa-buah nĕgĕri, bukan-kah kita mĕnchari ĕmas perak? maka sĕkarang bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan kita ĕmas perak yang tiada tĕrbawa oleh kita. Apa juga rupa bichara kita ini?". Maka di-hunjamkan oleh pĕnghulu shaitan itu dĕngan rahsia raib pada hati fakir itu, di-suroh tinggal sĕgala pĕrbĕkalan makanan itu. Maka jadi muafakat mĕreka itu dĕngan tiada fikir himat-nya mĕmbuangkan sĕgala makanan yang di-dalam bĕkas-nya dĕngan kĕsukaan hati kĕlima-nya itu. Maka di-ambil-nya sĕgala harta yang bĕrkĕnan pada hati-nya masing-masing lalu di-buboh-nya ka-dalam bĕkas-nya dukong ka-atas bĕlakang-nya. Di-dalam itu pun sa-tĕngah orang itu bĕrpaling juga ka-atas pohon itu di-lihat-nya banyak jua lagi yang bĕrkĕnan pada hati-nya, lalu kĕmbali pula di-ambil-nya di-sangkutkan pada sa-gĕnap leher-nya. Maka di-pĕsan oleh pĕnghulu iblis ka-pada anak chuchu-nya di-suroh turut binasakan sĕrta sĕsatkan sakalian jalan-nya. Maka di-turut-lah oleh kaum shaitan itu akan fakir lima orang itu. Sa-tĕlah itu maka pĕnghulu iblis itu bĕrjalan-lah hĕndak masok ka-dalam nĕgĕri orang. Maka bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan sa-orang yang bĕrtapa elmu seher al-shahid hĕndak jadi pahlawan dan hulubalang. Maka ia bĕrtapa sangat kĕras pĕrtapaan-nya. Maka pĕnghulu shaitan pun mĕnampakkan diri-nya sĕpĕrti sa-orang shaikh bĕrjanggut panjang sampai ka-dada-nya bĕrsĕrban hijau bĕrjubah hijau mĕmbawa sa-biji yang bĕrnama buah dĕlima di-tangan-nya sĕrta di-hampiri dĕkat lalu mĕmbĕri salam. Maka orang itu pun sĕgĕra-lah mĕmbukakan mata-nya mĕnyahuti salam itu sĕrta kata-nya, "Siapa tuan hamba ini?" Maka kata pĕnghulu shaitan, "Hamba-lah yang hĕndak mĕnyampaikan sĕgala kĕhĕndak hati tuan hamba makan-lah buah dĕlima ini." Maka sĕgĕra-lah di-ambil oleh orang bĕrtapa itu di-lihat-nya bĕrchahaya-chahaya buah dĕlima itu. Maka di-koyak di-ambil biji-nya lalu di-masokkan ka-dalam mulut-nya. Sĕrta tĕrmasok sampai ka-rĕngkongan maka mĕnjadi kĕlam mata-nya, tiada-lah sĕdar akan diri-nya mĕnjadi gila-lah orang bĕrtapa. Maka pĕnghulu shaitan itu pun raib-lah di-mata-nya dan buah dĕlima yang di-tangan-nya itu pun hilang-lah. Maka orang bĕrtapa itu pun bĕrtĕmpek dan mĕlompat bĕrlari-lari ka-sana ka-mari di-dalam hutan itu jadi gila huru-biru. Maka pĕnghulu shaitan itu pun masok-lah ka-dalam nĕgĕri orang bĕrtĕmu dĕngan suatu bandarsah tĕmpat sĕgala budak-budak mĕngaji. Maka pĕnghulu shaitan pun mĕndĕkati sĕgala kanak-kanak itu di-hunjamkan di-dalam hati-nya dĕngan kĕjahatan sa-mata-mata. Maka budak itu pun habis-lah di-tinggalkan sĕgala pĕngajian pĕrgi bĕrmain dan yang sa-tĕngah pulang ka-pada ibu bapa-nya mĕnjadi marah-lah guru-nya di-panggil anak murid-nya di-pukul. Maka apabila di-dĕngar pula oleh budak-budak yang lain kawan-nya kĕna pukul itu maka lari-lah ia dan di-suroh panggil oleh guru-nya akan ibu bapa-nya suroh mĕmbawa anak-nya. Apabila datang maka di-pukul oleh guru-nya itu di-hadapan ibu bapa-nya. Maka marah-lah ibu bapa-nya budak-budak itu, bĕrbantah-lah hingga bĕrpanjangan gadoh-nya. Maka mana budak yang mahu mĕngaji lagi di-ajak oleh guru-nya bawa sa-bilah sa-orang parang masok ka-hutan mĕnĕbang kayu. Maka budak-budak itu pun sa-tĕngah jatoh pokok jadi tĕrgĕliat sa-tĕngah-nya di-timpa oleh kayu. Maka apabila ia pulang ka-rumah-nya bĕrkhabar ka-pada ibu bapa-nya guru sudah bĕrkĕrja maka di-ambil oleh ibu bapa anak-anak-nya itu tiada bĕri mĕngaji pada guru itu, dan di-sĕrahkan mĕngaji ka-pada lain guru pula. Maka ada pula sa-tĕngah budak-budak itu di-bawa oleh iblis mĕlihat sĕgala pĕrmainan. Maka di-chari oleh ibu bapa-nya ka-rumah guru-nya tiada bĕrtĕmu, langsong chari ka-bangsal orang bĕrmain-main wayang. Sa-tĕlah bĕrtĕmu di-ajak pulang. Maka kata anak-anak itu "Nanti-lah sa-bĕntar hĕndak mĕlihat raja dan dato Mambang itu ramai sunggoh." Maka ibu bapa-nya pun pĕrkĕnankan pula. Maka dudok-lah ia sama mĕlihat dĕngan anak-nya tĕrlalu-lah ramai-nya. Maka jadi lupa-lah sĕgala makan minum tiada sĕdar ia sakalian dari-pada sangat kĕsukaan-nya sampai ka-pada hak harta rumah pun di-churi oleh orang tiada ia sĕdar. Maka guru budak-budak itu pun sĕndiri pĕrgi mĕnchari anak murid-nya, dĕmikian-lah di-pĕrbuat shaitan iblis sa-hingga sa-tĕngah orang tiada dapat sa-suatu pĕlajaran jua pun sampai mati-nya. Sa-tĕlah itu maka tĕrlalu-lah suka hati-nya pĕnghulu shaitan itu sĕrta kata-nya, "Itu-lah pĕngajian yang sĕmpurna supaya ia boleh tolong sakalian manusia ka-dalam nuraka jahanam." Maka ia pun bĕrjalan pula lalu bĕrtĕmu dĕngan sa-orang bunting yang tiada pĕrnah bĕranak lagi dan laki-nya pun tiada bĕranak pula. Maka si-bunting itu tĕlah sampai bulan-nya, maka kĕdua-nya sangat-lah bĕrniat bĕrkĕhĕndak akan anak itu. Maka kata pĕnghulu shaitan ka-pada orang-nya hantu ayer, "Hĕndak-lah ĕngkau pĕrdayakan pĕrĕmpuan itu dĕngan tĕmpayan karun yang di-dalam ayer sungai." Maka kata hantu ayer, "Baik-lah." Maka hantu ayer itu mĕrupakan diri-nya satu tuan shaikh yang tua bĕrpakaian puteh pĕrgi bĕrdiri di-ulu laki pĕrĕmpuan itu, kata-nya, "Hai laki-laki, bawa pĕrĕmpuan-mu pĕrgi ka-sungai tĕmpat yang bĕr-lubok itu, ambil sa-biji tĕmpayan yang bĕrisi ĕmas merah, boleh-lah ĕngkau bĕrbini sa-orang lagi yang elok rupa paras-nya dari-pada pĕrĕmpuan-mu yang ada itu." Maka kata laki-laki itu di-dalam mimpi-nya, "Bagimana aku hĕndak pĕrbuatkan bini aku itu, ia hĕndak bĕranak karna sudah sampai bulan-nya?" Maka kata orang tua itu, "Bawa oleh-mu pĕrgi mĕnjala barangkali datang tĕmpayan itu di-dalam jala-mu. Maka sĕgĕra-lah ĕngkau tolakkan bini-mu ka-dalam lubok itu. Maka ambil-lah tĕmpayan itu. Tĕlah dĕmikian bĕrturut-turut tiga malam datang." Maka di-bawa-lah oleh laki-laki itu pĕrĕmpuan-nya pĕrgi ka-sungai tĕmpat bĕrlubok itu, di-lihat-nya sunggoh ada tĕmpayan itu bĕrmĕnideh datang-nya baharu hĕndak di-pĕgang. Maka tĕmpayan itu pun mĕnyĕmbunyikan rupa-nya tĕnggĕlam sa-bĕntar datang pula. Dĕngan hal yang dĕmikian pĕrĕmpuan itu pun tundok mĕlihat tĕmpayan itu. Maka laki-nya pun champak jala-nya di-sa-bĕlah tangan, dan tangan yang sa-bĕlah lagi itu mĕnolakkan bini-nya ka-dalam sungai itu lalu sĕgĕra ia mĕluchut akan tali jala itu sĕrta mĕmĕgang mulut tĕmpayan karun. Sa-tĕlah tĕrpĕgang-lah tĕmpayan itu maka di-lihat pula oleh sa-orang-orangan raja nĕgĕri itu lalu di-maalumkan ka-pada raja-nya. Maka raja itu pun suroh ambil pada orang itu. Maka orang itu pun tiada apa kata-nya; maka tĕmpayan karun itu pulang ka-pada raja; dan istĕri yang di-kaseh itu pun tĕlah mati, dan hĕndak mĕlihat anak-nya dĕngan bĕrniat kaul itu pun hilang-lah, dan jala-nya hilang pula. Maka kĕhĕndak-nya itu pun tiada sampai; dĕmikian di-pĕrbuat oleh pĕnghulu iblis itu. Maka pĕnghulu iblis pun bĕrjalan pula ka-tĕmpat yang bĕrnama masjid-nya tĕngah ramai orang mĕlihat wayang dan mĕnurunkan hantu. Maka kĕhĕndak-nya orang itu hĕndak bĕrlaga kĕrbau dĕngan sĕgala bunyi-bunyian. Maka anak chuchu iblis itu pun bĕrhimpun-lah bĕribu-ribu mĕmbĕri rahsia yang raib ka-pada sĕgala manusia mana yang jauh di-suroh-nya dĕkat mĕlihat wayang dan bĕrlaga kĕrbau itu. Maka bĕrhimpun-lah sĕgala manusia sa-hingga tinggal sĕgala amal dan ibadat yang sa-bĕnar-nya dan pĕkĕrjaan nafkah diri-nya pun tĕrtinggal-lah, dĕmikian di-rasok-nya oleh pĕnghulu iblis itu mana yang suka mĕngikut sakalian kĕhĕndak-nya; maka orang itu tĕlah mĕndapat chĕlaka-lah.

Sa-bĕrmula maka ada-lah fakir lima orang yang mĕndukong harta itu sa-tĕlah kĕluar ia dari pohon kayu itu, tiba-tiba sĕsat-lah ia sakalian sa-rasa susah-lah ia dĕngan tiada makan minum. Maka tĕrus-lah hampir kampong dusun orang. Maka kĕlima-nya tiada tĕrlangkah kaki hĕndak bĕrjalan, lalu rĕbah tidur. Maka di-dalam lima orang itu, ada sa-orang yang kuat boleh bĕrjalan. Maka kata-nya, "Biar-lah aku masok pĕkan pasar bĕli dari-pada barang makanan bawa mari bĕri ka-pada mika sakalian." Maka masing-masing pun mĕngambil dari-pada sa-orang sadikit harta di-dalam dukong-nya di-bĕrikan ka-pada sa-orang itu. Maka ia pun bĕrjalan-lah masok pĕkan sĕrta di-bĕli-nya apa-apa yang di-kĕhĕndaki-nya. Maka datang-lah iblis mĕmbĕri ia tama' dan haloba akan harta kawan-nya. Maka datang-lah fikiran-nya, "Baik-lah aku ambil sa-orang ka-pada aku sahaja sakalian harta kawan-ku itu." Maka di-bĕli-nya tĕpong di-upah-nya orang bĕrbuat roti yang baik-baik, ada-lah ĕmpat biji roti di-buboh-nya rachun maka di-asingkan dari-pada roti yang lain itu. Tĕlah itu lalu di-bawa-nya ka-pada kawan-nya ĕmpat orang. Maka kĕĕmpat pun tĕrlalu-lah suka bĕroleh makanan itu, lalu makan-lah kĕĕmpat-nya. Sa-tĕlah sudah makan mĕnjadi kĕmbali makanan habis tidur. Sa-kĕtika sĕdar bangun sakalian-nya mĕmakan pula maka makan kĕlima-nya hingga habis roti itu hanya tinggal lagi ĕmpat biji jua itu. Maka di-suroh-nya oleh kawan yang tama' itu akan mĕmakan roti yang lain itu habis sakali; maka tiada mau oleh kawan-nya. Maka datang-lah marah kawan-nya yang kĕĕmpat itu lalu di-pĕgang tangan-nya ka-pada roti itu lalu makan-lah bĕrsama-sama kĕĕmpat dan yang khianat makan jua oleh sĕbab marah malu itu. Maka mati-lah kĕlima-nya bĕrkaparan tĕrtinggal-lah harta sakalian itu, tĕrhantar di-tanah akan habuan orang lain. Maka dĕmikian-lah jadi-nya mĕngikut tama' dan haloba jadi nafsu shaitan nama-nya.

Ada pun pĕnghulu shaitan dĕngan shaikh Abdullah lĕpas ia kĕluar dari misjid orang pĕlaga kĕrbau itu. Maka ia pun masok ka-pada suatu kampong rumah yang bĕsar sa-orang saudagar yang bĕrbini ĕmpat dan bĕrgundek ĕmpat mĕnjadi dĕlapan orang itu masing-masing bangsa nĕgĕri jika tidur saudagar itu, maka istĕri-nya pun tidur bĕrkĕliling tiada bĕrjauh lagi dĕngan dia. Maka datang-lah pĕnghulu shaitan di-bĕri-nya suatu rahsia yang raib ka-pada pĕrĕmpuan yang dĕlapan itu bĕri mati shahuat-nya. Maka tĕrmasok ka-dalam hati kĕdĕlapan orang pĕrĕmpuan itu datang muafakat dĕngan pĕrangai yang baik kĕdĕlapan-nya mĕnchari ubat buboh-nya sa-orang sadikit di-atas saudagar itu. Maka saudagar itu pun tiada-lah kuasa lagi shahuat-nya mĕnjadi tiada bĕrguna lagi ka-pada sĕgala pĕrĕmpuan. Maka bini saudagar itu habis-lah bĕrjahat dĕngan orang lain dĕmikian-lah mĕnurut hawa nafsu shaitan.

Ada pun pĕnghulu shaitan sa-tĕlah sudah ia mĕmasokkan pĕrĕmpuan yang dĕlapan itu, maka ia pun pĕrgi pula ka-pada sa-orang saudagar yang lain sa-bagai rupa saudagar itu juga, tĕtapi istĕri-nya sa-orang sahaja. Maka datang sa-orang mĕnjual pĕrĕmpuan yang amat chantek rupa-nya, puteh kuning panjang nipis tĕtapi ada juling mata-nya. Maka kata kawan-kawan saudagar itu " Jangan tuan hamba bĕli pĕrĕmpuan ini, akhir-nya jahat sangat." Maka di-dalam hati saudagar itu sangat-lah bĕrkĕnan akan pĕrĕmpuan itu. Maka ia pun mĕmbĕli-lah pĕrĕmpuan itu lalu di-bawa-nya naik ka-rumah-nya, di-buat bĕndahari pun tĕmpat pĕnyimpan sĕgala harta. Maka pĕrgi-lah pĕrĕmpuan bĕndahari ka-pada saudagar bĕrkhidmat. Maka kata saudagar, " ĕngkau pĕrgi-lah ka-pada pĕrĕmpuan-ku," lalu ia pĕrgi ka-pada istĕri saudagar itu kata-nya, " Tuan pĕrĕmpuan kaseh-ku ka-pada saudagar itu ia sangat jahat karna hamba bĕrjumpa ia bĕrjahat dĕngan sa-orang pĕrĕmpuan muda di-kĕdai-nya." Maka pĕrĕmpuan saudagar itu pun mĕnaroh sakit hati ka-pada suami-nya, kata-nya " Ingat-ingat tuan saudagar karna tuan pĕrĕmpuan hĕndak mĕmbunoh tuan saudagar, karna ia ada mĕnaroh sa-orang laki-laki yang muda ada sĕkarang ini." Maka saudagar itu pun marah-lah akan istĕri-nya. Maka pĕrgi pula pĕrĕmpuan bĕndahari ka-pada istĕri saudagar pula mĕngajarkan, "Hĕndak-lah tuan pĕrĕmpuan jika kaseh akan tuan saudagar tĕngah hari apabila tuan saudagar tidur lena itu ambil pĕnyukur tajam andam janggut saudagar itu, kaseh-lah tuan saudagar akan tuan pĕrĕmpuan." Sa-tĕlah kĕesokan hari-nya datang lah saudagar itu tidur sĕrta hĕndak mĕndĕngar rahsia istĕri-nya. Maka kĕtika itu pĕnghulu shaitan pun hampir-lah ka-pada istĕri-nya itu. Maka pĕrĕmpuan bĕndahari itu pun sĕgĕra mĕmbĕri sabilah pisau chukur kĕpala di-ambil istĕri saudagar pĕrgi hampir kĕpala saudagar itu tidur dudok hĕndak mĕngandam janggut. Maka saudagar itu pun bĕrasa istĕri-nya hampir kĕpala-nya sĕrta di-rasai janggut-nya di-chapai oleh istĕri-nya sĕrta pula pisau di-tangan-nya. Maka ia pun sĕgĕra mĕmbukakan mata di-lihat-nya "tĕntu-lah pĕrĕmpuan ini hĕndak mĕnyĕmbĕleh leher-ku"; lalu bangun saudagar itu mĕnchapai kĕris di-tikam istĕri-nya dĕngan sakali tikam jua mati-lah. Maka datang-lah gĕmpar mĕngatakan saudagar itu mĕmbunoh istĕri-nya; lalu datang itu bapa sanak saudara istĕri-nya hĕndak mĕnikam ka-pada saudagar itu. Maka saudagar itu pun mati-lah bĕrsama dĕngan istĕri-nya yang tiada ĕmpunya anak itu, bĕrtimbun-timbun harta sakalian habuan orang sahaja. Maka itu-lah rupa kitab shaitan yang tĕramat baik hukum adat maana-nya dan hĕrti-nya pĕrĕmpuan yang juling mata kuning yang bĕngkak di-dada-nya itu. Maka ia-lah yang tĕlah khatam pĕngajian shaitan itu.

Maka pĕnghulu shaitan kĕdua-nya pun kĕluar-lah dari nĕgĕri itu mĕnuju sa-buah kota raja yang bĕrtĕntangan dĕngan laut; maka bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan nĕgĕri raja Kamishdzur nama-nya dua bĕrsaudara dĕngan raja Kamishkar nama saudara-nya lagi dĕngan bĕsar nĕgĕri-nya sĕrta dĕngan banyak rayat-nya. Maka ada-lah ka-pada raja Kamishdzur itu sa-orang anak-nya pĕrĕmpuan yang baik rupa paras-nya. Maka bĕbĕrapa banyak anak raja-raja hĕndak mĕminang tiada di-tĕrima oleh raja Kamishdzur; maka datang-lah marah atas-nya itu. Maka tiada orang raja di-dalam tiga buah nĕgĕri yang bĕsar-bĕsar jua yang pĕrtama raja Kishar Alam nama-nya sa-buah nĕgĕri yang kĕdua raja Pĕkĕrma Dewa nama-nya nĕgĕri bĕsar jua kĕrajaan-nya, dan yang kĕtiga raja Usul Alam nama-nya itu pun sangat bĕsar kĕrajaan-nya. Maka sakalian itu mĕminang tiada di-tĕrima oleh raja Kamishdzur. Maka ia sakalian pun pulang-lah dĕngan marah-nya sĕrta di-suroh raja Kamishdzur pĕrkukohkan sĕgala kota parit pun tiada mĕmbĕri indah pada hati raja Kamishdzur. Maka ka-pada suatu masa raja Kamishdzur pun hĕndak-lah bĕkĕrja mĕmbayar kaul nadzar-nya mĕnyĕmbah bĕrhala-nya yang bĕsar sĕpĕrti pĕrut kĕrbau di-pĕrbuat dari-pada tĕmbikar sĕrta mĕnghimpunkan sĕgala pĕrmainan ya-itu pĕrmainan api juga. Maka tĕngah ramai raja Kamishdzur .bĕrmain-main bĕrgĕmuroh gĕgak gĕmpita bunyi-nya siang malam tiada bĕrhĕnti chĕrah chuacha sĕpĕrti siang dĕngan sĕgala tanglong pĕlita. Maka pada kĕtika itu sampai-lah pĕnghulu shaitan iblis itu dĕngan anak chuchu-nya pĕnoh-lah isi nĕgĕri itu kata-nya, "Baharu-lah kita bĕrtĕmu dĕngan misjid kita ini, boleh-lah kita sakalian bĕrbuat amal ibadat di-sini." Sa-tĕlah itu maka pĕrgi-lah pĕnghulu shaitan masok ka-dalam mulut bĕrhala itu lalu bĕrsĕru dĕngan sa-habis-habis kuat-nya sĕpĕrti bunyi guroh yang bĕsar sampai kĕdĕngaran-lah ka-pada sakalian orang di-dalam nĕgĕri itu, kata-nya, "Hĕndak-lah ĕngkau, hai raja Kamishdzur, siapkan sĕgala kĕlĕngkapan pĕpĕrangan kĕluar-lah sĕgĕra karna sudah ada datang raja tiga buah nĕgĕri itu hĕndak mĕlanggar; maka dĕngan pĕnolong aku mĕnang-lah ĕngkau." Maka ia pun diam-lah tiada bĕrkata-kata lagi. Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh raja Kamishdzur dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang, maka masing-masing pun bĕrlari datang mĕnyĕmbah dan mĕrangkak mĕnyungkur ka-tanah pinta di-mĕnangkan daripada sĕtĕru musoh yang datang itu. Maka datang-lah sĕgala makanan bĕrtimbun-timbun sĕpĕrti bukit di-hadapan bĕrhala itu karna sa-umur-nya bĕrhala itu tiada pĕrnah bĕrkata-kata. Maka datang-lah mĕntĕri yang bĕrnama Chang Mĕshtĕri ka-pada raja Kamishdzur, kata-nya, "Baik juga, tuanku, kita suroh solo pĕrgi lihat musoh yang datang itu sĕpĕrti titah raja tuhan kita yang amat bĕsar." Maka titah raja Kamishdzur, "Bĕnar-lah sĕpĕrti kata tuan itu tĕtapi kita di-dalam pĕrmainan kĕrja tuhan kita tiada-lah sĕmpat hĕndak mĕnyiapkan sakalian itu." Maka mĕntĕri itu pun mĕnyuroh orang pĕrgi mĕlihat angkatan yang datang itu. Tĕlah orang itu bĕrjalan maka raja Kamishdzur pun pĕrbuat-lah sa-buah rumah yang bĕsar lagi tinggi-nya lalu di-angkatkan bĕrhala itu ka-atas rumah yang di-pĕrbuat-nya itu dan bĕrhala kĕchil-kĕchil dato rakan bĕrkĕliling-nya. Maka sĕgala orang isi nĕgĕri itu pun bĕrhimpun-lah mĕnyĕmbah bĕrhala itu sĕrta dĕngan raja-nya pun tiada-lah pulang ka-istana lagi dĕngan pĕrmainan juga siang dan malam tiada-lah bĕrhĕnti sa-hingga lupa-lah raja Kamishdzur akan sĕru laung bĕrhala itu.

Ada pun orang yang di-suroh pĕrgi lihat angkatan musoh yang datang itu maka habis-lah di-tangkap oleh angkatan musoh yang datang. Maka datang-lah langgar-nya dĕngan tiada di-kĕtahui oleh raja Kamishdzur. Maka sakalian pun gĕmpar-lah mĕngatakan musoh mĕlanggar itu dan sa-tĕngah mĕngatakan orang datang hĕndak mĕramaikan pĕrmainan itu karna nĕgĕri itu bĕsar juga daerah-nya. Maka orang yang datang itu dari sa-bĕlah matahari mati kota-nya. Maka pada hari itu juga datang langgar raja Pĕkĕrma Dewa dĕngan angkatan yang amat bĕsar juga sa-bĕlah sĕlatan kota-nya itu pun dĕmikian juga kata-nya sa-tĕngah kata orang datang mĕramaikan pĕrmainan raja-nya. Maka datang pula suatu angkatan lagi raja Usul Alan nama-nya itu pun bĕsar jua angkatan-nya di-perbuat kota sa-bĕlah matahari hidup. Sa-tĕlah siap-lah ka-ĕmpat itu maka bĕrbunyi-lah bĕdil mĕriam yang tĕrlalu amat dahshat lagi yang mĕndĕngar-nya lalu mĕnĕrkam masok ka-dalam rayat yang tĕrlalu ramai dĕngan bunyi-bunyian itu masok mĕngamok dari sa-bĕlah utara. Maka tatkala itu masok-lah pĕnghulu shaitan ka-dalam mulut bĕrhala itu lalu ia bĕrlaung "Hai raja Kamishdzur dan mĕntĕri ĕngkau sakalian, bukan-kah musoh ĕngkau sudah datang dĕngan tiga kĕtumbokan itu masok mĕngamok? Sĕgĕra-lah ĕngkau kĕluar dĕngan pĕnolong-ku tiada mĕngapa." Sa-tĕlah itu maka ia pun diam-lah tiada bĕrkata-kata lagi. Maka tatkala itu raja dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang-nya tĕngah mĕnyĕmbah bĕrhala-nya pinta tolong juga, sĕrta tĕrkĕjut mĕndĕngar suara bĕrhala itu. Maka masing-masing pun habis-lah bĕrtĕrjun tinggalkan rumah bĕrhala itu bĕrlari pulang ka-rumah-nya mĕngambil sĕnjata mĕnĕrkam kĕluar mĕnchari pĕnghulu-nya raja Kamishdzur. Maka raja itu pun bĕrlari-lah masok ka-dalam kota bĕrdua saudara-nya, mĕnyuroh katup pintu kota-nya; sĕgala rumah yang di-luar kota itu pun habis-lah di-makan api. Maka banyak-lah orang yang tĕrbunoh dan tĕrtangkap. Maka ada-lah mĕntĕri yang bĕsar ka-pada raja Kamishdzur itu ĕmpat orang sa-orang bĕrnama Chang Mĕshtĕri sa-orang bĕrnama Agam Jewa Mĕshtĕri dan sa-orang nama-nya Ambilan Mĕshtĕri, sa-orang bĕrnama Lanchang Mĕshtĕri. Maka di-bawah mĕntĕri ĕmpat itu ada-lah dua orang pula mĕntĕri bĕsar, itu-lah harapan raja Kamishdzur. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh Chang Mĕshtĕri hal yang dĕmikian itu, maka ia kĕĕmpat pun muafakat bichara hĕndak mĕndapatkan raja-nya dĕngan rayat bala tĕntĕra-nya yang sa-dapat. Maka bĕrlari-lah kĕĕmpat-nya dĕngan alat sĕnjata. Maka tiada dapat hĕndak dĕkat kota itu lagi karna musoh tĕngah mĕlawan pĕrang dan mĕmbakar rumah. Maka ia kĕĕmpat pun mĕnuju pintu hala ka-matahari naik baharu-lah lĕpas masok kĕĕmpat-nya langsong naik ka-atas pĕlarian kota mĕngisi ubat bĕdil pĕluru mĕriam sakalian itu sĕrta mĕngatur sakalian orang. Sa-kĕtika maka bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan raja Kamishdzur kĕdua bĕrsaudara itu tĕngah mĕnyuroh orang mĕmasang sĕgala bĕdil mĕriam-nya. Pada kĕtika itu lagi hari malam juga datang gĕmpar itu. Dĕmi tĕrpasang sĕgala bĕdil mĕriam maka bĕrgĕmuroh-lah bunyi-nya tiada-lah bĕrkĕtahuan lawan dĕngan kawan lagi hingga chĕrah lapang di-makan oleh pĕluru mĕriam itu mana yang hampir kota itu. Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri Chang Mĕshtĕri "Yang mana juga ini, tuanku?" Maka titah raja Kamishkar, "Tiada bĕrkĕtahuan raja-nya hĕndak tuan hamba sa-tĕngah tinggal di-dalam kota ini, sa-tĕngah kĕluar kĕrahkan sĕgala rayat bala kita mana yang jauh-jauh sĕrta tĕntukan raja yang mĕlanggar ini." Maka sĕmbah Agam Jewa Mĕshtĕri dan mĕntĕri Ambilan Mĕshtĕri, kĕdua-nya pun naik kuda bĕrlari-lari kĕluar dari sa-bĕlah pintu matahari naik, lĕpas kĕluar di-suroh katup sa-mula pintu itu sĕrta di-suroh tunggu dĕngan alat sĕnjata. Maka ia pun pĕrgi-lah mĕnghimpunkan sĕgala rayat jauh-jauh dan yang pĕchah bĕlah itu.

Bĕrmula maka raja kĕtiga kĕtumbokan itu bĕrpĕrang-lah tĕrlalu ramai bĕramok-amokan sama sĕndiri-nya karna orang nĕgĕri itu habis-lah mati dan tĕrtangkap sĕrta pula habis sĕgala rumah tangga-nya itu tĕrbakar dan rumah bĕrhala itu pun habis-lah tĕrbakar dĕngan bĕrhala sakalian hangus bĕrhamburan habok-nya di-tiup oleh angin. Maka ada-lah kĕtiga kĕtumbokan mĕlanggar itu tiada-lah di-kĕtahui-nya atau muafakat masing-masing mĕminang itu mĕnjadi datang langgar itu sama-sama datang kĕtiganya karna raja Kamishdzur itu tĕngah ramai dĕngan sĕgala pĕrmainan itu, sĕbab itu-lah di-katakan orang datang mĕramaikan pĕrmainan ia itu mĕnjadi kĕtiga raja tiga kĕtumbokan itu mĕlanggar hĕndak mĕndatangkan hari siang mĕnjadi haru-biru-lah dĕngan sĕgala bĕdil mĕriam di-atas pĕlarian kota itu. Maka hari pun siang-lah dan orang pĕrang itu pun kĕlihatan-lah surut-lah undur ka-bĕlakang masing-masing suku-nya ka-tĕmpat pĕrhĕntiannya. Maka baharu-lah raja Kishar Alan mĕnyuroh orang tanya khabar akan raja kĕdua kĕtumbokan itu raja mana. Maka masing-masing pun mĕngatakan raja-nya dan kĕhĕndak-nya datang langgar itu. Maka rayat masing-masing pun tinggal sa-bahagi lagi karna banyak yang tĕlah mati. Maka bĕrtimbun-timbun-lah bagai gunong dan darah-nya bagai laut oleh kĕbanyakan mati. Maka tiada-lah tĕrbilang banyak-nya rumah yang tĕrbakar sa-hingga mĕnjadi padang lapang-nya. Sa-tĕlah hari siang maka raja Kamishdzur pun bĕrhĕnti-lah dari-pada mĕnyuroh orang mĕmasang bĕdil mĕriam itu, lalu dudok muafakat dĕngan mĕntĕri dan saudara-nya dari hal pĕkĕrjaan pĕrang itu. Maka datang-lah pĕnghulu shaitan dudok hampir tĕlinga raja Kamishdzur mĕmbĕri rahsia yang raib mĕnyuroh orang mĕngorek bumi yang bĕrtĕntangan dĕngan kota raja Kishar Alan hĕndak di-bakar dĕngan ubat bĕdil sa-bĕlah matahari mati itu. Maka di-kĕrjakan orang karna hampir dĕngan kota raja Kamishdzur. Tĕlah tĕtap-lah pĕngajaran-nya pada raja itu maka pĕnghulu shaitan pĕrgi pula ka-tĕmpat pĕrhĕntian raja Usul Alan dari sa-bĕlah utara karna raja itu pun bĕsar jua angkatan-nya; sĕrta sampai dudok hampir tĕlinga raja Usul Alan. Maka pada kĕtika itu raja tĕngah muafakat dĕngan mĕntĕri-nya hĕndak mĕrosakkan kota raja Kamishdzur. Maka di-rahsiakan oleh pĕnghulu shaitan suroh mĕngorek bumi tanah yang bĕrtĕntangan dĕngan kota raja Kamishdzur suroh mĕmbakar sĕgala istana dan rumah kĕchil-kĕchil di-dalam kota itu dĕngan ubat bĕdil. Maka sĕgĕra di-kĕrjakan orang-lah tiada mau bĕrlanjutan pĕkĕrjaan pĕrang itu dan kĕhĕndak hati Usul Alan itu jangan boleh ka-pada siapa pun tuan putĕri anak raja Kamishdzur itu. Tĕlah dĕmikian hari pun tĕngah naik datang-lah langgar mĕntĕri bĕsar kĕdua dĕngan mĕntĕri kĕdĕlapan kĕtumbokan kota pĕrhĕntian raja kĕtiga itu dĕngan alat sĕnjata dan kĕindĕraannya dari-pada gajah kuda. Maka pada satu-satu kĕtumbokan itu ada-lah bĕrlaksa-laksa orang banyak-nya. Maka mĕntĕri sa-puloh itu pun datang-lah langgar mĕngamok ka-dalam tĕntĕra raja kĕtiga itu. Maka sĕgala raja itu pun masok bĕrpĕrang tiada sĕmpat lagi bĕrsiapkan alat pĕpĕrangan tĕrlalu-lah gĕgak gĕmpita tiada sangka bunyi lagi dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya. Maka bĕrdatang sĕmbah mĕntĕri Chang Mĕshtĕri ka-pada raja Kamishdzur hĕndak mĕngĕluarkan musoh itu. Maka di-bĕnar oleh raja Kamishdzur itu. Maka kĕluar-lah ia dĕngan mĕntĕri hulubalang dan mĕntĕri kĕdua dĕngan sĕgala raja-raja dĕngan alat sĕnjata sĕrta mĕmalu gĕndang pĕpĕrangan. Maka tĕrdiri-lah tunggul panji-panji tanda raja kĕluar bĕrpĕrang tĕrlalu-lah ramai-nya mĕnĕmpoh mĕnyĕrbu masok ka-dalam tĕntĕra raja Pĕkĕrma Dewa mĕnjadi pĕrang bĕsar-lah sĕgala kĕtumbokan itu tiada apa kĕdĕngaran hanya tĕmpek sorak juga sĕpĕrti akan kiamat laku-nya, dan lagi dĕngan tĕmpoh mĕnĕmpoh. Sa-kĕtika lagi lĕbu duli pun bĕrbangkit-lah ka-udara dari-pada kaki gajah kuda itu bĕrtambah dĕngan kĕlam kabut asap sĕgala bĕdil itu tiada siapa mĕngĕnal siapa lagi. Maka jadi bĕrtikam sama sĕndiri-lah, banyak yang mati antara kĕdua pihak. Maka bangkai-nya pun bĕrtimbun-timbun sĕpĕrti bukit dan darah pun mĕngilir sĕpĕrti sungai. Maka sĕgala kĕpala yang tĕrpinggal itu pun sĕpĕrti buah kĕlapa yang gugur dari kĕlopak-nya, dan badan sĕgala manusia pun sĕpĕrti batang pisang bĕrunjuran di-tĕngah medan pĕpĕrangan itu. Sa-tĕlah itu masing-masing pun undur-lah pula lalu bĕrbaris-baris yang lain pula sa-mula dan mĕlompat undur dari hadapan dan lawan-nya bĕrhĕntikan lelah-nya bĕrsama-sama undur mĕmbasoh sĕnjata-nya. Sa-tĕlah sudah maka bĕrpĕrang pula sa-mula tĕmpoh mĕnĕmpoh bĕramok dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya. Ada pun raja Kamishdzur itu di-dalam kota-nya tĕngah orang bĕrpĕrang itu ia sĕmayam di-atas pĕlarian kota-nya. Maka datang pĕnghulu shaitan ka-pada anak pĕrĕmpuan raja Kamishdzur di-hampiri dĕkat anak raja itu sĕrta dĕngan ibu-nya di-bĕri suatu rahsia yang raib. Maka datang-lah ingatan hati-nya hĕndak mĕlihat orang bĕrpĕrang. Maka ibu-nya pun mĕngajak anak-nya naik ka-atas lobang tebar layar istana itu kĕlihatan-lah orang bĕrpĕrang itu. Tĕlah lĕpas ibu-nya ka-atas maka ia bĕrsĕru-sĕru anak-nya. Maka bĕrlari-lari datang mĕragang tiada sĕmpat hĕndak sampai ka-atas. Maka tĕrgĕlunchur kaki-nya tĕrlĕpas-lah tangan yang bĕrpĕgang ka-pada kayu itu. Maka jatoh-lah susur dinding itu. Maka di-situ ada sa-bilah suntiabu bĕrkĕna hujong-nya pada mata anak raja itu sa-bĕlah kanan tĕrus ka-sa-bĕlah kiri rĕbah pengsan kaki-nya pun patah sa-bĕlah kiri tiada boleh bĕrjalan jadi gĕmpar-lah di-dalam istana itu mĕngatakan anak raja jatoh mĕragang dinding tĕrtikam mata-nya tĕmbus kaki-nya pun patah lalu ibu-nya pun bĕrlari-lari turun mĕribakan anak-nya dan raja pun datang dĕngan tĕriak tangis-nya mĕnchabut mata suntiabu itu dari-pada mata anak-nya itu sĕrta mĕnchuchurkan ayer mawar kĕdua bĕranak-nya karna ibu-nya pun pengsan juga. Maka sampai-lah khabar itu ka-tĕmpat pĕpĕrangan; maka hari pun hampir akan malam sampai-lah di-korek orang ka-kota tĕmpat raja Kishar Alan lalu di-bakar-nya. Maka raja Kishar Alan pun tiada-lah tĕrbichara lagi karna habis sakalian pĕrbĕkalan-nya dĕngan sĕgala pakaian alat pĕpĕrangan di-makan api. Maka hari pun malam-lah; yang di-korek orang ka-dalam kota Kamishdzur pun tĕlah sampai-lah lalu di-bakar sĕgala rumah kota istana itu habis hangus tiada sĕmpat hĕndak bĕla. Maka jadi-lah tiada tĕrdĕrita lagi raja Kamishdzur sa-konyong-konyong ia mĕlarikan anak istĕri-nya ka-luar kota sa-bĕlah matahari naik lalu ia mĕnuju masok ka-dalam hutan rimba. Maka sĕgala orang di-kota itu pun sĕrta di-lihat-nya sudah tĕrbakar maka sakalian pun habis lari ka-luar kota mĕninggalkan tanah bumi itu. Maka raja Usul Alan pun mĕngamok ka-sana ka-mari mana orang yang hĕndak mĕmĕliharakan api itu habis mati di-bunoh-nya tĕrbakar dĕngan kota-nya mĕnjadi padang tĕrang mĕnĕrang. Tatkala bĕlum tĕrbakar itu, maka bĕrtĕmu-lah raja Kamishdzur dĕngan raja Pĕkĕrma Dewa lalu bĕrtikam tombak dari atas kuda-nya sama jua pandai bĕrmain; dan mĕntĕri Chang Mĕshtĕri pun bĕrtĕmu dĕngan mĕntĕri Dikar Alan bĕrtĕtak pĕdang bĕrtĕpis pĕrisai; dan mĕntĕri Agam Jewa Mĕshtĕri pun bĕrtĕmu dĕngan mĕntĕri Turas Alan bĕrtĕtak pĕdang juga; dan mĕntĕri Lela Lĕnggara pun bĕrtĕmu dĕngan mĕntĕri Kabir Alan bĕrtĕtak pula pĕdang pandai bĕlaka. Ada pun kĕtumbokan raja Kishar Alan itu pun tĕrlalu-lah ramai-nya dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya karna mĕntĕri nama Lĕban mĕntĕri dan Ayunan mĕntĕri dan Dira mĕntĕri sakalian itu habis tĕrtangkap oleh raja dan mĕntĕri raja Kamishdzur di-pĕlarikan ka-kaki kota itu di-suroh tunggu pada sĕgala pahlawan dĕngan ikatan-nya. Maka sorak orang raja Kamishdzur pun bĕrgĕmuroh bunyi-nya. Maka tinggal-lah raja Kishar Alan sa-orang diri-nya dan sorak ia sa-orang diri-nya. Maka raja Usul Alan pun tĕrlalu-lah suka oleh mĕlawan pĕrang itu dan mĕntĕri pun habis mati. Maka mĕntĕri Mamang Sura pun mĕngodam dĕngan gada-nya, kĕpala mĕntĕri Jĕna Pĕtra pĕchah bĕrhamburan otak-nya; dan mĕntĕri Lela Mĕnĕnggara mĕnikam dĕngan tombak-nya kĕna pada rosok mĕntĕri Sin Kapura tĕrus lalu mati. Maka tĕrlalu-lah ramai kesah mĕntĕri sama mĕntĕri itu bĕrpĕrang. Sa-tĕlah itu hari pun malam api di-dalam kota Kamishdzur makin bĕrnyala tiada dapat hĕndak di-bĕlakan oleh orang mana yang datang mĕnĕrkam ka-dalam pĕpĕrangan itu habis-lah mati. Maka kĕdua pihak pun banyak-lah rosak binasa juga dan tuan nĕgĕri pun binasa. Maka raja yang datang kĕtiga kĕtumbokan itu pun binasa juga suatu pun tiada di-pĕroleh-nya. Dĕmikian-lah pĕkĕrjaan pĕnghulu shaitan iblis itu pada orang yang mĕndosa akan Allah taala dan takbur ria ka-pada harta dunia.

Maka pĕnghulu shaitan pun bĕrjalan-lah pula kĕdua-nya mĕnuju ka-kota raja-raja yang di-tĕpi laut, maka bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan pĕrahu orang bĕrlayar nama-nya raja Pĕranggi Dewa suatu angkatan yang bĕsar. Maka pĕnghulu shaitan pun datang muafakat pĕnghulu pĕrahu yang bĕsar sakali ya-itu raja Pĕranggi Dewa yang tĕramat jahat pĕrangai-nya. Maka di-rahsia yang raib akan raja Pĕranggi Dewa itu mĕnyuroh ambil sĕgala pĕrahu orang yang bĕrlaboh itu. Tĕlah dĕmikian tĕrmasok-lah ka-dalam hati-nya lalu di-suroh ambil tiada mĕmilek lagi kĕchil bĕsar pĕrahu itu mĕlainkan ambil juga hingga bĕratus-ratus. Sa-tĕlah banyak-lah lalu datang-lah mĕlanggar kota nĕgĕri yang di-tĕpi laut nama raja-nya Sira Birabab ia ĕmpat bĕrsaudara sa-orang bĕrnama raja Mirabab dan sa-orang bĕrnama raja Kĕndĕri Mirabab dan sa-orang bĕrnama raka Pĕkĕrabab bĕsar juga kota-nya lagi dĕngan kokoh-nya dan orang pun banyak, tiba-tiba datang angkatan raja Pĕranggi Dewa tiada-lah lagi bĕrtanya hingga datang langgar sahaja. Maka jadi bĕrpĕrang-lah sĕgala pĕrahu angkatan itu dĕngan orang daratan. Ada pun kota nĕgĕri itu dĕngan bĕdil mĕriam tĕrlalu-lah banyak. Sa-kĕtika bĕrpĕrang maka bĕrgĕmuroh bunyi-nya dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya jadi kĕlam kabut sakalian dĕngan asap bĕdil mĕriam itu. Maka banyak-lah pĕrahu angkatan raja Pĕranggi Dewa itu tĕnggĕlam di-makan pĕluru mĕriam, tĕrlalu-lah ramai bĕrpĕrang antara kĕdua pihak itu. Sa-kĕtika raja Kĕndĕri Mirabab dan raja Pĕkĕra Mirabab itu datang marah-nya mĕngĕrahkan orang pĕrahu kĕluar ia dari dalam suatu anak sungai siap dĕngan alat sĕnjata datang sĕpĕrti angin ribut bĕrkĕliling pĕrahu angkatan orang itu dĕngan tĕmpek sorak-nya. Maka jadi bĕrkĕpong-lah pĕrahu orang itu. Di-dalam itu pun di-lawankan juga tĕrlalu-lah ramai-nya. Maka asap bĕdil itu pun bĕrtambah-tambah kĕlam kabut tiada siapa mĕngĕnal siapa lagi. Maka oleh raja Pĕranggi Dewa di-suroh dayong pĕrahu itu hampir ka-tĕpi; maka tĕrlompatan-lah sakalian pahlawan dan pĕnglima-nya naik ka-darat sĕrta mĕngunus sĕnjata hĕndak mĕngamok. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh adek raja Sira Mirabab yang di-darat maka di-suroh-nya bĕdil dĕngan sunggoh-sunggoh datang bĕdil-nya dĕngan bĕdil mĕriam kĕchil bĕsar sĕpĕrti hujan lĕbat mĕnimpa ka-atas pĕrahu angkatan itu raja Pĕranggi Dewa habis rosak mĕnjadi sĕrbok di-tĕrbangkan oleh pĕluru dari laut. Maka tĕrkĕjut-lah pĕnghulu angkatan itu mĕlihat pĕrahu-nya habis binasa. Maka marah-lah ia tiada sangkakan diri-nya sĕlamat lagi. Maka ia pun mĕlompat dĕngan pĕnghulu hulubalang naik ka-darat sĕrta mĕngunus sĕnjata mĕngamok pula. Maka apabila di-lihat oleh raja Mirabab hal raja Pĕranggi itu datang dĕngan sa-orang-nya, maka di-suroh-nya sĕgala hulubalang kĕpong sĕrta ia pun mĕmachu kuda-nya mĕnĕrkam masok bĕrtikam usir mĕngusir bĕrgĕmuroh bunyi-nya. Dĕmi di-lihat oleh sĕgala raja-raja yang di-pĕrahu, maka raja Pĕkĕra Mirabab kĕdua bĕrsaudara pun sĕgĕra-lah mĕlompat naik ka-darat mĕngĕpong orang raja Pĕranggi mĕngamok itu tĕrtangkap dan tĕrbunoh. Maka orang di-darat banyak mati dari-pada hidup. Dĕmikian itu-lah orang yang mĕnurut hawa nafsu shaitan. Maka anak chuchu iblis habis-lah tĕrtawa gĕlak dĕngan suka hati-nya dan darah pun tiada-lah tĕrminum oleh anak chuchu iblis itu. Sa-tĕlah itu maka pĕnghulu shaitan pun bĕrjalan-lah ka-nĕgĕri yang lain pula mĕnuju sĕgala kota nĕgĕri raja-raja yang di-susur tĕpi laut. Maka sampai-lah ka-pada sa-buah nĕgĕri raja-nya kafir makan arak. Maka pĕnghulu shaitan kĕdua pun naik ka-istana raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa itu masok ka-pĕraduan. Masa itu raja tĕngah bĕradu sĕrta datang bĕrdiri kĕdua-nya di-susur kĕlambu. Maka raja itu pun bangun dari-pada bĕradu-nya mĕminta piala arak-nya maka budak-budak raja pun mĕngambil guri arak di-tahan piala di-bawah-nya, baharu ia hĕndak tuang. Maka datang pĕnghulu iblis di-selak kain-nya lalu kĕnching ka-dalam piala itu sadikit arak banyak ayer kĕnching. Maka budak itu pun pĕrsĕmbahkan ka-pada raja. Maka raja pun mĕminum-lah arak satu piala itu. Sa-tĕlah sudah maka Shaikh Abdullah pun kata-lah ka-pada pĕnghulu shaitan, kata-nya, "Astaghfur Allah al-adzim, bĕtapa juga tuan hamba bĕri minum ayer kĕnching ka-pada raja itu?" Maka kata pĕnghulu shaitan, "Bukan-kah hamba kata dan pĕsan jangan tuan hamba tĕgur sa-barang pĕrbuatan hamba di-atas sĕgala manusia?" Maka kata Shaikh Abdullah, "Pada tĕmpat yang lain tiada hamba tĕgur, ini ia sa-orang raja bĕsar mĕmĕgang suatu nĕgĕri. Maka sampai hemat tuan hamba bĕri ia minum ayer kĕnching." Maka raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa pun hairan bunyi orang bĕrbabil di-tĕpi kĕlambu-nya tiada kĕlihatan suara sahaja yang di-dĕngar, jadi tiada mĕmbasoh muka-nya dudok mĕlĕngong mĕndĕngar akan hal pĕrbabilan kĕdua-nya. Maka pĕnghulu shaitan pun datang-lah marah-nya akan Shaikh Abdullah kata-nya, "Jika sudah pandai tuan hamba bĕrchĕrai-lah kita," sambil di-rabut-nya tongkat yang di-tangan Shaikh Abdullah itu dan di-tumbok-nya sakali lalu turun dari istana raja itu lalu hilang raib. Maka shaikh Abdullah pun kĕlihatan-lah pada mata orang tĕrdiri di-hadapan raja. Maka raja pun tĕrkĕjut langsong bangun bĕrdiri mĕmĕgang tangan shaikh Abdullah kata-nya, "Dĕngan siapa kamu bĕrkata-kata sa-kĕjap ini? Dan dari mana juga tuan datang ka-pĕraduan hamba ini dĕngan lĕngkap sĕgala pakaian alamat orang jauh? Dan siapa mĕmbawa tuan ka-mari ini? Karna budak-budak pĕrĕmpuan lagi tidur." Maka kata Shaikh Abdullah, "Ya raja, bahawasa-nya orang yang hamba lawan bĕrbabil tadi pĕnghulu iblis, bukan-kah raja mĕminum arak tadi? Ya-itu bukan-nya arak, itu kĕnching-nya di-dalam piala itu." Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh raja akan kata Shaikh Abdullah itu lalu di-bawa oleh raja dudok bĕrtĕnggir di-susur kĕlambu-nya sĕrta kata-nya, "Jika dĕmikian hamba bĕrminum ayer kĕnching iblis rupa-nya." Maka kata Shaikh Abdullah, "Ya-lah tuanku. Ada pun hamba ini anak nĕgĕri Abani datang dari nĕgĕri guru hamba nĕgĕri Baghdad di-bawa oleh iblis karna hamba hĕndak bĕrguru dan mĕlihat sĕgala pĕrbuatan shaitan; dan di-bĕri ka-pada hamba suatu tongkat mĕnjadi hilang-lah dari-pada mata orang banyak dĕngan bĕbĕrapa pĕrbuatan di-atas sĕgala manusia pĕrbuatan-nya sa-mata-mata kĕjahatan jua hingga sampai ka-istana tuanku ini." Maka kata raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa, 'Bahwa jauh juga nĕgĕri Baghdad dĕngan nĕgĕri Kĕdah ini tiga ĕmpat bulan pĕlayaran, khabar orang yang sĕlalu pĕrgi datang itu." Maka kata shaikh Abdullah, "Sĕkarang ugama yang mana di-pĕgang oleh tuanku sakalian di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah ini?" Maka kata raja, "Ada pun ugama yang hamba sakalian turut dari-pada orang tua-tua dahulu kala ia itu mĕnyĕmbah bĕrhala sakalian-nya." Maka kata Shaikh Abdullah, "Ada pun jangan-lah tuanku sakalian tiada di-kĕtahui ini-lah zĕman ugama nabi Muhammad rasul Allah yang akhir al zĕman hĕndak-lah kita sakalian umat yang kĕmudian ini mĕmbawa shareat ugama islam mĕnurut kitab koran yang di-turunkan Allah subhanahu wataala ka-pada pĕsuroh-nya nabi Muhammad rasul Allah di-nĕgĕri Mĕkah dan kubur-nya di-nĕgĕri Mĕdinah, dan sĕgala ugama yang dahulu itu sĕsat jua tiada dĕngan sa-bĕnar-nya, jangan tuan-ku tiada kĕtahui sĕbab ugama yang tiada sa-bĕnar itu-lah datang iblis shaitan mĕmbuat haru-biru." Maka kata raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa, "Jikalau dĕmikian hĕndak-lah tuan hamba tolong hamba sakalian ini ajarkan ugama islam yang sa-bĕnar itu." Dĕmi di-dĕngar oleh Shaikh Abdullah akan kata raja itu, lalu di-pĕlok leher dan di-chium-nya tuboh raja itu sĕrta dudok bĕrkata-kata sa-kĕtika di-ajarkan-nya kalimah shahadat. Maka raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa pun mĕnguchap-lah dua kalimah shahadat sĕrta bĕrtitah suroh ambil tĕmpayan arak-nya buangkan ka-tanah hingga sakalian-nya habis, lalu ia bĕrtitah suroh ambil sakalian bĕrhala di-dalam istana itu. Maka sakalian itu pun di-hantarkan di-hadapan baginda dan Shaikh Abdullah dari-pada ĕmas perak tĕmbikar kayu dan tanah habis-lah di-pukul oleh Shaikh Abdullah di-bĕlah-nya hingga hanchur sakalian mĕnjadi sĕrbok, lalu di-masokkan-nya ka-dalam api. Maka kata Shaikh Abdullah, "Hĕndak-lah tuanku himpunkan sakalian kĕchil bĕsar di-dalam istana ini." Maka baginda pun mĕnyuroh datang sĕgala istĕri-nya dan sĕgala gundek-nya. Maka Shaikh Abdullah pun mĕngajar-lah kalimah shahadat habis-lah sakalian pĕrĕmpuan di-dalam kota itu di-ajarkan-nya. Maka sakalian-nya pun habis-lah mĕmbawa ugama islam. Sa-tĕlah itu maka hidangan pĕrsantapan pun di-angkat orang-lah lalu santap baginda sĕrta Shaikh Abdullah. Maka kata Shaikh Abdullah, "Ada pun yang hamba tiada makan minum ini salama patek di-bawa shaitan iblis siang dan malam itu sama jua chĕrah-nya tiada bĕrasa hati hĕndak makan nasi." Maka titah raja Ong Mahawangsa, "Mari juga kita makan;" lalu makan-lah sa-hidang dĕngan baginda. Sa-tĕlah itu lalu makan sireh, sambil bĕrkata-kata. Maka sangat-lah suka hati baginda mĕndĕngarkan kesah itu. Maka baginda kĕdua laki istĕri-nya pun sangat-lah kaseh akan Shaikh Abdullah itu tambahan dĕngan budi pĕkĕrti-nya. Maka kata Shaikh Abdullah ka-pada raja Ong Mahawangsa, "Mari-lah kita kĕluar ka-balai rong boleh kita himpunkan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang." Sa-tĕlah datang ka-balai rong maka dudok sĕmayam di-atas singgasana Shaikh Abdullah dudok di-iringan kanan baginda. Maka titah baginda ka-pada biduanda ĕmpat orang suroh panggil mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat. Maka mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun sĕgĕra-lah datang mĕngadap sĕrta dĕngan hairan mĕlihat sa-orang Shaikh dudok di-iringan kanan raja itu karna tiada pĕrnah di-lihat-nya. Maka titah baginda ka-pada mĕntĕri itu, "Hai saudara-ku, ada pun beta suroh panggil saudara-ku kĕĕmpat ini. Maka ada pun pagi-pagi hari ini orang bĕlum jaga dari-pada tidur-nya, maka datang tuan Shaikh Abdullah, anak nĕgĕri Abani di-bawa oleh shaitan iblis ka-pĕraduan beta sakali. Maka sĕgala ahwal kĕjahatan itu sangat-lah gĕmar-nya. Maka tĕrlihat oleh tuan ini jadi kĕtakutan-lah. Maka tuan ini kĕtinggalan-lah di-susur kĕlambu beta ini-lah yang mĕnyuroh kita sakalian isi Kĕdah ini mĕmbawa shareat ugama islam yang di-turunkan Allah taala pada nabi-nya Muhammad Rasul Allah hamba-nya lagi pĕsuroh-nya ia-lah nabi yang akhir al-zĕman. Maka sĕkarang ini apa juga kata tuan hamba yang kĕĕmpat?” Maka bĕrdatang sĕmbah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, “Pada fikiran hati patek ka-pada duli tuanku juga kĕrja ini mĕmbĕri kĕbajikan akan patek kĕĕmpat ini mĕngikut sahaja, jika tuanku mĕmbawa imam shareat ugama islam patek kĕĕmpat pun pinta-lah tuan skaikh ini ajarkan elmu shareat.” Dĕmi Shaikh Abdullah mĕndĕngar kata, maka ia pun sĕgĕra bangun datang ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat mĕndakap dan mĕnchium sakalian tuboh-nya sĕrta mĕngajar kalimah shahadat. Maka mĕnteri pun mĕnguchap-lah kalimah shahadat. Shaikh Abdullah pun dudok bĕrkata dĕngan mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat mĕmbawa shareat ugama islam, “Maka hĕndak-lah tuan hamba kĕĕmpat suroh kĕrahkan sakalian rayat bala isi nĕgĕri ini suroh bĕrhimpun datang ka-mari.” Maka di-suroh-nya kĕrahkan sakalian rayat. Maka di-ajar oleh Shaikh Abdullah akan mĕnguchap kalimah shahadat dan sakalian bĕrhala yang di-pakai oleh mĕreka itu di-pinta-nya di-hanchurkan sakalian, dan mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat pun bĕrsama suroh kĕrjakan. Maka kata tuan Shaikh Abdullah ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, “Dĕngan nama mana raja kita ini di-sĕbut orang?” Maka kata mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat, “Dĕngan nama Phra Ong Mahawangsa.” Maka kata tuan Shaikh Abdullah, “Jika dĕmikian mari kita ubahkan dĕngan bahasa islam supaya mudah kita sakalian buboh ka-dalam khutbah misjid pada hari jĕmaat .” Maka kata mĕntĕri, “Akan pĕrentah itu mana yang baik ka-pada tuan, hamba sakalian ini mĕngikut-lah.” Maka titah raja, “Hĕndak-lah saudara-ku turut sĕpĕrti kĕhĕndak tuan Shaikh Abdullah ini barang kata-nya itu dĕngan hukum Allah dan sabda nabi Muhammad rasul Allah lagi yang di-dalam kitab koran itu jua yang di-turut oleh tuan ini.” Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat “Baik-lah tuanku,” lalu bĕrkata ka-pada tuan Shaikh, “Namakan-lah, boleh hamba sakalian turut.” Maka kata tuan Shaikh Abdullah, “Jika dĕmikian, sĕbut-lah nama-nya Sultan Mudzalfal Shah, itu-lah nama-nya boleh di-bubohkan ka-dalam khutbah jĕmaat dan buboh ka-dalam surat yang hantar ka-pada sĕgala nĕgĕri orang itu lagi pula di-dalam kitab koran itu pun dĕngan nama Sultan itu, nama yang mulia dan tĕrtinggi dari-pada sĕgala nama yang di-dalam dunia.” Maka baginda dan mĕntĕri itu pun tĕrlalu suka hati mĕndĕngar nama itu. Maka titah baginda “Kĕrja yang mana, tuan, boleh kita kĕrjakan pada sa-hari ini?” Maka kata tuan shaikh Abdullah, “Baik juga di kĕrjakan pĕrtama hĕndak mĕnĕtapkan shareat itu. Maka hĕndak-lah kita dirikan suatu misjid ka-pada suatu mukim, yang ya-itu suatu kampong yang bĕrnama dusun itu chukup orang-nya ĕmpat puloh orang dĕngan anak nĕgĕri itu jangan orang nĕgĕri asing-asing atau kanak-kanak atau abdi dari-pada hamba yang di-tĕbus atau kafir tiada-lah sah jĕmaat-nya pada misjid tĕmpat sĕmbahyang jĕmaat. Maka bĕrhĕnti tanda sĕgala anak mukim itu bĕrhimpun sĕmbahyang jĕmaat ka-pada misjid itu kadar kĕdĕngaran bunyi gĕndang raya, itu-lah tuanku yang bĕrnama tiang ugama pada shareat nabi Muhammad rasul Allah pada sĕgala kaum umat-nya yang mahu mĕnurut kita koran sĕrta sabda-nya itu supaya tĕrmashhur-lah nama raja mĕntĕri di-dalam nĕgĕri itu mĕngĕrjakan amal ibadat akan Allah subhanahu wataala ada-lah sudah dĕngan tĕmpat-nya rumah akan ganti kaabah Allah di-nĕgĕri Mĕkah Mĕdinah." Maka kata Sultan Mudzalpal Shah, "Jika dĕmikian tuan boleh-lah kita suroh kĕrjakan sĕpĕrti kata tuan itu." Lalu ia bĕrtitah suroh kĕrahkan sĕgala pĕnghulu kampong dusun anak isi nĕgĕri mĕngĕrjakan misjid, sĕrta suroh datang bĕlajar elmu shareat ka-pada tuan Shaikh Abdullah. Maka mĕntĕri pun mĕnyĕmbah lalu bĕrmohon kĕmbali mĕngĕrjakan titah baginda sĕrta mĕminta tuan Shaikh Abdullah silakan ka-rumah-nya sa-malam-malaman pada sa-orang mĕntĕri mĕngajarkan anak istĕri-nya. Maka Shaikh Abdullah pun tiada-lah taksir lagi mĕngajarkan sakalian itu sĕrta mĕnyurohkan sĕmbahyang lima waktu; jika malam di-bawa oleh baginda masok ka-istana bĕlajar mĕngaji koran. Maka orang pun datang bĕrhimpun dari-pada sa-gĕnap mukim nĕgĕri itu mĕngambil bĕrkat pada Shaikh Abdullah sa-hingga banyak-lah isi nĕgĕri itu saleh. Maka Sultan pun kĕsuka-an mĕlihat sĕgala isi nĕgĕri bĕrbuat amal ibadat ka-pada Allah taala. Maka mana-mana orang yang datang mĕngadap baginda dĕngan mĕmbawa pĕrsĕmbahan itu sa-orang pun tiada lĕpas oleh Shaikh Abdullah mĕlainkan di-ajar-nya kalimah shahadat dan mĕmbĕri dzarikat dan mĕndirikan sĕmbahyang lima waktu dan mĕnyuroh mĕmbĕri zakat dan puasa dan fitrah lĕpas dari-pada fardzu puasa bulan Ramdzan itu, dan sĕrta mĕmbĕri zakat harta bĕnda yang di-oleh-nya dari-pada ĕmas perak dan dari-pada sĕgala makanan dari-pada sĕgala tanam-tanaman sĕpĕrti padi yang bĕr-sukatan itu dan binatang kĕrbau lĕmbu kambing mana yang sampai nasib-nya itu-lah fardzu-nya yang di-kĕrjakan oleh sharaa ugama nabi Muhammad rasul Allah. Maka turun ka-pada sakalian umat-nya jadi sukachita-lah di-hati sĕgala yang datang. Maka tĕr-mashhur-lah ka-pada sĕgala nĕgĕri yang lain mĕngatakan shaikh Abdullah anak nĕgĕri Abani mĕmbawa sĕgala orang isi nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu ka-pada jalan sharaa dan shareat ugama islam dĕngan raja mĕntĕri-nya sa-kali hingga sampai ka-nĕgĕri timur dan barat tĕrmashhur adil murah raja-nya.

Sa-bĕrmula datang-lah khabar itu ka-nĕgĕri Acheh mĕngatakan Shaikh Abdullah mĕmbawa ugama shareat nabi Muhammad rasul Allah di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah dĕngan umat sangat kĕras sharaa-nya. Maka tuan Shaikh Nur Al-Din muafakat dĕngan raja nĕgĕri Acheh itu hĕndak mĕngantarkan kitab siratal mustakim sĕrta dĕngan kitab babu'l nikah. Maka titah sultan Acheh itu, "Baik sangat tuan kita antarkan ka-pada Sultan Mudzalpal Shah di-nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu dari-pada kĕdua kitab ini sĕgala pĕrkataan ibadat sĕgala hamba Allah yang mĕngikut shareat nabi Muhammad supaya tĕtap shareat ugama islam karna ada sudah orang yang mĕnunjokkan boleh-lah di-pĕrhati-nya sĕgala shareat dan fardzu sunat makroh, halal haram sakalian." Sa-tĕlah itu di-pĕrbuat surat oleh raja Acheh itu suroh bawa bĕlayar ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah. Maka di-bawa oleh utusan itu, tiada bĕrapa lama-nya sampai ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah dĕngan di-sambut oleh baginda dĕngan sĕpĕrti-nya. Maka pada masa itu Shaikh Abdullah pun ada bĕrsama-sama raja mĕntĕri-nya. Maka surat itu pun di-suroh ambil ka-pada mĕntĕri bachakan dĕmikian-lah bunyi-nya: "Ini-lah surat Sultan nĕgĕri Acheh dua dĕngan Shaikh Nur Al-din datang ka-pada saudara-ku Sultan nĕgĕri Kĕdah dĕngan tuan Shaikh Abdullah Abani yang ada hadzir di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah. Maka tĕrima-lah dua buah kitab ini akan mĕnjadi amal ibadat ka-pada sĕgala orang yang mĕmbawa shareat ugama islam jangan jadi tĕrtinggalan dari-pada sĕgala sharat-nya ka-pada kita umat Muhammad dan hamba ka-pada Allah taala boleh-lah bagi surat ini ka-pada saudara-ku tuan Shaikh Abdullah tilek tatap di-dalam kitab siratal mustakim nama-nya itu, kĕdua-nya kitab babu'l-nikah itu, nĕschaya boleh-lah di-ajar-nya akan saudara-ku Shaikh Abdullah dari-pada halal haram-nya dan sah batal-nya itu. Maka tĕrhimpun-lah sakalian amal dan ibadat jalan kita ka-pada Allah azawajal dan mĕnyampaikan ka-pada hari mahshar dan hari kiamat dĕngan nama yang suchi dan kĕbajikan kita kaum islam, ini-lah di-nyatakan." Maka mĕntĕri pun mĕlĕtakkan surat itu mĕnyĕmbah baginda. Maka titah baginda suroh tĕrima ambil sakalian bingkisan itu sĕrta mĕnyuroh bĕlakan orang utusan itu sa-mĕntara hĕndak di-balaskan surat raja Acheh itu; dan kitab dua buah pun di-tĕrima oleh Shaikh Abdullah. Tiada bĕrapa lama-nya maka Shaikh Abdullah pun muafakat dĕngan baginda hĕndak di-balaskan surat raja Acheh itu sĕrta dĕngan bingkisan yang indah-indah di-sĕrahkan ka-pada utusan itu. Maka utusan itu pun kĕmbali-lah ka-nĕgĕri Acheh mĕngadap raja-nya. Ada Shaikh Abdullah itu sa-tĕlah ia mĕndapat kitab dua buah itu, makin kĕras sharaa-nya tiada bĕrhĕnti mĕngajar sĕgala orang bĕrbuat amal dan ibadat ka-pada Allah taala dan mĕnyuroh sakalian orang mĕmbuat bandarsah ka-pada sa-gĕnap kampong dusun yang lain dari-pada masjid tĕmpat sĕmbahyang lima waktu dan sĕmbahyang tĕrawih pada bulan Ramdzan sampai pada mĕngĕluarkan zakat fitrah sa-orang sa-gantang di-bĕri ka-pada fakir miskin bĕras sukatan nĕgĕri Baghdad. Maka itu-lah yang bĕrnama ugama islam. Dĕmikian lagi sĕmbahyang dua rakaat sunat aidil fitrah dan jika bĕrhimpun banyak orang, hĕndak mĕmbacha khutbah raya itu sĕrta mĕmuji-muji Allah dan rasul-nya dan mĕmuji-muji raja yang ĕmpunya nĕgĕri itu. Maka mĕnjadi kuat-lah sharaa ugama islam mĕngikut kitab koran yang di-turunkan Allah subhanahu wa-taala, tiada boleh di-tinggal oleh sĕgala kaum islam sampai ka-pada bumi al-kiamat. Dĕmikian lagi sĕmbahyang raya bĕsar nama-nya dua rakaat satu salam jua, dan harus-lah sĕgala islam mĕnyĕmbĕleh kurban nama-nya dari-pada binatang kĕrbau lĕmbu atau kambing mĕnurut hukum orang yang di-dalam nĕgĕri Mĕkah yang maha mulia. Maka baginda pun sangat-lah mĕsra kaseh akan Shaikh Abdullah tiada-lah bĕrchĕrai jauh dĕngan dia mĕngaji kĕdua laki istĕri-nya. Maka bĕbĕrapa pula pĕrĕmpuan yang baik-baik dan bangsa raja di-chari oleh baginda akan jadi istĕri Shaikh Abdullah maka sa-orang pun tiada bĕrkĕhĕndak di-hati tuan Shaikh itu karna ia hĕndak kĕmbali ka-nĕgĕri Baghdad mĕngadap guru-nya sa-kadar mĕnanti hĕndak mĕngajar mĕngaji koran baginda laki istĕri anak bĕranak sĕrta mĕngokohkan ugama islam pada isi nĕgĕri itu. Maka tatkala itu baginda pun bĕroleh putĕra laki-laki tiga orang sa-orang nama-nya raja Maadzam Shah, sa-orang bĕrnama raja Muhammad Shah, dan sa-orang bĕrnama raja Sulaiman Shah di-namakan oleh Shaikh Abdullah dĕngan nama kitab koran juga; maka kĕtiga anak raja itu pun di-ajar oleh Shaikh Abdullah akan jalan ugama islam sĕrta mĕnaroh kasehan ka-pada fakir miskin.

Sa-bĕrmula maka tĕrsĕbut-lah pĕrkataan raja Buloh Bĕtong suami ka-pada Putĕri Sĕluang itu di-titahkan oleh ayah-nya raja Phra Ong Mahapodisat pĕrgi mĕnchari bumi tĕmpat yang baik di-sa-bĕlah utara barat laut buat kota istana. Maka Putĕri Sĕluang pun bĕrkaseh dĕngan sa-orang anak mĕntĕri bĕsar. Maka ia pun hamil-lah tĕlah gĕnap bulan-nya, maka bĕranak-lah sa-orang laki-laki di-namakan-nya Mĕgat Zenal dĕngan di-kĕtahui oleh raja Mudzalpal Shah itu. Maka di-ambil oleh baginda Mĕgat Zenal itu di-bĕri bĕlajar dĕngan anak-nya pada tuan Shaikh Abdullah mĕngaji koran dan jalan ugama islam. Ada pun Raja Buloh Bĕtong itu sa-tĕlah bĕrjalan dĕngan mĕntĕri hulubalang rayat itu, maka bĕrtĕmu-lah dĕngan mĕntĕri orang yang di-suroh oleh ayah-nya dahulu itu tĕngah mĕndirikan kota di-ulu sungai itu ka-hilir sungai padang Tĕrap. Maka raja Buloh Bĕtong pun bĕrhĕnti-lah hĕndak mĕnyudahkan kota itu. Maka ada-lah sa-orang pĕnghulu yang tua bĕrkata "Kita sakalian mĕmbuat kota ini sia-sia sahaja karna tiada suka raja kita hĕndak mĕmbuat nĕgĕri di-sini, lagi pula jauh dari kuala." Maka titah raja Buloh Bĕtong, "Jika dĕmikian mari kita sa-tĕngah turun ka-hilir sa-dikit." Sa-tĕlah bĕrjalan maka ia bĕrtĕmu dĕngan suatu bumi tanah yang tinggi ada pula suatu sungai sa-bĕlah kiri-nya. Maka di-suroh oleh raja Buloh Bĕtong tĕbas hutan palas yang tĕrlalu amat banyak. Sa-tĕlah sudah chuchi di-dirikan suatu kota tanah bĕrpagar batang palas; maka sĕkarang di-sĕbut nama kota Palas. Maka tĕngah dudok mĕreka itu mĕngĕrjakan kota kĕdua itu, datang-lah warta mĕngatakan ayahanda sudah hilang dan istĕri-nya Putĕri Sĕluang itu pun dudok di-dalam bĕrjahat. Maka datang-lah marah-nya lalu bĕrhĕnti di-kota Palas itu. Hata tiada bĕrapa lama-nya datang-lah dato Sangkai ĕmpat bĕrsaudara, kĕdua-nya tuan Sĕnik Ipeh, kĕtiga-nya tuan Sĕnik Ratu dan kĕĕmpat-nya tuan Sĕnik Payu. Maka dato Sangkai itu kĕluar dari nĕgĕri Pĕtani; ada pun bangsa-nya jahat kĕĕmpat-nya mĕnyamun mĕnchuri kĕrja-nya lagi suka mĕmbunoh orang ambil harta-nya. Maka sĕgala orang jahat habis bĕrhimpun ka-pada-nya jadi tiga ĕmpat ratus banyak sakai-nya. Maka ia bĕroleh warta mĕngatakan ada kota di-hilir Padang Tĕrap di-pĕrbuat orang, lalu ia datang kĕĕmpat tiada mĕmbĕri khabar ka-pada anak nĕgĕri dan pĕnghulu dusun nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu, tiba-tiba datang hampir kota raja Buloh Bětong itu. Maka di-warta orang-lah ka-pada raja Buloh Bětong, maka ia pun sěgěra měngambil alat sěnjata-nya lalu naik ka-atas kuda-nya dan rayat pun banyak-lah měngiringkan dia tiada sěmpat hěndak měngěrah sěgala měntěri hulubalang. Maka ia pun běrjalan-lah měnuju kota itu. Maka di-dalam kota itu pun těngah orang běrpěrang jua těrlalu ramai-nya děngan těmpek sorak běrtikam tombak lěmbing tětak chinchang pědang běrgěmuroh bunyi-nya karna orang yang di-kota itu banyak juga kampong dusun hingga běratus-ratus orang yang diam di-situ sakalian itu běramok-amokan lagi. Maka kěhěndak hati dato Sangkai hěndak sěrbu sakali měnyamun di-dalam kota itu di-tahan oleh orang isi kota itu tiada dapat masok. Maka raja Buloh Bětong pun sampai-lah měnyěrbukan diri-nya sakalian ka-dalam kaum Dato Sangkai itu běrtikam běrtětak pědang běrtěpis-těpis, běrtikam kěris těrlalu-lah ramai-nya. Děmi di-lihat oleh tuan Sěnik Ipeh raja Buloh Bětong datang mělotarkan lěmbing-nya. Maka sěgěra raja Buloh Bětong měnyalahkan tiada kěna lalu měmachu kuda-nya hampir měnikam tombak-nya kěna těngkok-nya těrpělanting jatoh ka-tanah. Maka tuan Sěnik pun těrlalu marah lalu běrtěmpek sěrta měngunus kěris mělompat tikam ka-pada raja Buloh Bětong, itu pun di-těpiskan-nya tiada kěna. Maka sěgěra di-tikam oleh raja Buloh Bětong kěna pada dada-nya těrus ka-bělakang rěbah langsong mati. Maka sorak rayat raja Buloh Bětong běrgěmuroh-lah. Děmi di-lihat oleh tuan Sěnik Ratu saudara-nya sudah mati, těrlalu-lah marah ia sěrta datang běrlari-lari měnětak děngan pědang-nya. Maka sěgěra di-elakkan oleh raja Buloh Bětong tiada kěna. Maka mata tombak raja Buloh Bětong pun kěna-lah tikam tangan tuan Sěnik Ratu měměgang pědang itu jatoh těrpělanting tiga ěmpat děpa jauh-nya tangan pun patah těrkulai. Maka sěgěra di-hunus kěris-nya děngan tangan kiri pula měnikamkan raja Buloh Bětong itu pun tiada měnjadi guna. Maka di-balas tikam oleh raja Buloh Bětong kěna rěngkong-nya těrus ka-těngkok-nya rěbah mati. Maka sorak orang raja Buloh Bětong běrtagar bunyi-nya. Děmi di-lihat oleh saudara-nya tuan Sěnik Payu dan Dato Sangkai saudara-nya dua orang sudah mati, maka kědua pun běrlari-lari datang sa-orang di-kanan sa-orang di-kiri měnikam raja Buloh Bětong tiada kěna juga. Maka ia pun běrhadap ka-pada tuan Sěnik Payu měnikamkan tombak dan akan tikam dato Sangkai itu di-elakkan. Maka těrkěna tombak raja Buloh Bětong di-rosok-nya kiri těrus ka-kanan rěbah mati; lalu měngadap pula dato Sangkai běrtikam lěmbing děngan tombak těrlalu-lah gěmuroh bunyi-nya sorak sakalian orang karna banyak kěmatian sa-bělah dato Sangkai karna raja Buloh Bětong sěndiri masok běrtikam itu. Sěbab itu-lah masing-masing tiada sědar akan diri-nya tiada lagi běrtikam sěnjata panjang sa-hingga běrtikam kěris běrchěkakkan pinggang sama-sama mati rěbah těrguling. Maka darah pun banyak-lah tumpah ka-bumi měngalir sěpěrti ayer děras laku-nya dan kěpala pun sěpěrti buah masak gugur ka-bumi dan běrkaparan sěgala sěnjata yang patah dan sumbing dan rosak jadi suda dan ranjau mĕnikamkan kaki tangan orang yang bĕrkĕlahi. Maka tĕrlalu kĕsukaran ka-pada orang yang ada itu hĕndak mĕlangkahkan kaki-nya. Maka raja Buloh Bĕtong pun gĕmbira-nya sĕpĕrti singa yang galak. Maka dato Sangkai pun sambil ia bĕrtikam itu dĕngan mĕngĕrling mĕlompat undur ka-bĕlakang mĕlihat orang-nya habis. Maka tikam raja Buloh Bĕtong pun kĕna ka-rosok dato Sangkai tĕrsungkur rĕbah, maka sĕgĕra ia hĕndak mĕmbalas. Maka di-tambah oleh raja Buloh Bĕtong sakali lagi kĕna pada paha tĕrus ka-sabĕlah. Maka dato Sangkai pun datang gĕmbira-nya mĕnikamkan tombak kĕna pada lĕngan raja Buloh Bĕtong luka sadikit mata tombak pun patah. Maka di-champakkan oleh dato Sangkai lalu mĕngunus kĕris panjang mĕnikam pula tĕrsisip ka-sa-bĕlah itu pun lagi kuat raja Buloh Bĕtong marah-nya sĕgĕra mĕnikamkan tombak bĕrturut-turut kĕna rĕngkong dato Sangkai sampai ka-hulu hati rĕbah langsong mati. Tatkala itu mĕntĕri Lela Putĕra pun sampai dĕngan kuda-nya mĕndapatkan raja Buloh Bĕtong. Maka raja itu mabok darah tĕngah hĕndak rĕbah. Maka sĕgĕra di-sambut oleh mĕntĕri Lela Putĕra di-bawa masok ka-dalam istana di-baringkan di-atas gĕta. Lĕpas itu maka mĕntĕri Lela Putĕra pun kĕmbali pula ka-dalam pĕpĕrangan mĕlihat sĕgala rayat raja Buloh Bĕtong. Maka masing-masing pun kĕmbali-lah bĕrsĕnangkan diri-nya ka-dalam kota itu. Ada pun akan kĕmatian dato Sangkai ĕmpat bĕrsaudara itu pun bĕrkaparan-lah di-tĕngah medan. Maka mĕntĕri Lela Putĕra pun datang mĕndapatkan raja Buloh Bĕtong mĕlihatkan sakit luka-nya itu. Maka makin hari hĕndak malam makin-lah sakit. Dĕngan hal yang dĕmikian sampai tĕngah malam maka raja Buloh Bĕtong hilang-lah raib dari-pada mata sĕgala khalayak yang banyak pulang ka-pada asal-nya mĕnjadi buloh. Maka mĕntĕri Lela Putĕra pun sangat mĕnaroh kĕmashghulan di-hati-nya lalu ia mĕmbuat surat antarkan ka-pada Sultan Mudzalpal Shah maalumkan sĕmbah sakalian hal ahual yang tĕlah bĕrlaku itu, sĕkarang tinggal-lah kota dua biji dĕngan tiada bĕraja; maka ia hĕndak datang mĕngadap pun tiada siapa boleh mĕnunggu kota. Maka utusan itu pun bĕrjalan-lah ka-kota Kuala Muda. Tiada bĕrapa lama-nya sampai-lah langsong masok mĕngadap. Maka kĕtika itu baginda tĕngah di-hadap oleh sakalian mĕntĕri hulubalang dan tuan Shaikh Abdullah dan anakanda baginda kĕtiga pun ada hadzir mĕndĕngarkan sĕgala hukum Allah dan shareat ugama islam. Maka surat mĕntĕri Lela Putĕra pun sĕgala khalayak yang banyak itu. Sa-tĕlah paham-lah baginda di-sĕmbahkan; maka di-suroh oleh baginda bachakan dihadapan sakalian-nya, maka tiada bĕrkata-kata lagi tundok tĕngadah mĕnahankan ayer mata-nya kĕnangkan saudara-nya Raja Buloh Bĕtong itu. Maka titah baginda ka-pada mĕntĕri kĕĕmpat suroh bichara hal kota itu. Maka sĕmbah mĕntĕri, "Pada fikiran hemat patek duli tuanku pun sudah tua, baik-lah paduka anakanda baginda ini barang dua orang di-hantarkan mĕnjadi raja di-kota dua biji itu." Maka di-hati baginda bĕnar-lah sĕpĕrti sĕmbah mĕntĕri itu karna anak-nya kĕtiga itu patut-lah sudah mĕnanggong kĕrajaan. Maka kata baginda ka-pada tuan Shaikh Abdullah, "Hĕndak-lah tuan namakan anakanda yang tua ini kita rajakan sa-buah nĕgĕri yang hampir dĕngan kita sa-hari dua bĕrjalan sahaja." Maka kata tuan Shaikh, "Baik-lah, tuanku." Maka di-suroh himpun sĕgala anak mĕntĕri yang ada ibu bapa-nya tua-tua itu; maka di-namakan putĕra baginda yang tua itu Sultan Maadzam Shah. Sa-tĕlah itu di-ambil anak mĕntĕri di-namakan sa-orang Maharaja dan sa-orang Paduka Raja dan sa-orang Paduka Sĕri Pĕrdana mĕntĕri dan sa-orang Paduka Raja Tĕmĕnggong, itu-lah mĕntĕri bĕsar yang akan mĕmangku Sultan Maadzam Shah dan kapit Sultan adinda baginda Raja Mahmud Shah. Maka kata Shaikh Abdullah, "Jika sudah ada sa-orang Sultan suatu nĕgĕri patut-lah tuanku orang tua mĕnjadi marhum nama-nya tiada boleh satu nĕgĕri dua raja-nya mĕnjadi haru hara hukum nĕgĕri itu, sĕpĕrti di-dalam kitab tuanku, jika dua raja dzalim sangat nĕgĕri itu." Sa-tĕlah itu maka lĕngkap-lah Sulatn Mudzalpal Shah akan hĕndak di-rajakan anak-nya itu dĕngan sĕgala alat sĕnjata kĕrajaan dan dari-pada sĕgala takhta singgasana pĕrhiasan raja-raja. Sa-tĕlah siap sakalian-nya maka Sultan Maadzam Shah bĕrjalan-lah dĕngan bĕbĕrapa banyak rayat bala-nya mĕngiring dan pĕrdana mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa sida-sida bĕntara biduanda sakalian. Tiada bĕrapa lama-nya maka sampai-lah ka-kota Palas itu. Maka mĕntĕri Lela Putĕra pun kĕluar-lah mĕnyambut Sultan Maadzam Shah kĕdua saudara di-bawa masok ka-kota mĕngaturkan sĕgala rumah mĕntĕri hulubalang sakalian. Sa-tĕlah itu maka mĕntĕri Lela Putĕra pun mĕmbawa raja Mahmud Shah ka-kota hulu di-dudokkan jadi raja di-kota itu. Maka tĕtap-lah Sultan Maadzam Shah yang maha-mulia sĕmayam di-atas takhta kĕrajaan nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang rayat bala sakalian. Ada pun Sultan Mudzalpal Shah sa-tĕlah sudah anakanda baginda kĕdua itu bĕrjalan itu, maka baginda pun mĕngalatkan kapal dua buah pula akan kĕnaikan anakanda baginda raja Sulaiman Shah di-suroh-nya pĕrgi ka-pulau Langkapuri bĕrbuat kota istana dan nĕgĕri, dan sa-buah di-bĕri-nya ka-pada tuan Shaikh Abdullah dĕngan muatan-nya kĕmbali ka-nĕgĕri Baghdad mĕndapatkan guru-nya Shaikh Abdullah tua. Sa-tĕlah lĕngkap maka kapal dua buah itu bĕlayar-lah mĕmbawa raja Sulaiman Shah ka-pulau Langkapuri. Tĕlah tĕtap-lah ia mĕnjadi raja, maka Shaikh Abdullah pun bĕlayar-lah mĕnuju ka-arong yang bĕsar tiga ĕmpat bulan di-dalam laut itu, dĕngan bĕbĕrapa mĕlalui nĕgĕri singgah mĕnyinggah mĕngambil ayer kayu dan mĕnchari pĕrbĕkalan dari-pada sĕgala makanan. Maka tuan Shaikh Abdullah pun bĕlayar mĕnuju ka-nĕgĕri Hindustan lalu mĕnyusur daratan sampai pula ka-nĕgĕri Bĕldayu. Maka di-pulau itu pun singgah mĕngambil ayer kayu juga. Maka bĕlayar pula bĕrtĕmu dĕngan bĕbĕrapa buah nĕgĕri. Maka Shaikh Abdullah pun sampai-lah ka-nĕgĕri Baghdad. Sa-tĕlah sampai maka naik-lah ia mĕndapatkan guru-nya maka guru pun tĕrkĕjut, sĕraya kata-nya, "Di-mana jua bagini lama tuan mĕndiamkan diri-nya? Lama bĕnar tiada hamba bĕrtĕmu dĕngan tuan hamba." Maka kata Shaikh Abdullah, "Bukan-kah hamba tuan datang mĕngadap kadam tuan, pinta tolong tuan pohonkan ka-pada Allah taala pinta pĕrtĕmukan dĕngan shaitan iblis hĕndak kĕtahui dan bĕlajar sĕgala pĕrbuatan-nya? Maka lalu sabda tuan suroh hamba pĕrgi ka-tĕngah padang bĕsar di-bawah sa-pohon kayu dudok. Maka hamba tuan pun pĕrgi-lah dudok itu, maka dĕngan tolong Allah subhanahu wataala bĕrkat doa tuan di-kabulkan Allah taala dan di-sampaikan jua sĕpĕrti hajat hamba tuan. Maka datang pĕnghulu shaitan itu mĕmbĕri salam dan hamba pun mĕnyahut salam-nya. Maka di-tanya ka-pada hamba apa-kah hajat hamba hĕndak bĕrjumpa dĕngan dia; lalu hamba katakan sĕpĕrti maksud hamba itu. Maka di-ajak-nya hamba pĕrgi dĕngan dia sĕrta di-bĕri-nya satu tongkat akan hamba suroh pĕgang, jangan lĕpas. Maka hamba pĕgang lalu mĕngikut-lah pĕrjalanan-nya." Maka tuan Shaikh Abdullah tua pun baharu-lah tĕringat akan hal itu lalu bĕrtanya pĕri ia pĕrgi mĕngikut shaitan iblis itu. Maka sĕgala pĕrbuatan shaitan iblis itu sakalian-nya di-khabarkan ka-pada guru-nya dari-pada awal hingga sampai ka-akhir-nya, dan pĕri ia mĕmbawa islamkan raja Phra Ong Mahawangsa sĕrta dĕngan mĕntĕri hulubalang rayat bala sakalian dĕngan istirihat-nya tiada dĕngan kĕsukaran sakalian itu masok ugama islam mĕngikut shareat nabi Muhammad rasul Allah sal'lallah alaihi wasalam sakalian-nya di-chĕritĕrakan oleh tuan Shaikh Abdullah sampai ka-akhir-nya suatu pun tiada di-lindongkan ka-pada guru-nya. Maka guru-nya tĕrlalu hairan dan ajaib kĕbĕsaran Allah subhanahu wataala mĕndĕngar chĕrita murid-nya itu; maka ia mĕnguchap sa-ribu shukur ka-pada Allah taala kĕmudian mĕminta doa akan Sultan Mudzalpal Shah dan Sultan Maadzam Shah dĕngan sĕgala isi nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu di-pinta ka-pada Allah bĕrtambah-tambah iman dan taat. Sa-tĕlah sudah maka tuan Shaikh Abani pun bĕrmohon-lah kĕmbali ka-rumah-nya. Maka dudok-lah ia dĕngan guru-nya sĕdia kala.

Sa-bĕrmula maka tĕrsĕbut-lah pĕrkataan Sultan Mudzalpal Shah, sa-tĕlah sudah mĕnyurohkan anakanda baginda raja Sulaiman Shah bĕlayar bĕrsama-sama Shaikh Abdullah, maka anakanda baginda Sultan Maadzami Shah pun dudok-lah di-atas takhta kĕrajaan mĕmĕrentahkan nĕgĕri Kĕdah ganti ayahanda baginda Sultan Mudzalpal Shah yang maha mulia dĕngan adil murah-nya sĕrta mĕnyurohkan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang pĕrbaiki kota parit dan istana barang yang tiada bĕrkĕnan pada hati-nya di-suroh ubahkan, dan di-suroh tunggu jaga pada pihak lawan darat mĕmĕliharakan dari-pada bahaya sĕtĕru dan mĕngĕrasi sĕgala isi nĕgĕri itu mĕmbuat ibadat sĕmbahyang lima waktu dan puasa pada bulan ramdzan dan mĕngĕluarkan zakat fitrah ka-pada tiap-tiap mukim, dan misjid yang rosak di-suroh pĕrbaiki, dan barang yang bantah di-hukumkan dĕngan hukum Allah taala, dĕmikian di-pĕrentahkan oleh baginda itu dĕngan budi pĕkĕrti-nya sĕrta pandai mĕngambil hati sakalian rayat-nya. Maka mĕntĕri dan hulubalang pun bĕrkaseh-lah akan dia. Maka tĕrmashhur-lah nama baginda pada sa-gĕnap nĕgĕri yang lain-lain mĕngatakan adil murah-nya. Maka banyak-lah orang bĕrhimpun datang bĕrniaga ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu tiada-lah bĕrputusan lagi pĕrgi datang-nya. Maka makin bĕrtambah-tambah-lah di-dalam nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu dari-pada sa-hari ka-pada sa-hari dari sa-bulan ka-sa-bulan dari sa-tahun ka-pada sa-tahun makin ramai-lah. Maka sĕgala alim mualim pun datang-lah dari nĕgĕri yang jauh-jauh. Maka tiada-lah sĕgala isi nĕgĕri Kĕdah itu mĕrasai kĕsakitan dan tĕraniayai. Maka Sultan Mudzalpal Shah tĕrlalu suka-nya mĕlihat dan mĕndĕngar sakalian pĕrentah anakanda baginda itu dĕngan adil insaf-nya.

Hata bĕbĕrapa lama-nya antara itu maka Sultan Maadzam Shah pun bĕristĕrikan sa-orang pĕrĕmpuan dari-pada anak raja kaum kĕluarga-nya tĕrlalu elok rupa paras-nya puteh kuning panjang nipis agong-agongan tĕrlalu pĕrmai rupa-nya. Sa-tĕlah sudah nikah maka baginda pun dudok-lah dĕngan kĕsukaan mĕmĕrentahkan nĕgĕri. Maka ayahanda baginda Sultan Mudzalpal Shah itu dudok-lah ia mĕnjadi marhum mĕmbuat amal ibadat kapada Allah taala dan tiada khali lagi dĕngan sĕgala alim pandita mĕnurut hukum shareat ugama islam. Dĕngan hal yang dĕmikian maka antara bĕbĕrapa lama-nya Sultan Mudzalpal Shah pun datang gĕring-nya langsong sampai hukum Allah taala kĕmbali-lah ka-rahmatu'llah taala dari nĕgĕri yang fana ka-nĕgĕri yang baka. Maka di-pĕrentahkan oleh anakanda baginda Sultan Maadzam Shah dĕngan sĕgala mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa sakalian mĕnurut istiadat kĕmatian raja yang bĕsar-bĕsar. Maka di-kuburkan jĕnazah ayahanda baginda itu sĕrta mĕmbĕri kurnia sĕdĕkah akan sĕgala fakir miskin. Sa-tĕlah sudah maka baginda pun dudok-lah dĕngan kĕmashghulan bĕrchintakan ayahanda baginda itu dan mĕmbĕri surat ka-pada adinda baginda raja Sulaiman Shah mĕnyatakan ayahanda baginda sudah kĕmbali ka-rahmatu'llah taala. Maka raja Sulaiman Shah pun bĕrangkat-lah datang ka-nĕgĕri Kĕdah mĕndapatkan kakanda baginda dan mĕnziarah kubur ayahanda baginda itu. Sa-tĕlah bĕbĕrapa hari lama-nya maka raja Sulaiman Shah pun bĕrmohon-lah ka-pada kakanda baginda kĕmbali ka-bumi istana-nya ka-pulau Langkapuri. Sa-tĕlah itu baginda pun hilang-lah sadikit dari-pada bĕrchintakan ayahanda baginda. Maka ia pun dudok mĕmĕrentahkan nĕgĕri Kĕdah dĕngan mĕntĕri hulubalang para pĕnggawa sakalian mĕlakukan adil murah-nya. Kĕmudian putĕra-nya pula bĕrnama Sultan Muhammad Shah, dan putĕra-nya itu bĕrnama Sultan Mandzapar Shah, dan putĕra-nya itu nama-nya Sultan Mahmud Shah; dan putĕra-nya itu nama-nya Sultan Sulaiman Shah, ya-itu marhum yang mangkat di-nĕgĕri Acheh; dan putĕra-nya itu nama-nya Sultan Rajul al Din Muhammad Shah ya-itu marhum Naka, putĕra-nya itu nama-nya Sultan Mahidin Shah Mansur Shah ya-itu marhum sena putĕra-nya itu nama-nya Sultan Dia Mukaram al Din Makram Shah ya-itu marhum Ilir dan Ka-balai pun nama-nya juga, putĕra-nya itu nama-nya Sultan Ata Ullah Muhammad Shah ya-itu marhum Bukit Pinang, putĕra-nya itu bĕrnama Sultan Muhammad Jiwa Zin ala'l-Din Maadzam Shah ya-itu marhum kĕyangan, putĕra-nya itu nama-nya Sultan Abdullah al-Makram Shah ya-itu marhum muda Bukit Pinang, kĕmudian dari-pada itu putĕra Sultan Muhammad Jiwa Zin ala'l-Din Maadzam Shah juga jadi raja nama-nya Sultan Dia Udin Maadzam Shah ya-itu marhum muda Kĕyangan; kĕmudian putĕra Sultan Abdullah al-Mukarram Shah jadi raja nama-nya Sultan Ahmad Tajal Din Halim Shah yang maha mulia, ada-nya tamat.

CONTENTS

Proceedings

PAGE

Council for 1916 iii

Proceedings of the Annual General Meeting ... iv

Annual Report for 1915 vi

A Record of Past Services x

List of Members for 1916 xiii

Recipients of the Journal, not being Members ... xxiii

Rules and Privileges of Members xxvii

Fragment of the History of Trengganu and Kelantan
Edited *by H. Marriott* ... 3

A Naning Wedding Speech *by J. L. Humphreys* ... 25

Origin of the Name Kuala Lumpur *by E. Macfadyen* ... 35

Hikayat Marong Mahawangsa or Kedah Annals
Edited *by J. Sturrock* ... 37

Second part for the year
1916.

Price to non-members
$2.50.

STRAITS BRANCH
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY

[No. 73]

JOURNAL

July, 1916

Smithsonian Institution
OCT 6 1917
National Museum

Sold at the Society's Rooms, Raffles Museum, Singapore,
and by
MESSRS. WILLIAM WESLEY & SON
28, ESSEX STREET, STRAND,
LONDON, W. C.

PRINTED AT THE METHODIST PUBLISHING HOUSE, SINGAPORE.

[No. 73]

JOURNAL

of the

Straits Branch

of the

Royal Asiatic Society

July, 1916

Smithsonian Institution
OCT 6 - 1917
National Museum

SINGAPORE:
PRINTED AT THE METHODIST PUBLISHING HOUSE
1916

NOTES ON MALAY HISTORY.

BY C. O. BLAGDEN.

I. AN EARLY REFERENCE TO MENANGKABAU.

In Chau Ju-kua’s “Chu-fan-chi,” translated by Hirt and Rockhill, under the heading “Palembang, San-fo-ts’i,”* p. 61, the following passage occurs:—

“There is an old tradition that the ground in this country once suddenly gaped open and out of the cavern came many myriads of cattle, which rushed off in herds into the mountains, though the people all tried to get them for food. Afterwards the crevice got stopped up with bamboo and trees and disappeared.”

The editors have rightly surmised that this contains a reference to the legendary etymology of the place-name “Menangkabau,”§ in Central Sumatra. It evidently represents one of the many variant ways in which “popular etymology,” as it is called, has attempted to explain this obscure name. The second half is always identified (rightly or wrongly) with the Malay word for “buffalo,” but in other respects the explanations are very various. In connection with this Chinese authority, the chief point of interest is that he speaks of the legend as “an old tradition:” evidently it had been current for some time before his own date (which was about the middle of the 13th century of our era); and this goes to show that the Menangkabau country was known by that name from a considerably earlier period, that the real meaning of the name had been forgotten and there had been time for legends to grow up around it.

II. AN EARLY MENTION OF THE OLD SINGAPORE.

In Wang Ta-yüan’s “Tao i chih lio” (dated 1349 A.D. and recently partially translated by Rockhill in T’oung Pao, March 1915), under the heading “Hsien,”† p. 100, the following passage occurs:—

“The people are much given to piracy; whenever there is an uprising in any other country, they at once embark in as many as an hundred junks with full cargoes of sago (as food) and start off and by the vigor of their attack they secure what they want. (Thus) in recent years they came with seventy odd junks and raided Tan-ma-hsi† and attacked the city moat. (The town) resisted for a month, the place having closed its gates and defending itself, and they not daring to assault it. It happened just then that an Imperial envoy was passing by (Tan-ma-hsi), so the men of Hsien drew off and hid, after plundering Hsi-li."‡

---

* 三 佛 齊

§ First actually mentioned, I think, in the Nagaratretagama (A. D. 1365): see this Journal, No. 53, p. 147.

† 暹

According to the editor, "Hsien" was Siam, and I think there is no reason to doubt that it especially referred to some part of that country adjacent to the Gulf named after it. Tan-ma-hsi was the old Singapura (see this Journal, No. 53, pp. 155-6). Assuming these identifications to be correct, as I believe we are entitled to do, the above quotation suffices to establish the fact that a naval expedition from Siam attacked Singapore in the first half of the 14th century. That is an interesting scrap of information about a period of Malay history which is otherwise almost a blank, so far as real history is concerned, though of course legends and traditions are not altogether lacking. Slight as the information is, it fits in well with what we already knew about the relations of the Siamese with the Malays of the Peninsula in this period, and it confirms the view (now pretty well established) that the old Singapore was a flourishing port during the first three quarters of the 14th century.

---

† 單 馬 錫

‡ 昔 里

The plates illustrating Dr. Argyll Campbell's paper will be distributed with the next issue of the Journal.

An Experimental Investigation concerning the Effects of "Tuba" (Derris elliptica) Fish-Poison.

By J. Argyll Campbell.

"Tuba" is a term used by the Malays to denote various plants which possess fish-poisoning properties. *Derris elliptica* Benth., Leguminosæ, is the most powerful of these plants.

Interesting accounts of "tuba" fishing are given by George Maxwell (1) and W. H. Furness (2). According to these authors the root of the low climbing plant, *Derris elliptica,* is most commonly employed. The root is pounded by a club and then extracted by soaking it in water contained in boats. The soaked root is compressed and a milky-white watery fluid escapes. This fluid is mixed with lime to make it sink and spread when poured into the river. Previously a barricade has been erected some distance down the river to prevent the fish escaping. The poison stupefies the fish and they flee before it. Men in boats and on the barricade scoop up the fish in nets or spear them as they come to the surface. Furness says that the fish seem to be affected by suffocation.

Research has been done concerning the chemical composition of this poison. M. Greshoff (3) obtained a resin which he called "derrid" and which he found to resemble pachyrrhizid, timboine, nicuoline and piscidine in composition. Wray (4) also isolated a resinous substance which he named "tubaine."

I can find no research concerning the actions of the poison upon the living tissues, although much has been written about its apparent actions. Greshoff (5) says that drinking the poison produces vomiting, dizziness and death. He records a case of suicide in Java. Ridley (6) mentions that "tuba" poison is speedily fatal to man when swallowed or to fish when in contact with the gills; and that it is used by Malays as an abortifacient (7). Gimlette (8) gives a good deal of information. Fish stupefied by the poison can be eaten with impunity by man. Chinese use the poison extensively as an insecticide, especially for spraying pepper vines. It is put into wells with criminal intent, but death seems to be rare. A decoction is used by Malay girls to produce abortion; death sometimes occurs owing to uterine haemorrhage. Acute cases of poisoning are characterised by fixation of the jaws. In Borneo the Dyak girls use it to commit suicide. It is also mixed with "ipoh" poison by the Sakei in preparation of dart poison for blow pipes.

Preparation of the Poison.

In my research the extract was prepared in the same way as Malay fishermen prepare it. When necessary the root was not extracted with water, but with Ringer's physiological saline solution (NaCl .9%; KCl .01%; $Ca_3(PO_4)2$ to saturation). It was then filtered and boiled. These processes do not interfere with its toxic properties and the fluid is still milky-white. The poison passes very slowly through parchment; only one seventieth part of the poison passes through in five days, so that it seems to be in colloidal solution. The extract keeps at least for a week. In most cases the extract was prepared fresh when required. The specimen of the root used by me, was kept for three months in a cupboard and retained its full powers all that time.

The extract is not antiseptic. Organic matter soaked in it soon putrefies at ordinary room temperature (28 C).

The extract is faintly acid in reaction. It has an acrid taste and smell. The taste persists for a long time; strong solutions cause slight numbness of the gums and mouth about ten minutes after tasting.

I have not attempted to separate the active substance, but I have investigated the actions of the extract as used by the natives.

In estimating the strengths of the solutions used, I have taken 1 gm. by weight of the root in 100 cubic centimeters of water as 1 in 100 solution.

Before performing any experiments, the milky extract to be used was first tested to prove that it was capable of killing fish. It never failed to do this. A given weight of the root contains a constant quantity of the poison and kills fish in a definite time.

Effects on Different Animals.

EFFECTS ON FISH. Fish, *Ophiocephalus gachua,* Buch.-Ham., of about fifty grammes weight were used. Solutions as weak as 1 in 100,000 are fatal to these fish. Wray (9) found that 1 in 350,000 of the isolated resin "tubaine" kills fish in half an hour. Greshoff (9) obtained the same results with a much weaker solution of the resin "derrid."

The symptoms of poisoning as observed by myself are constant. In a solution 1 in 4500 the fish becomes agitated almost at once and swims about wildly at the surface of the water taking in mouthfuls of air which escapes into the water by the gill slits. In two minutes time the fish is lying on its side at the bottom of the vessel, breathing slowly and deeply. In another five minutes the breathing stops, the fins twitch, but reflex movements can be elicited for another three minutes. The fish dies eleven minutes after immersion. A solution 1 in 12,000 kills in twenty eight minutes, a solution 1 in 50,000 in eighty three minutes. The fish does not seem to lose consciousness until the breathing is greatly affected. Post mortem examination shows venous congestion of the organs; the heart is full of blood, but still capable of contracting in response to stimuli. If the heart be examined soon after the breathing has stopped, it is observed to be beating feebly, and if relieved from the distension with blood, will beat for a long time.

From these observations it seems very probable that death is due to asphyxia.

Another series of experiments was done in which a small quantity (1 cubic centimeter) of the extract was injected into the stomach of the fish by means of a long narrow metal tube passed down the œsophagus.

The minimal lethal dose, in this manner of injection, is the extract obtained from 1/200 gm. of the root. The extract actually injected is 1 c. c. 1 in 200 solution. The symptoms of poisoning are exactly the same as those described above. The poison is rapidly absorbed by the stomach, the fish becoming affected two minutes after the injection. Wray (9) points out that "tubaine" is insoluble and that he has seen a fish eat a quantity without ill effects. I have not used the isolated substance "tubaine," but the milky extract is certainly rapidly fatal when administered in this way. The extract from 1/25 gm. of the root kills fish in twelve minutes, from 1/200 gm. in one hour.

I have not experimented with fish larger than 50 gm. Undoubtly larger fish would require larger doses to kill them.

Effects on Tadpoles. Tadpoles of the common Singapore toad, *Bufo melanostictus,* were immersed in solutions of various concentrations. The symptoms of poisoning closely resemble those described for fish, but stronger solutions are required. Solutions weaker than 1 in 12,000 do not kill tadpoles. A solution 1 in 12,000 kills in forty three minutes and a solution of 1 in 4,500 in twenty minutes. These solutions kill fish in half these times respectively.

Effects on Mosquitœ Larvæ. Stegomyia larvæ were employed. Solutions weaker than 1 in 10,000 are not fatal, nor do they prevent the larvæ developing. A solution 1 in 10,000 takes at least two days to kill larvæ; 1 in 5,000 kills them in about two days; 1 in 1,000 in one day, 1 in 500 in three hours, 1 in 10 in one hour. Therefore much stronger solutions and much longer periods of action are required to kill mosquitœ larvæ than to kill fish or tadpoles.

Effects on Toads. The common toad, *Bufo melanostictus,* was employed. The poison was administered either by subcutaneous injection or by injection into the stomach of one cubic centimeter of the fluid extract. The minimal lethal dose by the first method of injection is 1 c. c. 1 in 50, that is the extract obtained from 1/50 gm. of the root, by the second method of injection 1 c. c. 1 in 12, that is the extract obtained from 1/12 gm. of the root. In both cases the symptoms are similar. In a few minutes the animal becomes agitated for a short time, then quietens down and in another ten minutes its breathing becomes deeper and irregular in rate, the nostrils dilating at each inspiration. The animal is still conscious and all its reflexes are normal. In another twenty minutes the breathing stops, reflexes diminish and finally disappear about thirty five minutes after the injection. Post mortem examination reveals signs of death from asphyxia, the organs being congested, and the heart full. The heart can be stimulated to contract for a long time after removal from the animal.

EFFECTS ON MONKEYS. Two varieties of monkeys were used, the common kra (*Macacus cynomolgus*) and the larger pig-tailed monkey (*Macacus nemestpinus*).

The poison was injected subcutaneously; the injection causes no pain. The minimal lethal dose is the extract from 2 gm. of the root. The extract is concentrated to small bulk by boiling; boiling does not effect the poison. Within five minutes the animal becomes weak, and the gums and tongue are very pale. There is usually slight vomiting about this time. The vomiting resembles cerebral vomiting and soon ceases as the animal goes to sleep. It can be aroused and its reflexes are normal. Then the breathing shows great increase in depth, and soon becomes very deep and slow; then gasping inspirations occur about six a minute; the reflexes now disappear and the animal cannot be aroused; gasping gradually ceases and the animal dies. The heart beats for several minutes after the respiration ceases. These symptoms are those of asphyxia and post mortem examination shows the signs of death from asphyxia. Death occurs in about forty minutes.

Experiments in which the poison is introduced into the stomach by a stomach tube give the same results. Vomiting comes on in about five minutes and is not excessive. In any case sufficient poison is absorbed because death takes place even after vomiting. The extract from 2 gm. weight of the root is the minimal lethal dose. Death occurs in forty minutes, the symptoms resembling those produced by subcutaneous injection of the poison. When the respiration is greatly affected, the reflexes disappear, the corneal reflex being the last to go. The pupils are dilated.

Action on the Tissues and Organs Removed from the Body.

EFFECTS ON VOLUNTARY MUSCLE. When in concentrations 1 in 8 to 1 in 2,000, its action on the voluntary muscles of the tongue and of the calf of a toad is to weaken their power of contraction. The motor nerves and end plates are not affected. This weakening of the muscle is removed by washing out the poison. Weaker solutions have no action on voluntary muscle.

In the experiments on the tongue the poison was injected under the mucous membrane. Induction shocks were used to stimulate the muscle.

EFFECTS ON INVOLUNTARY MUSCLE. "Tuba" poison in solutions 1 in 60 to 1 in 6,000, diminishes the tone and movements of the involuntary muscle of the intestine of a monkey. This weakening is counteracted by the presence of a dilute solution of sodium carbonate.

EFFECTS ON HEART MUSCLE. "Tuba" poison, even in strong solutions, has no action on heart muscle. The isolated heart beats strongly and for a long time in Ringer's solution containing the poison in concentrations 1 in 8 or 1 in 100. The same results are obtained when the heart is perfused with the poison 1 in 80.

These results with heart muscle, verify the fact that for some time after the respiration has ceased in the living animal under the influence of the poison, the heart may be felt still beating strongly.

EFFECTS ON THE BLOOD. Strong solutions (1 in 100) of the poison in Ringer's solution alter neither the red nor white cells of the blood of the monkey. The white cells show the usual amœboid movements if the solution be kept warm. There is no haemolysis or breaking up of the red cells.

The oxygen capacity of the blood is not altered by the poison, the red cells taking up oxygen easily and giving it off easily.

EFFECTS ON THE BLOOD VESSELS. Solutions of the poison varying in strength from 1 in 30 to 1 in 4000 were perfused through the blood vessels of a toad. In most cases the poison dilates the blood vessels, in a few cases no effect is produced.

In another series of experiments the extract (from 1 in 50 up to 1 in 1250) was perfused through the blood vessels of a limb of a monkey. In these vessels dilatation is produced and the poison so affects the blood vessels that the power of adrenalin to constrict them is markedly lessened and in most cases abolished.

Experiments on Anaesthetised Monkeys.

Macacus cynomolgus and *Macacus nemestpinus* were the monkeys employed, chloroform being used as the anaesthetic. The poison was injected into a vein, usually the femoral vein, by means of an injection cannula; records of the blood pressure, usually that of the femoral artery, and of the respiration were taken.

Injected in this way the extract from 1/50 gm. of the root is sufficient to produce death. In all cases marked effects are produced on the respiration and blood pressure (Fig. 1). Respiration is usually stimulated at first, then depressed and finally paralysed. The blood pressure falls considerably but only temporarily.

Later further changes are produced in the blood pressure, but these are produced by the asphyxia.

A dose as weak as 1 c. c. of 1 in 10,000 solution produces similar changes in the respiration and blood pressure but the changes are not so well marked; the respiration is not paralysed and death does not occur, the normal conditions prevailing again.

The tissues apparently become accustomed to the poison in a slight degree. Thus a dose from 1/50 gm. of the root kills if injected without any previous injection being made; but if many injections of weaker solutions of gradually increasing strengths are first performed, a stronger dose than 1/50 gm. is required to produce death.

The poison acts upon the respiratory nervous centre in the medulla and not on the vagal ending in the lungs, because the same results are obtained if the vagi are cut (Fig. 2). Also if the poison is injected into the carotid artery, the respiration is affected in a few seconds.

It has already been stated that the poison dilates the blood vessels of the isolated limb of a monkey and that it greatly weakens the tone and movements of the involuntary muscle of the intestine of the same animal. The fall of blood pressure is explained by these actions. Further experiments and chemical analysis are required to prove whether one substance causes both paralysis of respiration and dilatation of the blood vessels or whether there are two distinct substances for these actions.

The previous injection of adrenalin only slightly modifies the depressing influence of the poison upon the blood vessels, and the fall of blood pressure is still very well marked.

After-effects of the Poison.

In some experiments injections were made subcutaneously into monkeys, but although these injections were strong enough to produce very great effects on the respiration, causing a marked degree of asphyxia, they were not strong enough to kill the animals. In these cases the animals recover completely in a few hours and exhibit no ill after-effects,—no paralysis, no digestive troubles and no weakness of any kind.

Discussion.

From the results on different animals it is evident that the poison affects the more highly developed members of the animal kingdom more readily that it does the primitive members. This is only to be expected since its action concerns the brain and one particular part of this, namely the medulla oblongata.

It could be used to destroy mosquitœ larvæ, but it should be used in solutions not weaker than 1 in 1,000, that is just enough of the extract should be added to the pool to make the water cloudy. Of course this would kill fish up to 50 gm. far more quickly than it would the larvæ and in time it would certainly affect much larger fish.

Its effects on the higher animals can be explained from the results obtained in the experiments performed on anaesthetised animals. The great weakness exhibited in cases of poisoning is due to the fall of blood pressure and to the weakening of the voluntary and involuntary muscle. The effects on the respiration are due at first to the stimulation and afterwards to the paralysis of the respiratory centre. The vomiting which usually occurs seems to be due to the stimulation of the vomiting centre in the medulla. After injection of the poison into the stomach whatever the dose a definite interval elapses before vomiting takes place. It occurs at the same time as the other changes and it is never excessive. Even after vomiting death takes place thus showing that sufficient poison is absorbed before vomiting occurs.

From the facts that the animal remains conscious and that the reflexes are present until the respiratory centre is greatly affected, it follows that the poison has no previous effect on other parts of the brain and spinal cord. The animals do become sleepy but that can be explained by the muscular weakness and the fall of the blood pressure. The unconsciousness and absence of reflexes come on during the asphyxia.

It has already been mentioned that cases of abortion with fatal hæmorrhage have occurred by the use of this poison. The poison does not act directly on the uterus since it weakens involuntary muscle. The abortion must be due to the asphyxia produced by the poison. The uterine hæmorrhage is due to the dilatation of the blood vessels.

The poison is very virulent since the extract from only 2 gm. (30 grains) of the root is sufficient to kill a large monkey. Cases of murder have not been reported probably because the would-be victim detects the presence of something to be avoided owing to the acrid taste and smell of a strong solution. Cases of suicide have been reported. A few months ago a case of suspected "tuba" poisoning was recorded in Singapore. I am indebted to Dr. R. D. Keith acting Government Pathologist for the details. A quantity of "tuba" root was found in the room with the body. Post Mortem examination revealed nothing but venous congestion of the organs. The lungs possessed an acrid odour. Analysis of the stomach contents was negative. "Tuba" poison was not tested for, because chemical tests for this poison are unknown, although Greshoff (3) describes crystals of definite shape and colour, which are obtained from the poison.

The Post Mortem examinations in my experiments only show venous congestion of the organs.

It should be easy enough to detect the presence of "tuba" poison in the stomach contents by simply testing the effects, after boiling and filtering, of some of the fluid upon small fish, seeing that they are killed by very weak solutions of the poison.

The treatment indicated is that for poisons which produce muscular weakness and paralyse the respiratory centre. The natives of Sarawak administer sugar and cold baths. (8).

Conclusions.

(1) "Tuba" fish-poison (*Derris elliptica*) causes death by paralysing the respiratory centre in the medulla. The sap from 2 gm. weight of the root when administered by mouth, is sufficient to kill a monkey (*Macacus nemestpinus*).

(2) It usually stimulates the respiratory centre before depressing it.

(3) It causes great weakness, because it weakens both voluntary and involuntary muscle and because it produces a great fall of blood pressure.

(4) It has no action upon the heart muscle or heart nervous mechanism.

(5) It produces a marked fall of blood pressure because it greatly weakens the muscle of the vessel walls, thus causing dilatation.

(6) It causes vomiting probably by stimulating the vomiting centre in the medulla; but, after swallowing large doses, sufficient poison to cause death is absorbed even if vomiting occurs.

(7) Fish poisoned by "tuba" can be eaten with impunity by man, because fish are killed by very small quantities of the poison.

(8) It is not antiseptic and its poisonous action is less marked on the lower members of the animal kingdom than on the more highly organised members. It kills mosquitœ larvæ and tadpoles but it is less toxic to these than to fish.

I am indebted to Dr. Hanitsch of The Raffles Museum and to Mr. I. H. Burkill of The Botanical Gardens, for assistance with the literature.

References.

1. George Maxwell. "In Malay Forests," page 246, 1907.
2. W. H. Furness. "Home-life of Borneo Head Hunters," page 185, 1902.
3. M. Greshoff. Mededeelingen uit 'Slands Plantentuin XXV, page 49.
4. L. Wray. Pharmaceutical Journal, 1892.
5. M. Greshoff. Mededeelingen uit 'Slands Plantentuin XXIX, page 175.
6. H. N. Ridley. Agricultural Bulletin, Straits Settlements, page 218, 1898.

7. H. N. Ridley. Journal of Straits Medical Association, page 136, 1894.

8. J. D. Gimlette. "Malay poisons and charm cures," page 91, 1915.

9. Quoted by Ridley. Agricultural Bulletin, Straits Settlements, page 218, 1898.

(The author regrets that no reference has been made in the above paper to Van Hasselt's research published in the Archives internationales de Pharmacodynamie et Therapie, xxi. (1911) p. 243. Information regarding the existence of Van Hasselt's work was received after the paper had gone to press).

Fig. 1. Monkey under chloroform anaesthesia. Effects on respiration and blood pressure of injecting 1 c. c. 1 in 30 "tuba" poison into the femoral vein. A. Record of respiration. B. Blood pressure in femoral artery. C. Signal of injection. D. Time in two seconds. Note that the respiration and blood pressure are effected about forty seconds after the beginning of the injection. Respiration is greatly affected and ceases eleven minutes after the injection (Fig. I. X), thus producing death. The blood pressure falls very considerably at first but recovers in a few minutes, and is still well maintained when the respiration ceases. The heart was felt beating after the respiration ceased.

Fig. 2. A. Monkey under chloroform anaesthesia, vagi intact. Effects on respiration and blood pressure of injecting ½ c. c. 1 in 100 "tuba" into the femoral vein. A. B. C. D. same readings as in fig. 1. Respiration is at first slightly augmented and later, weakened.

Fig. 2. B. Same animal as in fig. 2 A, but with vagi cut. Effects on respiration and blood pressure of injecting 1 c. c. 1 in 100 "tuba" into the femoral vein.

The respiration is similarly but more markedly affected in fig. 2 B, than in fig. 2 A, a larger dose of the poison being injected. The respiration recovers eventually. Note the fall of blood pressure in both cases. In fig. 2 A, the heart beats are just perceptible on the tracing. After cutting the vagi, Fig. 2 B, the heart beats are greatly augmented and the blood pressure is raised considerably, these results being the normal effects of cutting the vagi.

In this experiment death does not occur, because the dose of poison administered is non-lethal.

New and Rare Malayan Plants.
Series VIII.

By H. N. Ridley, F.R.S.

Herewith I give an account of some additions to the Flora of the Malay Peninsula, with notes on species insufficiently or incorrectly described, in continuation of the Series previously described in the Journal.

Ryparosa Wallichii, n. sp. (*Bixaceæ*). A tree; branches when young covered with red hair. *Leaves* glabrous above, coriaceous, lanceolate-oblong, base slightly narrowed, apex acute, pale whitish beneath, 8-9 inches long, 2 inches wide, the nerves five pairs, elevated, ascending, often hairy beneath; midrib also hairy; petiole 1.5 inches long, hairy. *Male racemes* axillary or from the trunk of the tree, 6-8 inches long; bracts small, lanceolate; pedicels ·25 inches long. Flowers ·2 inches long, yellow. *Sepals* 5, short, ovate, hairy. *Petals* rounded. hairy, much larger than the sepals, with the scale inside about half as long, and hairy. *Staminal* column glabrous: anthers 4, oblong.

Singapore: Gardens' jungle (*Ridley*). Penang: "A climber from the hills, October" (*Wallich* 7847B); Herb. Finlayson (*Wallich* 7847A).

Wallich's specimens are like the Botanic Gardens ones—male, but with young spikes, axillary and quite short. Those from the Gardens' jungle were fully developed and borne on the trunk. Wallich describes it as a climber from the Penang hills; but it has not been collected again, and as no species of the genus is a climber, it is possible that the label is wrongly affixed. The species is chiefly remarkable for its narrow leaves and hairy inflorescence.

Xanthophyllum puberulum, n. sp. (*Polygalaceæ*). A large shrub with pubescent branches. *Leaves* oblong-elliptic or lanceolate, cuspidate, shortly narrowed at the base, thinly coriaceous, 5·5 to 8 inches long, 2·25 to 2·75 inches broad, nerves 5 to 6 pairs, elevate beneath; reticulations large, all pubescent: petiole ·25 inches long. *Flowers* white, in short terminal panicles 2 to 3 inches long, pubescent: branches few. *Sepals* unequal, ovate obtuse, minutely pubescent. *Petals* spathulate, glabrous: keel slightly pubescent. *Stamens* glabrous except at the base. *Ovary* villous, stipitate; ovules 4.

Selangor: by the stream at Klang Gates (*Ridley* 13396). Dindings: at Lumut (*Ridley* 10366). Flowering in August.

A handsome bush, distinguished by its villous 4-ovuled ovary and pubescent leaves.

Chodat in the *Bulletin de l'Herbier Boissier,* iv. p. 255, has published a revision of this genus since it was described by King in the *Materials for a flora of the Malay Peninsula,* and made several corrections and additions:—

X. ellipticum, King, is not the species described by Miquel under that name, but a plant of the Malay Peninsula which is now called *X. Kingii,* Chodat.

X. eurhynchum, King, is also not Miquel's plant, and is renamed *X. verrucosum,* Chodat (l.c. 263).

X. glaucum, Wall. Chodat separates King's plant from Wallich's, as *X. microcarpum,* saying that it has "Fructus parvus nec verrucosus nec costatus" which is an excellent description of Wallich's type of *X. glaucum.* King's plant from Trang is absolutely identical with Wallich's *X. glaucum.*

He describes two new species.

X. hebecarpum, Chodat (l.c. 263) based on imperfect fruiting specimens collected in Pangkor (*Curtis* 1639) with large velvety fruit.

X. discolor, Chodat (l.c. 257). A small tree with leaves glaucous beneath, and rather large white flowers, collected by me at Seletar and in the Gardens' jungle, Singapore.

Garcinia clusiaefolia, n. sp. (*Guttiferæ*). A tree, with black branches not angled. Leaves stiffly coriaceous, obovate, apex obtuse, base cuneate, nerves very fine inconspicuous above, invisible beneath, 5-5·5 inches long, 2·25 to 3 inches wide, drying greenish; petiole ·5 inches long, stout, not wrinkled. *Male flowers* in fascicles upon axillary tubercles 10 or more in a fascicle, very small, ·1 inch long: bracts ovate, numerous: pedicels thick, ·25 inches long. *Sepals* 4, 2 outer coriaceous orbicular concave, 2 inner thinner obovate oblong. *Petals* oblong, obtuse, as long as the sepals. *Stamens* connate into a subconic mass, not lobed; anthers sessile, minute, 2-celled, cells separated by the broad subtriangular connective. *Pistillode* 0. *Female flowers* and fruit not seen.

PAHANG: at Wray's camp on Gunong Tahan (*Ridley* 16242).

Allied to the lowland swamp-loving *G. bancana,* Miq. but distinct in the more finely and numerously veined foliage, much shorter and thicker petiole, smaller flowers, and the connective of the anther triangular, with the cells at the point and so closer together, and not quadrate as in *G. bancana.*

Garcinia pyriferum, n. sp. (*Guttiferæ*). A tree; branchlets yellow, angled. *Leaves* coriaceous, drying light greenish, elliptic, subacute, shortly narrowed at the base, 3·5 inches to

5·5 inches long, 1·75 to 2·25 inches wide, nerves very numerous horizontal meeting in an intra-marginal nerve close to the edge; reticulations visible; costa rounded; edge not thickened; petiole very stort, wrinkled, ·5 inches long. *Male flowers* not seen. *Female flowers* solitary, axillary from tubercles covered with short ovate bracts. *Fruit* obovoid pear-shaped, narrowed at base, widest near apex, tip depressed, 2·5 to 3 inches through, on a long 1·75 inches peduncle, yellow. *Sepals* persistent, small, ovate. *Stigma* small, 5-lobed, lobes rounded. *Seeds* 2-3, reniform, brown, 1 inch long, ·25 inches wide.

PENANG: Penara Bukit (*Curtis* 3094).

Near *G. densiflora,* King, of which the female is unknown but the foliage is quite different, the texture being thinner; and drying pale, the midrib is not acute and the margin not thickened.

Ternstroemia montana, n. sp. (*Ternstrœmiaceæ*). Branches stout, grey. *Leaves* thick, coriaceous, obovate to oblanceolate, blunt, long-narrowed to the petiole, 2·5 to 3 inches long, 1-1·25 inches wide, nerves above invisible, beneath often invisible but sometimes distinct, 3-4 pairs, arched, and anastomosing some way from the margin. *Flowers* in the upper axils of the leaves or below the leaves: pedicels short and thick ·20 inches long: flowers ·5 inches across glabrous. Sepals subequal, rotund, coriaceous. *Petals* coriaceous, rotund, edges denticulate. *Stamens* glabrous: anthers linear, oblong, longer than the filament.

PERAK: Gunong Kerbau at 4500 feet (*Robinson*).

This differs from *T. Maclellandi,* Ridl. for which I at first took it in the nervation, which in that species so far as it is ever visible is horizontal slightly ascending, in this it is curved in the centre and anastomoses some way from the edge, the flowers are bigger, the pedicels much shorter and thicker, the petals coriaceous and minutely denticulate.

Gordonia singaporeana, *Wall. Cat.* 1457, (*G. grandis,* King in Journ. As. Soc. Bengal, lix. (1890) p. 203) (*Ternstrœmiaceæ*). There seems to have been some confusion as to the *Gordonias* of the low country of the Malay Peninsula. The type of *G. singaporenana* referred by King to his *Gordonia excelsa,* is undoubtedly the common *G. grandis* King, a native of Singapore. This species is closely allied to the true *G. excelsa,* Bl. of Java, resembling it in the leaves in which the lamina is decurrent on the petiole, differing in the rather smaller flowers, and silky pubescence of the bud and young shoot. *G. grandis* having these parts quite glabrous.

G. excelsa, King, is a totally different plant, and has rather an affinity with *G. Maingayi* as King suggests than with the *G. excelsa,* Bl. I describe it under the name of *G. penangensis.*

Gordonia penangensis, n. sp. (*G. excelsa,* King l.c. 203 not of Blume) (*Ternstroemiaceæ*). A tree 30 to 40 feet tall, 10-15 inches through the stem, branchlets silky pubescent. Leaves thinly coriaceous, glabrous, lanceolate elliptic acuminate, edges serrulate or entire, base acuminate, 2·5 to 4 inches long, 1-1·75 inches wide, nerves very faint sometimes almost invisible 5 to 7 pairs inarching doubly within the edge: petiole ·25, creamy white or yellow: pedicel very short silky. *Sepals* rounded, silky outside. *Petals* round, narrowed at the base, backs silky. *Stamens* very numerous: anthers oblong. *Ovary* conic, silky: style 1, stout, pubescent, 5-lobed. *Capsule* 5- or 6-angled, 1·25 to 1·5 inches long, conic, hairy or glabrescent, valves acute.

PENANG: common on Penang Hill (*Curtis*), and I have also found it in SINGAPORE at Seletar (6214 and 3913 of my collection).

Gordonia hirtella, n. sp. (*Ternstrœmiaceæ*). A tree with silky buds and shoots. *Leaves* coriaceous, elliptic lanceolate, acuminate, base narrowed subacute, nerves very fine much reticulate, the secondary nerves and reticulations as distinct as the primary nerves, above almost as invisible as on the lower surface, margins crenulate or entire, above glabrous, beneath appressed hairy, 3·5 to 6 inches long, 1·5 to 2 inches wide; petiole ·25 inches long. *Flowers* rather small, cream coloured; peduncles silky ·1 inch or less long. *Sepals* orbicular, silky tomentose, ·2 inches long. *Petals* obovate, silky on the back. *Stamens* apparently few. *Capsule* ·75 inches long, appressed pubescent outside, valves subacute.

SELANGOR: in mountain forests, Bukit Kutu at 3000 feet (*Ridley* 7350). PERAK: Gunong Batu Puteh (*Wray* 1116).

This species is nearest to *G. dipterosperma,* Kurz, of Bhotan. The leaves are more coriaceous, and it is more hairy, and the hairs do not spring from large pustules on the leaf as in that species. From *G. penangensis* it differs in the hairy backs of the leaves and smaller flowers and fruits. The nervation is much the same as in *penangensis* but the reticulation is more elaborate.

Hopea albescens, n. sp. (*Dipterocarpaceæ*). *Leaves* coriaceous, ovate to elliptic, acuminate, apex blunt, base rounded, glabrous, nerves 8 pairs very slender almost invisible above, 2·75 to 3 inches long, 1·25 inches wide: petiole ·4 inches long. *Panicles* axillary and terminal, 3-4 inches long. *Flowers* subsecund, white tomentose, shortly pedicelled. *Sepals* lanceolate ovate, obtuse. *Petals* ·2 inches long, a little longer than the sepals, oblong, broad, blunt, pubescent outside. *Stamens* 15, filaments elongate triangular; anther elliptic, seta very fine, as long as the anther. *Ovary* pubescent; style short.

PAHANG: at Raub (*Burn-Murdoch*) "Merawan."

This species is allied to *H. odorata,* Roxb. of Tenasserim, but has smaller leaves more coriaceous, fewer nerved, and more abruptly acuminate, flowers distinctly pedicelled (not sessile as in *H. odorata*), petals smaller and the filaments different in shape.

Hopea Lowii, *Brandis.* This moderate sized tree has not previously been recorded from the Malay Peninsula. I have met with it at Chua Chu Kang, (No. 6685 of my collections) but I believe the only tree I ever saw there is gone now: and I have had it also from Muar, and Penang Waterfall (*Curtis* 3635). It is also a native of Borneo and Sumatra.

Durio singaporensis, n. sp. (*Malvaceæ*). A large tree. *Leaves* oblong, obtuse or subacute, base blunt rounded, coriaceous, glabrous above, with channelled midrib, beneath scaly raw sienna colour, nerves very numerous, and inconspicuous above, and hardly distinct beneath, 7-9 inches long, 2·5-3 inches wide: petiole thick ·25 inches long, angled. *Flowers* in clusters of 2 or 3 on the trunk: peduncles short: pedicels ·5 inches long, 4-angled, with 2 lanceolate bracts at their bases: floral bracts ovate, acute, 1 inch long and as wide. *Sepals* oblong, 2 inches long, acute, scaly, cinnamon colour. *Petals* linear, oblong, 1·5 inches long, outside scaly with fringed scales, cinnamon colour, within pubescent white. *Stamens* and pistil like those of *D. malaccensis,* Griff.

SINGAPORE: Bukit Timah (*Ridley* 3204); Ang Mo Kio (*Ridley* 6676); Seletar. JOHORE: in Johore Bahru (*Ridley* 6677), and Mount Austin (*Ridley* 11996).

Scaphium longiflorum, n. sp. (*Sterculiaceæ*). Tree. *Leaves* coriaceous, elliptic rounded, shortly acuminate, blunt, sometimes glaucescent beneath, nerves 7 pairs strongly raised, and the reticulations conspicuous beneath, above smooth, 4·5 to 6 inches long, 2·8 to 3 inches across: petiole 2·2 inches long. *Panicles* axillary, 6 inches long, sparingly red-tomentose, compact, much branched. *Flowers* numerous glabrous: bracts caducous: pedicels glabrous, ·1 inch long. *Calyx* ·3 inches long; tube cylindric, ·2 in. long: lobes 4, much shorter, ovate, acute, all glabrous except the inner edges which are woolly. *Stamens* 8, in a globose woolly head, staminal column longer than the calyx tube, woolly.

PERAK: (*Scortechini* 2077 and 2026).

I have seen no female flowers or fruit of this species which was confused with *S. affine,* but from which it is very distinct in its long tubed glabrous flowers and woolly long androecium. The panicles are also much more glabrous.

I consider it advisable to keep the genus *Scaphium* distinct from *Sterculia* from which it differs not only in its membranous one-seeded carpels but also in the form of the flowers. Besides this there are known four other species.

1. **Scaphium Wallichi,** R. Br., only known from one gathering in Martaban in Wallich's collection and described usually as *Sterculia scaphigera,* Wall. Cat. 1130. I have seen no flowers of this species which has much larger leaves than the commoner species, *S. affine.*

2. **Scaphium affine,** Ridl. (*Sterculia affine* Masters). This plant is the "Kembang Semangkok" of the Malays and occurs in Singapore, Malacca and Pahang. Pierre's *Sterculia scaphigera* (Fl. For. Cochinchine, t. 201) may be this species but the flowers have not been seen.

   The species is very distinct in its small short-tubed flowers with a very short stalked staminal column quite glabrous. The inflorescence is very tomentose.

3. **S. Beccarianum,** (Pierre l.c.) is a native of Sarawak, in Borneo, and has quite glabrous flowers more resembling those of *S. longiflorum.* I found fallen fruits and leaves of what I take to be this species in the Matang forest. The fruit which has not been described is thin and green, 5 inches long and over 1·5 inches deep, much shorter and broader and quite blunt at the tip. The seed was an inch long.

4. **Scaphium linearicarpum,** (*Sterculia linearicarpa,* Masters) a rare Malacca tree, belongs to the genus also.

Pterygota Roxburghii, Schott and Endl. Melet. p. 32 (*Sterculia alata* Roxburgh) (*Sterculiaceæ*) is given in King's *Materials* as a native of the Malay Peninsula on the strength of a specimen in Scortechini's collections without locality. The tree is a native of Southern India and the Andamans. It has been introduced from the Calcutta Gardens and largely planted as a road side tree in Singapore and Penang, and pehaps Scortechinni's specimens are not from a wild plant. No one else has found it wild, and it would be advisable to leave it out of our Flora until we get additional evidence of its being a native tree. The genus *Pterygota* of which there are several species in Africa, is a very good one, and distinct from *Sterculia.*

Buettneria brevipes, n. sp. (*Sterculiaceæ*). A glabrous woody climber. *Leaves* coriaceous, elliptic, obtuse, base narrowed truncate, nerves five pairs conspicuous on both surfaces as are the reticulations, inarching within the margin, 4·5 inches long, 2 inches wide: petiole ·2 inches long. *Cymes* numerous, slender, axillary, 1 inch long; pedicels umbellate, very slender, minutely pubescent. *Sepals* lanceolate, acuminate, ·3 inches long. *Petals* about as long as the sepals, base obcuneate with 2 short points at the upper angles, apex caudate. *Staminal tube* short, broad, cylindric: anthers small, oblong. *Ovary* small, ovate, conic 5-lobed bluntly with scabrid angles. Fruit not seen.

Dindings: at Simpit near Lumut (*Ridley*).

Allied to *B. Curtisii,* Oliv. of Penang, but the leaves are much broader with more nerves and conspicuous reticulations. They are dark brown when adult and dry.

Buettneria uncinata, Mast. in Hook. fil., Fl. Brit. Ind. i. p. 377 and King, Journ., As. Soc. Bengal, p. 200, 91. (*Sterculiaceæ*). The type of this in Herb. Kew, is a fruiting specimen of *Mallotus Griffithianus,* Hook. fil. (*Euphorbiaceæ*) collected by Maingay in Malacca. Another sheet put with it in Herb. Kew as possibly the same is also a species of Mallotus.

Waltheria indica, Linn. is given by King as occurring "in all the provinces, a weed," I have never seen a specimen of this at all from the Malay Peninsula, either in Kew or the British Museum herbarium: nor have ever seen it myself anywhere in the Peninsula. It is a common weed in many parts of the world and may be expected to turn up; but it has not done so yet.

Murraya caloxylon, Ridl. (*Rutaceæ*). I found that this plant was flowering in the Singapore Botanic Gardens in the spring of 1915, although little more than a bush about 6 feet tall. The petals and stamens have never been described. The *petals* are 1·5 inches long and ·25 inches wide in the upper part; they are linear sparthulate, gradually narrowed to the base and pale green, four or five in number. The *sepals* or rather lobes of the calyx are also either 4 or 5. The *stamens* nearly half an inch long, have long slender filaments, small oblong anthers with the connective prolonged into a short point beyond the cells; they are 8 in number. In the flower and foliage this plant resembles most a *Murraya,* but the fruit is quite unlike that of any species described, and is more like that of *Limonia.* On the whole I think it better to keep it in the genus *Murraya.*

Diodia sarmntosa, Sw. Prodr. Veg. Ind. Occ. p. 30. (*Rubiaceæ*). I found this new addition to our Flora abundantly on the East Coast road near Tanjong Katong in Singapore. It is a herbaceous plant growing as much as 2 feet tall, the stem hairy, four-angled, stout, the ridges crisped in the upper part. *Leaves* obovate, sessile, 2·5 inches long, 2·25 inches wide, apex subacute, base narrowed, hairy on both sides, with 6 pairs of nerves; stipules linear, bristles numerous. *Flowers* numerous, crowded in axillary heads. *Calyx* lobes 4, hairy, ·25 inches long. *Corolla* ·12 inches long, lobes rounded white tipped with lilac. *Capsule* ·1 inch long hairy, splitting from the top to near the base into 2 cocci, which dehisce on the inner face. Each contains one elliptic brown seed deeply grooved on the inner face.

This plant is a native of South America and the West Indies and also occurs in Tropical Africa and the Mascarene islands, but I cannot find any specimens from Asia in the Kew Herbarium, nor any record of its occurring in any part of Asia.

Dendrocalamus hirtellus, n. sp. (*Gramineæ*). A tall bamboo, about 40 feet long, and 2 inches through, but rather weak, walls thin, internodes long. *Leaves* broad, oblong, acuminate, with a long point, base broad rounded, glabrous above, softly pubescent beneath, 11 inches long, 1·5 inches wide; petiole thick, ·1 inch long, glabrous; ligule of few stiff bristles; sheath glabrous. *Panicle* branches pendulous, 3 feet long. Spikelets in dense heads ·5 inches through and 1·5 inches apart; bracts numerous ovate acute keeled. *Glume* I, lanceolate; glume II similar, but longer many nerved; III twice as long as I, mucronate; IV similar longer. *Palea* shorter, lanceolate, three-nerved, pale. *Stamens* 6, filaments free: anthers oblong, muticous, exsert. *Style* simple shortly plumed.

JOHORE: in forests at Genuang (*Ridley*) April 1915.

Schizostachyum elegans, n. sp. (*Gramineæ*). Stems slender, 1 inch through; walls rather thick: internodes long and weak; branches slender, whorled. *Leaves* thin, lanceolate, acuminate, pubescent beneath, margins denticulate, base narrowed to the very short petiole, 6 inches long, ·75 inches wide; ligule of few rather long bristles; sheath hairy. *Panicles* graceful, 15 inches long slightly geniculate, branches 2-4 inches long: spikelets ·25 inches long, light green, 4 or 5 in a fascicle, with several ovate bracts at base, fascicles little over ·25 inches apart. *Glume* I ovate; II longer, lanceolate, shortly mucronate; III still longer, mucronate; IV similar but longer. *Palea* a little shorter, lanceolate, not keeled, glume-like but thinner. *Stamens* 6; filaments free; anthers exsert, oblong, obtuse, violet. *Ovary* conic, stipitate, subtriquetrous: style simple, grain obliquely blunt conic stipitate.

KEDAH: Lankawi Islands: common, cultivated in the Botanic Gardens Penang, where it forms a large bush of sarmentose habit and where it flowered in March 1915.

William Jack's Letters to Nathaniel Wallich, 1819-1821.

copied for the
Straits Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society.
from the Records of the Royal Botanic Gardens, Calcutta,
by kind permission,
under the superintendence of Major A. T. GAGE, edited, with a
list of the plants known to have been collected by Jack,
and with notes by I. H. BURKILL.

Sir Stamford Raffles, in 1817, when on leave in England, was appointed by the Court of Directors of the Honourable East India Company to the post of Lieutenant-Governor of the decaying settlement of Bencoolen in Sumatra; and he sailed from Portsmouth to take up his new duties. He had attached to his staff the naturalist Joseph Arnold, whose name is so aptly associated with his own in *Rafflesia Arnoldi*,—that of the parasite with the gigantic flower, which they discovered together on a journey into the interior of Sumatra (May 20th, 1818). Soon after this, perhaps from the fatigues of this very journey, Arnold died (vide *Memoir of the Life and Public Services of Sir Thomas Stamford Raffles,* London 1830, p. 365).

Affairs so fell that after Arnold's death Raffles had to revisit Calcutta, and when there he got together a staff of naturalists. This is how he alludes to them in a letter dated Nov. 26th, 1818 to the Duchess of Somerset "I take down from hence a medical man of the name of Jack, who will be entrusted with the botanical part of my researches: and I have two Frenchmen, M. Diard and M. Duvaucel, the former the pupil and the later the step-son of Cuvier........ These three savans with a missionary clergyman, who takes charge of a printing press, form my equipment from Calcutta, so that I hope we may do something."

William Jack, who has thus been introduced to the reader, was the eldest son of the Rev. William Jack, and his wife Grace Boult.

Of the father, Dr. J. W. H. Traill, Professor of Botany in the University of Aberdeen, has been so good as to supply the following information. He had the degrees of M.A. and M.D. and was chosen to be Professor of Mathematics in King's College, Aberdeen in 1794. This chair he held until 1811 when he exchanged it for that of Moral Philosophy. In 1815 he was elected to the post of Principal, and held it until his death at a great age in 1854.

The son's career is given in Hooker's Companion to the Botanical Magazine, i. 1835, p. 120, from the pen of his mother:

and thence the following statements have been taken. William Jack, the younger, was born in King's College on January 29th, 1795, and at the age of six was sent to the Grammar School. At the age of twelve he proceeded to the University, and at fourteen commenced the study of medicine. Mr. Mclachlan, the Head-Master of the Grammar School, seems to have given him an excellent grounding in latin, and at the same time Mr. Duncan, Professor of Natural Philosophy, taught him to apply his knowledge by reading descriptions in the latin botany books of the period of the wild plants which already interested him. There were two other Aberdeen botanists of the time who are said to have helped him—Dr. Beattie and Dr. Knight: but the first named can have had little influence as he died when Jack was eight. William Knight must have had much more influence: he was a young man, nine years older than young Jack; and from 1811 to 1815 he taught Botany in Aberdeen privately.

At the age of sixteen Jack graduated M. A. in Aberdeen, and was preparing to proceed to Edinburgh to go through the Medical Schools there, when scarlet fever laid him up, and caused him to lose the session. During this break Mr. Duncan having been paralised, young Jack taught the university botany class for a short time. In October, 1911, he proceed to London to finish his medical training there, and on the last day of January, 1912, he was orally examined by the Court of the College of Surgeons, and admitted a Fellow.

His friends, chiefly the eminent judge Sir Vicary Gibbs and Lady Gibbs, at once sought for him a surgeonship under the Honourable East India Company, but he preferred to defer his departure, and remained in Britain until the sailing of the Company's ship "Baring" on January 29th, 1913.

Published with the memoir from which the above facts are drawn are extracts from letters, which show that after his arrival in Calcutta, he was attached to a regiment stationed at the adjoining cantoonment of Dum-Dum, and was then sent out with troops which fought in the Nepalese war. It is recorded that on January 9th, 1815, he was encamped on the Chorea ghattee hills with the force advancing on Khatmandoo, but he had not been in the fight at Pursua. A month later he was at Bichiakoh, encamped in the broad stony bed of the stream which debouches from those hills at that halting place. In May he was back at the cantoonment of Dinapur, near Patna.

From Dinapur he wrote to his parents as follows "I have lately opened a correspondence with Dr. Wallich the Superintendent of the Calcutta Botanic Garden, from which I expect to derive both pleasure and advantage. Till now I have always felt at a loss in my botanical researches, from not being acquainted with the progress of the science in India, and particularly with Roxburgh's extensive labours and discoveries, so that I could never be sure that my own were not anticipated. It was to remedy this and to obtain, if possible, a copy of Roxburgh's manuscript descriptions, that I wished to commence an intercourse with the present Superintendent. In the first letter which I wrote to Dr. Wallich, I sent him some seeds, and a description of a Lobelia which I had found in Nepaul, and which did not agree with any published species. I received in reply a most friendly letter, accompanied by some papers of his own on Indian Botany, informing me that my Lobelia was a perfectly new species, and soliciting further communications. I have since transmitted to him another despatch, with more plants which I conceive to be new." Then again he wrote on July 19th, 1818, I have paid a visit to Dr. Wallich, at the Botanic Garden, a short distance from Calcutta; he received me with great kindness and warmth, and insists on my coming to stay with him while I remain here. He is........ much inclined to assist me in obtaining some situation, which may open a field for Botanical research, and connect me with himself in that Department. He has already introduced my name with due acknowledgements, in a paper presented to the Asiatic Society, containing an account of some new plants from Nepaul, one of which was communicated by me." Then again he writes under the date August 19th, 1818, "Dr. Wallich has kindly insisted on my staying with him to pursue my Botanical researches: he has an excellent house in a delightful situation, about six miles below Calcutta, where I hope to pass my time most agreeably, free from those temptations to fatigue and exertion which beset me at Calcutta, and where I trust to be so much benefitted by ease of body and mind, that my health will improve as fast as it could from a sea voyage." So Jack had been ill: it was of lung trouble; and Sir Stamford Raffles says in a letter of Jan. 1st, 1823, that it was contracted during the Nepalese war, with which his Indian Service began. Jack continues:—"I am now engaged in drawing up a paper of some of my discoveries, which I have promised to furnish for a periodical work, about to be printed at the Serampore press."

Again on November 10th, 1818, he writes:—I hasten to inform you of the occurrences of the last few days, which have made a considerable alteration in my plans, since I wrote to you. Some days ago Sir Stamford Raffles, the governor of Sumatra, came here to see the garden, and spent the day, during which Dr. Wallich and I had a long conversation with him, the result of which has been my agreeing to accompany him to Sumatra, and his promising to forward my views, and in particular, to afford me every facility for exploring the Natural History of that island. .... I expect to sail, shortly, with Sir Stamford Raffles in the Company's cruizer "Nearchus."

Nathaniel Wallich, who was thus instrumental in bringing Jack to the notice of Sir Stamford Raffles, was a dane, and had been in the service of the Danish East India Company established at Serampur on the river Hoogly above Calcutta. From Serampur, when the Danish territory was ceded, his ability secured, after some little delay, the post at the Botanic Gardens which he desired so much. To him,—a generous and good friend,—Jack wrote as he had a mind to do: and the letters were filed by Wallich along with other considerable accumulations. They have been copied at the expense of the Straits Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society under the kind supervision of Major A. T. Gage, the present Superintendent of the Royal Botanic Gardens, Calcutta, on the suggestion of Mr. H. N. Ridley, and are here for the first time printed with the omission—always indicated—of certain criticisms passed on Diard and Duvaucel, and of the official letters from Raffles to them at the end of their service which may be read in the first edition of Lady Raffles' *Memoir of Sir Stamford Raffles.*

The voyage from Calcutta to Penang (Dec. 10th to Dec. 31st, 1818) was made as planned in the "Nearchus" and took just twenty-one days.

The voyage from Calcutta to Penang (Dec. 10th to Dec. 31st,
Council by Colonel John Alexander Bannerman, a senior officer who had even served on the Directorate in London, and had been sent out in 1817. Bannerman seems to have considered himself too senior to suffer the interference of a younger man like Raffles and to have lent a very willing ear to opposing counsels from his second commissioner. But Raffles had the authority of the Marquess of Hastings then Governor-General in India (1) to bring to a close the disputed succession to the Kingship of Acheen, and (2) subsequently to endeavour to effect a settlement further to the eastward than Penang,—both matters which had been very much in the hand of the Governor of Penang: in fact Bannerman had just tried under the orders of the Court of Directors to effect this last himself, and failed, because the Dutch forestalled him. It seems that he was therefore unwilling to see how another could succeed, and he proved obstructive. It has been hinted that some of his subordinates were venial: and if so it may be asked whether it was merely by prescience or by leakage of information that the Dutch came to forestall Bannerman at Rhio; but the biscuit had been fingered hesitatingly before by Bannerman (see Memoir of Sir Stamford Raffles, p. 395). With these matters Jack had nothing to do: they took Raffles away from Penang where he left his wife in the charge of Jack as her confinement was approaching.

Major W. Farquhar, we shall see, met Raffles at Penang possibly by accident but more probably by appointment: for if by accident why had he brought his drawings (see p. 153) with him. It was he who had been sent by Bannerman only a few weeks earlier to found the establishment at Rhio: and he on his return found himself under Raffles orders instead. Doubtless the handing over of the services of his emissary to the younger man would be a thing particularly nettling to Bannerman; for that the services were handed over is evident from Jack's remark that Raffles had sent Farquhar on a mission down the Straits, when the change of front on the part of the Governor caused him to go first to Singapore, and only afterwards to Acheen.

The Acheen affair proved very tedious, and Raffles records that the proceedings taken down in the investigation ran to upwards of a thousand pages of the Company's largest sized paper. He had returned from founding Singapore to Penang and thence gone forward to Acheen; and all this time Jack was left with light duties and the interesting flora of Prince of Wales Island to investigate.

Of books Jack seems to have possessed Roxburgh's *Hortus Bengalensis*—a mere catalogue printed in 1814, his *Coromandel plants,* Loureiro's *Flora cochinchinensis,* Rumpf's *Herbarium amboinense,* and Lamarck's volumes of the *Encyclopédie Méthodique* and some of Poiret's, together with extracts from the manuscript of Roxburgh's *Flora indica.* Later he employed through Wallich, a clerk to copy the whole manuscript, and he commenced to subscribe for Rees' *Cyclopaedia,* De Candolle's *Regni Vegetabilis Systema* and Roemer and Schultes' *Systema vegetabilium.* He also bought Rheede's great *Hortus Malabaricus.* In 1820 Carey and Wallich produced the first volume of their revision of Roxburgh's *Flora,* and an early copy was sent to Jack, who thereupon sent back to Carey what seem to have advance sheets.

He employed a Chinese draftsman in Penang: but it is not recorded if he continued to employ artists afterwards.

The interest of the time was the finding of new species, and their cataloguing. Jack brought to this work a really excellent understanding of the natural system of classification, a kind of intuition, the origins of which must have come from work in Britain: and had he lived longer his work would have been splendid. He also showed a small interest in geographic botany.

SERIES 1—PENANG LETTERS.

Prince of Wales Island
Jan. 14th 1819.

My dear Wallich,

At length the land of promise begins to open to me, and very glorious it seems to be. I am so thoroughly occupied that I perceive I shall have little time to write to you, if I put it off to the last, therefore mean to take an hour or two from the night occasionally and to continue my letters at intervals, which though it will make them a little disjointed, I am sure you will excuse, as I shall thereby be able to give you longer details. Of the voyage I need not say much but that it was long and tedious, and on several accounts far from comfortable. Sir Stamford was very ill during part of it.

We landed on the 31st and soon forgot everything unpleasant. Among the first objects that saluted me were the Nutmeg and Clove:[1] of the latter there are two trees in full blossom before my door. The pride of the East, the Mangosteen, next presented itself. I must seek and get someone to attempt grafting it for the purpose of being sent round. The variegated Pineapple,[2] I believe is only a variety of the cultivated; but I have heard of another kind which probably differs specifically. The *Melastoma malabathrica* is in the greatest profusion. The situation of the anthers before flowering is very remarkable.

I am convinced this Island will produce many things entirely new. I have already met with and described two species of *Mangifera,* which must be quite new. The first is called the Bachang and for which I intend the specific name of *M. rubicunda.*[3] ['Foliis lato lanceolatis retusis, paniculis ascendentibus, floribus submonandris, corollis infundibuliformibus limbo patente demum reflexo']. The other is a very singular one, which I propose to call *M. quadrifida,*[4] [foliis oblongo lanceolatis, paniculis axillaribus laxis, floribus quadrifidis, monandris, petalis nudis glandulosis]. Another very interesting discovery is the *Nelumbium javanicum,* Lamarck,[5] which seems to have been overlooked by later authors, but is without doubt a distinct species from the *N. indicum.* I have also found the *Rubus alceæfolius,* Lamarck,[6] which also seems to have been neglected. I have a species of *Loranthus,* which from the specific name I think may be Roxburgh's *L. ferruginea.*[7] Mine is quadrifid, tetrandrous. There is also very common here a species of *Morinda,*[8] which appears to differ from all Roxburgh's in having both the anthers and style exsert. What confusion there has been about the *Mimusops Kauki.*[9] I wish I had Roxburgh's character of it. There is a hexandrous species here about which I am doubtful. Major Farquhar[10] who has been for many years resident at Malacca, arrived here the day before us. He has made a very large collection of drawings and subjects of Natural History. I have just had an opportunity of examining his drawings of Malacca plants. Most unfortunately, from want of scientific acquaintance with the subject they are deficient in many essential points of dissection, but they will be extremely useful as a guide, by taking the native names of all that promise to be new or interesting, and making inquiries accordingly for the originals.

---

[1] In the year 1818 there were 6,900 nutmeg trees in bearing in the island of Penang (vide Ridley, *Spices,* London, 1912, p. 102) besides large numbers of younger trees or males—the acquisition of 22 years; for it was in 1796 that the East India Company undertook the introduction and sent Christopher Smith to the Moluccas for the purpose: and by 1802, when the trees first fruited, Smith and his successors had sent out from the Moluccas 71,266 in all, mostly to Penang.

To the same date they had sent out 55,265 clove trees, also in chief part to Penang; but there was only a lesser measure of success with them up to the time of Jack's visit.

[2] It is quite possible that the pineapple with variegated leaves was familiar to Jack from existing in the Calcutta garden. Roxburgh the first Superintendent of the Garden, knew of its existence "in Malacca." It thrives well in Penang.

[3] Jack subsequently found that the bachang had received the name of *Mangifera foetida* from Roxburgh: and in these letters we find him first suspecting that this was so, asking Wallich for a diagnosis: then sending specimens to Wallich, which appear to have reached Calcutta safely for, in or after 1828, Wallich when distributing the collections of the East India Company sent out under No. 8488 material of *M. foetida* collected by Jack. We find in Carey's and Wallich's revision of Roxburgh's *Flora Indica* a description borrowed from Jack (vol. ii., p. 440).

[4] *Mangifera quadrifida,* Jack, found a place in the same work, where occur almost the very words used above.

[5] *Nelumbium javanicum,* Lamk., has been reduced to *Nelumbium speciosum* along with *N. indicum.*

[6] *Rubus alceæfolius,* Poir., is the common bramble in the low ground of Malaya, which has passed in our floras as *R. moluccanus.* It is interesting that Curtis had not found it in Penang (this journal No. 25, 1894).

I have not yet been up the hill, but shall soon, when I shall find an abundant harvest. There is a species of Fir here with solitary leaves[11] which is probably new—I am in hopes of getting cones. The arborescent ferns are I am told in great abundance.

Our future plans are not determined, probably we shall go first to Bencoolen, it being a great object to arrive there early on account of Lady Raffles.

There does not appear to be any great cordiality here on the part of this Government, nor am I surprised, for they cannot but feel how little and insignificant they are in comparison with the energy of Sir Stamford.

I cannot express to you how much I am delighted with him; he is of the real Sterling stamp, of that active and comprehensive mind that diffuses a portion of its own energy to all around: even our two savans[12] feel a little of the Promethian touch, without which—it is needless to say more. Twelve o'clock, so good night.

---

[7] *Loranthus ferrugineus,* Roxb., is one of the commonest of the mistletoes in Penang.

[8] *Morinda umbellata,* Linn. is the common Morinda of Penang. Whether anthers an exserted or not, is but a sexual character in it: and sexual dimorphism was little understood in Jack's time.

[9] Wallich quotes a series of synonyms under *M. Kauki* in his Catalogue: and it is known that he was both confused and confused others over this species. Probably he had been talking to Jack about it.

[10] There were two Farquhars connected with Malacca about this time. The one was the Lieutenant-Colonel Sir R. T. Farquhar who as Governor of Penang in the year 1795 suggested the demolition of the fortifications of Malacca. The other, this Major William Farquhar of the Engineers, described truly by Jack as for many years Resident at Malacca—actually from 1803 to 1818,—and at a later date, when a Colonel, the first Resident and Commandant of Singapore. He employed, so we learn also from Wallich, a Chinese artist, and was the discoverer of that strange fern *Matonia pectinata* on Mount Ophir. Buckley in his *Anecdotal History of Singapore* (1902) vol. 1, p. 50 details his service, and adds (p. 105) that he died in retirement in 1839.

[11] *Dacrydium elatum,* Wallich, which was new at that date.

Jan. 16th—I find mention made of a species of *Mangifera*, *M. foetida*, which I suspect is the Bachang, and which I prematurely proposed calling rubicunda.[13] Have you a description of that species? if so, you will be able to judge from the character I gave you and you shall have specimens by the first opportunity; there has not been one yet. We have remarkably rainy weather, which probably is one cause of the difficulty I have found in getting the plants poisoned, I have been obliged to throw away many.

Do you know that the *Rhizophora* has four ovula, three of which abort? I have made a very accurate investigation and sketch of the carpology of a species which I found here,[14] which approaches to the *R. cylindrica*, but differs in several respects, particularly in habit, erect conduplicate petals, and peduncles 3—4-florous. They are a very extraordinary tribe; if I am not mistaken, you refer *Avicennia* to it. Are you acquainted with the Rambutan, *Nephelium lappaceum* of authors, *scytalia rambutan*, Roxb.?[15] Is it not surprising that the analogy with the Litchi should have escaped observation? Look at what a strange corner Jussieu has popped it into. Its being diclinous, is very peculiar, and I suppose the cause of the mistake. I think Roxburgh was right in his idea of the Natural Order, whether it is admissible merely as a species of *Scytalia* is not quite so certain, what say you? I have found a singular species of *Pothos* with aculeate petioles and scapes, and large pinnatifid leaves with long linear divisions, can it be Roxburgh's *pinnatifida*?[16] Pray send me his specified characters. I find here a remarkable variety, or more probably a distinct species[17] from the *Acanthus ilicifolius,* to be readily distinguished even at a distance by its flowers being white, much smaller, and in longer quadrifarious spikes, only at the summits of the branches. The true *A. ilicifolius* is also to be found here, so that I have the opportunity of comparing them together, and find besides the above striking differences the following more minute ones—Calyx shorter than the tube, one bracteate at base, style shorter than the stamina, and stigma simple in the white one; the contrary of which is the case in *A. ilicifolius,* which has three bracts to the calyx and a bifid stigma. In leaves and habit they are much alike, and equally prickly. By the bye, is not Lamarck in a mistake in attributing to the *ilicifolius,* alternate leaves? see "Enc. 1 sub Acantho." Pray is not that splendid *Cassia* which we often took notice of on the walk down to the great *Ficus infectoria* the *Cassia alata,* Linn. and not a Roxburghian species? it is here abundant on the road sides.[18] The *Mussaenda frondosa* is another ornament of these neglected spots.[19]

---

[12] Diard and Duvaucel; see the introductory lines, p. 147, and letters below at pages 187 and 201 et seq.

[13] See note No. 3, p. 152.

[14] *Rhizophora caryophylloides*, Jack, which is now placed as *Bruguiera caryophylloides*, Blume. The species to which he compares it, *Rhizophora cylindrica*, is now placed as *Bruguiera parviflora*, W. & A., and is common in the Sundribans of Bengal. Jack described *Rhizophora caryophylloides* in the Malayan Miscellanies and the description was reprinted in Hooker's Botanical Miscellany, ii. p. 86.

[15] The rambutan had been introduced into the Calcutta Botanic Gardens during Roxburgh's time; but it does not thrive in northern India, and was probably lost before Jack came to know the plants therein. Jack wrote at a later date than this, as internal evidence shows, his description of the plant which was published in the Malayan Miscellanies, vol. 1, (1820) No. 1, p. 10.

[16] *Pothos pinnatifida*, Roxb., for the characters of which Jack asks, is a climbing plant of Sumatra which was introduced into the Calcutta gardens under Roxburgh, and described by him from leafy specimens. It has been reduced in the *Flora of British India* to *Epipremnum mirabile* where the locality is given as "Penang, Roxburgh." But without doubt Ridley is right in stating that this is probably an error: perhaps the original source of it is here, and its perpetuation was due to one of Wallich's annotations, vide Ridley, Materials for a Flora of the Malayan Peninsula, iii. (1907) p. 46.

Jack's plant would be *Lasia aculeata*, Lour., and therefore Roxburgh's *Pothos heterophylla* instead of *P. pinnatifida*.

Jan. 23rd—My occupations have been a little interrupted by an unexpected series of events which have produced quite a revolution in our little world, and which I must now give you a short account of, that I may carry you along with me in everything that occurs. I have already mentioned that I thought there was no cordiality on the part of the Government towards Sir Stamford, and you shall hear presently the lengths they have since proceeded in their spirit of jealousy. You probably know that Sir Stamford left Bengal with a commission to settle the affairs of Acheen where two rivals[20] have been contending for power, and both are desirous of obtaining our aid and protection. He has also in view to make some settlements farther to the Eastward, and as these are in fact the most important, he was anxious to make the earliest possible arrangement of the Acheen affairs in order to be more at liberty in proceeding with his other plans. Expedition however forms no part of the political code of Penang, besides which, there has been such a scene of intrigue, and I believe I may add corruption[21] going on here in regard to Acheen as is quite disgusting. Of the two rivals whose claims are to be decided, the one is the legitimate King, with whom the nobles quarreled some time since, and whose power is insufficient to preserve peace; the other is the son of a Penang merchant, who appears to have no other claim than his father's immense wealth, and the support he has,—God knows why!—been receiving from this government. You may easily imagine that the arrival of a man like Sir Stamford to clear up such a business as this, could not be welcomed by those whose schemes were likely to be overset by the event; and they accordingly determined to throw every possible obstacle in the way, and to try every scheme that cunning could suggest to defeat his objects and prevent if possible their own disgrace. It would be tiresome to relate to you the artifices, the meannesses they had recourse to in the pursuit of this object, suffice it to say their conduct was disgraceful not only to their rank and situation, but to their character as men. But they had to do with a man too much their superior. Sir Stamford first intended to have gone to Bencoolen on Lady Raffles' account, and to have returned to make the final arrangements. The intrigues that were going on here however rendered the execution of that plan impossible, and he was at last obliged to determine on her remaining here,[22] and going himself over to Acheen. In the meantime, that his other plans might not be entirely suspended, during the delays of the Acheen business, he employed Major Farquhar to proceed on a mission[23] down the Straits, as, though very desirous of it, he could not go himself. Major Farquhar sailed on the 18th and he was to go in a few days after to Acheen. Now you must know that Sir Stamford had offered to the Governor that if he wished to make any reference to Bengal on the subject of Acheen, that he would delay his proceedings till an answer should arrive and in the meantime pursue his ulterior object, but the Governor was just as averse to these other views, and wished if possible to prevent his accomplishing either, therefore declined the offer, in hopes, by throwing obstacles in the way, to keep him idle here. He was afraid to take any decided step to prevent his going to Acheen till after Major Farquhar should have sailed for fear he should go away on that expedition. But no sooner was Major Farquhar's ships out of harbour than he addressed to Sir Stamford the most urgent solicitation that he would suspend all proceedings relative to Acheen till a reply should be received to important references that had *already* been made to Bengal. This, I suppose was considered a master stroke of policy, but *respice finem.* The moment he received this, Sir Stamford took his resolution; Major Farquhar's ships were but just outside the harbour, and at anchor till next tide: he immediately dispatched intimation to them, ordered the ship in which he was to have proceeded to Acheen to get ready to go to sea immediately, and commenced sending everything on board. This was in the evening, and as soon as everything was arranged for his starting before day-break next morning, he wrote to the Governor to say that he had determined to meet his wishes, and complied with his request of suspending all proceedings relative to Acheen till the arrival of the expected reply, and had in consequence determined to sail next day to overtake Major Farquhar, and that he should return in time to resume the Acheen affairs after the requested delay had been granted. Every arrangement being made he did embark next morning and set sail.[24] before the people here, who had no idea of any such promptitude and decision, knew anything about it, or had time to consider on any further obstacles to impede his progress. You may easily conceive the Governor's astonishment and disappointment, at finding his scheme defeated, and falling into a snare of his own devising. But there was no remedy. As Sir Stamford wished me to remain with Lady Raffles, here I am, in a house which he took for her residence while here, in preference to being a guest at the Governor's. Could anything be more excellent? In the first place admire the energy of Sir Stamford, then think how comfortable I am, with so agreeable a woman as Lady R., abundant leisure to examine the productions of this Island: in short I am delighted, and the day is not half long enough for all that I have and wish to do. It is needless after what I have related to make any comments on the extraordinary conduct of the

---

[17] *Acanthus ebracteatus,* Vahl. It happens that *A. ilieifolius.* Linn., is not recorded from Penang: but there is no reason why it should not occur or have occurred in Jack's time.

[18] *Cassia alata,* Linn., occurs in Penang as a cultivated plant and an escape from cultivation. It is used medicinally as a poultice for Ringworm, and grown for the purpose.

[19] *Mussœnda frondosa,* Linn. does not occur in Penang: but *M. glabra,* Wall. is of common occurrence; and it would be this which Jack had noticed.

[20] The rivals were (1) Johar Alam, the king, who had ascended the throne in 1802 and (2) Saif-ul-Alam, son by a slave girl, of a wealthy Penang merchant named Said Husein, the father himself being again the son of a slave girl.

Acheen for long had been a hotbed of trouble because the chiefs were almost as powerful as the king and therefore able to resist him. In this case they seem to have been done out of import exactions by the King, who permitted trade only at Acheen, and they conspired with the rich Penang family for the sake of the money that they needed for resisting; so that armed vessels paid for by Said Husein sailed from the Settlement to harass the King. From 1815 to the date of Raffles' mission this particular brew of mischief fermented; and the Penang Government was miserably timid throughout,— parleying with traitors, permitting hostile acts to take their origin in their own port, and worse than that by some of the officials assuredly taking bribes. Once a judge condemned Said Husein to prison, and the Recorder released him with honour. So they played fast and loose.

The story may be read in John Anderson's *Acheen and the ports of the north and east of Sumatra* (London, 1840).

---

[21] Lady Raffles recorded that an attempt was made to influence Sir Stamford by the presentation of a casket of diamonds to her. Vide *Memoir of the Life and Public Service of Sir Thomas Stamford Raffles* 1830, p. 379. Anderson hints that the official interpreter for Achinese, a man with an European name, was not without bias.

[22] Raffles' determination to leave Lady Raffles in Penang is mentioned in one of his published letters dated Jan. 16th, 1819, i.e. two days before the Governer's change of front.

[23] Jack is silent as to the object of the mission, which is quite likely to have been an examination of the Karimon islands.

---

[24] Note how in seeking his settlement to the eastward before closing the Acheen business, Raffles deviated from that narrow path of subservience which must be taken to satisfy certain superiors,—a path followed with such faithful subordination to the Board of Directors, and so ineptly, by the Government of Penang throughout these years. To Colonel Bannerman, who himself had been a Director, the "sin" may well have seemed large: and larger, because if Raffles had obeyed the letter of his orders, the instructions from Calcutta ordering him to desist would have overtaken him. Apparently this deviation was one of several acts of competence which caused the Board a little later to order that Raffles should have nothing further to do with Acheen, and to keep him in exile in decaying Bencoolen.

Governor of this Island; could I waste time and paper on details, the picture would astonish you. The fact of the matter is he is a weak man, with violence of temper sufficient to commit any folly or absurdity, and is entirely under the influence of one of the members of council, an artful designing character, utterly devoid of principle, who is the prime mover of all mischief, without appearing as a principal, and who does not care to what extremities he urges the other while he himself remains secure from the consequences. I wish I could convey to you some idea of the reverse of this picture, and contrast the activity and comprehensiveness of Sir Stamford's mind, with the narrow contracted spirit displayed in the other, which is almost too contemptible to be ridiculous. Were it not painful to see a British Governor so unworthy of his situation, I could really be amused, the whole is so perfect a burlesque upon politics. "Du sublime au ridicule n'est qu'un pas" was one of Bonaparte's observations, and really the only difference is often in the scale on which they are performed. That in fast is all that distinguishes an Iliad from a Batrachomyomachia. When a horde of Pindarries commits a few depredations and a Governor-General takes the field with the whole armed force of Hindostan to suppress them, it is grand![25] but if a Governor of Penang endeavours to place a king on the throne of Acheen, the trumpet of fame is silent, and yet neither of them perhaps surpasses in foresight and contrivance a wily school boy forming a scheme for the plunder of an orchard. Enough however upon this subject. I wish you had added to the list of names of Malacca trees and plants, the scientific names of such as you knew, it would rather have been an assistance. There are two or three of the first named, the Rambay and Dookoo[26] for instance, whose fruit I have met with, but not the flowers, and have not therefore been able to determine yet. I shall add the Linnean names as I discovered them. Have you in the garden the Bua

---

[25] Jack, like another botanist, Francis Buchanan-Hamilton, felt no strong attachment towards the Marquess of Hastings: and from the way in which he writes to Wallich it appears as if his sentiments were shared; but their cause does not transpire in these letters. Buchanan-Hamilton had been treated at the close of his Indian career, as if he could shut up his interests like a tedious novel, and on a minute by the Marquess of Hastings the materials were clumsily withheld from him that he had gathered together to take to the India House there to elaborate in retirement. That years after, he still held himself unjustly treated is evident from the advice which he gave to Wallich to keep control of his collections. It may have been this: but is likely to have been something complex, which caused the feelings held by Jack.

Jack alludes here to the circumstance that Lord Hastings had called out in 1817, 116,000 infantry and cavalry, with 300 guns, which as Marshman remarks (*History of India*, ii. p. 327) was a force "out of all proportion to the simple object of extinguishing bands of marauders who never stood attack." But events justified Hastings; and Jack's remark is that of a boy in politics.

[26] *Baccaurea motleyana*, Hook. f. and *Lansium domesticum*, Jack.

Krass, a species of *Aleurites?*[27] I have just examined it, and was at first a little puzzled by it. It appears to have been described under three different genera, *Croton, Jatropha,* and *Aleurites,* I have not the least doubt that the *Croton moluccanum* and *Jatropha moluccana,* see Lamk. Enc. are the same thing; it is quite absurd to compare the two descriptions, which are almost word for word the same, and I should suppose Forster's *Aleurites triloba* also to refer to the same plant but for the trifid calyx which he attributes to it. I observe in the catalogue, only this latter mentioned; does Roxburgh make them to be all three the same? The calyx of the male of what I have examined is always bifid. There is here a large tree, at present only in fruit, which is called Bua Jiring. I thing it may be Roxburgh's *Mimosa Djiringa.*[28] I will send you some of the fruit which is very peculiar, the pod being deeply sinuate or lobed on one side, each lobe or articulation monospermous and the whole spirally contorted.

As this letter has already become of rather an unconscionable length, I will have mercy upon you, and here close it. I shall send it to the Post Office to go by any accidental opportunity, which there sometimes is by native vessels or by the way of Madras —which I may not hear of, and write again when I know of a good opportunity. Specimens of course must wait, as they are mostly too large for the Dak,[29] but to show that they are not forgotten, I shall add a few small ones to take their chance, it would be useless to send good ones on a chance opportunity. I am afraid it will be sometime before I hear from you, as your letters will have gone to Bencoolen. As we may leave this about the 20th of Feb., I believe there would hardly be time after the receipt of this, to address me here.

I am very anxious to have accounts.

---

[27] *Aleurites triloba,* Forst. It was a fairly common tree about Calcutta at this time (vide Abbey-Yates, in the *Agricultural Ledger,* 1907, p. 31). *Jatropha moluccana,* Willd. and *Aleurites moluccana,* Willd. are synonyms.

[28] *Pithecolobium lobatum,* Benth., is the name which is applied now to Jack's *Mimosa Jiringa.* Jack published his description in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* i. No. 1 (1820) p. 14. The fate of the pod which he advises and of the specimens sent with his letter of March 5th is not to be traced: they do not appear to have found a place among the collections which Wallich distributed from 1828 forward, and in this respect are like a great quantity of further material which must have passed into the early Calcutta herbarium but never came out into any other,—Roxburgh's dried plants for instance and more of Jack's material sent later. It may be suspected that such was lost from want of attention during Wallich's lengthy visits to Nepal, Singapore, Ava, and the sal forests of Oudh. And Wallich with such losses on his mind may well have become very anxious to carry through his distribution of the East Indian Company's herbarium in order to save the material.

[29] Post.

Give my compliments to ....[30] if you see him, and to Col. Hardwicke.[31]

Believe me ever,
Yours most sincerely,
William Jack.

Pulo Penang,
Jan. 2nd, 1819.

P.S. I enclose seeds of a new species of *Sonerila,*[32] which I found this morning in the woods. I found also two very splendid plants, the *Alpinia mutica*[33] and *punicea*[34] of Roxb. I shall send the other few trifling specimens in a separate packet with this. I am looking very anxiously for a good opportunity to give you a sample of this Island. If not too much trouble, I should like to have Roxb.'s char: of his *Melaleuca cajuputi.*[35] He gives in the list[36] a *Mangifera gandaria*, but there is no description of it in the MSS,[37] which I have. Whose and what is it? I could wish to

---

30. Name illegible. A. T. G.

31. Colonel, afterwards Major-General, Thomas Hardwicke (died 1835) a zoologist of great merit, served in the Indian army for many years, using his opportunities there and in Mauritius for collecting specimens, and making drawings. He was Vice-President of the Asiatic Society of Bengal when Lord Hastings was its President. A Major H—is mentioned in the extracts of Jack's letters to his parents which Sir William Hooker printed, as stationed with Jack at Dinapur, and it may be that this was Major General Hardwicke.

32. Probably *Sonerila erecta,* Jack, described in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* i. No. 5 p. 7.

33. *Alpinia mutica* was described by Roxburgh as having been introduced into the Calcutta Botanical Gardens from Penang. It flowered in Calcutta; and it has been in many Gardens since, so that it is well known. But it has not been found in Penang by any one during the last century: and the query is raised whether Roxburgh got it from wild plants, it being extinct now in Penang, or from its known home on the eastern side of the Malay Peninsula via Penang. The allied *Alpinia assimilis,* K. Schum., which occurs freely in Penang might have been mistaken by Jack for the other (vide Ridley, in this *Journal* No. 30, 1899, p. 165).

34. *Alpinia punicea,* Roxb., Flora indica, i. p. 71 is *Hornstedtia punicea,* K. Schum., a plant not known to occur in Penang. But there is in the island *H. megalocheilos,* Ridl. which has "crimson stars of flowers on the surface of the ground" just as Jack describes this in the next letter: and it was probably it that he had obtained.

35. It is worth remark in passing that here we have again one of the Roxburghian adoptions of a Dutch spelling of which Jack complains. *Mimosa Djiringa* and *Melaleuca Cajuputi* are equally objectionable, or acceptable. See p. 165.

36. Roxburgh's *Hortus Bengalensis,* which had been printed by Carey in the year after its author left India.

37. Roxburgh with as much generosity as Scotch prudence, left several copies of his *Flora indica* in manuscript in India in the hands of friends, and it appears as if Jack had been able to provide himself with extracts from one of them, but at this date was in need of much more than he had. We find him later paying the wages of a copyist in Calcutta for the obtaining of further copy. See note No. 119, p. 181.

have the characters of Roxb.'s *Scytaliæ* and *Melastomæ,* of which latter I have found several, one very strange tetrandrous one, with bluish flowers, but I must not make my correspondence and requests a tax upon you.

Will you kindly send the enclosed to Mr. Calder[38] when convenient.

Thine
W. J.

P. Penang,
Feb. 12th, 1819.

My dear Wallich,

My last will have given you some idea of how I am employed, and what is going on in this quarter. We have just had accounts from Sir Stamford, who has taken possession of Singapura (the City of the Lion) an ancient Capital of the Malays and situated on the Island of Singapore, opposite to Johor, and at the Eastern extremity of the Peninsula and Straits of Malacca, which is to be our principal settlement of that quarter, and a most important one it will be. We look for his return very soon. So much for affairs.

Now for Botany; I am actually overwhelmed with the treasures that pour in upon me; I have been employed night and day so as not even to leave time for correspondence. I actually wish for a little remission, for my cough has been teasing me, but how is it possible! I cannot even now get through all; my specimens are in piles that are quite alarming, and I have not time to look over them: I must however take a day to make a selection for you. I look forward to getting on board ship to bring up arrears, and get things in some order, and then you shall not be forgotten. I am at this moment engaged upon a drawing of a splended new Tacca[39] with entire leaves, diphyllous involucrum &c. &c.; of which you shall presently have a full account, and which I mean to dedicate to Lady Raffles. Say Amen! I will send you the drawing to be engraved, which I think it will not even require the aid of gallantry to induce you to do.

---

[38] This Calder belonged to one of the Agency firms in Calcutta, and appears to have been the James Calder, who supplied a geological paper to the eighteenth volume of the Asiatick Researches and was an energetic member of the Asiatic Society of Bengal two years later than the date of this letter. Dr. Gravely, Hon. Secretary of the Society has ascertained that James Calder was elected member on April 12th, 1817.

[39] *Tacca cristata,* Jack in Malayan Miscellanies, i. 1820, No. 5, p. 23, a common plant at low elevations in Penang. We find it here as *Tacca rafflesiana,* and in this understand how Wallich came to distribute it in or after 1828 under that name (Wall. Cat. No. 5172); but the cause of Jack's alteration is not recorded.

There is a note in the *Malayan Miscellanies* making reference to Curtis' *Botanical Magazine,* plate 1488 published in 1812, which should not be considered evidence that Jack had access in Malaya to that work: for Jack had an opportunity to work in Calcutta before he published the description.

This is the very land of *Melastomæ,* I cannot tell you how many species I have got, many I think new, though some perhaps Roxburghian.

Have you not established a genus *Cyathospermum?* I have some recollection of you speaking about some Sylhet plants which you had so named; I shall enclose in this, a section of the seed of a Rubiaceous plant I found here only in seed, whose structure is so peculiar, that I think it may be your genus from the name.

I enclose some ripe capsules of a diandrous plant, habitu didynamioid, which has puzzled me a little. I most distinctly recollect your Nepaul Koom Koom, which you referred to *Incarvillea,* but I think the capsules of this plant resemble it. The placentæ are so peculiarly reflected, that they appear to be four celled;[40] I have met with two or three species. It seems to have an affinity to Boea.

I have also a new species of *Cookia* or *Wampi,*[41] differing from the common one in having long tomentose leaves, consisting of 10 or 12 pairs of very inequilateral pinnæ, and small greenish flowers whose petals are pellucidly punctate in the same manner as the leaves.

I have found two very splended *Alpinias,* which I believe you have in the gardens, the *A. mutica* and *punicea*[42] of Roxburgh. The latter is particularly beautiful, throwing up its crimson stars at the very surface of the ground, and its noble leafy stems by their sides. I have also a smaller species which may be new.

Feb. 15th—Sir Stamford is returned, and there is a vessel going to Bengal to-night or tomorrow morning. I have prepared with all possible ex. a packet of specimens for you which, though selected and put up in haste, will I think please you, and give you some idea of our Penang flora.

I hope they will keep, for I have put none that are not quite dry. Among them you will find:—

two species of *Sonerila,* one Roxburgh's *moluccana,*[43] the other my new one, which from its habit might I think be called *S. erecta*[44] of which I send you seeds, a *Melastoma* which I shall be glad to know what you say of; it may be *Osbeckia tetrandra,* Roxb.;[45]

---

[40] It is clear that he is referring to a *Didymocarpus*: and it would be to one of the three described by him from Penang viz. *D. crinita. D. reptans* and *D. frutescens.*

[41] *Clausena excavata,* Burm., probably, which is common on the coast of Penang.

[42] *Alpinia mutica,* see note No. 32 and *Alpinia punicea* see note No. 33.

[43] *Sonerila moluccana,* Roxb. Flora Indica, i. p. 170.

[44] *S. erecta,* Jack. Vide note No. 32.

a *Volkameria* with beautiful hanging panicles,[46] which I suspect is one you have in the garden.

two species of *Melaleuca,*[47] on which I wish to have your opinion.

a species of *Corypha* which I think is new.

a new *Morinda* with terminal umbelled capitula, and corolla villous within and tetrandrous.[48]

a species of *Connarus*[49] which from the name may perhaps be Roxburgh's *C. paniculata.*

my new *Mangifera quadrifida*[50] of which I have got a very good drawing.

I have numbered a greater part of them for the facility of reference when you write.

I enclose in this a leaf and some of the fruit of a beautiful shrub whose flowers I have not seen. Is it an acquaintance of yours? The leaf is so remarkable that it cannot be mistaken, it is numbered 96.

Sir Stamford has brought with him a number of specimens which I have not yet gone through; among them however are no less than three new and splendid species of *Nepenthes!*[51] from Singapore, the new settlement. I must name one of them after him, and Lady Raffles. I must keep her *Tacca* also. I shall have drawings made of them and ample descriptions, and will send them to you to be engraved and brought into the world in the way you shall think most proper and satisfactory.

---

[45] Possibly *Dissochœta pallida,* Blume, which was described by Jack as *Melastoma pallida* in the *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London,* xiv. p. 12.

[46] *Clerodendron nutans,* Jack in this place and in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* i. (1820) No. 1, p. 17, must have been *C. penduliflorum,* Wall.

[47] *Melaleuca Leucadendron,* (M. Cajuputi, Roxb.), is a very variable plant. Bentham wrote of it as follows:—it "varies exceedingly in the size, shape and texture of the leaves, in the young shoots very silky villous or wooly, or the whole quite glabrous; in the short and dense or long and interrupted spikes; in the size of the flowers; in the greenish-yellow, whitish, pink or purple stamens etc., and at first sight it is difficult to believe that all can be forms of one species." There is therefore no reason to think that Jack had found in his second plant a species of this genus now lost from the island.

[48] *Morinda umbellata,* Linn., which Jack thinking new described as *M. tetrandra* in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* i. part 5, p. 13.

[49] *Connarus ferrugineus,* probably, which Jack described in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* ii. part 7, p. 37. Wallich distributed Jack's specimens under his number 8536, but without a specific name.

[50] *Mangifera quadrifida.* See note No. 4, p. 152.

[51] *Nepenthes Rafflesiana,* Jack, *N. ampullaria,* Jack and doubtless *N. gracilis,* Korth.

Raffles mentions them in a letter dated 10th June, 1819 (*Memoir of Life of Sir T. S. Raffles* p. 381.) Sir William Hooker in the *Botanical Magazine* under plate 4285 (1847) suggests that Jack was the actual discoverer of *N. Rafflesiana,* but obviously in error.

I am anxious to know how our "Contributions"[52] come on? Shall the above plants appear in it or the Society[53] or how? I am sure you are as much interested as myself to do proper honour to Sir Stamford, who deserves all we can do, and more. He is a second Mr. Gardener[54] et plus. I have not time at present to enter upon foreign topics, or would give you some account of his proceedings since he went away, but I will at a more leisured time, and shall only let you know at present that he has established a new settlement at Singapore, which combines so many advantages as must soon make it the most important place in the Eastern Archipelago, and the centre of trade. The style in which the thing has been done will delight you when I have time for it. I enclose a few seeds of one of the new *Nepenthes.*

He has also brought a single specimen of one of your Napaul *Orchideæ* whose name I forget, but the sketch annexed will give you an idea, the leaves are purple and beautifully variegated with yellow veins. The specimens and probably this letter, proceed by the Hope.

My best compliments to Mrs. Wallich and believe me, in great haste your ever and sincerely,

William Jack.

Prince of Wales' Island
March 5th, 1819
[Recd Apr 2].

My dear Wallich,

Ever since I wrote you last and Sir Stamford's return, I have been so busy that I have had no time for writing. A vessel is expected to sail for Bengal in a day or two, and I cannot think of allowing it to pass without something from me.

Sir Stamford is about to leave this for Acheen, where his business will probably detain him about three weeks. I remain here.

March 6th—I was interrupted yesterday and have just learnt that the vessel, the "Mercury," sails to-morrow morning. I have therefore in all haste made up a parcel of specimens for you, to the imperfection of which I crave your indulgence. Some will probably interest you, as they promise to be new. There are specimens of the *Mimosa*[55] I formerly mentioned to you as likely to be Roxburgh's *M. Djiringa!* barbarous! why not call it Jiringa; it is Dutch spelling he has adopted. There is another nearly related species, with small red contorted legumes.[56] Observe also a *Melia*[57] which seems new, a species of *Curculigo!*[58] a *Bauhinia* with red flowers,[59] a most beautiful climber which displays its blossoms of flame on the summits of the highest trees. Let me know what you think of No. 3 with beautiful red arilled seeds,[60] which seems related to *Celastrus,* but is monospermous and capsule bivalved. I could not observe any corolla in its flowers. Tell me whether you think Roxburgh's *Phyteuma begonifolia*[61] really belongs to that genus. I am doubtful. You can probably tell me at once what species of *Elæocarpus*[62] is the one I have sent. Let me have also your opinion on No. 124 a very singular and beautiful pentandrous plant with crimson flowers,[63] which appears to belong to the family of *Combretaceæ.*

---

[52] A proposed joint publication which never matured. Wallich's plans were commonly larger than his means of putting them into execution.

[53] Without a doubt a reference to the *Asiatick Researches* of the Asiatic Society of Bengal. Jack on 12th Feb. 1819 became a member of the Society; Wallich had been a member since the 5th of December, 1810.

[54] E. Gardner, British Resident at the Nepalese court. It was he who arranged for Wallich's visit to the valley of Nepal; and previously he had been a contributor to the collections in the Calcutta gardens.

I can make nothing of no. 131, but I have described it; is it an acquaintance of yours? It was introduced here from the Eastward. I send you a specimen of that beautiful *Volkameria* or more properly *Clerodendron* (if they are admissible as distinct genera) with long hanging panicles.[64] I have sent a leaf of the new *Tacca.*[65] I have only one spec. of the flower and it is not dry. I shall be glad to know what you make of the next to it No. 146, the Gloogor of the Malays.[66] I am much puzzled by it, and am inclined to fancy it intermediate between *Artocarpus* and *Cecropia.* I must discuss a number of these with you when I have more leisure; however I must add to this a plant I found some days ago,[67] which I have described and drawn. I enclose impressions of its leaf and enlarged bract with pencil sketch of its infloresence and flower. It appears to me allied to *Porana,* but it is the bract not the calyx, which expands as the fruit ripens. The ovarium is 4-sporous, the fruit 1-seeded, with the same contortuplicate cotyledons as *Porana.* It is a weak spreading shrub; it is further digynous. Let me know, whether it is an acquaintance, or if you think it new.

---

[55] *Pithecolobium lobatum,* Benth., which Jack described as *Mimosa Jiringa* in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* ii. 1820, No. 1, p. 14: and Wallich distributed specimens under his number 5268.

[56] *Pithecolobium Clypearia,* Benth. (Inga Clypearia, *Jack*) described by Jack in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 78.

[57] *Melia excelsa,* Jack, in *Malayan Miscellanies,* i. part 1, p. 12, specimens of which Wallich distributed under his number 1253.

[58] *Curculigo latifolia,* Dryand. (C. sumatrana, *Roxb., Flora Indica,* ii. p. 146) described from a plant grown in the Botanic Gardens, Calcutta, and redescribed by Jack in the Malayan Miscellanies i. (1820) No. 1 p. 7.

[59] *Bauhinia bidentata,* Jack, in *Malayan Miscellanies,* ii. (1822) No. 7 p. 76, a common climber in Penang.

[60] *Paracelastrus bivalvis,* Wall., which was described by Jack as *Celastrus? bivalvis* in Malayan Miscellanies, i. No. 5 p. 19.

[61] *Pentaphragma begonifolium,* Wall., named as *Phyteuma begoniifolium* in Roxburgh's *Hortus bengalensis,* and described in the *Flora indica.* Jack described it in the *Malayan Miscellanies* i. (1820) No. 1 p. 5, with the remark that possibly it ought to constitute a new genus.

[62] *Elæocarpus.* There is nothing by which this can be identified. We know that Jack obtained in Penang *E. nitida* and *E. integra,* but these are two only of several which occur in the island.

[63] *Lumnitzera coccinea,* W. &. A., described by Jack as *Pyrrhanthus littoreus* in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* ii. No. 7, p. 57. Wallich though using Jack's name does not catalogue plants from him, under his No. 4018.

[64] *Clerodendron penduliflorum,* vide note No. 46.

[65] *Tacca cristata,* vide note No. 39.

Have you any acquaintance of the leaf I enclose, No. 183 and 96, I have not seen its flower or anything but the stem and leaves. I have found here the true Sago,[68] certainly very different from the *Sagus Raphia* described as the true one by Lamarck.

I must now turn to another subject, I have lately had some conversation with Sir Stamford on my future plans, a subject we had not before touched on since leaving Bengal. He has in consequence addressed (pro forma) a letter to me requesting me to accompany him on his further voyage to the Eastward, and offering me the appointment of Personal Surgeon to him retrospectively from the 1st of January; to this I of course gave an affirmative reply, which he will forward with his own letter to Bengal and request His Lordship's confirmation of the appointment. For my own part, I would rather the arrangement had been deferred till I heard from you about our other schemes,[69] Mais le moyen de l'éviter. I put him in mind of those plans and asked his opinion concerning the notice to be taken of them in writing to Bengal. He said they might be left to their own course, to which I said, Amen. Now, my dear Wallich, I leave the conduct of all that may be necessary to you. You know all the circumstances, and you know me as well as yourself. Perhaps I have not been successful, and then there is no more to be said. If I have, I think there is no need that my acceptance of this situation should render vain all the exertions of my friends. It may I think easily be managed so that the one appointment should stand, and any temporary arrangement be made for the duties, either by Mr.

---

[66] The Glugor is this case is obviously the Glugor salah *Cyclostemon longifolius,* Blume: and the genus would be just as new to Wallich as to Jack.

[67] *Neuropeltis racemosa,* Wall., obviously; but somehow no botanist has found this plant in Penang subsequently.

[68] *Metroxylon Sagus,* Rottb. is the sago palm of most of Malaya. Jack described it with great care under the name of *Sagus lævis* for the *Malayan Miscellanies* and this description, appearing again in Griffith's Palms and elsewhere has generally been the foundation of those made later in Floras.

[69] Apparently a reference to his wish for the post of Surgeon in Champaran.

Renton's[70] remaining, which doubtless he would be glad to do, or another being sent. I do not think it probable I shall be in any hurry to leave Sir Stamford, for the very society of such a man is worth a sacrifice, if there were any in the case. Besides which between ourselves, he has made me another promise, still more flattering, which is to appoint me his Private Secretary, as soon as the situation becomes vacant, which it will, when the Acheen business is over. There are numbers of plans in embryo, all of which I will enter upon as soon as I can find time. By the bye, a Mr. Gibson, a young man who was one of the officers of the Nearchus, is going up to Bengal, and will soon after come down to Bencoolen. He has promised to call to receive your commands, when he is about to proceed, which will be an excellent opportunity. Will you allow me to lay a tax upon your kindness, and request you to send a further supply of paper for specimens, and of wax cloth, which I unfortunately forgot, and there is none procurable here? I have not time to recollect how much I am in your debt, but on the present emergency enclose a draft on Mack & Co.[71] for a 100 rupees. You are not yourself I know, over exact in accounts, therefore request you will beg as a favour to me, of Mrs. Wallich to keep an account of all the expenses you have been at, and may incur in future on my account, and be most particular and exact therein, as on that will depend my doing you the honour of teasing you with my commissions!! Dreadful threat. Seriously however, I am so careless myself in these matters, that it will be a real obligation if Mrs. Wallich will be good enough to relieve me from the burden, and I shall then have less scruple in applying to you.

Give my best regards to Mrs. Wallich, and believe me ever,

Yours very affectionately,

William Jack.

Pulo Penang,

March 6th, 1819.

P.S. How does my young romping friends Master George?[72]

---

[70] Mr. Renton would appear to have been the retiring surgeon of that district.

[71] Mack & Co. Apparently Mackenzie & Co., Agents and bankers in Calcutta.

[72] George, Wallich's son. He had a distinguished career in the Indian Medical Service up to 1860, in which year he left and was attached to the S.S. ''Bulwark'' for a survey of the sea-bottom in the course of laying a cable across the Atlantic. Thence-forward he worked at marine zoology, until his death in 1899.

There is a ship sailing for England and I am writing to Brown;[73] I have not yet written to Mr. Colebrooke,[74] as I have nothing to send. This Island yields no mineral but principally granite.

Lord have mercy upon you in the attempt to decipher this hieroglyphical letter, and thank heaven that there is no time for my doing it myself and so escape the heaviest part of the task.

Penang March 15th, 1819
Received May 25th
per Bengal Merche.

My dear Wallich,

You will ere this have received my last hurried letter and dispatch by the Mercury. With writing to Europe, the bustle of preparation for Sir Stamford's departure, plants coming in, and a variety of trifling interruptions, I had quite enough to do. Now I am quiet and at leisure. Sir Stamford sailed for Acheen on the 8th inst.; he wished to have delayed it till after Lady Raffles' confinement, but under the circumstances of the time, and the open hostility of the Government who appear resolved to indulge it to the utmost by any means, honorable or dis-honorable, he found it impossible to prolong his stay. On the 12th Lady R. was brought to bed of a son, and is now recovering very fast. I have just found means to send the agreeable intelligence to Sir Stamford, who will I am sure be delighted. Their first child was a daughter, and I know his wish was for a son, so he will be doubly gratified.

I believe I promised to give you some account of the settlement at Singapore, but have not yet had time. I think I informed you of the way in which Sir Stamford got away from this, and the extraordinary conduct of the Government on the occasion. You probably know that ever since the restoration of Java, the Dutch have been endeavouring to extend their influence over the whole of the Eastern Islands, and by establishing a complete monopoly of their trade, and shutting all the native ports against us, to exclude the British entirely from that commerce. The spirit of hostility in which their designs were carried on, was open and avowed: it is astonishing with what supineness we have looked upon their progress. In Bengal the subject seems scarcely to have attracted attention and indeed how could it in the full ardor of a grand Pindaree Hunt. This Government[75] made one feeble effort, to get a settlement at the mouth of the Straits, but in their usual spirit of inefficiency and incapability, neglected to support it, and blundered the whole business so abominably, it was worse than doing nothing, for the Dutch finding out our object, came with a force, overturned our treaty and made another in their own favor, excluding us and all foreign nations from the port. This Government took the affront very quietly, in truth my own opinion is, that they would be well pleased at the complete success of the Dutch schemes, for so perfectly local are their prejudices and so narrow their views, that I believe they fancy the loss of the British influence to the Eastward, would increase the importance of this settlement, and that the loss of the commerce of the Islands, would make the possession of this paltry bit of a place, which has hitherto been maintained as a kind of intermediate station, appear the more valuable. It would make you laugh to hear the way in which the Governor talks of the vast and increasing prosperity of the *Presidency*, so it is always called. To listen to his account of the extensive cultivation and plantations of spices, nutmegs, cotton, tea, coffee, pepper, &c. &c. one would suppose that he was talking of a place equal to the peninsula of India. He got some time ago a single pod of Pernambuco cotton,[76] which was sown, and has multiplied. He was so full of the vast superiority of this cotton, of the great importance of his discovery, and the plantations of it which were to drive all other cotton out of the European markets, that I was anxious to see this staple article of the commerce of Penang. It was some time before I could discover it; at last a couple of acres near the jail were pointed out to me, where amid the luxuriance of weeds, I distinguished a few stunted bushes of a Gossypium. This field is now figuring in the dispatches of the Government, and the Honorable Court of directors are, perhaps now calculating the profits of this new created commerce. In anticipation of these exhaustless resources, he is laying new duties upon trade, new taxes upon industry, raising new crops for the service of the Island, and declares he will make the Island pay its own expenses. I beseech you now, do not think that I am giving you a chapter from the annals of Laputa, it is plain sober fact, and I am now in the place of wonders.

---

[73] Robert Brown (1773-1858) "facile botanicorum princeps, Britanniæ gloria et ornamentum" in the words of von Humboldt. Jack had made his acquaintance in London at the time when obtaining admittance to the College of Surgeons.

[74] Henry Thomas Colebrooke (1765-1837) was one of the many extremely able civilians in the service of the Honourable East India Company at the commencement of the last century, a Sanskrit scholar, a mathematician and a botanist. He was a leader among the men who made the Asiatic Society of Bengal, and its President for ten years. He rose to the position of Chief judge, Bengal, and then accepted the acting post of Superintendent of the Botanic Gardens, Calcutta, in Roxburgh's absence when Buchanan-Hamilton, who had taken over the duties at first, was leaving India. This he did for the sake of his wife's health, it being thought that a stay outside the capital in the quiet of Shibpur might do her good; but losing her he begged leave to retire and left India in February, 1915, taking with him such an active interest in the promotion of Oriental Research as to bring about the foundation in London of the Royal Asiatic Society.

---

75. That of Penang.

76. Pernambuco cotton had been introduced into India in the eighteenth century and considerable interest was being taken in it about this time. It has persisted in the damper parts of India, not as a field crop but as a garden plant useful for candle wicks, sacred thread, etc.

To return from this digression, Sir Stamford went down to endeavour to find a place fitted for a station at the mouth of the straits of Malacca, if such could be got unoccupied by the Dutch. Fortunately he found all that could be desired, at Singapore on the Island of the same name, one of the most commanding positions in that quarter. The place was formerly the Capital of the Malays, but had been deserted for many centuries, and its harbour was unknown to Navigators. He also found there the eldest son of the late Sultan of Johore, who had been kept out of his regular succession by the numerous sub-ordinate chiefs, who had seized the opportunity of his absence, at the time of his father's death, to establish themselves independent at his expense. He was now however acknowledged as the chief of Singapore, and with both these authorities the necessary treaties were made by us. Sir Stamford left Major Farquhar there as Resident, and the company of Sepoys he had taken with him, and returned here. His first care was to send a re-inforcement, to ensure the respectability of the station, and applied for the troops which this Government had promised to have in readiness whenever he should call for them. Would you believe that they actually refused them, in defiance of their own written promises, and the orders of the Governor General, and why, because they disapproved of the measures that had been taken, or in plain English, because it did not originate with themselves. There is good reason to believe that they have conveyed intimation of their hostile sentiments to the Dutch, in the hope of its exciting them to exert themselves against the settlement. I should hardly obtain credit for all the extraordinary steps they have taken to affect, if possible, the ruin of the finest settlement in the British possession.

Happily however, they and the Dutch together, will only be able to create some petty obstructions, which a little time will entirely obviate. I hope too, their conduct will sooner or later meet with its due reward, and be exposed as it deserves, for it is impossible to conceive anything more disgraceful from first to last.

On the Island there is but one opinion, both of the Governor and the limb of Satan who guides him, and is the prime mover of all the iniquity and mischief of the place. A government must be bad indeed that cannot even command a voice among those most nearly connected with it, and dependent on it.

Enough however on such a subject; I am tired of it, and I dare say so are you.

March 25th. I have just seen some Bengal papers, in one of which I find "Mr. Asst. Surg.—somebody appointed to Patna *vice* Tytler[77] appointed to the Chumparan." Is it so? Then there is an end of the matter.[78] I ought under all circumstances to be indifferent to it, as there was so little chance of my returning to take up the situation, but I know not how it comes, the news has actually annoyed me. I hate to be foiled in anything. I believe I should have cared less had any one else carried it against me, but to John Tytler, to such an Ursa Major, it is a little provoking to yield. I hope you have congratulated Major Hay on his acquisition; he seemed mightily afraid that Botany and duty would not go on well together, as if the important charge of him, his wife, and his Sepoys was enough to employ all the faculties of any single man. But let him and the bear rub on together as they may, be now Sumatra my field, and it shall go hard if it does not produce something.

---

[77] John Tytler wrote papers on the Mathematics of the Arabs—in the Asiatick Researches.

I told you in my last, of Sir Stamford's handsome proposal and my acceptance. There is a good beginning; I have much in prospect, which it is too soon yet to enter upon. Perhaps too, we may carry some of *our* further plans yet into effect. I am anxious to get to Bencoolen, to receive your letters, to be at the capital as it were, to see about me and form my plans, which in this unsettled kind of place I cannot so well do.

I am preparing a large dispatch which I think will please you. I have been thinking that the most regular and methodical way would be, to send along with the specimens, a list containing such remarks on the plants as may be useful, which will be more convenient to you than having to refer to a desultory letter. It will also be easier for you to return me your remarks in the same manner, either on the same list, or if you prefer keeping it, on another similarly numbered. I would send you the list in duplicate to save you trouble, if I had anyone to write for me. I will also for the same reason, send you a list of the principal contents of the former dispatches, that we may go on regularly. I find I have several times numbered the same plant twice, when I did not happen to recollect whether I had before sent specimens. This is a mistake which can be easily rectified, and which you will readily excuse. I send many also without numbering, which I have not had time to examine particularly, but which are not the less worthy of being examined. For instance, there are a great number of *Ixoræ* here, which I have not attempted to ascertain, as I have not Roxburgh's descriptions. Have you got yet into Tetrandria in his printed Flora?[79] What are the "Contributions" doing? I shall ere long have plenty to contribute.

---

[78] His hopes of the post; see note No. 69.

[79] Carey and Wallich were engaged in an attempt to publish Roxburgh's Flora India; and Wallich contrived to publish ''Descriptions of some rare Indian plants'' Calcutta 1818. The first volume of the Flora containing the Tetrandia came out in 1820 and was not much altered from the original manuscript: but into the second volume which appeared in 1822 so much revision was put by Wallich that the two authors never got beyond it, or say one third of the whole.

April 12th.—No opportunity has occurred of writing till now; a vessel has arrived from China and proceeds to Bengal. I send by her a box of specimens, to which I have added some fruits and seeds, which may not be unacceptable. I enclose a list of the present dispatch, and also, one of the principal contents of the former ones. Some of the things now sent, will I think be interesting.

Sir Stamford has not yet returned, but we are in hourly expectation of him. I think we shall leave this immediately on his return, and I shall not be sorry: new plants begin to get scarce, but on the whole I think the Island has not been unproductive. I have 130 descriptions,[80] about 40 drawings &c; I shall have employment when I get to Bencoolen, in investigating these further than my present means of reference allow, and above all in comparing them with the information I expect from you.

Have the goodness to remember me very kindly to Mrs. Wallich.

Do you see my friend Lindsay[81] occasionally? I must write him if possible before I leave this.

Believe me ever,
My dear Wallich,
Yours very affectionately,
William Jack.

P.S. Write soon.

Pulu Penang
May 7th, 1819
[Received June 23rd].

My dear Wallich,

Sir Stamford did not return from Acheen till the 29th ult. the business there having proved more difficult and tedious than was anticipated. It will take him some days longer to close the affair altogether, and then we shall bid adieu to this Island of delay and obstruction. You will I am sure be happy to learn, that the cause of honour and justice has been triumphant over that which was in every way the reverse. Every person here rejoices in the result, from regard to the British character, except the

---

[80] Jack's published writings contain only 54 descriptions of Penang plants.

[81] Who this Lindsay was, has not been ascertained. Dr. F. G. Gravely, Hon. Secretary of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, has been so good as to search his records in Calcutta, and does not find his name as a member.

Governor and his two coadjutors. Capt. Coombs,[82] the 2nd Commissioner, one of these, made every possible effort to frustrate and defeat the objects of the Mission, but though he supported the opposite party with incredible obstinacy, he was no match for Sir Stamford's abilities and perseverance. The weight of evidence was such, that he was obliged to give way at last in every material point, and concur in the final resolution of supporting the old and legitimate Sovereign, with the influence of our alliance. A treaty has accordingly been concluded with him, on the usual terms of defensive alliance, but without pledging ourselves to any interference in the internal affairs of the country. The old King appears to be a very superior character, and to possess a much greater share of information than usual among natives. He speaks and writes English, and has some acquaintance with our literature and science, and what is better still, has a great deal of English honesty and plain dealing, no common qualification in this quarter of the world. The investigation has brought to light a great deal of iniquity upon the side so warmly espoused by this Government, and a sense of piracy and plunder on the coasts of Acheen, that is quite disgusting. This Government will use their utmost endeavours to overturn the arrangements, but I do not think it possible the Bengal Government can be so weak as to yield to their clamour. I should like to know the Calcutta opinion on all the affairs of this quarter. Never were there men whose conduct more deserved reprobation than the members of this Government, but it is not unlikely that their remoteness and the little interest excited by affairs in this quarter, will enable them to escape the odium their conduct would otherwise bring upon them.

I now turn to more pleasing subjects. Capt. Fergusson of the Boyne, has agreed to take charge of a box of growing plants, and a parcel of specimens, which I hope will arrive safe. I am sure he will take the utmost care of them: you will find him a worthy excellent man, and of superior character. I have no doubt if his voyage lies in any direction you are interested in, he will attend to any wishes you may express.

---

[82] Captain John Monckton Coombs was the second commissioner under Governor Bannerman. It seems that he owed the position to the interest of Governor Petrie, Colonel Bannerman's predecessor. He had been sent in 1818 to Acheen to enquire into the real state of affairs, having sailed on January 13th, from Penang and reached Acheen on the 17th. Unfortunately he did not understand the Achinese language, nor did his official interpreter; so he ''peacock-ed'' about, and thought that he had made an impression. Then he wrote a report which is contradictory in its statements but for the usurper wholly in its conclusions; and he proceded direct to Bengal to give information there and receive orders. When he arrived, Lord Hastings was up country in Oudh; and it was some months before Coombs could get his ear, during which other reports had come from Acheen, not altogether in accord with the story as told by this ''special commissioner''; and moreover Raffles was available for consultation. This fortunate delay led to Raffles and Coombs being sent back to make a new investigation jointly, in the course of which as Jack says Coombs had to give way on every material point. Raffles (vide Memoir, p. 397) says in other words that Coombs if opiniated was not dishonest over this affair.

The treaty made with the restored king carries both Raffles' and Coomb's signatures.

I hope the box of plants will please you; it contains a good many which I have never seen in flower, and can therefore say nothing about. Of those I know, you will be glad to have a healthy plant of *Tacca Rafflesiana.*[83] I need not say take care of it: it is the only one I have met with. There are besides two species of *Arum,*[84] one of *Calla,*[85] a *Pinus,*[86] and another nearly allied with distichous leaves,[87] the *Pancratium amboinense,*[88] several species of *Amomum,* an *Aerides,*[89] and several other kinds of air plants, and plants of which the specimens are numbered 183-220-239. These I think are the chief contents, and most are at present *vigorous.*

I also send a supplement to my last dispatch of specimens, containing many duplicates, and new ones down to 263 as per enclosed list. A few of these are from Acheen, brought by Sir Stamford, which I have not had time to look over. He brought very few, as they were but little on shore, and too busy to attend much to them. The principal known ones from thence are the splendid *Barringtonia speciosa,*[90] the *Nymphæa cyanea,* Roxb.[91] at least I take it to be so and several of which I have sent specimens from hence as *Volkameria, Calophyllum, Cardiospermum, Gmelina.*

I send you a few seeds of the Pernambuco cotton, which I have mentioned to you; and a few other seeds. Among the plants lately found, of which the specimens are not dry, are the *Guettarda*

---

83. *Tacca cristata,* see note No. 39.

84. *Arum.* Unless there is some manuscript record of the fate of this at Calcutta, it is impossible to guess what it was, as botanists in the time of Jack put so many different Aroids under the genus Arum.

85. *Calla humilis, Calla angustifolia,* and *Calla nitida* were all described by Jack from Penang. The first is *Homalonema humile,* Hook. f., the second *Homalonema angustifolium,* Hook. f., and the third *Aglaionema oblongifolium,* Schott. The first two are plentiful in Penang.

86. *Dacrydium elatum,* Wall. See note No. 101 in the next letter.

87. *Podocarpus imbricatus,* Blume (P. cupressina.)

88. In regard to *Pancratium amboinense,* it is not possible to say how Jack used the name.

89. If Jack sent *Aerides suavissima* to Wallich, he had got an orchid which now occurs very rarely in Penang.

90. *Barringtonia speciosa,* Forst. is a shore tree exceeding likely to occur at Acheen.

91. *Nymphœa cyanea,* Roxb., is a variety of *N. stellata,* Willd., quite likely to occur at Acheen.

speciosa,[92] *Ardisia umbellata*,[93] *Scævola Taccada*,[94] *Nymphæa stellata*,[95] *Bruguiera gymnorrhiza*,[96] and *Rhizophora mucronata*,[97] *Barringtonia racemosa*,[98] &c. &c.

I hope to leave this in a week from this time; I am heartily sick of the place, and most anxious to get to Bencoolen, and receive your letters.

A paper which I saw some little time ago, conveyed to me the first intimation of your late loss,[99] which I learnt with much concern. I trust ere this reaches you, the time for condolence will have passed, and will therefore forbear the subject, especially as I know how useless are words in those trials which are beyond our control, and for which there is no remedy but resignation.

Present my very best regards to Mrs. Wallich,

and believe me
to be most sincerely yours
William Jack.

P.S. Excuse the haste apparent in the letter.

Penang May 19th, 1819.

My dear Wallich,

I have a favor of a very unusual kind to ask you, of which a little explanation is necessary. I have given you some account of the Acheen affairs, and you know somewhat of its iniquities. The party have spared no means to carry their point; among other things a letter appeared in the Calcutta Journal, the writer of which we very well know,[100] giving a most unfair view of the business, and throwing out some shameful insinuations. A wish was expressed that it should be met and answered, and I have undertaken it. I believe that Buckingham will have no objection to inserting a reply, and I shall be greatly obliged if you will undertake the task of getting him to do it. You may with perfect confidence assure him that every word in it may be depended on. Of course I do not wish to be known as the writer of it, but above all it must never be suspected that Sir S. had any knowledge of it. If Buckingham does not like, any of his rivals will be glad of it. Read it and let me know whether you think it intelligible. I do not think it possible that they can answer it. The writer of the letter is to a certainty Capt. Coombs, a man of whom I believe there is but one opinion, and that is such as need not be put on paper. You may easily believe that what I now send you is a job I would never readily undertake, but I believe you participate in the sentiment that has induced me on this occasion to travel so far out of my usual track. In fact, it is not possible to be an indifferent spectator of what is here passing, to refrain from admiration of the one, or for honest indignation at the others. It has hardly been possible for me to convey to you an idea of the contrast, the one is too disagreeable a subject to be dwelt on, and the other it is not easy to express without seeming partial. I know however what your own early impressions were on this subject, and need only say that every day's experience would have strengthened them.

---

[92] There is considerable interest in this record of *Guettarda speciosa*, if from Penang. It is a common sea-shore tree and is known to occur in Kedah and on the inlands north of Penang, as well as on the coasts well to the south. But Curtis never found it in Penang, nor are there specimens in the Singapore Herbarium thence. Unfortunately there is evidence that Jack visited the Kedah coast, and no evidence here that Jack got the Guettarda on Penang island.

[93] *Ardisia umbellata*, Roth, is *A. humilis*, Vahl, known to occur in Penang.

[94] *Scævcla Taccada* is *S. Koenigii*, Vahl, common on the coast of Penang.

[95] *Nymphæa stellata*, Willd. is common in Penang now in ditches about rice fields, etc; but may have been rare in Jack's time.

[96] *Bruguiera gymnorrhiza*, Lamk., is not recorded by Curtis as a plant of Penang, nor by anyone else: but there is one old specimen in the Singapore herbarium.

[97] *Rhizophora mucronata*, Lamk., is not recorded by Curtis as a plant of Penang, nor by anyone else: but there is no unlikelihood of its occurrence. However we find it mentioned here along with several plants which may have been brought by Jack from the mainland.

[98] *Barringtonia racemosa*, Roxb., is not recorded by Curtis as a plant of Penang; but a specimen from the islet of Pulau Tikus on the north coast is in the Singapore herbarium.

[99] Apparently the death of an infant.

I have very little time for writing at present, so you will excuse a short letter. I expect to leave this in a few days more, which I shall do with less regret than any place I have ever been in.

If an answer to mine should ever appear, approve me.

I dispatched to you a box of growing plants some time ago, by the Boyne, which I hope will have arrived in good condition. I have little to add at present on our own subject. I have however made a discovery of some importance, that what I sent you as a Pinus, is not a Pinus. I had long sought in vain for the cones. and at length procured some with a small berry, which proves it to be either a Taxus or Juniperus, I have not determined which.[101] I enclose a sprig with one of these fruits. The cones I formerly found, belonged to the Pinus Dammara, which is abundant.[102]

---

[100] Anderson in his book on "*Acheen*" already quoted, p. 134, says "The papers in Calcutta now began to take up the subject of Acheen affairs very warmly, and the friends and supporters of both parties had an opportunity of conveying their opinions in the shape of extracts of private letters from Penang. Some of the letters addressed to the Calcutta Journal bear the stamp of having been written by the different organs of each party, if not by the Commissioners themselves. The style of the first so much resembles that of the paper of October, 1817, and the reports of the envoy, that if he did not write it himself, he must have entrusted it to a head and hand fully capable of catching at his precise ideas." Jack here says that Captain Coombs, i.e. the Envoy, "certainly" wrote it: and he reveals the fact that he wrote a reply.

This goes for the Bishop;[103] he has been with us once or twice, and has seen all that is going on in the various departments of Natural History, at which, between ourselves, he expressed nothing more than common vulgar wonder, and we certainly did give him enough for that, however as you will probably meet him at the Society, you will probably hear his account of Penang and its wonders. What attracted most his attention was two natives of the Andamans, who were brought here some time ago, whom he pronounced to be in the lowest state of civilization in which he had yet seen human nature, and certainly there could not well be conceived a greater contrast than was exhibited between the portly figure of the Bishop himself, and the two poor wretches he was examining. I should have liked to have asked him whether he really believed himself to have sprung from the same common stock with them; and whether Adam resembled these Aboriginees.

I made a memorandum of the peculiarities of form of these men, which I will send you when I have time to copy it. The most striking peculiarity, is their diminutive stature, the taller of the two being 4 ft. 7 in.

My best regards to Mrs. Wallich, and believe me.

Yours very sincerely
William Jack.

SERIES 2—SINGAPORE LETTERS.

Singapore, June 8th, 1819.
[Received July 27th].

My dear Wallich,

We got clear of Penang on the 22nd ult., and arrived here on the 31st. It is impossible to conceive any thing more beautiful[104] than the approach to this place through the Archipelago of

---

[101] *Dacrydium elatum,* Wall. Jack had mentioned this as a fir and as a Pinus in his earlier letters. The finding of the fruit put him on the right track.

[102] *Agathis loranthifolia,* Salisb. otherwise known as *Agathis alba,* Foxworthy, or *Dammara alba,* Lamk.

[103] The Right Rev. Thomas Fanshaw Middleton (1769-1822), first Bishop of Calcutta under the East India Company, a competent organiser, but narrow towards dissenters. We know that there were several baptist missionaries in association with Raffles, so that the Bishop might not have felt inclined to be very friendly.

Raffles (Memoir of the life of Sir T. S. Raffles, p. 400) mentions Dr. Middleton's visit to Penang, in a long letter there printed.

[104] Jack in a letter to his family which is printed in the *Botanical Magazine* (1847) under plate 4285, uses these same words and then goes on to a more detailed description than that above.

Islands that lie at the Eastern extremity of the Straits of Malacca. The place itself is advancing rapidly, and will soon become one of the most populous settlements to the Eastwards. The forests that now form my delight will gradually give place to man and his habitations, but they are more interesting to me in the present state. Flora here luxuriates in endless varieties, where she finds soil, climate and everything congenial.

I find many, or most of my Penang acquaintances with others surpassing them in magnificence. Witness two most splendid species of *Nepenthes*,[105] of which I have procured perfect specimens, male and female, and have completed two drawings, to which I flatter myself it will not be easy to bring a parallel. I am sure they will glad your eyes, when they shall be submitted to them.

Quale portentum neque militaris
Napalia in latis alit esculetis,
Nec Indiæ tellus generat, *novarum*
Stirpium nutrix.

I have found here another specimen of the new *Tacca*,[106] in fruit which I had not before seen. The Gambir, *Uncaria Gambir* is here extremely cultivated; I did not meet with a single plant of it at Penang. Among the new plants I have ascertained are the *Lythrum Pemphis*[107] *Xyris indica*,[108] a *Fagræa* which I think may be new,[109] with large splendid flowers. It has led me to the discovery that No. 131 of your specimens, is the *Fagræa fragrans* of Roxburgh at least as far as I can decide from the abbreviated character, which is all I have. Pray is Roxburgh's *Ardisia umbellata* truly distinct from Swartz's *A. coriacea?*[110] I find here that the umbels are often disposed in terminal panicles as well as axillary. I have ascertained another point, which it may be worth while to attend to when you come so far in printing Roxb.'s Flora, which is that *Cordia campanulata* R. is the same with *C. subcordata* Lamarck.[111]

---

[105] *Nepenthes Rafflesiana*, and *N. ampullaria*,—both described by Jack, and the descriptions put into proof which was reprinted by Sir William Hooker in 1835 (vide note No. 51, p. 163).

[106] *Tacca cristata*, see note No. 39, p. 161.

[107] *Pemphis acidula*, Forst.,—a rather rare plant on the coast of Singapore island.

[108] *Xyris indica*, Linn. is a weed of such places as rice-fields, and is found in the north of the Malay Peninsula down as far as Malacca. Through the Peninsula southwards to Singapore, occurs *X. anceps*, Lamk., and it is similar enough to be easily mistaken. Although we have reason to believe that there were rice-fields in Singapore previously, it is more likely that Jack named *X. anceps* as *X. indica*, than that *X. indica* has been lost through the abandonment of the cultivation for rice.

[109] Doubtless *Fagræa auriculata*, Jack, the description of which appeared in the Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822) p. 82.

There are in Wallich's beautiful *Plantæ Asiaticæ Rariores*, certain plates, that of *Fagræa auriculata* being one, bearing no artist's name: and in several cases the reason is to be traced to the circumstance that a friend of Wallich had supplied the plate. The plate of *Jackia ornata* is in the same category. It may be suggested from this, but unfortunately without proof, that Jack had supplied the drawings for these two plates, unsigned, so that the published illustrations passed out from the press without a name on them.

[110] Apparently distinct. *Ardisia umbellata*, Roth, is *A. humilis* Vahl. See note 93.

I am afraid the Singapore specimens will scarcely be dry enough for transmission: however I shall send a few that I think will bear it, and you shall have further dispatches from Bencoolen, which I am now very anxious to reach. I shall not be surprised if this should in time become our head-quarters, and by all accounts it will be much preferable to Bencoolen, which is sadly out of the way.

I send this by Dr. Smith of the 20th N.I.—and regret that I have not more to send by so good an opportunity. However I shall have another soon after I arrive at Bencoolen, when I will begin to get things in order, which I cannot do in the way we are living here.

June 15th.—I am in hopes we shall not be detained here much longer. I send half a dozen specimens, just to show that I am doing something. There is one very beautiful species of *Loranthus* among them.[112] Pray is the tree I sent you from Penang as a Pinus, and afterwards discovered not to be so, the Juniperus elata, Roxb.?[113] the name and nativity render it highly probable.

The beautiful white-fruited shrub[114] No. 183 of your specimens is very abundant here, as also a second and smaller species of the same genus, with red fruit.[115] I suspect it to be a new genus, what think you? The generic character will be as follows:—Calyx inferus, 5-phyllus parens. Corolla (alba) 5-petala, petalis reflexopatentibus calyce duplo longioribus. Stamina 5 hypogyna. Filamenta brevissima. Antheræ longæ in conum conniventes, apice acuminatæ poro dehiscentes. Stylus longitudine staminum. Bacca supera, 5-sperma vel 5 pyrena, seminibus arillatis, arillo fibrosa, embryone inverso cylindrico, longitudine seminis, albumine incluso. Folia pulcherrima striata nervis transversis parallelis. In some specimens there were five yellow filaments like abortive anthers alternating with the true stamina, but they were not constant.

---

[111] Later botanists have confirmed this.

[112] *Loranthus coccineus*, Jack, apparently. It was described by him in the *Malayan Miscellanies*, i. (1820) No. 1, p. 8.

[113] Yes; it is: and it is now known as *Dacrydium elatum*, Wall.: see note p. 101.

[114] *Euthemis leucocarpa*, Jack, which is a plant common locally in Singapore island. The genus Euthemis was quite new in Jack's time, and so distinct that later botanists have made of it a distinct tribe of the order Ochnaceæ.

[115] *Euthemis minor*, Jack, described by him along with the last in the *Malayan Miscellanies*, i. (1820) p. 18. It has only been collected again in the island of Singapore (Choa-Chu-Kang, Ridley) once since Jack's time, and once on the islet of Pulau Battam to the south.

I found a day or two ago, a singular Decandrous Leguminous shrub, of which I can make nothing.[116] The marginal scratch[117] may give an idea of it. The calyx tubular with a flat 4-parted limb, the two opposite divisions larger: one single petal, erect ungulate with a subrotund lamina. Three long fertile stamina, seven short abortive. Germen pedicellate, pedicel of the length of the calyx and concrete with it. Style as long as stamina. Legume large, flat, few-seeded. Flowers in terminal corymbs Leaves pinnate with two pairs without an odd one. Folioles subrotund marginate.

I have a favor to ask of Mrs. Wallich which I hope she will be able to grant without much trouble. I have promised to procure for Lady Raffles a copy of the music of the Persian air "Tareh ba tareh" I believe Mrs. Wallich plays it. And if she would be so good as to take the trouble to copy it I will be greatly obliged. Perhaps she would increase the favor by adding any other good Hindostanee Airs.

Lady R. is a superlative performer, and I should like to hear some of these tunes with the advantage of her execution.

Both Sir S. and Lady R. frequently desire to be remembered to you, oftener than I remember to record it, so you must always take it for granted to be understood if not expressed in like manner as the affectionate regard with which I am always, My dear Wallich.

Yours very truly,
William Jack.

P.S. I have written up the country to order down some things I left behind me, to your address and care. I will be much obliged if you will take the trouble to receive and forward them.

My dear Wallich, Singapore, June 18th, 1819.

Since I closed my letter I have got one of Thetis's drinking cups to send you, a huge crateriform Spongioid Zoophyte. They have been brought of various sizes, some larger than the present one. If it should not particularly interest you, perhaps Col. Hardwicke would like it,[118] and as I have not yet sent him anything it will just serve to show that I am not quite unmindful. I have found it convenient to occupy myself very little with Zoology, as it seems to be expected that every thing in that department should go to the Frenchmen, and I perceive a kind of jealous feeling on their part. I shall probability be more at liberty when I get to Bencoolen. They have been very industrious, but I shall take another opportunity of telling you more about them. You know them pretty well. They are not deficient in vanity but it does not meet with much consideration among us.

---

[116] *Afzelia retusa,* Kurz, or perhaps the doubtfully distinct *Afzelia bijuga,* A. Gray.

[117] Not reproduced.

[118] This specimen was described by Colonel Hardwicke in the fourteenth volume of the *Asiatick Researches,* p. 180, under the title A description of a Zoophyte commonly found about the Coasts of Singapore Island.

We have just had a dissection of a Dugong, a very singular herbivorous Cetaceous animal hitherto very imperfectly known. Some account perhaps would be interesting to Col. Hardwicke, which I shall send you when I have another opportunity.

Adieu,
Yours in Haste,
William Jack.

SERIES 3—BENCOOLEN LETTERS.

No. 9.

Bencoolen,
Aug. 19th, 1819.

My dear Wallich,

At length after all my wanderings here I am at the ultima Thule, and indeed it seems to deserve the appellation well enough, for it is grievously out of the way. Of your letters I have received those of the 18th Feb., of the 10th of April, of the 27th and a note of the 14th June, but several alluded to, particularly per "Tagus," and "Isabella Robertson" are yet to make their appearance. I have further received from Mr. Halked the writer's labours down to Polygonum,[119] and (mihi gratissima) two vols. of Enc. Botanique[120] for all which, my best thanks. I am most anxious to receive your other dispatches, which I hope will not be long delayed. As they seem to be a little irregular in their transit, it might be a good plan, and save also a little valuable ink and paper, *to number our letters,* by which means it will be easy to know whether they all arrive safely without constant quotation. To commence therefore I mark this No. 9, which appears by my Dâk Book[121] to be the number already sent from Penang and Singapore, exclusive of parcels etc. I need not trouble you with much account of my voyage which was long and tedious. We left Singapore on the 28th of June, and two days after got aground on a shoal in the Straits of Rhio, where we were obliged to start all our water overboard before we got off again. This obliged us to run into the Dutch Port of Rhio, and gave me an opportunity of landing and seeing it. It is a paltry miserable place since the Dutch took possession of it. The only new thing I found there was the *Hypericum alternifolium,* Vahl.[122] From there we proceeded to the Straits of Banca, where our progress was very slow, the monsoon being against us. I had not once an opportunity of landing again till we arrived here, although we were always in sight of and often very near the land. From the Straits of Sunda our passage was good, the same wind which had before opposed us, being then in our favour. The track we pursued was a very unusual one at this season, and one that many people would have pronounced impracticable. I have been as you may suppose, very busy since I arrived, and am hardly yet quite settled and got into regular train. Unfortunately I was far from well during the latter part of the voyage and for a fortnight after my arrival, which rather retarded my labours. I have not yet got through the arrangement of the piles of specimens I brought with me. I am very anxious to have your letters with observations on the specimens sent you. Those I have already received are invaluable, and have given me much new light on several points, on which I shall enter presently. A new field seems to open here, for of all that has yet been brought in, very few indeed are acquaintances. *Optime amice mihi,* what do you think of specimens *of the flowers of the Camphor,*[123] from which I have made an excellent drawing? Is not that *an admirable beginning!!* It belongs to *Monadelphia polyandria*: calyce 5-partito: cor. 5-petala: ovario triloculare 6-sporo, stylo filiformi stam. longiore: antheræ longæ circa stylum conniventes.

---

[119] This remark shows that Jack was employing a writer (clerk) under Wallich's supervision to make for him a copy of Roxburgh's *Flora indica.* See note 37.

[120] *Encyclopédie Méthodique.* The botanical part by Lamarck, continued by Poiret, Paris, 1783-1817.

[121] Post despatch book. This is the eighth preserved letter.

[122] *Archytæa Vahlii,* Choisy. Wallich distributed specimens of this plant collected by Jack labelled Penang, under his number 4806: and because the plant is found at Batu Feringhi in the island of Penang, the locality has never been questioned. But we find Jack stating here that *A. Vahlii* was a new thing to him; and so well did he know his plants that it is impossible to think that he overlooked getting it in Penang if it were so. He got it at Rhio.

As there is not at present any direct opportunity to Bengal, (this goes via Penang) I cannot send any parcels, but I cannot deny myself the pleasure of enclosing a sprig of that great desideratum, which has so long bloomed in vain and " wasted its fragrance on the desert air."

By the bye I should have mentioned that the box of paper and wax cloth is as good as arrived, for though not yet in my possession Capt. Bowman has told me of it, and promises to land it in a day or two. You mention that it is blotting paper, I am sorry therefore, as I prefer the country paper, on a comparative trial of the two; I ought to have mentioned this to you before, and do it now for your information in future. The dry coarse rather stiff paper appears to answer best, such as, what I shall make the cover of this letter of. Allow me to make my acknowledgements for your and Mrs. Wallich's kindness in so readily agreeing to incur the trouble of my commissions, of which I shall now avail myself without mercy.

---

[123] On page 149 of Marsden's *History of Sumatra* (third edition, London, 1811), there is given the then-existing information in regard to the Malayan Camphor-tree. The leaf is described and the habit of the tree: Gærtner's figure of the fruit, and an engraving of the foliage made for Lambert are referred to: but the flower had ''not yet been brought to England.'' In the twelfth volume of the *Asiatick Researches* Colebrooke described the fruit, together with an excellent figure of leaves, fruit and seed (1816, p. 539 and appendix p. 3).

With attention directed to the need, in 1819 Mr. Prince, whose name occurs in these letters, sent flowers to Raffles from Tappanouly.

You will by this have considerably exceeded the amount of my former remittance, therefore I now enclose a draft on the Treasury for Sa R 300. On receiving the cash will you be good enough to desire Messrs. Gibson & Co, Tailors, to send you a small bill which I owe them for a suit of clothes which I had just before leaving Calcutta, and at same time order a genteel blue coat, of no nonsensical *dandy fashion,* but such as a gentleman may put on? Pray send it at convenient opportunity, together with the books and atlas, which you were so good as to take charge of. As I may consider myself fixed here for some time, I may as well collect my rattle traps about me.

Pray is any acknowledgement of the honour necessary to the Asiatic Society to which your good offices have procured me admission. I find from my account "Curr." that Mr. Calder has done the needful in regard to payment which I suppose is the most essential part of the acknowledgement. Now in regard to your wish for a paper, pray tell me when they are likely to bring forth a vol.[124] Something or other they must have, but *what,* may be regulated by the probable delays. If they are not likely to publish soon, something of minor interest will do, for instance ellucidations of some imperfectly known Rumphian or Malay trees and fruits, as the Bachang, Rambutan, Rambeh, etc. etc. A perfect Clavis Rumphianus is rather a desideratum. Do you know anything of the Rasamala of Rumph?[125] His description makes it a Pinus. Here they have a Rasamala, which is different and is more like a Guttifera. There are here a great many kinds of wild nutmegs, which will be interesting and which I must investigate. I think I mentioned to you at Penang my having observed the true Nutmeg to be polygamus. I find the observation confirmed here, in so much that the planters trouble themselves very little about preserving male trees, as there are generally a sufficiency of monoecious trees to answer the purpose.[126]

---

[124] The Asiatic Society produced the thirteenth volume of the *Asiatick Researches* in 1820, and the fourteenth in 1822: but Jack was not among the contributors. The fifteenth volume appeared in 1825. In a later letter he writes to Wallich "I think you told me that there were two volumes in hand or in the press." Possibly he thought the manuscript closed, which cannot have been the case as Hardwicke's paper on the Singapore zoophyte went into the fourteenth.

[125] Rasamala to Rumpf was a wood—"Caju Rasamala"—which was brought to Amboyna from New Guinea, from a country of barbarians, and its origin was only to be investigated by hearsay. At a much later date, the botanists who worked in Java, *e.g.* Blume who was Jack's contemporary, Noronha, Hasskarl, and Junghuhn, showed that one kind of Rasamala is the resin of the forest-tree, *Altingia excelsa,* Noronha,—not one of the Guttiferæ as Jack suggests, but of the Hamamelidaceæ. However apparently not all rasamala is from this tree. Rasamala in commerce has been much confused with Rosamallas or Liquid storax from the Levant.

I delivered your letter to Dr. Lumsdaine,[127] with whom I am very good friends, and out of whom I mean to extract all the information that is in him. He is a peculiar character, as I shall have occasion to explain to you more at length hereafter, suspicious and tenacious, but not difficult to be managed by a little skill. If you see Dr. Smith who carried up my Singapore despatches, he can give you his character at length, having been with him many years. I was not aware that the Dammar would be so interesting or I could have sent larger supplies from Penang; however I doubt not to procure it here also.[128] The Alpiniæ also I expect to find, but did not send them from Penang as from their being in the list of the garden, I supposed they were abundant. I take it there will be found here many new Scitamineæ. I have one which appears to belong to Hellenia, Br.[129].

On looking over Roxburgh's Coromandel plants a few days ago, I observed the figure of *Getonia floribunda*[130] which appears to be my plant Nos. 55 and 92. Smith in Rees' Cyc. refers it to *Elæagni,* can this be correct? I considered it *Combretaceous;* it wants however the corolla. The figure in the same work of *Symphorema involucrata* resembles in habit my No. 233,[131] but cannot be the same as it has serrate leaves. Can No. 232 be a *Fagræa?* I yesterday got a fruit of it, which is a superior berry of two cells and many seeds. If so *anne nova?* I found the *Uncaria Gambir* at Singapore and different from all the Penang ones. Is my *Bauhinia* Nos. 230 and 244 Roxb.'s *integrifolia?*[132] A memorandum that has fallen in my way makes me think it may. I began a few days ago an examination of the genus *Memecylon,* which appears to be in a sad confusion, beyond my power to unravel. Are not *Memecylon edule,* Roxb. and M. *capitellatum* one and the same?[133] *M. grande, cordatum,* Lam. and *amplexicaule,* Roxb. are very badly defined, and not one of them agrees well with my amplexicaul species, sent from Penang No. 223.[134] The other No. 240, subagrees with *capitellatum, edule, ovatum* and another of Smith's in Rees. Non nostra tantas componere lites.

---

[126] Confer Ridley, Spices, (London, 1912), p. 109 where the custom of Chinese owners of uprooting male trees is referred to.

[127] Dr. James Lumsdaine was Assistant Surgeon of Bencoolen. We find his name in the Proceedings of the Agricultural Society, and as a contributor on the Healthiness of Fort Marlborough. We find him with Raffles in Singapore after Jack's death, as a member of a Committee appointed to consider the suitability of the south bank of the Singapore River for occupation (vide this Journal, No. 65, p. 41), and on a Land-Allotment Committee in 1823 (vide Buckley's *Anecdotal History,* i. p. 79). He retired from Government Service in 1825. What is of most interest in connection with him is that he was one of the first "natives of India" to be admitted to the service (vide Crawfurd, *History of the Indian Medical Service,* 1914, i. p. 502).

[128] *Agathis loranthifolia;* see note No. 102, p. 177.

[129] i.e. Alpinia.

[130] *Getonia floribunda,* Roxb., is *Calycopteris floribunda,* Lamk., of the Combretaceæ. Its number suggests that Jack had obtained it in Penang, where it occurs.

[131] Jack's 233 might be *Sphenodesme pentandra,* Jack.

[132] Probably.

I must now close this long rambling letter, I hope to have ere long some direct opportunity and to be able to send you some things. I shall have now means, more than I had, of sending hence plants, seeds, and everything for the increase for the garden.

My very best and kindest regards to Mrs. Wallich and believe me.

My dear Wallich,
Thine ever,
William Jack.

No. 10.

Bencoolen,
Aug. 26th, 1819.
[Received 29th, October,
per Geo. Cruttenden].

My dear Wallich,

A second opportunity offers of writing to you via Madras, of which I avail myself to forward the duplicate of the Draft contained in my last. I also sent you a few flowers of the Camphor tree of Sumatra, which I am sure will delight you. I have found means to send to Tappanooly for further and ample supplies, together with whatever other interesting plants can be procured. This month has been the feast of *Puassir* among the natives during which no business of any kind is done. In a few days more it will be at an end, and all the chiefs come in a body to pay their compliments to the Govr., after which business returns to its old train. We have formed extensive plans for obtaining the productions of all parts of the country which will then be commenced, and mean to have occasionally councils of the chiefs for the purpose of inquiries into all subjects of Natural History, on which information can be obtained from them.

I have taken a look over Sir Stamford's specimens of plants found on the Menang Kaboo trip,[135] almost all of which are new to me, and they have very much of an Alpine character. I observed among them, a *Rhopala,* perhaps the *serrata,*[136] and two new *Sonerilæ*.[137] I find here a species of *Nepenthes* different from all the Singapore ones, and evidently the *N. phyllamphora*, Lour.,[138] which is also the *cantharifera*, Rumph., differing from the *N. distillatoria* in having petiolate leaves, urns ventricose at the lower part, and the striated margin depressed or flattened. Sir Stamford proposes that we should send the Nepenthes with a few more of the most interesting of our discoveries home to be published in a small fascicle, in the most splendid style that they can be executed in, colored figures of the full natural size. I think it would be a good thing to attract attention to the subject. It may or may not be continued, according to circumstances. Give me your idea on the subject. You know that Sir S. has brought a printing press with him; he proposes keeping it constantly employed in printing papers on Natural History, and on a variety of other subjects of local information. He has himself a mass of papers on the Eastern Islands, which in their present MSS. form, are but little available, and of course liable to accidents and destruction; these he proposes printing, in order to preserve them and to afford the means of distributing them to a certain extent. He proposes to go on for some time printing without publishing, but after a little to make selections from among the materials thus collected, of which to form a volume which may be published quarterly or as matter sufficient may accumulate. In this way a great deal will be preserved of considerable interest; but perhaps not finished enough for the established channels of information as the Asiatic Researches &c.[139] For instance we think of printing descriptions of plants, whether new or not, which can then be distributed to a few, better than in MSS. I would send to you, Mr. Brown &c. for your observations, after which what was really valuable might be made public or not, and in such way or channel as would appear afterwards eligible. By the bye, in what state are the vols. of the Asiatic Society, is there any likely soon to appear?[140] Sir S.

---

[133] Yes.

[134] Certainly *Memecylon coeruleum*, which Jack described in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* i. (1820) No. 5 p. 26.

[135] Raffles had left Bencoolen early in July, 1818, for Padang; and from there had marched into the interior, starting on September 16th. The naturalist Thomas Horsfield was of the party and went ahead carried on the shoulders of four men in order that by arriving at the camping places early he might gain time for botanising. The journey lasted fourteen days, and covered 250 miles (vide *Memoir of Sir Thomas Stamford Raffles* first edition. pp. 314-368, or second edition, i. pp. 388-434).

[136] *Helicia serrata,* Blume, which may occur in the mountains behind Bencoolen.

---

137. These Sonerilas were not described by Jack.

138. *Nepenthes phyllamphora*, Willd., was described in print by Jack in proofsheets for the Malayan Miscellanies which were reprinted in Hooker's Companion to the Botanical magazine i. (1835) p. 271 with the remark "abundant in moist places and ravines in the neighbourhood of Bencoolen." Later botanists have collected it on the same coasts.

139. Rajendra Lala Mitra in his part of the *Centennial Review of the Asiatic Society of Bengal* (1883) p. 50, referring to the *Asiatick Researches* says "a heavy quarto volume necessarily suggested elaborate and finished essays, and in the selection of papers for it, short notes describing new discoveries or new ideas, however interesting were frequently rejected." And he continues by recording that many members of the Society were dissatisfied at the slowness of publication and its insufficiency. A motion was even brought forward for improvement but though it passed, it effected little.

Possibly, had the Society felt itself able to provide the outlet, its prestige being so great, Wilson's *Quarterly Oriental Journal*, the *Transactions of the Medical and Physical Society of Calcutta*, and the *Malayan Miscellanies* would not have sprang up as small octavos for notes rather than essays, and for early publication.

140. See note 124 on p. 183.

says he would wish to go hand in hand with it, if the delays are not too great. I think you told me there were two vols. in hand or in the press: are they filled up, and when is another likely to come forth? There are description of some animals, for instance the Dugong, which would be worthy of a place there. Diard told Sir S. that he heard that a description of the Tapir of Malacca from Major Farquhar was to appear in one of the present vols.[141] That description is not only imperfect but inaccurate, and as we have a better account of the same animal belonging to Sumatra, it would be a pity that a less accurate paper should occupy the pages of the Asiatic Researches. Sir S. I believe would be glad to know how the case actually stands, and whether the Secretary would like to insert his account in preference. He will probably write on this subject to you or Mr. Wilson.[142]

It is intended also to have all the Frenchmen's descriptions of animals &c. printed. in order to prevent being inundated with .... flummery. I believe, they are to be engaged to put them all into latin, by which they will become, not only more concise, but more generally available. I have said very little to you, I believe, about the Frenchmen, and as they are good friends of yours, you will perhaps wish to know something about them, the estimation in which they stand, and what they are doing. *Between ourselves then,* I believe they are estimated "a peu près a leur propre valeur" and you know pretty well what that amounts to. They have been the source of not a little amusement to us during our voyages, when there was not much to occupy us......

You may easily conceive .... how they fared .... against a long head like Sir S., and a hard one like Crossly, who to good abilities joins a bluntness more than usual even among Englishmen. I must however give them a great deal of credit of having preserved a good deal of temper throughout, probably they knew well enough that the contrary would be to no purpose. In regard to their labours, they have unquestionably been very industrious in making their collections, nor do they spare their personal fatigue. The number of birds and animals that they have prepared is very great.—I must let you know the footing on which Sir S. supports them, which will explain to you the reasons for my taking no part in the Zoological affairs.

I believe his plan is to employ them in making the collections on the public account, that is to say, that they engage to give the whole fruits of their labours without reservation to be at Sir S's. disposal, in return for which he is to defray their expenses. They are glad to make this bargain, as their own funds were nearly exhausted in Bengal without having done much, and the credit of the collection they now make, will of course be theirs, though the property of it be British. This I believe from some private conversation I had with Sir S. on the subject of deriving the most advantage from their labours, to be nearly his plan, and certainly they may be very useful, as the subjects are by no means such as are generally cultivated, particularly in this country. They also regard less than most people the trifling inconveniences of bad smells, putrescency &c. &c. and are therefore well fitted for anatomists. What I have now mentioned, as I have not heard Sir S. speak openly on the subject, is of course private between us. It will explain however, why I do not like to make any private collection for myself, or to do anything that could look like interfering, especially as they might feel a kind of jealousy, and I do not suppose they entertain any affection for me; that of course I care very little about, and they are liberal enough of politesses, but as Sir S. evidently endeavours to keep them in good humour by little attentions, I do the same, or at least nothing to the contrary. If I wished anything, particularly anything of that description, I would ask Sir S. for it. You see therefore it will be very little in my power to send to Col. Hardwicke, as he is himself a correspondent of Sir S. who will probably send from himself. If I should ever be separate, the case would alter.

---

[141] This appeared in the *Asiatick Researches,* XIII, 1820, p. 417.

[142] Dr. Horace Hayman Wilson (1784-1860), Secretary of the Asiatic Society 1815-1832, the Sanskrit Scholar, and historian.

A species of *Quercus* was brought in to me a day or two ago, Nat. name Punning.[143] Roxb. I see has several Penangian. I have been thinking how it would do to employ a man with you to sketch off rapidly on thin paper, the outlines of such of Roxb.'s drawn species as I am likely to meet with here, which would be of considerable use to me and would there be any objection to such copies being taken? yes, one suggests itself this moment, the putting the vols. in the hands of natives to finger, by which they have already suffered; however you will judge, and whether it would be worth the trouble. I have found also the *Cæsalpinia? sumatrana* Roxb.,[144] and the *Brucea sumatrana,*[145] the latter figured in Rumph.

---

[143] Apparently *Quercus racemosa,* Jack, in *Malayan Miscellanies,* ii. (1822), No. 7, p. 86, which is found to be the same as *Quercus spicata,* Smith (Pasania spicata, *Oerst.*) a widely distributed species.

[144] Roxburgh had described in MS. *Cæsalpinia sumatrana* from a plant introduced into the Calcutta gardens from Sumatra. It is found to be a *Mesoneuron* and becomes *M. sumatranum,* W. & A. It has been collected since Jack's time on the Bencoolen coast.

[145] *Brucea sumatrana,* Roxb., had been introduced into the Calcutta Gardens similarly and described by Roxburgh, in the manuscript of his *Flora indica.* It is a common Malayan plant recorded for the Bencoolen coast in other places than this. One interest which attaches to it, is that Wallich collected it in Singapore island, where it had ceased to grow towards the end of the last century, probably in consequence of clearing (vide Ridley in the *Agricultural Bulletin of the Straits and Federated Malay States.* i, 1902, p. 343).

I have met with a great misfortune, in losing the services of my watch; it got a fall which has I believe dislocated the balance wheel. I am the more annoyed as it cannot be repaired here, and I have a value for it. I will send it up to you, and will you have the kindness to send it to the best watch-maker in Calcutta to be repaired. I know not whether I shall be able to send you anything by this occasion, but will if I can, and if not per next.

My best regards to Mrs. Wallich, and Believe me.

My dear Wallich,
Thine ever,
William Jack.

No. 11.

Bencoolen,
Sept. 1st, 1819.
[Received Oct. 23rd].

My dear Wallich,

The vessel has not sailed so soon as was expected, which gives me the opportunity of giving you a supplement to my last, and adding a small sample of Sumatran novelties. I have not yet got into the thick of them, to use a vulgar phrase, not however from idleness, for I have been bringing up a good deal of arrears; among these there are some things worth giving you. The specimen No. 5 I have now ascertained to be as I supposed Roxb.'s *Grewia paniculata,*[146] which however is superseded by *Microcos tomentosa* of Sir J. E. Smith, Rees' *Cyclop. in loco,* which agrees most exactly. It is singular to find it so well described from a specimen, which he says was imperfect and without even an indication of its native country. I perceive that Sir J. E. has availed himself of specimens brought home by Mr. C. Smith,[147] who will have anticipated me in many things. I have further been investigating the *Kamooning,*[148] concerning which there has been sad confusion which I think I can now clear up, being acquainted now with the *three of Rumph.*

---

[146] Jack's No. 5 would probably be a Penang plant. *Grewia paniculata,* Roxb., occurs there.

[147] Christopher Smith, was sent to Tahiti in H. M. S. Providence in 1791, then as botanist to the Honourable East India Company to the Moluccas (see note No. 1), and about 1805 was made Superintendent of the Botanic Gardens there; but he died in Penang either in the next year, or immediately afterwards. His drawings and specimens may be found in the British Museum of Natural History, South Kensington.

[148] Jack wrote in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* i. (1820) p. 31, an account of the Kamuning. Rumpf as Jack says had figured three plants, first what he calls Camunium or Camuneng, which is the *Chalcas paniculata* of Loureiro, and the *Murraya paniculata* of Jack, and *Murraya exotica* (2) the camunium sinense, which is *Aglaia odorata* of Loureiro, and (3) the camunium japonense which is again *Murraya exotica.* Jack here explains to Wallich that the first is the true Kamuning; and in his note he calls it *Murraya paniculata;* the second is *Aglaia odorata,* and the third is to be distinguished from the first as *Murraya exotica.* Unfortunately for Jack's conclusions we have come back to Lamarck's position that the Camunium of Rumpf and his Camunium japonense are both *Murraya exotica.*

The two figured in plate 18 vol. 5, are plain enough and well known, fig. 1, the *Camunium Chinense,* Roxb. quite distinct from the others, fig. 2, the *Murraya exotica.* All the confusion has been with reference to the true Kamooning, t. 17, which has most unaccountably by Lamarck and others been supposed the same with *Murraya,* in the face of Rumphius's figure and of Loureiro's description, who distinguishes the two very well. I am not pleased with any of the names they have borne. *Murraya exotica* is an absurd appellation, and *Chalcas paniculata* is a false name as it happens not to be panicled, which is abundantly evident from the fig. of Rumphius. They belong to the same genus, and are distinguished by the one being a tree, furnishing the wood most highly valued by the Malays for making the handles of Kreeses, having ovate acuminate leaves, and the flowers 1-3 from the axils of the superior leaves. The other the *exotica* having blunt thick leaves and panicled flowers (ni fallor) and not exceeding a shrub. I suspect Loureiro's other distinction of *Baccæ* 2 and 1-spermæ will not be found sufficiently constant.

What is known about the two species of Sagus put down in the garden, viz. *inermis* and *spinosa?*[149] Had Roxb. any description of them, and what is the *S. Rumphii* in the appendix? Sir J. E. Smith does not attempt to clear up the matter. Do you know what Rottböll says of them? he is quoted in the *Act. Dan.* I think I have two of Rumph's species, the one armed the other unarmed. I have the fruit only of the latter but both are planted here. The specimen 213 is I find, the *Aegiceras fragrans* Konig. *Am. Bot.,* and figured in Rheede vol. 6.[150] How could it possibly have ever been placed under *Rhizophora?* I see Roxburgh calls *Volkameria inermis* Linn. *Clerodendron littoreum;* is that sanctioned by any other authority? it is a much better name than *inerme,* and I feel much inclined to adopt it; I think two species have been confounded under it, specimens of which have been sent you, one, 204, *fol. ovatis, pedunc.* axillar. *trichotomis.* The other *fol. lanceolatis, ped. axill. trifloris.*[151]

Mr. Nicolson, a gentleman who has purchased a nutmeg plantation here, goes up by this opportunity. I have therefore requested him to take charge of the few specimens I have ready, and also send by him my watch, about which I spoke in my last; will you do the needful concerning it? Mr. Nicolson will return here soon again, and will probably take charge of anything you may wish to send. He brings down his family to settle on his estate, which he purchased for a mere song. I thought at first he would be rather an acquisition to the place, but he has shown a bad litigious spirit, which has made me less satisfied with him. He has a pushing insinuating manner; should you see him and he tell you any long stories about Bencoolen and the favor he stands in, you will know the degree of credit to attach to them. I mention this that you may know the sort of man, in the event of his seeking your acquaintance, which is not improbable.

---

[149] It is thought that Roxburgh had only got races or conditions of the common Sago palm which he distinguished under these two names. *S. Rumphii* which is named next is according to some the Sago palm of Eastern Malaya: but others do not distinguish it from the Western or common Sago palm.

[150] *Aegiceras fragrans* is *A. majus,* Gaertn., a common coast plant of Malaya. The number indicates that it was obtained by Jack in Penang, where it is common.

[151] Some regard these as varieties of *Clerodendron inerme,* Benth. whereunder is then included *C. neriifolium,* Wall.: others separate them. Rumpf had *C. neriifolium* as *Jasminum littoreum,* whence Roxburgh's *Clerodendron littoreum.*

I have purchased *Rheed.*[152] *and Rees Cyclop.*[153] *cum aliis.* The latter comes down to *Fol. Fum.* Part 71; have you got any later?

What steps have you taken for procuring the last volumes as they appear, that I may adopt the same.

I am going tomorrow for a week to Rat Island[154] so must close this letter, which I wish you may be able to read. My best compts. to Mrs. Wallich. And believe me yours very truly.

William Jack.

P.S. I wish it were possible to procure in Calcutta such paper for specimens, as that which forms the cover of those now sent nothing ever injures it.

If you can, procure some pairs of hyper-robust shoes, size within a trifle of 10½ inches.

No. 12. Bencoolen, Sept. 28th, 1819.

My dear Wallich,

A vessel has just called with dispatches, and is off again for Calcutta immediately. I shall only be able to send you a few lines. The intelligence she has brought is most unexpected and important. An extraordinary mortality[155] at Penang has swept away the Governor,[156] Mr. Phillips[157] and another:[158] the Government thus becoming vacant by the disappearance of both the heads of it, it will of course rest with the Bengal Govt. to make the necessary provisional arrangements. We shall of course be anxious to hear what these are; and the most probable is that it will be united with this under Sir Stamford. The plan has already been recommended by Lord Hastings to the Court of Directors, for adoption on the retirement of Col. Bannerman, so that I think that there can be little doubt of his embracing this unlooked for opportunity of carrying it into effect;[159] I shall rejoice at it on Sir Stamford's account, though I confess after so much moving about as we have had lately, I would rather remain quietly here for some time, especially as I have so much in hand. Sir S. himself would like to remain here too for some time: however we must take things as they come.

---

[152] Rheede tot Draakenstein, *Hortus malabaricus,* 12 vols. 1686-1703.

[153] Rees' *Cyclopædia, or universal Dictionary of Arts, Sciences and Literature,* in 39 vols., 1802-1820.

[154] Rat island is opposite Bencoolen.

[155] Cholera broke out widely throughout the East in this year, and very severely in Penang, (vide *Memoir of Sir Thomas Stamford Raffles* p. 431 in a letter dated Feb. 27, 1820), 1131 deaths occuring (vide Crawford's *Journal of an embassy to Siam* (London, 1828, p. 20).

I am extremely busy at present. I was in hopes ere this to have had some printed sheets of descriptions to send you, but Mr. Ward[160] is so slow and dilatory, that I fear he will be of little use to us. A first paper (not mine) which was given him on trial, has not been got out of his hands yet. My botanical time is a little diminished at present, by Sir S. having put me on a committee[161] to inquire into the state of society among the natives under this establishment; a tremendous subject, and unfortunately the greater part of the burden of it falls on me.

---

[156] Colonel Bannerman.

[157] The Honourable W. E. Phillips for a long time a servant of the East India Company in Penang, acted as Governor thrice before Colonel Bannerman came out, and became confirmed as Governor in 1819. He lived in great state having a park full of deer round his residence, and was most hospitable. He did not die of cholera in this year: so, either Jack's information was wrong, or we must look for another Phillips. The first alternative is more than probable.

Succeeding to the Governorship, W. E. Phillips by his prompt and firm action in the end of 1819, snuffed out a renewed attempt on the part of Saif-ul-alam to disturb the peace, at the time when Raffles was in Calcutta, on his very mission for the subordination of the Penang Governorship: and which it seems, he undertook thinking this apparently capable officer dead.

[158] Whoever was dead, it further was not Captain Coombs for he remained in Penang after this date, and died much later in Scotland.

[159] After the receipt of this news Raffles proceeded to Calcutta to urge personally the amalgamation of the Straits Settlements into one government as already half-promised (vide *Memoir of Sir Stamford Raffles*, p. 396). He arrived there on or about November 12th, 1819, taking Jack with him, and Jack taking his collections. In Calcutta, Raffles became ill; and the stay was prolonged, giving Jack facilities for working over his plants with Wallich. Because of this interruption of the correspondence by personal contact, it has been thought best to divide the Bencoolen letters at this break into two series.

[160] The Rev. N. M. Ward, one of Raffles' missionaries, doubtless the one mentioned by him in his letter to the Duchess of Somerset already quoted p. 147. He subsequently penetrated into the interior of Sumatra. Was it not he who in 1815 was with Carey and Marshman at Serampore? (Vide *Private Journal of the Marquess of Hastings*, (London 1858, ii. p. 93). Jack did not think much of him.

The marine plant[162] No. 271 which I sent you in my last dispatch, I again found on the Coral Reefs at Rat Island, and having got better specimens. discover that is the *Stratiotes acoroides,* figured in one of the last vols. of Rumphius. Have you any idea what the plant is that is figured in Rumph. vol. 3, t. 26, and very well described at page 47, by the name of *Lignum Emanum?* I do not find it quoted anywhere, and am extremely puzzled what to make of it; can it have any relationship to Taxus? I found the plant at Singapore, and am not sure whether you have had specimens of it: in case you should not I enclose one in this.[163] If it has separate male flowers, I have never met with them, and Rumph. seems to have been equally ignorant of them.

I have again met with the Sago, in still more perfect condition, and hope soon to be able to give you a full account of it. I find that it is absolutely hermaphrodite; it sems to be Rumphius's *Sagus lævis.* There is also here a spinous species, whose fruit I have not yet procured.[164]

The *Morinda* with umbellate flowers (spec. 77)[165] which you in one of your letters observe to be new, seems to agree very exactly with the Pada-vara, Rheed. H. Mal. 7 p. 51, t. 27, and as it does not appear that the said figure has ever been quoted, I think there can be little question of its novelty. If it is to remain a *Morinda,* it may be called *M. tetrandra* "pedunculis umbellatis terminalibus, corollis 4-fidis, intus hirsutis, foliis lanceolatis."

---

[161] Raffles thus writes to William Wilberforce under the date of September 1819. "In our chaplain, the Rev. Charles Winter, I found every disposition to extend the sphere of usefulness, and by associating him in a Committee of gentlemen........ I found the means of effective superintendence. The enclosed printed copy of the proceedings of this committee will place you in full possession of the principles in which we have proceeded, and of the particulars of what has been done towards the establishment of schools at Bencoolen. In the last report of the Committee with which this paper concludes, you will perceive some interesting observation on the condition of society, the character and usages of the people, and the facilities generally extending the plan of educating the whole of the native population" (*Memoir of Sir Thomas Stamford Raffles,* p. 47). And again (on p. 49), "I am in a particular manner indebted to a member of my family, Mr. Jack, for the ardour and ability which he has infused into the researches of the Committee."

[162] *Enhalus Koenigii,* Rich. Miquel in his "*Sumatra, zijne Plantenwereld,*" Amsterdam, 1862, only records this for Tapanuli; but it must be common all down the coast.

[163] *Podocarpus Rumphii,* Blume, differing in small points from *P. neriifolia,* Don, which Jack had found in Singapore. See note No. 172.

[164] Probably not a distinct species.

[165] A Penang specimen. It was *Morinda tetrandra,* described by Jack in the Malayan Miscellanies, i. (1820 p. 13), now united to *M. umbellata,* Linn.: and Wallich distributed specimens collected by Jack.

At Singapore I got a still more extraordinary species of the same genus, to all the peculiarities of the former adding the singularity of polyspermous berries!! It may be called *M. polysperma*[166] and characterised as follows, "tetrandra, pedunculis axillaribus et terminalibus, corollis 4-fidis intus hirsutis, foliis ovatis acuminatis, baccis bilocularibus polyspermis!". Both these species are very like each other in appearance and general habit; their flowers agree, but the fruit is quite inexplicable. They must I think come into one genus, the alliance is so close, but whether they can unite with *Morinda* is another question, what think you?. My spec. of this last have almost gone to wreck, and I only got one or two; I must however send you a leaf and fruit, that your eyes may be convinced.

I look very impatiently for the letters of yours still due, which have not made their appearance. I am at this moment plagued with a sharp attack of rheumatism, consequent on a slight touch of fever I got by a trip in the sun. It comes very mal a propos, for I really have not time to attend to it, although it actually lames me, and utterly banishes Mr. Somnus. What I would give for full and perfect health just now!

Give my best regards to Mrs. Wallich and believe me,

My dear Wallich,
Ever thine,
William Jack.

Series 4—Bencoolen Letters

After the Visit to Calcutta in 1819.

On board the Indiana off
Tappanooly
Feb. 27th, 1820.

My dear Wallich,

There is a small vessel in company with us which goes soon to Madras, I shall therefore commence an account of our proceedings to go by her; we had a delightful breeze and a most excellent passage down the bay till we approached the coast of Sumatra. There and particularly about Hog Island, we were delayed by calms. We reached Tappanooly on the 23rd and left it again yesterday.[167] If I had anticipated so long a passage, during which I have had very little to do, I would have carried down with me a part of the specimens to work at on the way. One mischanter befel me, the box which contained my description book happened to be in a cabin below, which was set afloat one night by a sea through an open port, and it got most thoroughly and completely soaked; I have been obliged to make a copy of the greater part of it, but one good effect has resulted, that in doing so I have perfected the descriptions and put them in shape to be immediately printed, and shall commence thereon as soon as I arrive at Bencoolen.[168] I hope when I arrive there I shall receive letters from you by the Coromandel, which will probably arrive almost as soon as we ourselves; and also by Watson. I hope in dispatching the specimens, you have taken care to preserve for yourself a complete set. We may wish to refer to some of them. I wish we had not done away with the arrangement, of those of which there were duplicates from those which are the only specimens, which is the case with a great many, and certainly with all of which you had not previously received specimens. There were several of these that I should have liked to have ascertained and made descriptions of along with you. You will however distinguish in going over them, as well as I could, such as are of interest, and when necessary we can refer to them afterwards. I shall be anxious to hear what discoveries you make among them. There are several particular points and queries I want from you; the best way will be to put them down in order, that you may have them before you at once, and comply with them when convenient and at leisure. In the first place I wish to have copies of the descriptions you made of several plants, some before, and some as we went along. These are principally your descriptions of:—

---

[166] *Lucinæa Morinda,* DC. which Jack described as *Morinda polysperma* in the Malayan Miscellanies, i. part 5, (1820) p. 14.

1 Fagræa obovata. Sylhet etiam Singapore.[169]

2 Strophanthus.....................Penang.[170]

---

[167] Raffles wrote to the Duchess of Somerset under date "off Sumatra, Feb. 12th, 1820" saying that he had just left Tappanooly. On the 27th, he was off Natal, and in a letter to Marsden states that Jack was with him. Thus we get two dates for visits to Tappanooly, one just previous to Feb. 12th, and Jack's i.e. 23rd to 26th. As there are many slight printing errors in the *Memoir of the life of Raffles* suspicion falls less on Jack's than on Raffles' dates.

[168] This is a reference to the first series of descriptions of Malayan Plants, *Malayan Miscellanies,* vol. i., 1820. Naturally the greater number of the plants described came from Penang.

[169] Wallich described this plant in his and Carey's revision of Roxburgh's *Flora Indica,* ii. p. 33. It seems that it was familiar to him from Sylhet before Jack found it in Singapore. Specimens were distributed by Wallich under his No. 1595 which Jack had communicated to him.

[170] *Strophanthus Jackianus,* Wallich in his Catalogue No. 1643, being specimens which Jack had sent to him. But the plant is now transferred from Strophanthus and becomes *Wrightia dubia,* Spreng. It grows near the coast of Penang.

3 Celtis attenuata. Frequent at Tappanooly.[171]

4 Taxus—Myrica neriifolia? Wall. Rumph.: 3. t. 26. Nepaul and Singapore.[172]

5 Uncaria lanosa.[173]

6 Posoqueria anisophylla, described during examination.[174]

7 of the two Patisnæ.[175]

8 of Ardisiæ paniculatæ affinis,[176]

9 of your Myrica Kayphul.[177]

10 My description of Limonia? leptostachya.[178] accompanying the specimens: I have no other.

Roxb.'s short character of Urtica naucliflora, numero staminum.[179]

What species was that which grew from seed from Penang C........folium? also its spec. char.:—

---

[171] It is impossible to ascertain what this may have been, except by search for a species common at Tappanooly.

[172] *Podocarpus neriifolia,* Don.

[173] *Uncaria lanosa,* Wallich in his and Carey's revision of Roxburgh's *Flora Indica,* ii. p. 131, is described from these specimens of Jack's.

[174] *Posoqueria anisophylla* must be a synonym for *Randia anisophylla,* Jack, described in Wallich and Carey's revision of Roxburgh's *Flora Indica,* ii. p. 561. It is a common Penang tree, and Jack's specimens were distributed by Wallich when breaking up the East India Company's herbarium, as No. 8399.

[175] The genus *Patisna* was never published. The only genus which it can have been is *Urophyllum.* Wallich had Jack's descriptions for publication at his discretion, and appears to have substituted this name of his own for Jack's. That is why, in publishing *Urophyllum,* Wallich wrote his own name after the genus, but Jack's after the two species. Griffith (*Calcutta Journal of Natural History* iv, 1844, p. 17) pointing this out thought that Wallich had inadvertently written his own for Jack's name. The two species are *U. villosum* and *U. glabrum.*

[176] *Ardisia divergens* was described in Carey's and Wallich's revision of Roxburgh's *Flora Indica* ii. p. 275, and is placed by Wallich next after *A. paniculata,* Roxb. in his Catalogue No. 2269. Jack's association with the species being recorded by the citation of ''*punctata*'' as a synonym. The species seems to have been unknown to Roxburgh, as it does not appear in the 1832 edition of the Flora which was printed from the original manuscript.

[177] *Myrica aesculenta,* Buch.-Ham., a common plant on the coasts of Malaya, and very widely distributed in Asia.

[178] *Limonia leptostachya,* Jack, MS., is *Galearia Jackiana,* R. Br., and remote from *Limonia.* It is to be noted that in this letter Jack questions the genus: and as the only specimen which he had gathered was not in his hands, but had been left with Wallich, probably it is not exactly accurate to assert that Jack called it a *Limonia,* as it seems to have been Wallich who dropped the query.

[179] Roxburgh's *Urtica naucliflora* is *Conocephalus suaveolens.* This enquiry shows that Jack's clerk in Calcutta, was yet far from getting to the end of the work of copying the *Flora Indica.*

If Roxburgh has a figure of Uvaria pilosa, R. what the color of its flowers. I think I have it described with 'red.' It is also among the specs.[180]

Query are the berries of Uvaria grandiflora[181] angled, as in the fig. in your Tentamen, or round as described by Roxb.

Pray send me a pencil outline of Ternstrœmia trilocularis R.[182] if there is a fig. Can No. 235 of your specimens be a Ternstrœmia?

What is Brown's remark on Memecylon in Tuckey's Congo. Also what his char: of Amyrideæ in Do.?

I found at Tappanooly the flowers of what from the fruit alone we called Cnestis longifolia (Singapore);[183] but what say you, it is only pentandrous; there are two little villous processes between each of the stamina. I found also two more species of Connarus,[184] the examined 5—all new. One from Penang C. ferrugineus, of which I have the description, three from Singapore[185] of which I have none, and I fear no duplicate specimens. If you have made any memoranda of them let me have them, for these Connaroideæ must be attended to. I have been looking over Roemer.[186] That and De Candolle[187] (try to get it for me) will be invaluable when completed. What does Roemer mean by saying that Mangifera Indica has fol. venenatissima. True? I happened also to have observed that he gives Helicia Cochinchinensis in one place, and then in the next under Rhopala Cochinchinensis quotes it; somewhat tautological?

When do you begin on Roxburgh's Flora Indica vol. II, and in the event of your proceeding to Nepaul what will be the arrangement? I hope it will not stop. I forgot to ask whether you have got a genus yet under your patronage, if not, how would you like that your critical acumen should be commemorated by taking those acuminate gentry the Patisnæ under your wing.[188] Wallichia? glabra is a Tappanoolian. I am not however decided that it shall be so. I shall perhaps have something more splendid to name, only I should like it to be Pentandrian that it may come out soon.

---

[180] *Uvaria pilosa,* one of the species described by Roxburgh as from "the Moluccas" is Jack's *Uvaria hirsuta,* from Penang.

[181] *Uvaria grandiflora* of Roxburgh is *Uvaria purpurea,* Blume; but *Uvaria grandiflora,* Wallich is *Uvaria Hamiltonii,* Hook. f. Wallich had made a mistake, and Jack was apparently upon the track of it.

[182] *Ternstrœmia trilocularis,* Roxburgh, is *Saurauja tristyla,* DC.

[183] *Cnestis longifolia* cannot be identified.

[184] *Connarus ferrugineus* was described by Jack from Penang in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* ii. (1828) p. 372.

[185] Wallich's catalogue shows that two of these were *Agelæa vestita* Hook. f., No. 8555, and *Connarus semidecandrus,* Jack, which Wallich called *C. gibbosus,* No. 8541.

[186] Roemer and Schultes, *Systema vegetabilium,* 1817-1830.

[187] A. P. de Candolle's *Regni vegetabilis systema naturale,* Paris 1818-1821, two volumes.

During the two days we stayed at Tappanooly, I scrambled over not a few hill and forest tracts, but the season is not the best. The night we came in, we had a narrow escape. We went ashore on Mansilar Island in the evening, the vessel continuing under sail, night came on, the ship outsailed us, we lost sight of her, and had to row about 20 miles in the dark without compass and no stars visible. Ten minutes after we did get on board, (which was at one o'clock at night) there came on a most furious squall which nearly drove us from our anchors, and would have sent us and the boat, had we been out in it, to the D-l in double quick time. However we were born under lucky stars. On Mansilar, we found what I take to be Schrebera Swietenioides Roxb.,[189] a delightfully fragrant tree. The Camphor trees were not in flower,[190] but we cut down one and got some Camphor out of it a piece of good fortune, as one in a hundred is only found to contain it. They are indeed the monarchs of the forest. The one cut down measured 90 ft. to the first branch, diameter in proportion, and perfectly straight. I have got young plants, and also of the Styrax Benzoin.[191] Dryobalanops is a confounded herbaceous name, and is nonsensiæ nimis affinis! What think you of a fourth species of Didymocarpus,[192] which I have a great mind to call D. *ornithopus,* for the capsules are arranged in such a way as to look very like crow's feet. I am almost at a loss how to describe the inflorescence; the scrawl on the margin will give an idea. The pedicels are irregularly fascicled on the summit of the peduncle, and all the flowers turn one way and are bent at an angle to the pedicel. Would "pedunc: axillaribus floribus cristato fasciculatis secundis" do? Are your Didymocarpi alternifolious or oppositifolious? I have species both ways. I have a great mind to bring this genus into my grand fascicle, with a drawing of D, frutescens[193] and characters of the others. Fagræa racemosa would also deserve a place.

---

[188] Jack proposed Wallichia as an alternative for his Patisna—but Wallich called it Urophyllum, see note No. 175. However Blume in his catalogue of the Buitenzorg gardens published Wallichia as Reinwardt's name for the genus. Now Reinwardt was in charge of these famous Gardens when Jack went to Java in the hope of recuperating his health: (See p. 239 froward) so that it is probable that Reinwardt got the name Wallichia from Jack then, used it there, and when Blume succeeded Reinwart without knowing the history of the name, it was ascribed to Reinwardt. Note the connection of the name Urophyllum, or tail-leaf, with Jack's expression " acuminate gentry."

[189] This plant is not recorded as Sumatran by Miquel in his account of the Flora of Sumatra.

[190] See note No. 123.

[191] *Styrax Benzoin*, Dryand., was considerably cultivated in Sumatra at this time, but rather in the interior: and the plant was scarcely familiar to botanists.

[192] *Didymocarpus corniculata,* Jack in *Malayan Miscellanies,* i. part 5, p. 4 (1820).

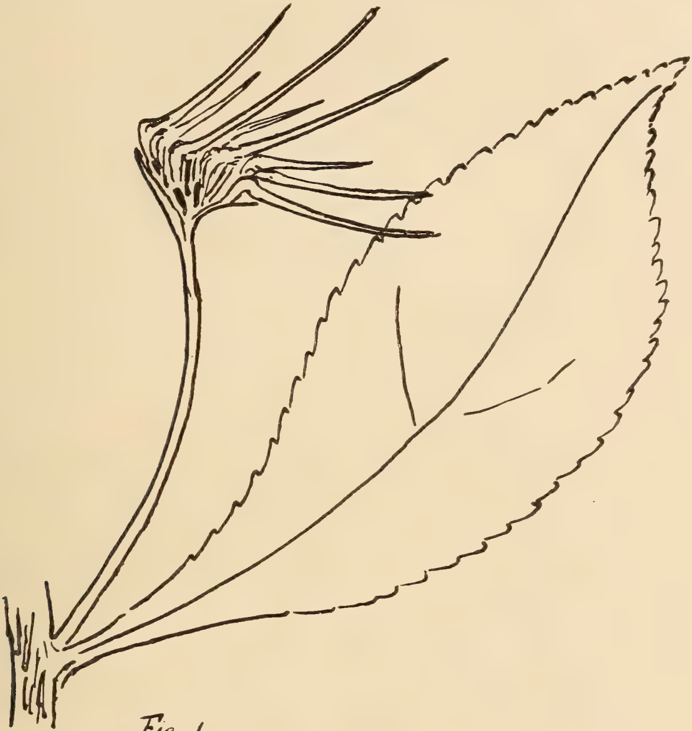


Fig. 1.

The people in the interior of Tappanooly are Battus, and we were curious to ascertain whether they were really cannibals as has been represented: our inquiries have placed the fact beyond a doubt, and the circumstances attending the practice are such as I am almost afraid to mention, as they are scarcely to be credited. It appears that by the Battu laws, the capital punishment ordained for certain crimes is to be eaten, and the execution of the sentence is the occasion of a grand feast. But the most horrible part of the story is, that the prisoner is actually eaten alive, and has the pleasure of seeing his own flesh devoured before his eyes. Cutting off his head is the conclusion of the ceremony. Will you give credit to this tale? however incredible, I fear it is a fact. However it is our intention sometime or other to pay them a visit, and have the evidence of our eyes to the matter. We are resolved to witness a human feast. Shall I send you a tit bit preserved in pyro-ligneous acid? The palms of the hands are epicurean morsels, or will you have a great toe? More of this however at another time.

---

[193] Described in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* i. part 5 (1820) p. 5.

I enclose to you two letters for Mr. Colebrooke and Mr. Lambert,[194] which pray forward. Read them and tell me if you approve; I wrote them in hopes of being able to send them per Carnatic, but was too late; I wrote Brown[195] by her. Pray how goes on the report, has it gone in? I wish we could have finished it together, but it will be just as good otherwise. I shall be anxious to hear what it produces. We must keep in view the bringing about a connection between us in the Dept.

I shall also enclose letters for Calder[196] and Lindsay;[197] you see I do not spare you in any way. There are enough of requests and commissions in this for one letter at least.

Sir Stamford has completely recovered on the way down, and is now as well as ever. By the bye, he wishes to ask you some day that you happen to be in Calcutta, to take a look at the specimen of the Bintooron,[198] an animal sent up from Malacca by Major Farquhar to the Asiatic Society and in the Museum, and ascertain the number of its teeth; . . . . is a desideratum; also if you can, whether it is what Cuvier calls a plantigrade, i.e., whether the whole length of the foot is applied to the ground.

---

[194] Aylmer Bourke Lambert (1761-1842), a great collector of plants. He inherited a considerable patrimony which he used freely for the furtherance of science, chiefly by getting together large collections which were at the service of savants. David Don was his curator, the author of the *Prodromus floræ nepalensis,* which was based on material obtained by Lambert from Wallich. Raffles and Jack sent to him Sumatran plants. And at his sale in 1842 lot No. 111 was catalogued as probably from Jack and lot 255 as from Raffles, and others. According to information most kindly supplied by Sir David Prain, Director of the Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, the first was bought by the dealer William Pamplin for £1, the second by someone named Rich for £3: their subsequent fate is not known to the writer. Lambert was one of the original members of the Linnean Society and for nearly fifty years a Vice-President.

[195] Robert Brown, see note No. 73 p. 168.

[196] See note No. 38 p. 161.

[197] See note No. 81 p. 172.

[198] Artictis Binturong—the Cat-bear which occurs from Assam to Java; and the habits of which are still but incompletely known. The word missed out is illegible.

Sir Stamford desires to be remembered.

My very best regards to Mrs. Wallich, and believe me ever,
My dear Wallich,
Yours very sincerely,
William Jack.

No. 2 Bencoolen,
March 15th, 1820.

My dear Wallich,

An event has just taken place which you may have in some measure anticipated. Our Frenchmen[199] .... you know .... were taken up and brought forward by Sir S. Raffles in Calcutta, at a time when their means were exhausted, and they despaired of being able to effect anything; and you know with what kindness they have been treated, the important aid that has been afforded them, the opportunities that have been opened to them, in short the manner in which they have been patronised by that princely man, as never men were patronised before. They have been allowed 1000 rupees a month ever since they have been with him, to defray all their expenses of establishments &c. &c.—besides being provided with passage, table, and here with a house free of all expense. In return for all this, the only stipulation made was, that their collections should be on account of the Company, and that the account of the discoveries they might make, should not appear in France until they had been noticed in England. It was Sir S's intention, and indeed still is, to have ultimately presented to them a complete set of duplicates in further acknowledgement of their services. To those conditions they gave their full agreement in writing, and in words professed the utmost gratitude for the liberal terms allowed them, and their extreme desire to give everything into the absolute disposal of Sir S. At the same time they were given to understand, that the arrangement was made subject to the approbation of the Supreme Govt., and that the period of their employment would be regulated by that authority. The reply of the supreme Govt. was received in Calcutta, disapproving of the arrangement, sanctioning the expense already incurred, but directing it to cease for the future. On our arrival here we found that they had been very industrious, and had got a considerable number of animals of one kind and another. As therefore they had exerted themselves, Sir Stamford, with all the reason which you know he had to be discontented with them before, felt unwilling to disappoint them in any way, and resolved to make an exertion in their favor rather than at once put a stop to their labours. He accordingly offered them an allowance of 600 rupees a month out of his own pocket, on the chance of its eventually being approved by the Company;

---

[199] Diard and Duvaucel.

explaining to them at the same time, that as a sufficient number of the principal specimens had already been obtained, the expense might easily be kept within the limits by avoiding an unnecessary number of duplicates. Now what do you think was the reply to this noble proposal?—no words but those of the letter itself can convey to you the full idea, or measure of the ingratitude .... of it; I shall ask Sir S. to let you have a copy of the correspondence, ... The fact is they think they have nearly exhausted Sumatra: and now meditate their retreat with as much as they can carry off, ... They say they were solicited to come here, and in compliance therewith abandoned the researches they had so successfully commenced in Bengal, with many similar lies.

As they seemed determined not to recede in their pretensions, it became necessary to appoint a committee to take charge of the whole of the collections, which has accordingly been done. They express themselves very indignant, and talk of going to Bengal to protest; .... Let Gen. Hardwicke (to whom I beg my compliments on his late accession of honors) know the story, and see the correspondence. If possible prevent Lord Hastings from being humbugged by them, humbug, (I like the word and so do you) not being one of the things that his Lordship is quite proof against. There is a vessel here at present that will take a great part of the collections at once to England, which will be so much secured. Our return perhaps was fortunate, as it appears that they had actually been preparing to steal a march and to be off with the whole. So much was this expected that the acting Resident had actually his eye upon them, to place a guard over the house and property, if they should make the attempt.

Enough however of such a subject: I have commenced with it as being the uppermost at the moment, before even acquainting you with our safe arrival here. I wrote you by a vessel that parted with us at Padang, and was proceeding from thence to Madras.

In that I gave you some account of Tappanooly, and the discoveries in that quarter. We arrived here[200] on the 3rd of March, but the weather was so bad, and the surf so great in consequence, that we were unable to land till next day. Rather tantalising this, particularly to Sir S. However we are now once more quietly settled and beginning to resume our old routine. This business of the Frenchmen will give me some additional occupation and disturbances, as all their collections come in here, and there will be the plague of stowing and arranging them, cum stinkibus, et filthibus, et ceteris et ceteris.

---

[200] Bencoolen.

I found here some of your former dispatches which had not appeared on my leaving this, particularly the valuable one by Mr. Stuart. Only one of the series appears to be totally missing, that of March 1819, per Brig Tagus, of which not a trace, and what is provoking, it probably contained a portion of Roxburgh's mss, as I find the part from "*Polygonum lanatum*" to "*Cassia inermis*" wanting.[201] Pray make some inquiry respecting its probable fate, and if lost—the writer may as well supply it. I wanted to have referred to it lately in examining a species of *Laurus,* called by the Malays Kayu Gadis, or the virgin tree,[202] which name I find subjoined in the catalogue to Roxb.'s *L. porrecta.* Why the devil did you give it that specific name; I can hardly think of letting it stand, when a much more elegant one might be given in allusion to the native appellation. Let it henceforth be called Laurus virgo, or Laurus Parthenoxylon, alias the Virgin Laurel. Which do you approve? It yields an oil much valued by the natives, and having a balsamic smell somewhat resembling Capivi.

Watson arrived not long after us, but, prop. dolor! brought nothing from you. I hear however that another vessel is to follow, by which I may have your dispatches.

Now I have a grand affair to inform you of, nothing less than specimens of the gigantic flower of Sumatra. Rafflesia Titan?[203] Quid dicis? Marsden[204] in a letter to Sir Stamford, proposes Rafflesia elephantina, Query, which?. I must send you a pencil outline of its fructification, in which respect it appears to be as singular and unique as in size. It is no Asclepiad, as was at first guessed, nor does it appear to belong to any known Natural family. It is Polyandrous or rather Gynandrous. The anthers are large spherical bodies, sessile and lodged in hollows under and covered by the lower and projecting edge of the stigma. They are of a

---

201. See notes No. 37 and 119.

202. *Cinnamomum Parthenoxylon,* Meissn. The wood at all stages has a strong smell as of Citronella oil, not of Camphor, though Kurz called it Martaban Camphor-wood. The seed yields an oil used for rheumatism. Marsden, History of Sumatra, at p. 162 of the third edition, mentions it as having wood smelling of Sassafras. The tree is found in the Malay islands and Peninsula and as far north as the Yang-tze-Kiang valley in China.

203. *Rafflesia Arnoldi.* Flowers of this strange parasite were obtained in 1818, and a figure from one of them may be seen in the Memoir of Sir T. S. Raffles, opposite p. 316. In a letter later (vide p. 208) Jack says that it had proved to be not uncommon. He described it in detail for publication in the Malayan Miscellanies, under the name of *Rafflesia Titan,* but held up his description pending news from Europe. Sir William Hooker in 1835 published that description.

204. William Marsden (1754-1836), for eight years (1771-1779) resident in Bencoolen; after which in 1783 he published his History of Sumatra, wherein the care and fidelity exhibited made his reputation. The History went through editions in 1784 (second), and 1811 (third), each of which received the author's careful attention.

Marsden and Raffles had been in correspondence from 1805.

spongy porous texture internally, and having on the summit, an umbilicate spot of a lighter color, in the centre of which is a pore or foramen. The specimen I examined was a yet unopened bud, of the size of a good cabbage. I have information of others, and as soon as I hear of their being blown, mean to take a journey to see them in their native spot.

March 22nd.—The business with the Frenchmen is drawing to a close. The correspondence has become so long, and Sir S. is anxious to send a copy home by the ship which sails tomorrow, that I fear that I shall not be able to enclose it in this, but it shall follow.[205] The committee have done their duty in taking charge of all the specimens, in the course of which the Frenchmen showed further their mean jealous spirit in refusing to give specific names to the subjects, and taking off all the distinguishing tickets that they had previously appended to them. The specimens being received, the committee were directed to inform them, that by the terms of their agreement, they were bound to deliver up the observations, and that if they assented to this, and gave their word of honor that the whole of the collections were made over without reservation, they were authorised to make them an offer which was, that if they would agree not to publish in France till the expiration of a year, their descriptions should all be returned to them, and a complete set of duplicates still given to France.

Duvaucel I understand is going to Batavia, thence to Bengal; and Diard talks of going to Padang to prosecute further researches. The sooner they go the better and a good riddance. Let me know what they say or do in Calcutta.

I send by this ship, the "Mary,"[206] Indian ink drawings of the two *Nepenthes,* the gigantic flower,[207] the Camphor, and of that beautiful pentandrian with finely veined and serrated leaves and white fruit. I have named it Euthemis,[208] ab "euthēmōn"—concinus, quid *dicis?* The two species are *E. leucocarpa* and *E. minor.* I have also sent descriptions of these and of the true Sago. They go to Mr. Marsden with instructions to take such notice of them as may prevent anticipation, at the same time that he is apprised of the intention of publishing them afterwards in a fascicle. It would not I think be easy to select other five as interesting. I must soon send you a copy of my account of these. I shall ere long have lots of descriptions for you.

---

[205] Jack succeeded in sending to Wallich by the same boat copies of that part of the correspondence which is in English, but not that in French; Raffles, however sent the whole to London. It is useless to reproduce here the part, not only because it is imperfect, but because the whole, reprinted from Raffles' despatch, may be read in the *Memoir* of his Life, 1st Edition pp. 702-723.

[206] The same boat was to take to Marsden the whole of Raffles' geological collections, as stated in a letter contained in the *Memoir* of Sir T. S. Raffles, 2nd edition, ii. p. 103.

[207] *Rafflesia Arnoldi,* R. Br.

[208] Euthemis was defined by Jack in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* i. (1820) part 5, p. 15, with two species. See not No. 114 on p. 179.

The singular *Combretacea*[209] with crimson flowers and thick fleshy leaves, I found here on the banks of the Sillibar River mounted to the size of a good tree. The native name is Api Api, (fire) I propose therefore in allusion to that to call it *Pyrrhanthus flammea?*

I have now intelligence of the great flower within thirty miles, not yet blown, but will be within a month, and then!!! If once these ships and Frenchmen were off, I shall set to tooth and nail, and you shall see. I found among the convicts a fellow who was employed (he says) in your seed house Engl. Here is a tremendous letter, and yet if I could settle myself to work, I have fifty hundred more things to say. A harum scarum chap of artillery, Lieut. Hele, is going up to Calcutta to get married and returns here with his wife. He asked to take any commissions for me, and I told him to let you know when he was coming down, and take charge of anything you might have.

I trouble you with a letter for our friend Mr. Gillman, as I know not whether to address it to Calcutta or Monghyr.

I am anxious to hear your plans in relation to Nepaul &c. &c. Have you any accounts of George[210] since the "Nepal" sailed. My very best regards to Mrs. Wallich, and believe me ever.

My dear Wallich,
Yours very sincerely,
William Jack.

P.S. Sir S. and Lady Raffles always desire to be remembered to you both. The sweet briar arrived in excellent condition, and was most acceptable, as also the other things in the two boxes.
W. J.

No. 3 Bencoolen 29th March, 1820.

My dear Wallich,

I avail myself of a vessel proceeding to Batavia, to send you the conclusion of the correspondence, of which part was forwarded by the Coromandel. When I wrote you last the Committee had just closed their proceedings, and the Frenchmen had given their word of honor that they had given up everything. On that Sir S. wrote to them, that as they had concluded everything with the committee, the question of right being no longer in dispute, he was enabled to offer them the same consideration that he always intended; and to do this in the most gratifying manner, desired them to send in a list of such duplicates as they esteemed most valuable, which he would be happy to present to them. They sent in a list accordingly which was complied with .... The day the Committee concluded the business of receiving charge of the collections, Diard and Duvaucel reported that a robbery had taken place the night before, by which they had lost all their papers. A robbery of nothing but papers looked a little suspicious, but no comment was made. Yesterday however a man came in and reported that a box had been seen among the grass near the house where the Frenchmen had been living, but that he was afraid to touch it for fear of being accused of having stolen it. It was then sent for and brought in to Sir S. while in Court, where he happened to be sitting that day. It was a box securely nailed up, and well tarred outside and at the joints. On opening it there appeared first a quantity of tow, and then a quantity of papers rolled up and laid in as if hastily packed: these proved to be the Frenchmen's papers, who were informed of the circumstance, and were somewhat surprised at the coming to light of the precious deposit. The box was handed over to the Committee, to receive from the Frenchmen such part of the contents as related to Natural History. They gave a few scraps, and sketches, and gave their word of honor that all the rest were private papers. Unfortunately for the value of their word, some of the rolls of paper had been looked at, and known to be descriptions and sketches, but these were not delivered up, so that they have given their word of honor to what the whole court know to be untrue. So much for that part of it. As to the finding of the box, from the place where it lay, untouched and unopened, the way in which the papers were stowed, not laid in order as if it had been their usual depositary, but rolled up hastily as they came to hand; the way in which the box itself was secured with nails and hammer, and further the box having been recognised to have been made only the very day before it was said to be missing, there seems little doubt that it was lost where it could readily be found, and that its discovery was a disappointment to those who had been bewailing its loss. But I am sick of the subject: thank Heaven, Sir S. is done with them. Diard I understand is going to Batavia; and Duvaucel talks of going to Padang, to make, he says, in three months, a better collection than that of Sir S. in a year. Diard says he goes from Batavia to Calcutta. I think there is little to apprehend from anything two such (what shall I call them) can do. I have already told you to be prepared to meet any mis-statements they may spread, for which purpose I have wasted so many words on them.

---

[209] *Lumnitzera coccinea,* W. & A.

[210] George, Wallich's son. See notes 72 and 221.

They having given over the collection without names or observations, or at least with very few, it becomes necessary to supply the deficiency and prepare an account of it for England. This task of course falls on me, and is no trifling one. As the object is to have it out soon, I am obliged to devote myself to it, and must therefore let my own pursuits stand still for a little.

I have been at work for some days, and have got pretty well through the Mammalia. It is a devil of a job, but there is no helping it, it must be got through. I have not time for more at present, so I conclude, with best regards to you and Mrs. W.

And I am ever,
My dear Wallich,
Yours very truly,
William Jack.

Bencoolen,
1st June, 1820.

My dear Wallich,

I have been much disappointed at not having a single opportunity of writing you for a long period, and now I have nothing better than the circuitous route of Batavia. I must therefore content myself with a few lines, and trust that ere long I shall have some direct opportunity. I am very anxious to hear from you and learn your plans for the ensuing season. The time of your purposed voyage[211] is fast approaching, and I am desirous of learning your arrangements regarding it. I do hope on your own account that you will put it in execution, it will relieve you from a great deal of tiresome worrying business; and a year passed in amusement and pleasure in an alpine region like Nepaul, will be as good as a voyage to Europe, and be an epoch from which to date the commencement of a new lease of life. If you could have made a voyage here in place of the Nepaul trip, it would have been to me still more delightful, but we are seldom fated to have all we wish in this world, and happy is he who looks at the brightest side of the present, whatever it be, and takes the honey of every flower he finds, without repining that it is not the wished for rose. I think there are few people who have more the means of being independent of circumstances than ourselves, and such as like us can turn from any prospect, however dark to that of nature which is always the same, fresh and bright. But stop, good Mr. pen, not so fast, as Fielding says, we have got on the top of a hill, how we are to get down again is the question. I believe he does it, by ringing the bell for breakfast, and though I have not that resource at hand just now, I must somehow contrive to descend to matters of fact.

And first for domestic news; I have a new character to introduce on the stage in the person of Lady Raffles' second son, who made his debut about a week ago with great applause. Captain Watson's lady also presented him with a girl a few days before. In short, increase of the population is the order of the day in more ways than one. Sir Stamford's indefatigable mind is now turned to the improvement of this place, and to drawing forth its resources whatever they may be. It would be too long to give you here a detail of all he has done, and all he is doing, suffice it to say the very aspect of the place is changed, and in spite of all its natural disadvantages, there are good hopes of its rising. Natives and Europeans all seem to awake to the new impulse they receive, and I really think the former more readily and fully than the latter. It is hardly possible to conceive the apathy and *vis inertiæ* of the Europeans who have been trained up and imbibed the spirit of the old school of this place.

---

[211] Journey to Nepal. Wallich resided at or near Khatmandu from 21st Dec., 1820 to November 8th or 9th, 1821.

The last twenty years of Bencoolen have been its age of Gothic darkness. It was far better before in the time of its old government, but has declined ever since it fell under Bengal. Nunc redit ad pristinam dignitatem, yea, it revives in more than pristine splendour.

I have just concluded the second and longest part of the Zoological Paper—The Birds.[212] The remainder will not be given so much in detail, and will I hope be soon finished; then for Botany anew. It has been almost suspended by these and other occupations. I have got numbers of the great flowers[213] and have at length satisfied myself upon every point, and have corrected many of the first ideas of it. I mean to send you a few specimens. How to send it living is more puzzling. I find it is parasitic on a species of Cissus with quinate and ternate leaves, which I cannot ascertain as yet[214] for want of Roxb.—these leaves are serrate and smooth. From the stems of this woody Cissus which run either on, or under the ground, spring these gigantic flowers. At first a round knob, enveloped in a number of calycine or bracteal leaves, which open as the flower enlarges, and mostly drop off as it gets ripe. The flowers are unisexual? ergo Dioicous. The male has the globular anthers disposed round the margin of the central column, as I have already described. The female wants them, but is otherwise similar: and the centre of the column is occupied by the minute seeds which are not exactly nidulant but disposed on the surfaces of a number of fissures, which traverse the substance of the column without any order or regularity. We get them [the flowers] in numbers from all parts of the country, so that they do not appear to be rare. Strange that they never before should have been heard of. They are called by the natives Pelinum Sekuddi, or the devil's siribox, or as you would call it in Bengal Paun box. I like the name—Poculum Jovis preoc: dub:

I had a story to tell you of the Frenchmen, but will let it alone just now. Here break we off at that unhallowed name like bards of old when words ill omened came.

Believe me my dear Wallich, thine in sæcula sæculorum.

William Jack.

---

[212] Editing of the work of Diard and Duvaucel.

[213] *Rafflesia Arnoldi,* R. Br.

[214] *Vitis angustifolia,* Wall. (*Cissus angustifolia,* Roxb.), according to Jack in the *Malayan Miscellanies.*

Bencoolen,
28th June, 1820.

My dear Wallich,

We are still without any arrivals from Bengal, and consequently not a line of advice from you. The time must be approaching for your trip up the country, and I am not even certain whether this will find you in Calcutta. The London, a large China ship, arrived here some time ago direct for England, and we have taken advantage of that opportunity to send home the greater part of the Zoological collections.[215] The second part of the description of them is finished and goes home now via Bengal. Sir S. is very desirous to get the drawings home at the same time, as it will give the people at home the means of examining and comparing the whole, and making any corrections in the paper that may be necessary before publication. As there is no likelihood of any direct opportunities from home, we have determined to send them via Bengal. They are put in charge of young O'Brien, one of the officers of Watson's corps, who is going up on duty, and his directions *are* to take them direct to you, if you are in Calcutta; and if you should have left it, to entrust them to Calder. They will be put up ready and fit for transmission to England, and it is therefore an object to avoid their being opened at the Custom House, or in any way overhauled until they arrive at their destination. We were thinking at first of addressing them to you, in case you might wish to look at them, but considering the chance of your being away, and moreover that they are not of main interest to you, and that your time is too fully occupied otherwise, we thought it best to save you all trouble but that of despatching them. This I am sure you will readily undertake to do, and get them off by the very first opportunity. It is of great consequence their arriving early, as if they are much delayed the paper will be out without the advantage of reference, the "pieces justificatives" as the French would say. They ought to go I think regularly manifested, and with a letter of advice to enable Sir Jos.[216] to get a Treasury order for their landing. There is lots of trouble for you, and I cannot think of giving you so much without taking example in some degree by the native custom, of not making solicitations empty handed. As they conclude their letters with, "I have nothing to offer my friend but—which I request him to accept," so I shall conclude the above request with specimens in spirits, of our gigantic flower.

Quale portentum neque militaris
India in latis alit esculetis
Nec Jubæ tellus generat leonum
    Arida nutrix.

---

215. Arrived safely.
216. Sir Joseph Banks.

I have dispatched a cask of them to England, and here are some for you. You cannot imagine what abundance we have procured of them, and I have thereby been enabled to ascertain every point respecting them. I think I gave you in my last the particulars, that it is parasitic on a species of Cissus, that it is diœcious, and that the seeds are minute and nidulant in the centre of the column of fructification.

Botany I am sorry to say, has been most grievously at a stand, but I hope soon to resume it and make up for leeway.

Among our other plans and schemes here, is an agricultural Society which we have established, and of which I am Secretary. Our objects are more practical than to make a figure on paper, and the people will feel the benefits of it most. If however I frame any report on the subject, which I have some idea of doing on the state of the country generally with reference to it, you shall see our lucubrations.

We have no intelligence from home on the points of immediate interest to ourselves, and there is so much else to occupy people at home, that I do not think anything will be speedily decided. Perhaps it is all the better, the longer they are about it, the better it probably will be done.

As the vessel will be soon off, and I have a good deal to do to get everything ready, I must make this a short letter. I hope to hear soon from you, and then you shall have more.

Remember me to Mrs. Wallich,

And believe me always, my dear Wallich,
Yours most sincerely,
William Jack.

P.S. The box of drawings will be addressed to Sir Joseph Banks and Mr. Marsden jointly. A letter containing a list of the contents will be written to them, and sent to Calder to forward. You can therefore communicate with him.

By the bye, a late letter from Sir Joseph to Sir Stamford acknowledges the receipt of seeds of my Nepenthes through you.

The specimens of the Titan, are large buds, the opened flowers are difficult to preserve, and buds exhibit everything essential. I advise you to prepare your largest microscope against the arrival of these diminutive fellows.

Bencoolen,
19th Aug., 1820

My dear Wallich,

It is not long since I received your letter No. 2, from Mr. Hall, but No. 1 has not yet made its appearance. I hope it will soon, for I am anxious to have replies from you on many points.

I rejoice to hear that the Nepal expedition has been so happily brought about; both as regards yourself and as regards science it is most glorious. You will spend a year or more most delightfully in a Hyperborean climate, with no vile Calcutta cares and vexations to disturb you, restore your health "to its pristine dignity" (that phrase is a favorite of yours and mine) and descend again into the plains like a new fledged eagle from his mountain eyrie. But what is this to the harvest before you, to the glorious discoveries that await you, you are about to revel among the living sweets, whose dead anatomies have been exciting our admiration during past years.[217] Agreeably as I am situated here, I could wish to transport myself in a twinkling to your side in a ramble over some pine covered hill, or enormous snow crowned mountains. What exclamations, what triple marks of admiration!!! verily and truly, friend of mine, we lose a positive pleasure in surveying all our wonders with solitary eyes.

I wish in place of your present trip, we could have carried you with us to this island of wonders. But we cannot have everything we wish.

I enclose for your edification, two copies[218] of the firstfruits from our Sumatran Press, it is my part of the first volume of the Malayan Miscellanies, (so we have entitled our collections). The first volume is not particularly interesting, consisting chiefly of papers that Sir S. left to keep the press at work during our absence, and taken at random out of a mass of materials, without undergoing examination or revision. As however when we returned we found enough to make a small volume, forth they come, as they are, and to help it out I have given a few descriptions of minor interest. We have also put one or two of the Frenchmen's papers, which will show what they really are, and enable us if they attempt anything, to judge them out of their own mouths. Let me have the benefit of any remarks that suggest themselves to you upon the plants here mentioned.

Our second volume will be more interesting, it is proposed to contain the proceedings of the Agricultural Society,[219] the first Report of which I have just completed. It is in fact rather a statistical than Agricultural paper, and forms a kind of supplement to my former Report on the State of Society. I am now cogitating on my projected fascicle, and plan a considerable extension of the original idea. It strikes me, that such splendid plates as they are intended to be, ought to be accompanied with more than the few sheets of letter press that the mere scientific

---

217. E. Gardner, the Resident in Nepal has been sending down specimens dried.

218. Not one copy of part No. 1 and one of part No. 5 of volume I. but two copies of part No. 1; for part No. 5 was not printed at this date.

219. It did not. The *Proceedings* were printed under their own title, and made a volume of about 200 pages.

descriptions would occupy. I am therefore thinking of a general view of the Natural History of the Eastern Islands, to which the descriptions will be an appendix. It will take me some time to execute this up to the plan I have in view, but I think I shall be able to get sufficient materials, and it will be a pity not to make use of them. I am very glad you had an opportunity of mentioning the circumstances about the Frenchmen to Lord Hastings. I have heard very little about them lately; they will probably sink into merited insignificance and there let them rest.

I read your letter on the subject of timber plantations with much interest. I wish however, to have from you some of the collateral history of it, that is to say, of the circumstances which called for it etc.

The teak forests in Java were a very important object of attention, and I believe there were some able Reports made on them. I mean to see if I can rummage them out among Sir Stamford's papers, and if I find anything in them likely to be interesting to you, I will let you know.

I send this up by Capt. MacKenzie, a brother of Holt MacKenzie:[220] he is appointed resident of Singapore, and goes up to Calcutta previous to taking charge. I imagine he has no chance of seeing you in Calcutta, but if it should so happen, I should wish you to see him, and he is equally desirous of paying you a visit.

This vessel goes round by the Straits of Sunda, and we expect another here soon on its way to Calcutta direct, so I shall write again and more at length by that occasion, and may perhaps in the interim receive some more of your letters.

Lady Hastings has requested me to send a Hortus Siccus for the Edinburgh Museum, which of course I must do, and I shall take care that at least the things be neatly put up and in good paper, which perhaps are points that are better understood than the value of the specimens. Were it not that it would be as well on Sir Stamford's account to keep her in good humour, I should hardly be induced to take even that trouble for any attention I have ever received, or good I am ever likely to get from her.

I shall conclude with best regards to Mrs. Wallich and yourself and am always,

My dear Wallich,
Yours very truly,
William Jack.

---

[220] Buckley says (*Anecdotal History*, i. p. 64) that in September, 1820, there was sent to Calcutta "by the hand of Captain Holt M'Kenzie, the Secretary to Government at Bencoolen, then on his way to Bengal" a petition against the dreaded abandonment of Singapore. Jack's statement above is divergent in showing that it was the Captain MacKenzie—a brother of the Secretary to Government in Calcutta Mr. Holt MacKenzie—who proceeded to Bengal.

Bencoolen,
9th September, 1820.

My dear Wallich,

I have just received your letter of the 7th of June No. 3, but have no tidings of No. 1. I begin to fear it may be lost in some of the dreadful gales that occurred in March and April. As your two last letters have been brief, I conclude that it must have been long and full, if so, it will be most melancholy to find that it has gone to the bottom where "All its hidden treasures" sleep known but to the genii of the deep who (d-n their eyes) will be none the wiser. Pray recapitulate the contents thereof, and mention whether it had any accompaniments. I am without information from you on a number of interesting points, such as the particulars of your arrangements for your trip, and during your absence, your notes and observations on the specimens e multis etceteris.—I see you have been able to make some use of them in the second vol. of Roxburgh. I will presently give you a few remarks on some of these and as you are going on so briskly, I must make haste to send you such further remarks, as may eventually be useful to you in this chapter.

I sent you a few printed descriptions by the "Frolic," which left this some time ago.

The concluding paragraph of your letter respecting George,[221] depend upon it shall be fully complied with. I am glad you have written yourself to my father, and be assured I shall follow it up.

I am sadly out of spirits with some late news from home, the most grievous however of which I, as yet, have only from the public papers, I mean, the death of my valued friend Sir Vicary Gibbs.[222] I have at this moment on my table a letter from Lady Gibbs which I must answer; hers is long antecedent to this event, and in what terms to reply I know not. It is terrible to think how my circle of friends has been narrowed in the short time that has elapsed since I left home, and the fatality has fallen more among those which my personal connection was the most intimate with, than among relations, whom from less personal intercourse, I cannot be warmly attached to.

---

[221] George Charles Wallich, born in 1816, Jack's "romping young friend" of the letter printed on p. 167. He was now being sent to school. It is evident from a later letter that Wallich, through Jack, sought the advice of Jack's father, in regard to the boy's schooling. He was educated in Scotland, taking an M.D. in Edinburgh.

[222] Sir Vicary Gibbs, (1751-1820), who in a large measure obtained for Jack his appointment under the East India Company. Sir Vicary was a judge of the most solid eminence, a native of Devon, and not attached to Jack by other ties than friendship. His life may be gathered from the Dictionary of National Biography vol. xxi.

It is not fair however to vent on you my lamentations, but I know not how it is when a subject is uppermost in my mind, it must come out before I can go on, and I mention it to account for a disjointed letter, as I foresee this will be.

In a late advertisement respecting the Edinburgh Journal, I think I saw an article announced under your name, "Progress of Botany in India" I think. Is it correct?

I am glad to find the Patons[223] favorites of yours: they are very much so of mine. I received by young Hule the first volume of Roxburgh[224] and duly presented the copy to Sir Stamford. I returned to Dr. Carey the portion of a copy still remaining here, which had previously been received.[225]

By the bye, I hope you do not mean to make my copy a gift, in place of being my subscription to the work. Between you and me such is by no means necessary. I wish further, that you would order on my account a copy to be sent to my father. I think he would like to see it and Calder will forward it.

Did I ever tell you of an idea that we started here some time ago regarding your discovery of the *Daphne cannabina*?.[226] A gentleman whose name I forget, but who seems to be a scheming sort of character wrote to Sir S. making a variety of requests, such as, for the different kinds of grain, pulse etc. of this country, and among other things, whether there was any material for paper peculiar to the East, as an idea had been started, that if bank notes could be made on paper of some foreign and difficultly procurable material possessed of qualities different from the common Europe paper, that the difficulty of forging them would be materially increased. I suggested the Nepal paper as answering the required conditions, and further being capable of being monopolised and, Sir S. sent in consequence a copy of your account in the Asiatic Researches and the specimens of the paper which I gave him out of the same. The idea seems to me feasible enough, and who knows but your name may soon figure in the annals of the Bank of England, not in their books I fear, which would be much better, but as a contributor to their securities. If they adopt it, I think they should make you a present of the amount of their former losses by forgery, or at least make you their contractor for the supply of paper, which would perhaps be better. At all events the discovery may be the means of saving a considerable number of lives.

---

[223] A Paton from 1814 to 1817 was district judge at Krishnagar, Bengal, one day's journey by water from Calcutta. But there is nothing in these letters by which these Patons can be identified.

[224] Wallich and Carey's revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica.

[225] Apparently advanced proofs of volume i. of the Flora Indica.

[226] The material from which paper is made in Nepal and South-western China.

In one of my late letters from Lindsay, he communicates a request from the Marchioness, that I would send her a Hortus Siccus for her Edinburgh Museum:[227] I comply with it by this occasion, but mean to humbug her in the matter. My best specimens have all gone home, as you know, ... I have therefore put up a parcel of second rate ones, with plenty of good paper, which is of more consequence (Kaleidoscopically!) and sent her such a flaming list, as will make her think she has the most precious and learned collection ever sent from India. I trust to her indolence never to look into them; indeed if she did, I don't suppose she would know a Mangosteen from an apple, and then as for the *most learned* body to which they are to go, the name of the Marchioness will humbug them, and I daresay the sapient Professor of Botony will in reply, extol her Ladyship's skill and discernment in the selection, and sound the praises of that of which he knows nothing about.

Now for remarks on sheets A to H. Fagræa fragrans, I think Roxburgh is wrong in saying it was brought from China. I found it also in the same garden alluded to, where nobody knew where it had come from,[228] but afterwards got abundance of it from the Kedah shore, where it is a timber tree and well known to the natives.

F. auriculata,[229] I ought to have given you my mems on this. It is arborescent; I had also very fine fruits as large as an egg, of which the following is my note. Fructus baccatus ovoideus, glaber, parte styli persistente acuminatus, bilocularis, seminibus numerosis, pulpa nidulantibus.

I have great doubts as to diversity of *F. racemosa*[230] and *volubilis.* In the first place I question the latter being voluble; it is straggling and often with twisted branches, but I think I have seen it grow to a stout but small tree. I always considered them the same; however I will make a more vigorous examination and report to you accordingly.

---

[227] Sir T. Carlaw Martin, Director of the Royal Scottish Museum, Edinburgh, has been so good as to turn up his records seeking information upon this Hortus Siccus; but he is unable to find any, and adds that no specimens are in the Museum.

[228] The tembusu,—*Fagræa fragrans,* Roxb., is not common in Penang doubtless because suitable sandy land does not exist in quantity; and this is perhaps the reason why those in correspondence with Roxburgh who visited Penang had not told him that the tree is Malayan. It is to be noted that Jack records it also for Kedah. This mention of the Kedah shore is most important as it is the only indication that Jack landed on the mainland: and makes it possible that some of his "Penang" plants, thought to be extinct now, were not actually obtained by him in the island.

[229] *Fagræa auriculata,* Jack, had been obtained from Singapore, and later at Tappanouly.

[230] *Fagræa racemosa,* Jack, had been obtained in Sumata and described in Wallich and Carey's revision of Roxburgh's *Flora.* As hinted here *F. volubilis,* which was described at the same time, does not differ.

Your name of Neuropeltis[231] I like much, and prefer it to the one I was thinking of Neuropteris, which is too like the fam. of Insecta. My account of the fruit is as follows:—Capsula 4-valvis, monosperma, semen globosum, albumine parce mucilaginoso cotyledonibus contortuplicatis, radicula "umbilico obversa" infera.

I believe I mentioned to you having found what I took to be a new *Macrolobium.*[232] I happend afterwards accidentally to refer to Jonesia and Rheede's Asjoogam, when the similarity with my Macrolobium struck me, and on further comparison I was convinced of their identity in genus, not in species, mine being tetrandrous. On analysing however Roxburgh's description, which is ineffably bad, for who would call the bracts a diphyllous calyx, and give a leguminous plant a tubular monopetalous corolla, bearing not only the stamina but the pistillum, a thing *hactenus inauditum*, I have arrived at the conclusion that Jonesia is nothing else than Macrolobium disguised under a blundering description. The only single point of difference is that Jonesia wants the petal which Macrolobium has. They are both equally variable in the No. of stamina, and I think it questionable whether the want of petal is a difference of generic value. Both ought certainly to be placed in Decandria in place of their present absurd situations, and with as good right as Bauhinia and many other genera.

As I hence, so far, altered my plan of a fascicle, that it will be a work of some time to complete it, I begin to think of getting out all my plants of any consequence in other ways, which I may at any time resume again in the fascicle, with the addition of figures. You shall have whatever I can give in Pentandrias and the other classes as you go on, and in the mean time I think of giving some to the Linnean or other Societies at home. Do the Asiatic deserve any *i.e.* will they bring them out in any decent time? I think for home, the best way will be to group them; for instance, I think of making one paper on the Leguminosæ that I may have, in which the Macrolobia may come. I thought of another on the Mangiferæ, but my materials are not yet complete. I shall send you what I have as it comes into print: I have lately got two new ones besides my former M. quadrifida, and have information of several others. One of these I have described as M. cæsia[233] (at least I think that shall be the name) which is a very remarkable species.

---

231. *Neuropeltis* is one of the Convolvulaceæ, and it seems probable that Jack had found *N. racemosa* in Penang, whence Wallich also brought it a few years later. But it seems extinct on the island now.

232. *Saroaca declinata*, Miq. (*Jonesia declinata*, Jack in Malay. Misc., ii. (1820) No. 7, p. 74). Miquel gives no other locality for it than Bencoolen.

233. The description of *Mangifera caesia* was sent to Wallich and inserted by him in his and Carey's revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica, ii. p. 441.

I perceive you quote Roemer, Systema Vegetabilium vol. IV.[234] I hope you have taken measures to have a copy of that work for me. DeCandolle[235] is another desideratum. We are busy making a final clearing of all zoological subjects, when I think all arrears may be considered brought up, and we may make a fresh start. I have been long intending a trip into the interior, but the number of things that have occurred to keep me employed, has prevented it as yet, and the season is now so far advanced, that a very short one will be all that can be attempted. However, I am in no want of materials, so it does not signify. Let me know how your letters had best be addressed.

My best regards to Mrs. Wallich; Sir S. and Lady Raffles join in the same to you both.

Thine ever,
William Jack.

P.S. Lady Gibbs tells me that they have made a discovery in England that all tropical bulbs will thrive in the open air if sunk in a pond, near the surface in summer, and deeper in winter, so as to be out of the reach of the frost, and with greater luxuriance than in hot houses. She therefore begs me to send her bulbs and handy seeds; may I request you to remember her in this way at the dispatching season. The bulbs of course, dry in a box. I am glad we sent her some last year, they will be acceptable.

The stones you mention may remain with you.

There are some large Mangosteen plants going up to Lady Hastings, who I hope will send them to the garden, as I think they are large enough to thrive. I mean also to send to the garden, a few plants of our noble Datura arborea.[236]

W. J.

No. 9 Bencoolen,
19th September, 1820.

My dear Wallich,

My last two letters went by the Venus; I now send the remainder of my Pentandrian descriptions. Since I wrote them I have somewhat altered my plan in regard to my descriptions, and have determined on forthwith printing here everything that I have worth it. That once done, it is secured and the number of copies being very small I can make use of any of them again when necessary in any other work. They can also be circulated and I can better have the advantage of remarks upon them. In a country like this where new things, and new subjects are perpetually occuring, the old ones lose their interest unless taken at the moment, and what is once printed may be considered as finished and disposed of, whereas if you go on accumulating, the mass becomes too great and you are prevented by arrears from advancing. We are now at leisure to attend to these things with the means at hand; how can we promise that we shall have the same a year hence? On all these accounts I have determined to print. Some that I now send you will be contained in mine too, but that is of no consequence; if mine is first out, you can quote, and if not, your bringing it out is no prejudice to the other. The Mangiferæ, Rauwolfia sumatrana, Euthemis, Styphelia, Celastrus bivalvis, and Morindæ will probably be in this number.[237] Some I shall not for fear of cross purposes about names. Patisnæ[238] not in case you should adopt Wallichia which I left at your option. I have not found another Pentandrous genus to which to give that worthy name. Euthemis unluckily has gone home and may come out under that appellation, and I cannot here adopt it to any plant of another class till I know whether you have approved the Patisnæ or not. I once thought Rauwolfia new, and had fixed on it, but it turned out otherwise. What sayest thou to Strophanthus plicata from the plaited, not squamous faux?[239] Mind, not your original proposal of my name, which I do not wish to see figure in that way at all at all.[240] It is no object of my ambition, and the cacophony must not be suffered by such admirers of the classical graces of Euphony as you and I. To memory, put down that!! My Didymocarpi and Sonerilæ are now in the press. Do you recollect a Singapore tetrandrus Rubiacea which we examined together and determined to be a new genus. I have called it Epithinia (*i.e.* littorea from its habitat).[241] How often when making a name when you think you have hit on a highly classical one, which you flatter yourself is unoccupied, turn to Brown and lo! you are anticipated. For this I thought I had made a capital inovation of Aegialites, but on turning to the Prodromus [242] behold it gracing the shores of New Holland, instead of Singapore. So I must reduce to a vile Epithinia. Of the enclosed descriptions the Euthemides[243] have gone home. The Eucheliæ[244] and Ardisia[245] are copies of our common Mems. Styphelia[246] you will see I have completed, we were interrupted in the middle of it. I have ascertained in other specimens that the anthers do burst in the middle, so as to be only one celled as so admirably described by Brown; we did not find any anthers spontaneously burst, and therefore put a "vix non ut in Brown Prod. H." which need not now be so ceremoniously stated.

---

[234] J. J. Roemer and J. A. Schultes, Systema vegetabilium, Stutgart, 1817-1830, seven volumes.

[235] A. P. De Candolle, Regni vegetabilis systema naturale, Paris, 1818-1821, two volumes.

[236] *Datura arborea,* Linn., is a native of the Andes: but it has long been in cultivation in the East.

---

[237] There is a postscript to this letter which is to be read in conjunction with the paragraph above. The postscript shows that before the letter left Jack's hands, the mission press had actually sent to him proof (some of it revised proof) towards the contemplated number. This proof Jack sent on to Wallich asking for criticism, and waited. In a later letter Jack says that he had had no letter from Wallich since a date previous to this; and so it is evident that the looked for criticism never came. Meanwhile the time for publication came, and Jack issued the number as No. 5 of volume 1 of the Malayan Miscellanies having withdrawn from it a part *e.g.* the Mangiferas. It would be most interesting if the unpublished proof could be traced among the records of the Royal Botanic Gardens, Calcutta.

[238] Patisna of Jack ined. otherwise Wallichia of Jack in these letters and of Reinwardt in the Buitenzorg Gardens, published by Blume in his catalogue, is Urophyllum of Wallich, vide note No. 188 on p. 198.

[239] It is evident that this is Wallich's *Strophanthus Jackianus* published in the Catalogue, No. 1643, which is *Wrightia dubia* Spreng. Jack collected it in Penang where it grows.

[240] What Jack collected and sent to Wallich, became No. 1643 in Wallich's Catalogue.

For the three valved capsular plant which follows Patisna,[247] I have not thought of a name yet. It comes near to Vareca, but is valved not baccate. You have had specimens of it. What may it be, or what shall it be called. On second thought it must belong to Pittosporeæ, Br., vix opinor ejusdem generis, the seeds having no pitch on them!

What do you make of my Hypsogyne[248] sent in my last.? I think it is new. It is a great bore the huge distance that separates us. One is so long of getting an answer to a question, and I have hundreds that I would ask if we were nearer. Recollect the list of queries and descriptions that I gave you in one of my early letters. The fair Monsoon is approaching for vessels to come here, so fail not to write fully, now that you have fewer vexations and interruptions. Let me know all your arrangements, how the editing of Roxburgh is to go on. How do you manage for books for reference? you cannot carry all with you.

---

[241] Described in the Malayan Miscellanies, i. 1820, part 5, p. 12. Jack however was forestalled by Gaertner who had called it *Scyphyphora hydrophyllacea.* It is common round the coasts of Malaya.

[242] Robert Brown's Prodromus Floræ Novæ-Hollandiæ.

[243] See notes No. 114 and 115.

[244] Euchelia is not to be identified.

[245] *Ardisia punctata,* Jack, possibly. No description of this appeared in the Malayan Miscellanies and it would appear as if it had been withdrawn along with those of the Mangiferas for publication by Carey and Wallich. *A. punctata,* Jack, is *A. divergens,* Roxb.

[246] A reference to *Leucopogon malayanum,* Jack in Malayan Miscellanies, i. (1820) part 5, p. 20.

[247] *Alscdeia* perhaps.

[248] *Hypsogyne* is *Salacia.* See note No. 257 forward.

I find Roxburgh's Murraya sumatrana is nothing more than Loureiro's Chalcas pjaniculata, Rumphius's Camunium,[249] unjustly degraded from the rank of a species and confounded with Murraya exotica: I mean to restore it as M. paniculata, a bad name by the bye, because *not* panicled. I think you would do well to alter Roxburgh's Camunium, which is improperly applied. The Murraya is the true Camunium (I find it is Aglaia of Loureiro, so pray adopt that name, which is good. I mean to do so in the present number of my descriptions).

What is Roxburgh's Petaloma in reality, it has nothing to do with Petaloma, and I suspect it of being congener of a coccineous Combretaceæ which I was thinking of calling Pyrrhanthus.[250] An affinis Laguncularíæ, Gærtn.?

Pray is Avicennia resinifera, distinct from A. tomentosa.[251] The former is perhaps Rumph.'s Mangium album which I have here, and is a good figure. I do not precisely remember the Avicennia of the Sunderbunds, but I think this is different. The fruit of mine is much smaller, being less than an inch long. The leaves are lanceolate, pointed, white but not tomentose below.

My very best regards to Mrs. Wallich, and believe me always,

Thine Affectionately,
William Jack.

P.S. The press has been more active than I expected, and enables me to send you the 3 first sheets of my second paper, the last are uncorrected proofs. They include all Pentandria and I therefore withdraw[252] the MSS. of those that appear in it. Pray give me what remarks occur to you.

I think you have now all the Pens[253] that I have made descriptions of. You have some which on that account I did not take up myself, such as Posoqueria? anisophylla &c.[254]

Thine in haste,
W. Jack.

---

[249] See note No. 148 p. 189.

[250] Yes; Jack is right.

[251] Jack evidently asks if the *Avicennia resinifera* described by Forster, and the *Avicennia tomentosa,* ascribed by Robert Brown in his Prodromus Floræ Novæ Hollandiæ to Jacquin, differ. Under *Pyrrhanthus* in the Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 57, he records the finding in Sumatra of what he took to be the first.

[252] What Jack withdrew can only be ascertained from such proof as he sent to Wallich if still preserved in the Royal Botanic Gardens, Calcutta.

[253] Pentandria. The Pentandria of the *Flora Indica* were under revision by Wallich at the time.

[254] *Randia anisophylla.* See note No. 174, on p. 196.

On board the Natal Choonean off Padang,
11th October, 1820.

My dear Wallich,

When I last wrote you I little thought to be so soon on the move: but so it is. Sir S. and I had some conversation one morning at breakfast about Pulo Nias[255] which ended in his proposing to me to go there on a special mission, and so in two days thereafter, I put myself on board a native vessel for Natal the point of appui for Nias, and am thus far on my way. Of the objects &c. of this trip I shall hereafter write more fully. I only sit down at present to be prepared for any chance opportunity that may occur to give you a few of my botanical discoveries that may be in time for Roxburgh's second vol. It is more than doubtful whether I shall be able to send this before my return to Bencoolen, so it would be idle to say much on other subjects. For the last few days I have been bothered with calms, but (to speak in that case like an Irishman) "its an ill wind that blows nobody good," so instead of fretting for a wind that would not come, I ordered out the boat, and proceeded to ransack the hundred beautiful little islands that stud this part of the Sumatran coast. Pulo Kumbang, Pulo Bintangor, Pulo Pegang, Pulo Shytan! &c. &c. have thus been explored, and their plants rescued from oblivion. You can hardly imagine anything more beautiful than these little islands, rising in little hills out of the blue waters, and covered either with forests, or planted with cocoanut trees. The access to them is not however always easy, their shores being generally guarded by coral reefs, on which the heavy surf is always beating,—a good roll in which is often the price of landing.

I am now up with you in Didymocarpi, having found my fifth in one of these excursions, a didynamous species, which I mean to call D. elongata, from having the lower lip of the corolla and its tube unusually elongated, also long secund spikes.[256]

I found also fresh specimens of what in my last despatches I called Hypsagyne, and on referring to Roxb. (which I had not with me when I first found it at Tappanooly) find that it is neither more nor less than his Johnia, but a new species,—Sumatrana (si velis, mihi).[257] With all due deference, I think it is a great pity Roxburgh discovered it first, for I like my own name best. I found at the same time a Hippocratea, which agrees with Roxb. *H. obtusifolia* in having 4-seeded capsules, but has serrated leaves, ergo I think new.[258] Have you not often remarked what singular want of precision is in all Roxb's. descriptions, and particularly in his specific characters? He does not seem to have understood the true intention of them, and generally is very much out in the selection of essentialities. Compare in this respect that wonderful man Brown, I must send you herewith a Pentandrian species of his, which perhaps you would not expect from hence, and which, if in time, may enter into Roxburgh: it is Sersalisia obovata, Br. Prodr. N. H. p. 530[259] and woul dbe a Sideroxylon of Linnean nomenclature.

---

[255] A large island off the west coast of Sumatra.

[256] *Didymocarpus elongata,* Jack in the Transactions of the Linnean Society of London, xiv. (1825) p. 37. = *Didissandra elongata,* C. B. Clarke.

[257] *Salacia* sp. Jack in the Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 92, reduced *Johnia* to *Salacia,* and remarked that he had found two species in Sumatra, but he did not give them names.

[258] This *Hippocratea* was not described.

I have one other very interesting pentandrian for you. Hoya grandiflora, Br.[260] a most splendid personage: flowers 2 inches in diameter, red shading into white, corolla thick and polished like a Japan tea tray. The whole plant hirsute!! Hoya viridiflora[261] I have also found in considerable abundance.

I have also found a new Begonia. Do you remember a Myrtoidea from Acheen among the specimens we examined together, with 3-nerved leaves?; I have again found it, and another nearly related species,[262] which I think I must make a genus of, as it has a 1-celled ovary, many ovula attached to parietal receptacles. Berry few seeded. Now if the general character of the Myrtoideæ are more dependent on their ovaries than fruit, this will not come under any of the present genera.

Pray what are the affinities of Hippocratea and Johnia? Their flowers are so exactly alike, that without the fruit they would pass for the same genus, and a 3-celled berry and a 3-capsuled fruit are not incompatible with a junction. I doubt however their affinity to Aceres. Their resemblance is strong to Rhamneæ in habit, but an exalbuminous fruit is against, an Hippocratea vere exalbuminosa? They seem to be somewhat intermediate betwixt Terebinthaceæ and Rhamneæ, at least as much as between Aceres and Malpighiæ. I confess I do not very well understand the distinction between a calycine nectarial disk and a hypogynous one.

Nattal, 15 Oct. 1820. I arrived here last night and find a boat going off for Padang, of which I avail myself, as it is the most likely way of this reaching you. I intended to have put up a specimen of Sersalisia, but my traps have not come ashore, and the boat is going off, so I must content myself with the description.

---

[259] *Sersalisia obovata,* R. Br. is *Sideroxylon Brownii,* F. Muell.,—a plant of Queensland. It is probable that Jack had not this very plant before him, but some ally.

[260] This *Hoya grandiflora* cannot be *Tylophora grandiflora* which is Brown's *H. grandiflora,* as Jack thought it.

[261] *Hoya viridiflora,* R. Br. is *Dregea volubilis,* Benth.

[262] *Rhodamnia trinervia,* Blume, would be the first: the second *R. cinerea,* Jack, but really is a variety of the first.

My best regards to Mrs. Wallich.

And believe me always,
Yours very sincerely in haste,
William Jack.

On board the Sophia,
Jan. 2nd, 1821.

My dear Wallich,

I know not whether any of the letters I have fired off at you since leaving Bencoolen have reached their destination,[263] but I will suppose so, and think you know that I have been on my perigrinations to Pulo Nias &c. I am now on my return and as there will probably be lots of business awaiting me at my head quarters, I shall take the opportunity of ship leisure to give you some account of my operations.—I learn from Sir S. that there is a huge despatch of yours waiting my return on which I long to feast, and after the long privation of all such food it will be doubly delightful. What would I not have given for you to have been with me on this trip, what exclamations, what treble marks of admiration, how many of those evanescent figaries and freaks of the imagination which constitute the very essence of the pleasure of such exploration, alas! all lost for want of a congenial spirit. Only imagine my situation, condemned to the solitary enjoyment of all these wonders in company with a freezing mass of ice,[264] out of which all my fire failed to elicit one single spark, on whom all the wonders of nature were as much thrown to waste as the flies and insects were on Pharaoh and who could see more beauties in a well kept ledger and Day book, than in all that ever occupied the thoughts and heads of a Linnaeus or a Brown.

Verily there is a benumbling influence surrounding such inert masses of vitality, and it will require a little time of more genial intercourse and more enlivening atmosphere to restore to me the caloric I have wasted without effect.

I believe I told you that I was sent to form a settlement on Pulo Nias and for this purpose joined in a commission with Mr. Prince of Nattal. After several delays and difficulties I reached

---

[263] As there is only one in the correspondence preserved, it appears as if some have been lost.

[264] Mr. John Prince, a precise automaton, who was of not a little service to the botanists of India at this time, see for instance p. 182. He furnished to Roxburgh information from Sumatra as well as living plants; and he furnished later plants from Sumatra and Singapore to Wallich. He is mentoned by Raffles as a witness to his assertions regarding the cannibalism of the Bataks (Memoirs of the Life of Raffles, 1st edition, p. 432, or 2nd Edition, ii. (1835) p. 90).

Nias on the 14th of Nov. and commenced the business. The object was to get the cession of the whole island to the Company in full sovereignty, and as it is held by a great number of independent chiefs, the necessary negotiations occupied a long time. We visited every port on the Eastern and Southern sides of the Island, and succeeded in effecting almost every point. Tello Dalam, a fine harbour to the Southward has been selected as our station, and the whole Island is a British possession. It is altogether one of the richest, finest countries I have ever seen, cultivated almost too highly for a botanist, and populous as many parts of India. It has long been a great mart of slaves, furnishing not less than 1500 a year. The abolition of this trade formed one of our great objects, and it too is in the best train possible. The people are pagans, and a very original race differing from all their neighbours, and display a mixture of barbarism and civilization that makes them very interesting. On seeing a parcel of half naked savages, armed with spears and wooden shields, their physiognomies rendered horrible by helmets and artificial beards of long black Ijau,[265] striking up a war dance, with violent howling and gesticulations, you could fancy yourself transported to the Otaheiti, or some such South sea Island, while on the other hand on seeing their villages, their houses, the style of comfort, and I might say elegance in which they live, one is tempted to give them a superiority over almost every other Eastern race. Their houses are so substantial and well constructed, that a European might live in them with comfort; their villages are built in most picturesque situations upon the pinnacles of the hills for defence, but the ascent is facilitated by noble flights of stone steps, and paved roads are sometimes carried on to the distance of some miles, shaded too on each side by rows of fruit trees. The surface of the country is very uneven, but this only makes it more beautiful to the eye, as the sides of the hills are cultivated up to the very summits and there is a sufficiency of wood to give a picturesque variety, without passing into the dull uniformity which unbroken and primæval forests always produce.

The principal export of the country is rice, an article of which there is a woeful deficiency in all our Sumatran territories, and which makes the possession of a granary like Pulo Nias an object of importance. Notwithstanding all these advantages and temptations to an intercourse with this island, I believe it is less known in all respects than Otaheiti. Its Geography is almost a blank further than that an island called Pulo Nias exists in such a latitude, and the people have only been known by the great value set upon them as slaves, in which capacity they are highly esteemed throughout the Archipelago. But as to the population, the nature and resources of the island, nothing is known; Marsden devotes, I think, a page to it.—I have as you may suppose, besides the official business, been busy collecting all the information respecting it that was to be procured, and as we continued visiting the different parts of the island till the 31st Dec., a month and a half, it is pretty complete upon all points. It is not improbable that Sir Stamford may wish me to draw up some account of it for our Miscellanies, so I need not trouble you with much of its history now, as I may have that opportunity of sending you the whole in shape, if you feel any curiosity on the subject.

---

[265] Ijau is Ijok = fibre of *Arenga saccharifera*.

In the botanical department, although its over cultivation was greatly to be abused, it has been by no means unproductive. The first thing I met with was a new Alpinia[266] of the division with radical inflorescence, but which threw up its spikes to the height of two feet hactenus, I think, inauditum. I have roots of it which are thriving, and which shall go up to you by the first good opportunity. In what possible way can you make a specific name of Nias, Niasana or Niasensis, in no way can I arrive at euphony? I believe it cannot be admitted into the Botanical temple of fame. Alpinia longiscapa will perhaps answer.—I found also a very extraordinary Zingiber of which the fellow neglected to bring the roots. The spike was larger than a pineapple, and the edges of the bracts involute in such a manner as to give the whole the appearance of a carved capital of the Corinthian or some nondescript order. The Callicarpa arborea Roxb.[267] is very abundant; you mention having it from Nepal; here we come again in contact. I sent you in one of my late letters the description of my Hoya grandiflora. I have now discovered what I take to be another species on Pulo Nias. It has in every respect the habit and character of Hoya, except that the column and nectaries are not so flat, but are more conical than in the other. The position of the masses is the same and the inner angle of the nectarial leaflets is acute and incumbent on the membrane of the anther. Can you understand this?—the other species are depressed in the centre, this rises. It is a delicate slender species and may be called H. gracilis,[268] the leaves about the size and shape of this:—

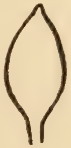


Fig. 2.

the margin thick and fleshy. I shall send you my description when I get to Bencoolen, if I think it is likely to be in time for Roxburgh's Flora.

---

266. *Alpinia elatior,* Jack in the Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 2.

BFG. *Callicarpa arborea,* Roxb., is a widely distributed plant, not at all unlikely to be Sumatran.

268. *Hoya gracilis* was never described under this name.

Another curious gentleman that I found at Tello Dalam is a Hypericum with dark purple flowers triadelpha stamina, alternating with a very curious set of large yellow saccate nectaries.[269] I have here and on other parts of the coast, found a great number of Orchideans, which I have described a la Brown, but they are such a plaguy race, that I have not even attempted their discovery, indeed I have not the requisite books. However I shall perhaps come back upon them someday, and yet experience shows that that arrears are bad things, the day of bringing them up never arrives: it is so much pleasanter to go forward than go back. I have two species of Rhopala[270] that I take to be new, both with large sessile leaves, the one entire, the other strongly serrated Of the latter I have the ripe fruit. At Tappanooly I found Fagræa auriculata with flower not quite expanded, it must when open be a flos giganteus.[271] Fagræa racemosa[272] on P. Nias grows to a small tree with a straight trunk and round bushy head. F. volubilis is certainly only a twisted specimen of F. racemosa.

Nattal Jan. 5th.—I find here a vessel which after remaining sometime on this coast, goes up to Calcutta, and as other opportunities are uncertain, I shall close this and let it take its chance. I hope to start in a few days for Bencoolen and to have a good run. I shall be very glad to get back, and I find that Sir S. is impatient for my return, which he expected before this, and truly so did I, but there is no calculating on time where winds, waves, and Nias people are concerned.—I shall only at present add my best regards to Mrs. Wallich and yourself, and assure you that

I am always,
My dear Wallich,
Yours Affectionately William Jack.

Bencoolen, May 1st, 1821.

My dear Wallich,

Were I not an extreme philosopher I believe I should be for sending Bencoolen to the D—l. It is four months since we have had any arrival from Bengal, and I have no letter later than the 1st of July last from you. I fear there must have been some losses, which will be very provoking. The only letters I have from you since I left Bengal are No. 2 May 27th 1820.

No. 4 July 1st 1820. } extra brief!
No. 3 June 7th 1820.

---

[269] Obviously a *Cratoxylon*, and that described by Jack as *Elodea sumatrana* in the Malay. Miscellanies, ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 22, = *Cratoxylon sumatranum*, Blume.

[270] *Rhopala* as Jack used it = *Helicia*. Jack's *R. attenuata* and *R. moluccana* are species of Helicia from Penang. His *R. ovata* is *Helicia ovata. Benn.* from Tappanooly. These two are additional and were never described in print.

[271] *Fagræa auriculata* has flowers about six inches long.

[272] *Fagræa racemosa*, Jack in Wallich's and Carey's revision of Roxburgh's *Flora Indica*, ii. (1824) p. 35, = *Fagræa volubilis*.

No. 1 must I fear have fed the fishes. I know not whether my letters have been more fortunate: those from P. Nias &c. have probably made a very circuitous passage.

I now send you No. 2 and 3 of Malayan plants,[273] and I am in hopes before this vessel sails of being able to send you a volume of Agricultural proceedings from the Sumatran press. I do not know that you will find much to interest you in it, but it will give you an idea of what we are about here, and will show you the flourishing condition of our spice cultivation, which we find to be now equal to the supply of Great Britain. There is a paper on it by Lumsdaine[274] where you will find some curious remarks on the "rapturous impulses" of these hot blooded trees! Lumsdaine generally writes very much to the point, but is often very quaint in his expressions.—The first Report is perhaps the most readable part of the Vol. but you will perhaps wonder what the D—l it has to do with Agriculture. In fact our Agricultural Society allows itself great latitude, and it has need, for the agriculture (strictly speaking) of Bencoolen might be discussed in a few words.

---

[273] 273. Just as part 2 of Jack's *Descriptions of Malayan Plants* was put into print and held up for revision on criticism from Wallich (vide note No. 237 on p. 218) so this above-named ''No. 3'' was prepared and held up. Under the date of May 1st, 1821 the part was sent to Wallich. But there is an earlier letter printed in the *Memoir of the Life of Sir Stamford Raffles*, at p. of the first edition, under which Raffles sent this ''No. three'' to Marsden with the following lines ''I have now the pleasure to send you the third paper on our Malayan plants. These are only to be considered notices of the moment, where we have not the advantage of reference to late publications, or communications with scientific friends. The paper contains an account of the nepenthes, sago, camphor, several new mangifera, many ligna-vitæ, the melastomas, etc.'' The letter continues ''You will recognise many of your old friends particularly the kayu gadis, or virgin tree. Under Styphelia you will find an interesting observation respecting Singapore.''

The date at the head of this letter in Lady Raffles' Memoir of her husband is October 9th, 1820. Now on September 19th, 1820, Jack wrote to Wallich that he had decided to put everything into print for preservation and was making up a ''number'' containing Styphelia. This he actually did; and it is the second of his papers instead of the third. Moreover this second paper contains the description of the kayu gadis. So that we have in Raffles' letter to Marsden two plants mentioned as if described in the ''third paper'' which we know were described in the second. The date of the letter *i.e.* October 9th, 1820, is certainly a reasonable one for the forwarding to Marsden of the second paper; and fortunately it is easy also to explain how Raffles could have had then the third paper also, whereas Jack only sent it to Wallich under date of May 1st. 1821, for we must recollect that immediately after September 19th, 1820, Raffles sent Jack with Prince to effect an agreement with the chiefs of Pulau Nias, and that it was January 1821 before he returned, whereafter, as he explains himself, four months passed without any communication with Bengal.

Jack would take the very first opportunity of sending these descriptions to Wallich which the scant shipping afforded. And he sent at the same time a clean copy of the second paper which was not out of the press at the time of his departure for Pulau Nias. Raffles' allusion of Styphelia and Kayu Gadis is to be explained by his sending also part 2 along with ''No. 3.''

The so-called ''No. three'' bore as a title *Appendix to the Malayan Miscellanies.* We find that it was printed in 1820, and we have the testimony of Raffles and Jack that there was no intention of publication at the actual time of printing. It is therefore correctly quoted as ''ined.'' in our dictionaries of plant-names, but the date should be 1820 and not 1823. A copy fell into the hands of Sir William Hooker who printed from it in his Companion to the Botanical Magazine, vol. 1, in 1835. As Sir William was able to draw on private letters from Jack to his family, it appears probable that he got the copy from which he printed also from the family.

This *Appendix to the Malayan Miscellanies* is quite distinct from Jack's third series of descriptions of Malayan Plants, which appeared as part 7 of the second volume of the *Malayan Miscellanies;* but in Singapore there are not the books wherefrom to ascertain how much Jack may have taken out of the Appendix for this other paper. He sent the descriptions of the Melastomas from the appendix to Lambert in a paper which was published after his death in the Transactions of the Linnean Society of London; and in that same periodical by the help of Jack's friends another series of his descriptions appeared.

Of the fascicle No. 2. I sent you the first three sheets before my departure for Nias; I now send the whole corrected and with additions from further observation. The part printed after my departure is full of errors.

Of Didymocarpus I have since discovered three additional species D. racemosa, D. elongata, and D. barbata.[275] I thought I had other two, but on lately finding their fruit I find it *baccati,* they must therefore belong to Cyrtandra. In D. barbata I have fully ascertained the seeds to be pendulous.

I have also discovered here Incarvillea parasitica Roxb.,[276] but without the fully ripe fruit. The seeds however do not seem to be winged and Roxb. does not say that they are. An ergo Nicarvillea?. It differs too much in habit to be a true Didymocarpus; what then is it to be, an novum genus ob stamina subexserta?

To Ixora pendula, I have now to add Ixora neriifolia, a very marked species.[277]

I have very lately found a new and very distinct Tacca with palmate leaves.[278]

I found Acrotrema which you may recollect pronouncing a Saxifragoideaster,[279] at Tappanooly with fruit further advanced but not ripe. The seeds are enveloped in an umbilical aril, and the capsules burst internally, but are not quite distinct. An affinior Rutaceis? I also found the stamina twenty in number.

---

[274] James Lumsdaine, See note No. 127 on p. 184.

[275] All these were described by Jack in his paper published posthumously, in the *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London.* The first stands; the second is now transferred to the genus *Didissandra* as *D. elongata* (vide note No. 256 p. 221 above); and the third is transferred to the genus *Chirita* becoming *C. Horsfieldii,* R. Br.

[276] *Aeschynanthus grandiora,* Spreng. But Jack probably misidentified his plant.

[277] *Ixora neriifolia* was described by Jack in the *Malayan Miscellanies,* ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 82. *I. pendula,* from Penang, had been described in vol. i. (1821), No. 5, p. 11.

[278] This *Tacca* was never described.

[279] Poetaster—a poor sort of poet: Saxifragoideaster—a poor Saxifrage-like thing. Jack evidently found it first in Penang.

Of Ternstrœmia I have two more species.[280] Roxburgh's T. trilocularis might be any or all of them and must I think be dropped. Query might not the trilocular Ternstrœmia be separated from those with two cells and few seeds? They appear to me to differ very widely, see a figure of the fruit in Mirbel's Elemens de Bot.

In Tetracera arborescens,[281] I fell into a mistake; the only one I had then seen was an old sturdy individual that had choked its support, and was then standing alone as an independent tree, whereupon I called it "arborescens," but on seeing a greater number since, I find it to be a real climber, though a very strong one. Ought therefore the specific name "arborescens" to be retained, or should it be changed? Had I known its real character at first, I certainly would not have so called it. It comes near to *T. euryandra*: the corolla is really three-petalled and the calyx five-sepalled! for the calyx is persistent and has ciliate leaflets, which is not the case with the corolla.

No. 3, will I think please you, but you must observe that though called an appendix to the Malayan Miscellanies it has been kept back till we hear what is done at home about the great flower. If it is brought forward in England, then this is to be suppressed and not published; if not, then this may be used in the event of the French getting hold of it, as a proof of priority of publication. So you understand that it is at present "inedita,"[282] dost thou comprehend.

Rafflesia, Dryobalanops, Sagus, and Nepenthes are subjects of no small interest. Tell me what you think of Stagmaria:[283]

---

280. These *Ternstroemias* would be *T. serrata* from Pulau Nias, and *T. acuminata* from Tappanooly.

281. *Tetracera arborescens,* Jack in Malayan Miscellanies, i. (1820) part 5, p. 244.

282. The apendix to the Malayan Miscellanies never became a publication.

283. Jack wrote a very full account of his *Stagmaria verniciflua* and put it into print, for the third part of his Descriptions of Malayan Plants. Then apparently he withdrew it; for as he tells us after the description had been printed in 1821 and when he was sending to Wallich a copy in what we must recognise as proof, a suspicion crossed his mind that Stagmaria instead of being new, was but *Gluta Benghas*: and it is quite evident that he had no intention of publishing unless he could make sure that *Stagmaria* and *Gluta* are distinct. With one or more copies out in print the description was reprinted in Hooker's Companion to the Botanical Magazine, i. (1835) p. 267, and so stands in books as if published by Jack. Wallich later mis-identified *Melanorrhœa Wallichii,* which he had collected in Singapore, as this Stagmaria of Jack. It is now accepted that *Stagmaria verniciflua* is *Gluta Benghas,* the well-known Renghas tree of Malaya.

The date of this pamphlet of Jack's cited as Descriptions of Malayan Plants, iii. has not been known with certainty; and now it appears that we must consider the date of the publication of *Stagmaria* not as 1823 but as 1835, and the place Hooker's Companion to the Botanical Magazine.

being a Pentandria Trigynia vel Monogynia it will be of use to you in Roxburgh, and you can introduce it either from Mal. Misc. generally or as my communication direct to you. Since printing it an idea has come into my head whether this may not be Linnæus's Gluta Benghas, erroneously for Renghas, which has been discovered by no one since Linnæus, see Lin. Rees. Cycl. The point can only be ascertained by a comparison with the specimen in the Linnæan Herbarium, and I have a great mind to send a specimen to Sir J. E. Smith for the purpose.

From the character of our Sago which must be admitted to be a true one I am inclined to suspect that S. Ruffia is not a true Sagus,[284] though its fruit is similarly imbricated. I observe in the catalogue that Roxb. has two species of Sagus, but I have not his description. Does he give a full account or had he ever their fructification.?

I am at present at a country residence of Sir Stamford's in the midst of forests and jungles, from which I am daily receiving treasures. Materials are accumulating so fast upon me that I should like to clear off arrears by getting out descriptions. When a thing is printed, it is in a manner done with, and you go on unincumbered. I have prepared a Monograph on East Insular Melastomæ containing 15 species, all new except two, one of which is Roxburgh's ?—*M. decemfida,* which is as good as new. I am thinking of sending it home for the Linnean or some such periodical publication,[285] but I wish first to hear something from the folks in England, particularly Brown. Has the Asiatic Society adopted the plan of printing their papers as they come in; if they have, I would not care to give them one. Do they deserve it?

I am anxious to learn how Roxb. Vol. ii comes on, that I may know what to send you for it.

I am making an abstract of Rumphius, for the purpose of inquiring for his plants by their native names, and in the course of it, have ascertained several of his hitherto unnamed species. such as his

Machilus medius, iii. t. 41. = *Laurus incrassata mihi;*
Arbor spicularum, iii. t. 106, quæ Euphorbiacea;[287]
Clypearia rubra, iii. t. 112:[288]

---

284. *Sagus Ruffia* is not a *Sagus.* See note No. 149 on p. 190.

285. This paper on Melastomaceæ appeared posthumously in the Transactions of the Linnean Society, vol. xiv. (1823).

286. Jack published his *Laurus incrassata* in the Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 33. It is referred to *Dehaasia microcarpa,* Blume, with a query, on the authority of Wallich in his Catalogue under No. 2589.

287. Described by Jack as *Enchidium verticillatum* in the Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 89, and now identified with *Trigonostemon indicus,* Muell. Ay.

288. Described by Jack in the Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 78 as *Inga Clypearia;* and now called *Pithecolobium Clypearia,* Benth.

Nidus germinans formicarum rubr. vi. t. 55. f. 2. quæ Rubiaceæ tetrandra.[289]

I look anxiously for the first arrival from Bengal, that I may know what you have been able to do for me towards procuring my Librarial desiderata,[290] particularly Roemer, Decandolle and the last of the Encyclopædia Smith: supp: I am not sure that I could not get some of these foreign works but by the way of Batavia, but I do not care to send the commission till I hear from you. I have advice of the dispatch from England of the later vols. of Rees Cycl. but they are not yet arrived. I see by some English advertisements that the work is brought to a close.

Have you heard yet of George's arrival in Copenhagen,[291] and received an answer from my father? I have not yet heard, none of my letters coming down so late. My best compliments to Mrs. Wallich and believe me always.

Yours sincerely,
William Jack.

Bencoolen, July 3rd, 1821.

My dear Wallich,

The Robarts and John Bull arrived here some time ago, but neither of them brought a line from you. Since that the Repulse has arrived direct from England and brought me a letter from Lambert in answer to mine forwarded by you. Strange that I should have later accounts by six months from home than from you in Bengal. He says, he looks for the specimens which you had promised to send, by which I infer that you had not been able to send them early. I fear that in leaving them for you to arrange and dispatch, I threw a greater labour on you than either of us reckoned on,[292] and I shall not be sorry to learn that they are still in your possession, without your having been able to command time to arrange them. I reckon that this letter is not unlikely to find you in Calcutta, and if my supposition in regard to the specimens is correct, I would, (when you have leisure, to look over them) wish to make an alteration in the original plan of dispatch, and put you in mind of a few former requests. I must in the first place tell you of some of my new plants and ideas. I believe you know that I had some idea of bringing out a fascicle of plants &c. at home with observations on Malayan Botany; in considering the subject, however I have greatly changed and enlarged my original plan until it has swelled to the design of a work for which I shall go on collecting materials in this country and not publish till I go home. Such is the present whim, whether ever to be executed is another question: but the result of the change of plan is, that I shall confine myself at present to detached papers as opportunities of printing them occur, and make my botanical collections and observations as extensive as I can, with the ultimate view of combining the whole into a Catalogue Raisonnée of Malayan Flora secundum ordines naturales with stupendous elucidations and illustrations!! I have gone through all my collections here, and arranged them in the most beautiful order, and mean to go through the whole again genus by genus, putting together all I know and have upon each, by which means every future acquisition will at once find its proper place. Now I find that I carried up and left with you many specimens of which I have no duplicates, and that several genera are in consequence less complete than they might have been. What I would therefore propose, in the event of your still having my collection, would be, instead of sending the whole home, to make the first and most perfect set for me, with all your own annotations and remarks, and to send home only duplicates. Thus I shall be enabled to complete my arrangement of all I ever collected, have the advantage of your observations, and in the case of those of which I may have kept duplicates, they can form part of the first dispatch I send from hence, and there is every probability of some direct occasions. It will also enable me to name a great many that I have since described or ascertained, before sending them away.

---

[289] Described by Jack in the Transactions of the Linnean Society of London xiv. (1823) p. 123 as *Myrmecodia tuberosa*.

[290] See notes No. 234 and 235 p. 217.

[291] Wallich's son, who was being sent to school. Apparently he was sent first to see Wallich's family in Denmark.

[292] See note 194 recording that plants from Jack were in Lambert's sale. As there stated these plants passed from Lambert's executors to the dealer Pamplin. Whither they went from Pamplin's shop is unknown: and it is quite impossible to tell if they were specimens sent direct by Jack or specimens left with Wallich for forwarding.

I hope you have not forgotten a request I formerly made for the Menang Kabau specimens[293] to be all returned: they were put up separately in a different kind of paper from the rest. I have held my tongue to Sir S. about their being left behind.

Let me also refer you to a list of desiderata given you in my letter of Feb. 1820, from on board ship.

There is another thing I must mention, I received the work of the writer[294] to Gynandria, but you must know that he did the whole of Gynandria for me before I left Calcutta, therefore when you set him to work again he must not begin where he left off, but at Ficus (F. comosa is the last written), where his previous copy stops. I could wish however that he would copy first Brown's remarks in the appendix to Tuckey's Narrative, which I am anxious to have. You see there is no end of my requests, but I must let you breathe before I come with more.

By the Repulse I also received a very kind letter from Mr. Colebrooke in which he says he has proposed me a member of the Geological Society, and given them something about Malay geology out of my letter. I do not recollect exactly what I wrote, but it must have been very short and slight. I wrote some time ago by a vessel that went home direct from Mr. Colebrooke and sent him a copy of the Agricultural Volume and of the two Botanical fascicles. In replying to his present letter I mean to make up a selection of Sumatran rocks, and shall give him some notes on Sumatran Geology, which if he likes he may give to the Society.

---

[293] Raffles' own collecting. See note 135 on p. 185.

[294] Writer = clerk.

I see there is a paper of his in the Linnean Society, on what I think of demonstrating the Cyrtandraceæ. In my last I think I told of my suspicion of the affinity of Cyrtandra and Didymocarpus; since that I have made an expedition to the top of the Sugar loaf,[295] a remarkable mountain in the interior of Bencoolen, in the course of which I found no less than 8 species of Cyrtandra in addition to those I had before, and two species of a new genus, of the same family which I call Loxonia. With these materials I have adventured to construct a new order[296] (Cyrtandraceæ from the oldest genus) an account of which I shall send to Lambert and get him to submit to Brown before presenting it, to see if it will stand muster. The order stands thus, Cyrtandra 11 species, Didymocarpus, 7, and Loxonia 2, exclusive of your Didymi. I shall send you (if I can get it copied) my characters of the order and genera, on which let me have your opinion. Note, Forster's figure of the fruit of Cyrtandra is utterly wrong.

I have huge suspicions concerning Incarvillea, but I cannot find its carpology any where. I have not yet got the fruit of Roxb.'s Incarvillea parasitica,[297] but as far as I can make out from the dried ovaries the septum appears to be complete and to separate at the sides from the valves, a character which would make it agree with Bignoniæ, but not with Didymocarpus.

In the course of my excursion to Sugar loaf, I made several interesting discoveries. Two new species of Melastoma which I shall send home[298] to be added to my former paper as M. *eximia*[299]

---

295. Jack's journey to the Sugar Loaf Mountain was described in the Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822) No. 1, pp. 1-22 and was reprinted in the Society's Papers relating to Indo-China, series 2, vol. ii. pp. 57-69. Raffles in a letter to Marsden under date July 12th, 1821, says "Dr. Jack and a few friends have just ascended the Sugar-loaf and were the first Europeans who reached the summit."

296. The paper containing Jack's account of the Cyrtandraceæ is to be found in the Transactions of the Linnean Society of London, vol. xiv. (1825). The number of species there described is exactly as given here.

297. *Incarvillea parasitica,* Wall. is *Aeschynanthus grandiflora,* Spreng. But see note No. 276.

298. The Melastomaceæ were also published in the Transactions of the Linnean Society of London, xiv. (1823).

299. *Melastoma eximium,* Jack, is *Medinilla eximia,* Blume.

and M. *alpestris,*[300] being from the very summit. I believe I told you of my having sent Brown a Monograph on E. Insular Melastomæ with an attempt at a new subdivision found on the similitude or dissimilitude of the alternate anthers .... It contains now 17 species all new except M. malabathrica and M. decemfida of Roxb., and Osbeckia tetrandra Roxb.,[301] which is my Melastoma glauca (certissime no Osbeckia). My other Alpine discoveries are a species of Rhododendron,[302] one of Vaccinium,[303] lots of Begoniæ,[304] an Impatiens,[305] a Lobelia,[306] a new Alpinia,[307] and a second species of a pentandrous genus I sent you with 3-valved, 1-celled capsules, related to the Pittosporeæ.[308] I am anxious to know what progress you are making in Roxburgh's Flora: the second volume ought to be nearly complete. I hope the next arrival will bring me the remaining part of it, or a copy complete.

You will probably ere this have received an answer from my father to your letter. Some fatality seems to have lately attended my correspondence, for I have not a line from home by any of the late opportunities. I am utterly at a loss to account for having none by the way of Bengal, tho' I suspect it to be some mistake of Calder's as to the sailing of the vessel.

My best regards to Mrs. Wallich and believe me always.

My dear Wallich,
Yours very truly,
William Jack.

July 18—Since I began this letter distresses have accumulated upon us and thrown a gloom over everything. The first visitation was the death of Sir S.'s eldest boy, one of the finest and loveliest children I ever saw. Scarcely had Sir S. and Lady R. begun to recover some degree of composure after such an affliction, than Capt. Auber fell ill, and was carried off after a few days by an apoplectic stroke. This has been a severe blow, not merely from

---

300. *Melastoma alpestre,* Jack is *Medinilla alpestris,* Blume.

301. *Osbeckia tetrandra,* Roxb. is no *Melastoma;* but in the subdivision of that genus it has become *Anplectrum glaucum,* Triana.

302. *Rhododendron malayanum,* Jack in Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 17.

303. *Vaccinium sumatranum,* Jack in Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 18.

304. *Begonia.* Eight species of *Begonia* are described together by Jack in the Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822); and one among them is said to come from the foot of Gunong Bengkoh, the Sugar Loaf Mountain. Some others are said to have come from the interior of Bencoolen and were possibly got on this journey.

305. The *Impatiens* was not described by Jack.

306. The *Lobelia* was not described by Jack.

307. An *Alpinia capitellata,* was described by Jack in the Malayan Miscellanies, ii. (1822) No. 7, p. 4 from the interior of Bencoolen, which is probably this.

308. *Celastrus pauciflorus,* Wall. For this plant see p. 246.

his relationship to Lady R., but from the great regard and esteem in which he was personally held. He was a man of most engaging manners and superior mind, and had embarked on an extensive speculation with every prospect of success, which is now destroyed by his premature death. He had been my companion on the trip to the Sugar loaf, and bore the fatigues of it much better than I did. It was a singular circumstance that the natives strongly dissuaded us from attempting the ascent as they said it would provoke the anger of the Dewas whose sanctum is on the summit. We of course laughed at such a reason, but they tried everything at the difficult parts of the ascent to induce us to turn back by representing it was impossible to get further. Our party consisted of four, three of us persevered in reaching the summit and one gave up half way. On our return the people declared one of the three, Auber, Salmond[309] and myself would be sure to die for having profaned the sacred spot; and now they are of course firmly persuaded of the special interposition of the offended spirit of the Mountain. The coincidence is certainly singular and the more so as Auber to all appearance was the least likely to have suffered of any of us. His death however does not appear to have had any connection with the trip or exposure in the course of it.

These unfortunate events have depressed all our spirits; Sir Stamford himself has not been well, and the fatigue and anxiety of looking after so many invalids has almost knocked me up. I wish all was quiet again that I might take my ease for a few days and get well by indulging the luxury of doing nothing. Sir S. as you may recollect in Calcutta, is a very bad patient, for there is no keeping up his spirits when he is ill.

I have employed some odd hours in overhauling my Hexandrous plants for you, and send you herewith for entry in Roxburgh, three species of Tradescantia,[310] three of Curculigo, four of Loranthus,[311] and a new genus, which pray tell me what you think of. If I find time before this vessel sails, I shall add some more, but I am much at a loss how far back or forward to go until I learn something of your progress in Roxburgh.

21st July—Another arrival from Calcutta, and not a line from you, or from Calder to whom I look for my Europe dispatches. This is very inexplicable and very provoking; other letters that I care not for three straws, arrive with perfect regularity, while the only ones that can be of real interest come *not.* There is still one chance, that Mackenzie may bring some. though they might as well have been put under a wild goose wing as given to him. I begin to abominate this place very grievously, however it is a nasty gloomy day, I am out of humour on many accounts, and there is no saying how I may alter my mind when the weather clears up and matters begin to go smoother. A man should never sit down to write a letter in the temperament I am now in, so I will have mercy on you, and spare you a jeremiad.

---

[309] Captain Francis Salmond was harbour master of Bencoolen and afterwards in Singapore (vide this Journal No. 65, 1913 p. 43). On one occasion having been sent to Palembang by Raffles, the Dutch carried him a prisoner to Batavia (Memoir of Sir Stamford Raffles, p. 394).

[310] Wallich apparently was unable to make use of Jack's descriptions of *Tradescantia* and *Curculigo*.

[311] *Loranthus cylindicus*, *L. patulus*, and perhaps *I. ferrugineus*, all of which Wallich inserted into his and Carey's revision of Roxburgh's Flora, together with another which cannot be identified even approximately.

I add descriptions of three more Araliæ[312] and my new genus of the same family.

W. Jack.

Bencoolen.
October 6th, 1821.

My dear Wallich,

I wrote you pretty fully in August by my cousin Andrew Henderson, but I cannot allow this opportunity which may be the last for some time to pass without sending you a few lines. I am still without any account from you, nor do I know whether this will find you in Calcutta, though I think it most probable it will. Mackenzie arrived here some time ago but brought no letters at all, so that I cannot help thinking there must be some strange mistake which prevents my hearing by the direct arrivals from Bengal. The monsoon is now about to change, and I hope abundance of communications this season will recompense the disappointments of the last. Mr. Palmer[313] is here on his way up from Java, with which he seems to be highly delighted. We are going on in our usual quiet way; plants and stones, the order of the day. I have drawn up a short paper for Mr. Colebrooke on the Geology of Sumatra, giving him an outline of our present information on the subject. This may serve as an inaugural dissertation to the Society as they have dubbed me a Member. By the bye, will you undertake a trifling commission for me, which is, to find out the amount of subscription to the Geological Society, and get a remittance for the sum from Calder, which you can forward to Mr. Colebrooke on my account the first time you write him. I believe it is usual for Members of these societies abroad to pay at once a certain sum in lieu of all future payments, which is far the best mode for us in India, and saves all after trouble. So pray let the remittance be to that amount and effect. I would sooner have been proposed for the Linnean, as being more in my way, but that may come in good time. I told you of my having sent Lambert a paper on the Cyrtandraceæ, I have since found a new plant of that family which will form a new genus sub nomine, Aeschynanthus,[314] and to which I think Incarvillea parasitica, Roxb. will be properly referrable. Mine has axillary crimson flowers, exsert stamina, four with the rudiment of a fifth. Capsule strictly pseudo 4 locular *more* Didymocarpi, but the seeds with an arista or long hair at each end, and having something like an apophysis above. I shall send the account of this additional gentleman to Lambert to complete his paper.[315] I am putting together some of the most interesting of my new genera, and I think I shall send them to Mr. Colebrooke through you, so that they may have the benefit of your corrections and remarks. They cannot be ready in time for this occasion, but I shall try and have them ready in case of another offering. Proposals are circulating here for a second volume of the Malayan Miscellanies to be published by the missionaries if they get a sufficiency of subscriptions; if they do, I shall give them some plants to help them out. When it will be finished is a matter of great doubt in Mr. Ward's[316] hands, for he is the laziest animal I ever met with, and one of the stupidest. If such are the people we are to meet in heaven, Lord help me out of it. Did you know our junior surgeon here Lancaster, who died lately; he was an odd and in some things not a very agreeable man, but is a great loss to the settlement. A good for nothing chap (a friend of Calder's by the bye) Mr. MacCalman has been put in temporarily but there is no wish to keep him here for good. If you know any person, a married man in particular, who would like a quiet settled situation of 650 rupees a month it might be worth applying for. I should wish him to be junior to me. McCalman is a true highlander, with all the captious jealousy and tenaciousness of his countrymen, among whom such qualities are sometimes to be found, and has not contrived to make himself agreeable here. He brought a letter to me from Calder, in consequence of which I shewed such attention as was in my power, but it does not appear to have come up to his expectations. I wonder whether Calder is particularly interested about him, or whether he is merely a Scotch consignment to the house. I mention this that you may not accidentally commit me with Calder, in case the subject happens to come between you.

---

[312] These cannot be identified.

[313] Mr. John Palmer, a merchant of Calcutta, called "the prince of merchants" (vide MacDonald's "Narrative" p. 128) of the firm of Palmer and Co., active in many enterprises. Mr. Palmer's firm were agents to Sir Stamford Raffles, and to Said Husein, father of the pretender to the throne of Acheen, as well as to the Dutch and therefore came into opposition with Raffles. Mr. Palmer was influential enough to get for the Acheen pretender a pension after the trouble had been dispersed: he was also influential enough to get a merchant sent as the Company's agent to Siam, whereby the Company was put to great expense and their possible trade diverted to the agent. In partnership with Sir William Rumbold he was in those unscrupulous banking transactions in the Nizam's dominions which brought down the Court of Directors upon the government in India and drove Lord Hastings into retirement. In 1828 the firm unable to reap in the exorbitant interest that they had counted on, went bankrupt. (Vide Anderson's Acheen, London, 1840 p. 78 and Marshman's History of India London, 1871, i. p. 371).

---

[314] *Aeschynanthus* was described by Jack with two species—*A. radicans* and *A. volubilis*. It would be the second to which he refers here.

[315] Lambert did as desired: after incorporating the new genus, he communicated Jack's paper on Cyrtandraceæ to the Linnean Society. Brown had that on Melastomaceæ; and Jack sent as he here proposes the third paper to Colebrooke.

[316] See note No. 160, p. 192.

I have not time for more so shall only add my best regards to Mrs. Wallich and ever my dear Wallich.

Yours very truly,
William Jack.

P.S. Don't forget the remittance to Mr. Colebrooke.

Bencoolen,
October 26th, 1821.

My dear Wallich.

I write a few lines by this opportunity, which is a very circuitous one, merely to say that there will be no occasion for your troubling yourself further about the request I made in my last as to the subscription for the Geological Society, to be remitted to Mr. Colebrooke. I have since received a letter from the secretary of the Society announcing my election and requiring the payment of ten guineas admission fee, and have in consequence written to my father to settle the account. A remittance from Bengal will therefore be unnecessary. So if you have spoken to Calder on the subject, countermand it. Two vessels have arrived from Bengal without bringing a line from you, but Hardwicke mentions that you are not expected down[317] till December.

He has been making some sad piece of humbug to the Asiatic Society[318] on presenting the proceedings of the Agricultural Society, which would have been better spared, tho' no doubt well intended. Writing and eloge are not his forte.

At present I am literally doing nothing, being neither very well[319] nor in very good spirits, so excuse a brief scrawl.
And believe me always,

My dear Wallich,
Yours very truly,
William Jack.

---

[317] From Nepal. Wallich left the Nepal valley on November 7th, 1821, and reached Patna on the 22nd.

[318] Asiatic Society in Calcutta, later Asiatic Society of Bengal.

[319] The Proceedings of the Agricultural Society of Bencoolen, see note No. 219 p. 211.

Jack's letters to Wallich thus end eight months before his death with an admission that he was ill. He apparently had not complained before to Wallich, but in a letter home dated April 8th, 1821, he told his parents that he had recovered from another attack of lung trouble. His illnesses added to the sadness of that year when Raffles' three children died. Jack himself seems to have been ill from this date continuously, the lung trouble recurring; but according to Raffles acute Malaria carried him off which was contracted on a trip to Mocomoco. He took a voyage to Java in the hope that it might place him on the road to recovery; but it did not; and he returned to Bencoolen worse. As a last resort he was put on board another vessel for the Cape. From what Raffles wrote it appears that he was landed again dying, and was buried in the Settlement.

This is how Raffles wrote (i.) on September 4th, 1822, "My inestimable friend, Jack, still remains in a very dangerous state, and is obliged to embark in the Layton for the Cape. In him I lose my right hand," and again (ii.) September 14th, "I have very little hope for him; I shall feel his loss most severely, both as a private friend and as an able assistant," and yet again (iii.) September 15th. "We were to have embarked this morning for Singapore, but the wind has proved foul; and it was ordained that we should remain another day, to bury our dear and invaluable friend, William Jack. Poor fellow! a finer head or heart there never was; and whether as a bosom friend, or as a scientific assistant, he was to me invaluable; he had been long ill and returned from Java about a fortnight ago, after an unsuccessful visit for change of air: we embarked him yesterday in the Layton for the Cape; and he died this morning before the ship weighed her anchor."

In a letter to Wallich telling him of the loss Raffles says that he died at Government House: if so he was landed again to die. He was but twenty-seven.

He was unmarried; and Buckley's one-time speculation that Jack's was among the children taken home in 1824 by Sir Stamford, is without foundation (vide Anecdotal History i. p. 10).

Wallich received the news of his death at Singapore on October 10th, 1822, where he had arrived on a voyage for his health. His letter of condolence to the parents is reprinted in the companions to the Botanical Magazine. It appears that he had had no premonition of the approaching end: and that Jack's last letter to Wallich here printed was in reality the last written.

The following lines written by Raffles under the date of February 4th, 1824, give rather histrionically the fate of Jack's collections:—

"We (that is Sir Stamford's party) embarked on the 2nd instant in the Fame, and sailed at daylight for England with a fair wind, and every prospect of a quick and comfortable passage.

The ship was everything that we could wish; and having closed my charge here (Bencoolen) much to my satisfaction, it was one of the happiest days of my life. We were, perhaps, too happy; for in the evening came a sad reverse. Sophia (Lady Raffles) had just gone to bed and I had thrown off half my clothes, when a cry of fire! fire! roused us from our calm content, and in five minutes the whole ship was in flames. I ran to examine whence the flames principally issued, and found that the fire had its origin immediately under our cabin. Down with the boats. Where is Sophia? Here. A rope to the side. Lower Lady Raffles. Give her to me, says one. I'll take her, says the Captain. Throw the gunpowder overboard. It cannot be got at; it is in the magazine close to the fire. Stand clear of the powder. Skuttle the water casks. Water! water! Where's Sir Stamford? Come into the boat, Nilson! Nilson, come into the boat. Push off push off. Stand clear of the after part of the ship.

All this passed much quicker than I can write it; we pushed off, and as we did so the flames burst out of our cabin-window, and the whole of the after part of the ship was in flames; the masts and sails now taking fire, we moved to a distance sufficient to avoid the immediate explosion; but the flames were now coming out of the main hatchway; and seeing the rest of the crew, with the Captain, still on board we pulled back to her under the bows, so as to be more distant from the powder. As we approached we percieved that the people on board were getting into a boat on the opposite side. She pushed off; we hailed her: Have you all on board? Yes, all, save one. Who is he? Johnson sick in his cot. Can we save him?—No, impossible. The flames were issuing from the hatchway; at this moment the poor fellow, scorched, I imagine, by the flames, roared out most lustily, having run upon the deck. I will go for him, says the Captain .... he then pulled under the bowsprit of the ship and picked the poor fellow up. .... The Captain fortunately had a compass .... and .... to make the best of our misfortune we availed ourselves of the light from the ship to steer a tolerably good course towards the shore. She continued to burn till about midnight, when the saltpetre which she had on board (the powder had blown up towards nine o'clock) took fire, ... illuminating the horizon in every direction to the extent of not less than fifty miles. She burnt and continued to flame in this style for about an hour or two, when we lost sight of the object in a cloud of smoke. .... At daylight we recognised the coast and Rat Island. About eight or nine we saw a ship standing to us from the Roads: they had seen the flames on shore, and sent out vessels to our relief. They gave us a bucket of water, and we took the Captain on board as a pilot. The wind however, was adverse, and we could not reach the shore, and took to the ship where we got some refreshment and shelter from the sun. About two o'clock we landed safe and sound. ....

The loss, I have to regret, beyond all, is my papers and drawings,—all my notes and observations, with memoirs and collections, sufficient for a full and ample history, not only of Sumatra, but of Borneo and almost every other island of note in these seas;—my intended account of the establishment of Singapore, the history of my own administration; eastern grammars, dictionaries and vocabularies;—and last, not least, a grand map of Sumatra, on which I had been employed since my arrival here .... This however was not all; all my collections in natural history—all my splendid collection of drawings, upwards of two thousand in number, with all the valuable papers and notes of my friends, Arnold and Jack; and to conclude I will merely notice, that there was scarce an unknown animal, bird, beast, or fish, or an interesting plant, which we had not on board: a living tapir, a new species of tiger, splendid pheasants, etc., domesticated for the voyage; we were in short, in this respect, a perfect Noah's Ark. All, all has perished; but thank God, our lives have been spared. ....

The fire had its origin in the store room, ... and was occasioned by the shameful carelessness of the steward going with a naked light to draw off brandy from a cask which took fire."

JACK'S HERBARIUM,

as far as recorded in various places.

Sources of information:—

i. the above letters to Wallich;

ii. Descriptions of Malayan plants, in the Malayan Miscellanies, Vol. 1 (1820), number, 1, pp. 1-26,* reprinted in the Companion to the Botanical Magazine, 1 (1835),* and again with rearrangement by Griffith in the Calcutta Journal of Natural History, Vol. IV pp. 1-62, 159-231, 305-374, and without rearrangement in the Miscellaneous Papers relating to Indo-China and the Indian Archipelago, Second series, Vol. 2 (1887) pp. 269-222. See letters dated 27th Feb., 1820 (p. 195) and 19th Aug., 1820 (p. 211).

iii. Descriptions of Malayan Plants, in the Malayan Miscellanies, Vol. 1 (1820) No. 5 pp. 1-48: reprinted in the Companion to the Botanical Magazine and the Calcutta Journal of Natural History: and also without rearrangement in the Miscellaneous Papers relating to Indo-China and the Indian Archipelago, pp. 223-228. See letters dated 19th Sept. 1820 and 1st May, 1821 (pp. 220 and 227).

---

* Not available for consultation in Singapore.

iv. Descriptions of Malayan Plants, in the Malayan Miscellanies, Vol. 2, (1822) number 7, pp. 1-96, with four supplementary pages affixed in front: reprinted along with the above two in the Companion to the Botanical Magazine and the Calcutta Journal of Natural History: and without rearrangement in the Miscellaneous Papers relating to Indo-China and the Indian Archipelago pp. 246-295. See letter dated 1st May, 1821 (p. 227).

v. Descriptions of plants communicated to Wallich for his and Carey's Revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica, published 1820-1824. Jack seems to have had proof sheets of part submitted or lent to him (letter dated 9th Sept. 1820). The descriptions were extracted by Griffith and printed in the Calcutta Journal of Natural History along with the above.

vi. Suppressed or unpublished descriptions, recovered by Sir William Hooker from printed advanced sheets entitled like the three above, Descriptions of Malayan Plants, Appendix to the Malayan Miscellanies, and reprinted in the Companion to the Botanical Magazine, Vol. (1835).

vii. Wallich's Catalogue of the Plants in the Honourable East India Company's Herbarium, lithographed from 1828 to 1832 and Sir Joseph Hooker's Flora of British India (1872-1897) containing the elaboration of these.

viii.-x. Jack's three papers published by the Linnean Society of London in the fourteenth volume of their Transactions, (1823), viz.

On the Malayan Species of Melastoma, pp. 1-22.

On Cyrtandraceæ, a new Natural Order of Plants, pp. 23-45.

Account of Lansium and some other Genera of Malayan Plants, pp. 114-130.

DILLENIACEAE.

Acrotrema costatum, Jack. A common plant in the Waterfall Valley, Penang, where Jack found it. He described it in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 36. Later it was found by him at Tapanuli, Sumatra (letters p. 228). Acrotrema was at the time a new genus,—a herb in an otherwise woody order; and Jack did not recognise its affinity. After consulting Wallich, he left it open.

Tetracera arborescens, Jack, was found near the shores of the Bay of Tapanuli, Sumatra, and described in Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 145. It seems (letters p. 229) to have been obtained again, probably at Tapanuli.

Wormia pulchella, Jack, found at Natal, Sumatra, and described in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 76.

Wormia excelsa, Jack, found at Bencoolen, Sumatra, and described in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 69.

ANONACEAE.

Uvaria purpurea, Blume, was collected by Jack in Penang, whence he sent specimens to Wallich (Wall. Cat., No. 6485). It is a coast plant of Penang.

Uvaria hirsuta, Jack, was found in Penang, and described in Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 46. We find (letters p. 197) an enquiry addressed to Wallich for the characters of *U. pilosa,* Roxb., which proves to be the same species.

NYMPHAEACEAE.

Nymphaea stellata, Willd., the common water-lily of Penang was obtained by Jack there in April or May, 1819, and its variety cyanea was recognised by him among a few (letters p. 175) ; and its variety cyanea was rcognised by him among a few plants brought from Acheen by Raffles (letters p. 174).

Nelumbium speciosum, Willd., was found by Jack in Penang (letters p. 152).

VIOLACEAE.

Alsodeia sp. may perhaps be what Jack refers to in a letter of 19th Sept. 1820 (letters p. 219) as a Penang plant.

BIXACEAE.

Flacourtia inermis, Roxb., (*F. Rukam,* Zoll. & Moritzi), was described by Jack from Penang, where it is cultivated, and also from Sumatra in Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 25.

HYPERICACEAE.

Cratoxylon formosum, Benth. and Hook. f., was described by Jack from Sumatra as *Elodea formosa* (Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 24).

Cratoxylon sumatranum, Blume, was described by Jack from Telok Dalam in Pulau Nias as *Elodea sumatrana* (Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 22). He mentions it in a letter to Wallich (letters p. 226).

GUTTIFERAE.

Garcinia Mangostana, Linn., is mentioned in Jack's letters as cultivated in Penang (letters p. 152) and was sent by him alive to Calcutta from Bencoolen (letters p. 217).

Calophyllum sp. from Acheen, brought thence by Raffles (letters p. 174).

TERNSTROEMIACEAE.

Adinandra dumosa, Jack, was described from Sumatra as "abundant in thickets" and in various parts of the Malay Islands (Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 50).

Adinandra sylvestris, Jack is named in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, affixed sheet iii) as having been obtained in Moco-moco, Sumatra.

Saurauja tristyla, DC., was described by Jack from Penang as *Ternstroemia pentapetala* (Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 40).

Saurauja sp. was described from Salumah, Sumatra, as *Ternstroemia cuspidata* (Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 28).

Ternstroemia serrata, Jack, was obtained on Pulau Nias and described in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 27. It would seem to be one of the Ternstroemias referred to in his letters p. 229).

Ternstroemia acuminata, Jack, was described from Tapanuli in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 26, and would seem to be referred to in his letters (p. 229).

Cleyera rubiginosa, was described by Jack from Sumatra as *Ternstroemia rubiginosa* (Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 39).

Archytaea Vahlii, Choisy, was collected by Jack at Rhio (letters p. 181): but Wallich distributed specimens as Jack's from Penang, possibly erroneously (Wall. Cat. No. 4866).

DIPTEROCARPACEAE.

Dryobalanops Camphora, Gaertn., grows freely near Tapanuli, Sumatra, and thence Mr. Prince, the Resident, had supplied information about it to Roxburgh, together with the foliage. Living plants and seeds from the same source were sent to Colebrooke, and served for a description with a plate published by the Asiatic Society in 1816 (Asiatick Researches xii., p. 538). In 1819 Mr. Prince got the flowers and sent them to Raffles, who put them in Jack's hands (letters p. 182). Jack there-upon drew up a description which went into print in the suppressed part of his Descriptions (see above, item No. vi. of the sources).

MALVACEAE.

Gossypium brasiliense, Macf., the Pernambuco cotton, is reported as cultivated experimentally in Penang in a letter (p. 169).

STERCULIACEAE.

Sterculia laevis, Wall., is recorded by Jack as having been found in Penang, but under the wrong name of *S. coccinea,* Roxb. (Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 20).

Sterculia rubiginosa, Vent., is recorded by Jack as having been found in Penang, but under the wrong name of *S. angustifolia,* Roxb. (Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 21). It is not a common tree in Penang; and Curtis' only locality is Penara Bukit.

Pterospermum Jackianum, Wall., is founded on specimens collected by Jack in Penang (Wall. Cat. No. 1164).

TILIACEAE.

Grewia paniculata, Roxb., was found by Jack in Penang, who adhering to Smith's name of *Microcos tomentosa* described it under this in Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 13. He refers to the plant in his letters (p. 189).

Grewia Microcos, Linn., was obtained by Jack from Car Nicobar, and briefly diagnosed as a new species under the name of *Microcos glabra* in Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 14.

Elaeocarpus nitidus, Jack, which occurs in the Waterfall valley, Penang, was found and described by Jack (Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 41). Under one of his early letters he sent specimens of an Elaeocarp to Wallich (p. 165) but it is impossible to say which.

Elaeocarpus Jackianus, Wall., is a not-uncommon Singapore plant, of which Jack sent specimens to Wallich (Wall. Cat. No. 2679), and which Jack described as *Monocera ferruginea* (Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 44).

Elaeocarpus petiolatus, Wall., is described by Jack from Penang as *Monocera petiolata* in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 43.

LINACEAE.

Ixonanthes icosandra, Jack, was found in the interior of Sumatra behind Bencoolen, and described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 53. Writing of it in 1872, Sir Joseph Hooker pointed out that there are differences between Jack's description and the tree as we know it in Malaya (Flora of British India i. p. 416). It is therefore desirable that someone should search in the region from which Jack got his plant for something which would explain the divergence.

Ixonanthes reticulata, Jack, was found at Tapanuli, Sumatra, and described in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 51.

GERANIACEAE.

Impatiens sp. An Impatiens was found by Jack on his journey to Gunong Bengkok, behind Bencoolen, (letters p. 234).

RUTACEAE.

Glycosmis pentaphylla, Correa, var. **macrophylla,** was found by Jack in Penang and described under the name of *Chionotria rigida* in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 54.

Micromelum hirsutum, Oliv., was sent to Wallich from Penang, and distributed by him without a name in Wall. Cat. No. 8516.

Murraya exotica, Linn., type, and the variety **paniculata** were both described by Jack, who held them specifically distinct: he wrote as if he had found the type himself, but not quite definitely about the variety, though familiar with its usefulness to the kris-maker (Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 31). In his letters (p. 189) he refers to the species without adding to what he published later. At a later date (letters p. 220) he explains that *Murraya sumatrana,* Roxb., is the same as the variety *paniculata.*

Clausena excavata, Burm., appears to be the plant which Jack names in his letters (p. 162) as having been found in Penang. It is common near the coast there.

SIMARUBACEAE.

Brucea sumatrana, Roxb., is mentioned in Jack's letters as having been found at Bencoolen (p. 188).

Eurycoma longifolia, Jack, was found in Singapore and in Sumatra at Tapanuli and Bencoolen. It was described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 45. Jack placed it in Connaraceae.

OCHNACEAE.

Gomphia sumatrana, Jack, was described from Sumatra no locality being named (Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 29).

Euthemis leucocarpa, Jack, a shrub common on the sandy parts of the Singapore coast, was found by Jack and described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 16. In his letters to Wallich (pp. 179 and 204) he mentions it. And his recognition of it at once as belonging to a new genus shows his great perspicacity.

Euthemis minor, Jack, was found along with the last in Singapore, and described with it (Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 18). Though common on Pulau Battam, south of Singapore, it has only once been found in recent years on Singapore island.

MELIACEAE.

Melia excelsa, Jack, was obtained in Penang (letters p. 165) and described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 12. Wallich received specimens which became No. 1253 in his Catalogue. No Melia answering the description has been found recently; and everything considered, it is impossible that Jack's plant belonged to the genus.

Sandoricum indicum, Cav., was got by Jack in Penang, and distributed by Wallich as No. 1249 of his Catalogue. It is the cultivated Sentol.

Aglaia odorata, Lour., is a common tree of cultivation in Malaya, as Jack records (Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 32).

Aglaia sp. is the *Lansium montanum* of Jack found in the forests near Bencoolen (Trans. Linn. Soc., xiv. p. 117). Rumpf had used the combination; and Jack believed that he had got Rumpf's plant. The name *Lansium montanum* is sometimes referred to Steudel.

Lansium domesticum, Jack, is the cultivated Langsat which Jack described in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 115. He defined a variety *aqueum* (L. aqueum), a superior race. In his letters (p. 158) he names it as the "Dookoo."

CELASTRACEAE.

Paracelastrus bivalvis, Miq. (*Microtropis bivalvis,* Wall.), was obtained by Jack in Penang and described as *Celastrus bivalvis* (Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 19). He mentions it in his letters (pp. 165 and 218), first as related to Celastrus and then as *Celastrus bivalvis.*

Celastrus pauciflora, Wall., is the Pittosporea? serrulata of Jack from Penang which Griffith named *Pittosporum? serrulatum* in the Calcutta Journal of Natural History, iv., 1844, p. 195.

Celastrus lucida, Wall., is a plant, not a Celastrus, collected by Jack in Penang and distributed under this name by Wallich (Cat. No. 4318).

Hippocratea, sp. near *H. obtusifolia,* Roxb. is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 221) as having been found in Pulau Nias.

Salacia sp. Jack found on Pulau Nias a Salacia which in his letters is called *Johnia sumatrana,* and would be one of the two species referred to, without name, in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 92.

Salacia sp. Jack had sent to Wallich a species of Salacia under the name of *Hypsagyne* (letters 219 and 221) which was obtained at Tapanuli earlier than the Salacia just named. It may have been the second Salacia mentioned in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 92. Of these two species the one, he wrote, agrees very well both with *S. chinensis* and with *Johnia salacioides* (which is *Salacia Roxburghii,* Wall.) ; and the other is nearly related to *Johnia coromandeliana,* Roxb. (which is *Salacia prinoides,* DC.)

AMPELIDACEAE.

Vitis racemifera, Jack, was described from Sumatra in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 94.

Vitis angustifolia, Wall. is recorded by Jack from Bencoolen (letters p. 208) under Roxburgh's name of *Cissus angustifolia.*

SAPINDACEAE.

Cardiospermum sp. is mentioned as occurring at Acheen (letters p. 174).

Erioglossum edule, Blume, is the *Sapindus rubiginosus* of Roxburgh under which name Jack records its cultivation in Penang (Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 11).

Lepidopetalum Jackianum, Radlk. (*Cupania Jackiana,* Hiern in Flora Brit. India, i. p. 678) is a Car Nicobar plant which Wallich distributed as *Connarus? Jackianus* (Wall. Cat., No. 8552).

Nephelium lappacem, Linn., the Rambutan, was described by Jack from Penang and elsewhere (Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 16). He mentions it in his letters (p. 154).

ANACARDIACEAE.

Mangifera quadrifida, Jack, was found in Penang, and diagnosed in a letter to Wallich (p. 152). Afterwards it was described from Jack's MS. in Carey and Wallich's revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica ii. p. 440.

Mangifera foetida, Lour., was found by Jack in Penang letters p. 152) and described along with the last from Penang and Sumatra, etc. Specimens collected by Jack were distributed by Wallich (Cat. No. 8488).

Mangifera caesia, Jack, was found by Jack in Sumatra, perhaps at Bencoolen (letters p. 216), and described along with the above two (p. 441).

Gluta Benghas, Linn., was found by Jack at Natal and Moco-moco in Sumatra, etc. He described it in print as *Stagmaria verniciflua,* but withdrew the description from publication, for as pointed out in his letters (p. 229) he found out the identity. Sir William Hooker published Jack's name-Stagmaria—and the description in the Companion to the Botanical magazine, i. (1835) p. 267.

SABIACEAE.

Meliosma nitida, Blume, is the *Millingtonia sumatrana* described by Jack from Pulau Nias (Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 36).

CONNARACEAE.

Agelaea vestita, Hook. f. Wallich distributed this plant from Jack's collecting in Singapore as No. 8535; and on p. 197 of his letters he mentions having got three species of its order,—the Connaraceae,—calling them Connarus, in Singapore, the specimens of which were left with Wallich.

Rourea concolor, Blume, is thought to be the *Cnestis mimosoides* described by Jack from Tapanuli, Sumatra, (Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 44).

Connarus ferrugineus, Jack, was found in Penang. It was to it probably that Jack applied the name *Connarus paniculata,* Roxb., in his letters (p. 163). But after visiting Calcutta in 1826 he used the name *Connarus ferrugineus* (letters p. 197) and described it in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 37.

Connarus semidecandrus, Jack, occurs in Penang; but Jack did not detect it there. He described it from the west coast of Sumatra (Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 39). It would further seem to be one of the species obtained in Singapore, which are referred to in his letters (p. 197): for Wallich's Catalogue No. 8538 in part is it.

Connarus grandis, Jack, was described from Tapanuli, Sumatra, in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 40.

Connarus villosus, Jack, was described from Sumatra in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 38.

Connarus lucidus, Jack, was described from Sumatra in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 41.

Cnestis longifolia, is a name used by Jack in his letters (p. 197) for something that he got in Singapore and at Tapanuli.

Cnestis emarginata, Jack, is a plant described from Bencoolen in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 43.

Cnestis florida, Jack, is a plant from Pulau Nias and Sumatra described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 43.

LEGUMINOSAE.

Millettia atropurpurea, Benth. This common tree was collected by Jack in Penang, and Wallich distributed the specimens under the name of *Pongamia atropurpurea* (Wall. Cat. No. 5910).

Mezoneuron sumatranum, W. & A., was found by Jack at Bencoolen, and is referred to under Roxburgh's name of *Caesalpinia sumatrana.* From the way in which Jack puts a question mark after the word Caesalpinia, it seems that he suspected Roxburgh to have got the genus wrong (letter p. 188).

Cassia alata, Linn., is quite likely to have been the plant to which Jack refers in his first letter from Penang (p. 155).

Saraca declinata, Miq., was described as *Jonesia declinata* by Jack from Sumatra in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 74. A reference in his letters (p. 216) indicates Bencoolen as probably the locality where it was found.

Afzelia retusa, Kurz, appears to be the Singapore plant referred to in Jack's letters (p. 180).

Bauhinia emarginata, Jack, is described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 75 from Sumatra.

Bauhinia bidentata, Jack, is described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 76 as from the forests of Malaya. In his letters (p. 165) he refers to it as occuring in Penang.

Pithecolobium lobatum, Benth., was described by Jack under the name of *Mimosa Jiringa* in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 14. He collected it in Penang, and records Malacca as an additional locality, perhaps from Farquhar's collection of drawings. He discusses it in his letters to Wallich (pp. 159 and 165).

Pithecolobium Clypearia, Benth., was described by Jack in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 78 as *Inga Clypearia,* from Bencoolen. It is mentioned in his letters as found also in Penang (p. 165) and recognised by him as one of Rumpf's plants (p. 230).

Pithecolobium bubalinum, Benth., is described by Jack in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 77, as *Inga bubalina.*

ROSACEAE.

Rubus alceaefolius, Poir., is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 152) as a Penang plant.

Parinarium costatum, Blume, was described by Jack from Sumatra but without any locality in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 67, under the name of *Petrocarya sumatrana.*

Parinarium Jackianum, Benth., was described by Jack without locality in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 66, under the name of *Petrocarya excelsa.*

RHIZOPHORACEAE.

Rhizophora mucronata, Lamk., is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 175) as a Penang plant.

Bruguiera gymnorhiza, Lamk., is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 175) as a Penang plant.

Bruguiera caryophylloides, Blume, is described as *Rhizophora caryophylloides* in the Malay. Misc. 8. No. 5. p. 34, from Penang and Singapore. It is also mentioned in his letters (p. 154) as a Penang plant.

Anisophyllaea trapezoidalis, Baill., is described from Singapore, Sumatra and elsewhere under the name of *Haloragis disticha* in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 19.

COMBRETACEAE.

Lumnitzera coccinea, W. & A., is described by Jack in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 57 as *Pyrrhantthus littoreus* occurring in the Malayan Peninsula and Sumatra. In his letters he writes of finding it in Penang (p. 165) and on the Silebar river, Sumatra (p. 205).

Calycopteris floribunda, Lamk., is mentioned as a Penang plant in his letters (p. 184).

Quisqualis densiflora, Wall., was described by Jack under the name of *Sphalanthus confertus* in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 55, no locality being given.

MYRTACEAE.

Leptospermum sp. is the identification given of Jack's *Glaphyria sericea* from Pulau Pinang on the west coast of Sumatra (not the British Penang). Jack described it in Trans. Linn. Soc., xiv. p. 129. By an oversight it was included in the Flora of British India.

Leptospermum sp. would be the identification of his *Glaphyria nitida* from Gunong Bengkok, described in the same place p. 128 and in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 6.

Melaleuca leucadendron, Linn., is named by Jack in his letters (p. 160) as obtained in Penang; he uses Roxburgh's name *M. Cajuputi.*

Rhodamia trinervia, Blume. It appears that Jack had obtained from Sumatra this plant and also its variety *spectabilis*. He refers to them in his letters (p. 222) and in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 48.

Eugenia Jambos, Linn., was collected by Jack in Penang; and Wallich distributed the specimens as No. 3615 of his Catalogue.

Eugenia caryophyllata, Thunbg., was mentioned by Jack as cultivated in Penang (letters p. 152).

Barringtonia speciosa, Forst., is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 174) as a plant of Acheen.

Barringtonia racemosa, Roxb., is mentioned in Jack's letters p. 175) as a plant of Penang.

Barringtonia macrostachya, Kurz, was described by Jack (Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 47) as *Careya macrostachya,* from Penang.

MELASTOMACEAE.

Melastoma malabathricum, Linn., attracted Jack's attention in Penang during his first days there (letters p. 152); and afterwards he paid great attention to the order to which it belongs. In describing it in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv, p. 4, he gives the localities as "Sumatra and the Malay islands." Under *M. malabathricum* he included the very closely allied *M. polyanthum,* and appears to have described the latter rather than *M. malabathricum* under the name of "malabathricum."

Melastoma polyanthum, Blume, appears to be the Sumatran part of Jack's *M. malabathricum.*

Melastoma obvolutum, Jack, described in Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 3, is sometimes referred to *M. malabathricum;* sometimes mentioned apart. Jack got it at Tapanuli, Sumatra.

Melastoma erectum, Jack, was described in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 5 from Tapanuli, Sumatra; but is doubtfully distinct from the above three.

Melastoma saguineum, Sims, was described by Jack in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 6 from Penang, under Roxburgh's name of *M. decemfidum.*

Medinilla alpestris, Blume, was described by Jack from Gunong Bengkok, Sumatra, in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 28 under the name of *Melastoma alpestre.* In his letters (p. 234) he mentions it.

Medinilla rubicunda, Blume, was described by Jack from Singapore (Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 18) as *Melastoma rubicundum.*

Medinilla eximia, Blume, was described by Jack from Gunong Bengkok, Sumatra (Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 17) as *Melastoma eximium.* In his letters (p. 233) he mentions it.

Allomorphia exigua, Blume, was described in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 16 from Penang as *Melastoma exiguum.*

Sonerila erecta, Jack, was found in Penang (letters pp. 160, 162) and described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 7.

Sonerila paradoxa, Naud., was found by Jack in Penang (letters p. 162) and described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 9, as *Sonerila moluccana,* Roxb.

Sonerila heterophylla, Jack, was obtained at Tapanuli and at other places on the west coast of Sumatra; and it was described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 16.

Sonerila spp. Two species are named (letters p. 186) as having been obtained by Raffles on his Menangkabau trip: but for some reason Jack did not refer to them again in his later writings, probably because they were left with Wallich (vide p. 232).

Phyllagathis rotundifolia, Blume, was collected by Jack in the Musi country which is behind Bencoolen and was described by him under the name of *Melastoma rotundifolium* in Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 12.

Marumia stellulata, Blume, was described by Jack in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 6 from the west coast of Sumatra under the name of *Melastoma stellulatum.*

Marumia nemorosa, was collected by Jack in Sumatra and on Pulau Nias, and was described under the name of *Melastoma nemorosum* in Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 8.

Dissochaeta bracteata, Blume, was described by Jack from Penang in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 9 as *Melastoma bracteatum.*

Dissochaeta pallida, Blume, was obtained first in Penang (letter p. 163) but was described after he had got it elsewhere (Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 12), under the name of *Melastoma pallidum.* Wallich distributed specimens under No. 4049 collected by Jack in Penang.

Dissochaeta celebica, Blume, is very probably Jack's *Melastoma fallax* from Sumatra (Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 13).

Dissochaeta gracilis, Blume, is Jack's *Melastoma gracile* from Sumatra (Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 14).

Anplectrum divaricatum, Triana, is Jack's *Melastoma glauca* from Penang (Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 14). In his letters (p. 234) he writes of it.

Pogonanthera pulverulenta, Blume, is Jack's *Melastoma rubicundum* and *pulverulentum* from Singapore and Sumatra, as well as the islands off the west coast (Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 19).

Anplectrum viminale, Triana, is Jack's *Melastoma viminale* from Sumatra (Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 16).

Pternandra coerulescens, Jack, was found in Penang and described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 61.

Pternandra capitellata, Jack, was named and very briefly diagnosed in the addenda prefixed to Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7 (p. iii). He had found it at Moco-moco, Sumatra. In the Flora of British India ii. p. 537 it is said to have been found by Jack in Penang: but the authority for this is unknown to me. However it is a common species of Penang, which Sir George King regarded as but a variety of the last.

Kibessa simplex, Korth., appeared as *Pternandra echinata* in Wallich's Catalogue No. 4078, and is named in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. iii, the locality being recorded as Kataun. Griffith on p. 310 of the Calcutta Journal of Natural History, iv. says Kataun in Malacca; but it is without doubt Pasar Katahun, a days journey northward up the coast from Bencoolen.

Memecylon caeruleum, Jack, was found in Penang (letters p. 184) and described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 26.

Memecylon paniculatum, Jack, was described from the island of Pulau Bintangor and the Sumatran coast at Tapanuli in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 62.

LYTHRACEAE.

Pemphis acidula, Forst. A sea-shore plant of the tropics of the Old World found by Jack in Singapore (letters p. 178).

Lagerstroemia floribunda, Jack, was described from Penang in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 38.

BEGONIACEAE.

Begonia caespitosa, Jack, described from Bencoolen in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 8.

Begonia bracteata, Jack, described from the foot of Gunong Bengkok in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 13. In his letters (p. 234) he names Bengonias as found on this trip.

Begonia fasciculata, Jack, described from Tapanuli, Sumatra, in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 12.

Begonia isoptera, Dryand., was described by Jack from Sumatra under the name of *Begonia geniculata* (Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 15.

Begonia orbiculata, Jack, described from Bencoolen in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 9.

Begonia pilosa, Jack, was described from the country behind Bencoolen in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 13.

Begonia racemosa, Jack, was described from Bencoolen in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 14.

Begonia sublobata, Jack, was described from Pulau Penang, West Sumatra, in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 16.

UMBELLIFERAE.

Hydrocotyle asiatica, Linn., was sent by Jack to Wallich from Penang and appears under No. 566 on Wallich's Catalogue.

ARALIACEAE.

Jack in his letters (p. 236) mentions Araliaceae from Sumatra.

RUBIACEAE.

Uncaria Gambier, Roxb., is mentioned by Jack as freely cultivated in Singapore, but not seen in Penang (letters p. 178).

Uncara lanosa, Wall., may well be the Penang plant mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 196).

Greenea Jackii W. & A., is the *Rondoletia corymbosa,* described by Jack in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 4 from Penang.

Ophiorrhiza heterophylla, Jack, was described in the Malay Misc. ii (1822), No. 7, p. 85, from the neighbourhood of Bencoolen.

Argostemma humile, Benn., was obtained by Jack in Penang and sent to Wallich. Wallich described the plant in Bennett's Plantae Javanicae Rariores p. 94, and distributed Jack's specimens under his number 8391.

Mussaenda glabra, Vahl, is probably the Penang plant which Jack calls *M. frondosa* (letters p. 155).

Lucinaea Morinda, DC., is Jack's *Morinda polysperma* (Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 14) from Singapore. He mentions it in his letters (p. 194).

Timonius Koenigii, Blume, is the *Helospora flavescens* of Jack described in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 127, from Sumatra.

Urophyllum glabrum, Wall., is a name which Wallich gave to a plant described in MS. by Jack for him, Jack had proposed to call it *Patisna glabra* or *Wallichia glabra* (letters pp. 196 and 218), and Wallich published the description in Carey's and his revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica, ii. p. 186 altering the generic name. *Urophyllum glabrum* was obtained by Jack in Penang, and found again later at Tapanuli, Sumatra.

Urophyllum villosum, Wall., was found by Jack in Penang and described along with the last. It is mentioned incidentally in Jack's letters (p. 196).

Lecananthus erubescens, Jack, was described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 83 from the country behind Bencoolen.

Randia anisophylla, Hook. f., was described by Jack in Carey and Wallich's revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica ii. p. 461 from Penang as *Gardenia anisophylla.* In Wallich's Catalogue it appears as *Gardenia? anisophylla* No. 8399. It is a common tree in Penang. It is mentioned in his letters (p. 220).

Scyphyphora hydrophyllacea, Gaertn.. was referred to in one of Jack's letters (p. 219) as found in Singapore; and in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 12 he described it as *Epithinia malayana.*

Guettarda speciosa, Linn., is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 175) as a Penang plant.

Ixora pendula, Jack, was described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 11 from Penang; and it is probably one of the species referred to in his letters (p. 171). See also p. 228.

Ixora neriifolia, Jack, was described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 82 from the west coast of Sumatra. It is mentioned in his letters (p. 228).

Morinda umbellata, Linn., Jack found in Penang (p. 153), and not understanding the sexual differences in the flowers, he described the form with exserted anthers under the name of *M. tetrandra* in Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 13. He refers to the plant again in his letters at pp. 163 and 193.

Psychotria malayana, Jack was described from Penang in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 3. Jack's specimens were later distributed by Wallich as *P. aurantiaca,* Catalogue No. 8355.

Psychotria viridiflora, Reinw. (*Psychotria Jackii,* Hook. f., in the Flora of British India iii. p. 167), is Jack's plant from Penang distributed by Wallich under his Catalogue number 8343.

Psychotria stipulacea, Wall., in Carey's and Wallich's revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica ii. p. 164, is founded on specimens obtained by Jack in Penang, which were distributed by Wallich under his Catalogue number 8329.

Lasianthus attenuatus, Jack, is a plant found in the country at the back of Bencoolen, and described in the Trans. Linn. Soc., xiv. p. 126.

Lasianthus cyanocarpus, Jack, is a plant found at Tapanuli, Sumatra, and described in the Trans. Linn. Soc., xiv. p. 125.

Psilobium nutans, Jack described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 85, was found in the country behind Bencoolen.

Psilobium tomentosum, Jack, was diagnosed in the sheets affixed to the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. iii, and said to have come from Kataun, north of Bencoolen.

Hydnophytum formicarum, Jack, was found in Sumatra and described in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 124.

Myrmecodia tuberosa, Jack, was found on Pulau Nias and described in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 123. It is referred to in Jack's letters (p. 231).

COMPOSITAE.

Sphaeranthus africanus, Linn., was collected by Jack in Penang and found its way into Wallich's Catalogue as No. 3179.

GOODENOVIACEAE.

Scaevola Koenigii, Vahl is named as a Penang plant in Jack's letters (p. 175).

CAMPANULACEAE.

Lobelia sp. is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 156), as having been found on Gunong Bengkok.

Pentaphragma begoniaefolium, Wall., was obtained by Jack in Penang, and described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 5 as *Phyteuma begonifolium.* It is mentioned in his letters (p. 165).

VACCINIACEAE.

Vaccinium sumatranum, Jack, described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 18 was obtained from the summit of Gunong Bengkok. It is mentioned in his letters (p. 234).

ERICACEAE.

Rhododendron malayanum, Jack was described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 17, from the summit of Gunong Bengkok and is mentioned in his letters (p. 234).

EPACRIDACEAE.

Leucopogon malayanus, Jack, was described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 26, from Singapore; and it is mentioned under the name of *Styphelia* in his letters (pp. 218 and 219).

MYRSINACEAE.

Embelia canescens, Jack, was described in Carey's and Wallich's revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica ii. p. 292 from Penang and the specimens became No. 2311 of Wallich's Catalogue.

Ardisia divergens, Roxb., is mentioned as a Penang plant in Jack's letters (196) and is the *A. punctata* of Jack in Carey and Wallich's revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica ii. p. 275.

Ardisia javanica, A.DC., (*A. humilis,* Vahl) is mentioned in Jack's letters as a Penang plant (p. 175) under the name of *Ardisia umbellata* of Roxb., and on p. 178 as a Singapore plant.

Aegiceras majus, Gaertn., is mentioned as a Penang plant in Jack's letters (p. 190).

SAPOTACEAE.

Sideroxylon sp. Jack informed Wallich (letters p. 222) that he had found the Australian *Sersalisia obovata* on the west coast of Sumatra; but this must have been a mistake, some Malayan *Sideroxylon* deceiving him.

Mimusops sp. Under the name of *M. Kauki,* Jack recorded the finding of a *Mimusops* in Penang (letters p. 153).

STYRACEAE.

Styrax Benzoin, Dryand., the source of Gum Benjamin, is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 198) as a plant of the country behind Tapanuli, Sumatra.

Styrax serrulatum, Roxb., was collected in Penang by Jack whose specimens were distributed under No. 4401 of Wallich's Catalogue with the name S. Porterianum.

OLEACEAE.

Schrebera swietenioides, Roxb., is mentioned as thought to be a plant of Mansilar, towards Tapanuli, Sumatra, in Jack's letters (p. 198).

Linoceira purpurea, Vahl., is the *L. odorata* which Jack described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 96 from Natal and Pulau Mosella.

APOCYNACEAE.

Leuconotis anceps, Jack, was described in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 121 from Sumatra.

Rauwolfia sumatrana, Jack, was described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 22 from Bencoolen, and finds a passing mention in his letters (p. 218).

Tabernaemontana macrocarpa, Jack, was described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 80, from the country behind Bencoolen.

Wrightia dubia, Spring., was found by Jack in Penang (letters 195) and apparently again at Bencoolen (letters p. 218). Wallich distributed Jack's specimens from Penang under the number 1643 of his Catalogue and with the name *Strophanthus Jackianus.*

Marsdenia volubilis, T. Cooke (*Dregea volubilis,* Benth.), is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 222) as a Sumatran plant under the name of *Hoya viridiflora,* R. Br.

Hoya spp. Two Sumatran species of "Hoya" are mentioned in Jack's letters (pp. 222 and 225) as *Hoya grandiflora* and *Hoya gracilis.* It cannot be that the first named is *Tylophora grandiflora* R. Br., for Jack's description does not fit that Australian plant. although Jack seems to have thought that it did.

LOGANIACEAE.

Fagraea auriculata, Jack, considerably interested Jack on account of the great size of its flowers: he described it in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 82, from Singapore and Tapanuli, Sumatra: and in his letters he mentioned it several times, firstly (p. 178) its discovery, then the despatch of notes on it to Wallich (p. 215) and lastly (p. 226) its occurrence at Tapanuli.

Fagraea carnosa, Jack, was described in the Malaya. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 81, from Bencoolen.

Fagraea fragrans, Roxb., was found in an old garden at Penang, and on the Kedah shore (letters pp. 178 and 215).

Fagraea obovata, Wall., was found at Singapore (letters p. 195).

Fagraea racemosa, Jack, must have been found on the Sumatran coast (letters p. 215) already when he got it on Pulau Nias (letters p. 226). It was described in Carey's and Wallich's revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica, ii. p. 35. As Jack states in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, that his total of species of Fagraea was five, the other references to the genus in his letters must refer to some of the above.

CONVOLVULACEAE.

Neuropeltis racemosa, Wall., is mentioned as a Penang plant in Jack's letters (pp. 166 and 216).

BORAGINACEAE.

Cordia subcordata, Lamk., is mentioned as a Singapore plant in Jack's letters (p. 179).

SOLANACEAE.

Datura arborea, Linn., a South American plant is mentioned in Jack's letters as at Bencoolen, where doubtless it was in cultivation (letters p. 217).

GESNERACEAE.

Aeschynanthus grandiflora, Spreng. Jack (letters p. 228) says that he obtained *Incarvillea parasitica,* Roxb. at Bencoolen: but in his published writings he does not refer to it; and consequently it may be assumed that he had realised some difference between his plant and Roxburgh's.

Aeschynanthus volubilis, Jack, was described as a plant of Bencoolen in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 42. Perhaps it is the plant mentioned in his letters (p. 237).

Aeschynanthus radicans, Jack, was described as a plant found in the interior of Sumatra, Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 43.

Didymocarpus reptans, Jack, was described from Penang in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 3, and in Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 35. It may be the plant referred to in letters (p. 162). In the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 35 the locality given is "with the proceeding," which is *D. racemosa* from *Tapanuli;* but this Tapanuli plant is an intercalation, and the "proceeding" intended is *D. crinita,* which is a Penang plant.

Didymocarpus crinita, Jack, was described from Penang in Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 4, and in Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 33.

Didymocarpus racemosa, Jack, was described from Tapanuli in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 34. It is mentioned in his letters (p. 228).

Didymocarpus corniculata, Jack, was described from Tapanuli, Sumatra, in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 5 and the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 36. It is mentioned in his letters (p. 199).

Chirita Horsfieldii, R. Br., was described by Jack from Sumatra in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 38 as *Didymocarpus barbata.* It is mentioned in his letters (p. 228) in such a way as to show that he got it about the time of his visit to Pulau Nias and probably he had found it at more than one of the Sumatran ports at which he touched on his journey thither.

Didissandra frutescens, C. B. Clarke, was described from Penang in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 5 and the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 39 as *Didymocarpus frutescens.* He mentions it in his letters (p. 199) but only in reference to a drawing which he wished to publish.

Didissandra elongata, C. B. Clarke, was described as *Didymocarpus elongata* in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 37 from Pulau Bintangor off the west coast of Sumatra. He mentions it in his letters (pp. 221 and 228).

Loxonia acuminata, R. Br., is the *Loxonia hirsuta* of Jack described in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 41 as well as the *L. discolor* of the same publication p. 40, both from the interior of Bencoolen.

Cyrtandra aurea, Jack, was described from Gunong Bengkok in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 29.

Cyrtandra frutescens, Jack, was described from Malaya without nearer locality in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 31.

Cyrtandra rubiginosa, Jack, was described from Malaya without nearer locality in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 32.

Cyrtandra bicolor, Jack, was described from Sumatra in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 27.

Cyrtandra incompta, Jack, was described from Sumatra in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 29.

Cyrtandra maculata, Jack, was described from Sumatra in the Trans Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 26.

Cyrtandra peltata, Jack, was described from Sumatra in Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 36.

Cyrtandra carnosa, Jack, was described in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 30, without indication of its locality.

Cyrtandra hirsuta, Jack, was described from Sumatra in Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 27.

Cyrtandra glabra, Jack, was described from Bencoolen in Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 28.

Cyrtandra macrophylla, Jack, was described from the interior of Sumatra in Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 25.

ACANTHACEAE.

Acanthus ilicifolius, Linn. is mentioned as a Penang plant in Jack's letters (p. 155).

Acanthus ebracteatus, Vahl, is mentioned along with the last as a Penang plant (letters p. 155).

VERBENACEAE.

Callicarpa longifolia, Lamk., was distributed by Wallich under No. 1835 of his Catalogue as from Jack collected in Acheen.

Callicarpa arborea, Roxb., is mentioned by Jack in his letters (p. 225) as a plant found on Pulau Nias.

Gmelina villosa, Roxb., was described by Jack as a Sumatran plant in Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 18.

Gmelina sp. is mentioned in Jack's letters as a plant of Acheen (p. 174).

Vitex pubescens, Vahl (*V. arborea,* Roxb.), was described by Jack as a Sumatran plant in Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 18.

Clerodendron penduliflorum, Wall., is the plant of Penang and Acheen which Jack in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 17, called *C. nutans.* It is mentioned in his letters (pp. 163 165, and 174).

Clerodendron villosum, Blume, was described by Jack from Penang and Sumatra as *C. molle,* in Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 15.

Clerodendron neriifolium, Wall., is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 190) as a plant of Penang.

Clerodendron serratum, Spreng., was described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 48, as *C. divaricatum,* a plant obtained at Laye and elsewhere in western Sumatra.

Clerodendron paniculatum, Linn., was described by Jack as *C. pyramidale,* a plant of Acheen and elsewhere in Sumatra, (Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 16).

Peronema canescens, Jack, was described in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 46 from Sumatra.

Sphenodesme pentandra, Jack was described from Penang in Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 19; and it seems that this is the plant referred to in one of Jack's letters (p. 184). On

Jack's specimens Wallich founded *Congea Jackiana,* a name to be found in his Catalogue No. 1735.

Avicennia sp. An *Avicennia* is mentioned under the name of *A. resinifera,* in Jack's letters (p. 220) as occurring at Bencoolen; and mentioned again under his description of *Pyrrhanthus.*

LABIATAE.

Ocimum Basilicum, Linn., was recorded as collected by Jack at Penang in Wallich's Plantae Asiaticae Rariores ii. p. 13, and occurs in Wallich's Catalogue as No. 2713. Sir David Prain's remarks (Journ. Asiatic Soc. Bengal, lxxiv. p. 702) may be referred to as showing that Wallich's 2713, is something unusual.

NEPENTHACEAE.

Nepenthes ampullaria, Jack, was brought to Jack from Singapore by Raffles (letters p. 163), and then was found by Jack himself in the same place (letters p. 178) and also at Rhio. Jack put a description into print but did not publish it: it would have formed part of his third paper in the Malayan Miscellanies, had he not withdrawn it. Sir William Hooker in 1835 reprinted and published this description in the Companion to the Botanical Magazine, i. p. 271.

Nepenthes Rafflesiana, Jack, was likewise collected in Singapore first by Raffles (letters p. 163), and then again by Jack (letters p. 178). Jack's description was similarly put into print but withdrawn from his third paper in the Malayan Miscellanies: and similarly also published by Sir William Hooker in 1835 in the Companion to the Botanical Magazine, i. p. 270.

Nepenthes phyllamphora, Willd., was obtained by Jack, in Bencoolen, and other parts of western Sumatra: he mentions finding it at Bencoolen in his letters (p. 186). He described it in print for the third paper of his Descriptions of Malayan Plants and the reprinting and publishing were done in 1835 by Sir William Hooker in the Companion to the Botanical Magazine i. p. 271.

Nepenthes gracilis, Korth. is assuredly the *N. distillatoria* of Jack, described very briefly along with the last from Singapore and Malacca. It is possible that Raffles first got it in Singapore (letters p. 163). Macfarlane, in Das Pflanzenreich, iv. No. 111, p. 59, quotes a specimen collected by Jack.

CYTINACEAE.

Rafflesia Arnoldi, R. Br., was found first by Raffles and Arnold, before Jack joined the service at Bencoolen. Jack, later found it to be by no means rare in the country behind (letters pp. 203, 204, 208 and 209). He drew up a very careful description of it under the name of *Rafflesia Titan,* and put it into print along with other material for the third of his Descriptions of Malayan Plants, but withdrew it as Robert Brown had prepared a description under the name of *Rafflesia Arnoldi.*. Jack's description was published by Sir William Hooker in the companion to the Botanical Magazine in 1835, vol. i.

ARISTOLOCHIACEAE.

Aristolochia hastata, Jack, was described from Natal, Sumatra, in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 6.

MYRISTICACEAE.

Myristica fragrans, Houtt., the nutmeg, is mentioned in Jack's letters, both its cultivation in Penang (p. 152) and in Bencoolen (p. 183).

Knema glaucescens, Jack, was described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 35.

LAURACEAE.

Dehaasia microcarpa, Blume, probably is the *Laurus incrassata* mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 230) and described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 33, as from Natal, Sumatra. The reduction depends on Wallich's authority in his Catalogue under No. 2589.

Dehaasia sp.? Another " Laurus " is mentioned by Jack as a Bencoolen plant under his description of the last.

Cinnamomum Parthenoxylon, Meissn., was described by Jack under the name of *Laurus Parthenoxylon* in Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 28, from Sumatra, and is mentioned in his letters (p. 203).

Tetracera arborescens, Jack, was described from Tapanuli, Sumatra, in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 45.

Litsea cordata, Hook. f. was described by Jack from Sumatra under the name of *Tetranthera cordata* in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 34.

PROTEACEAE.

Helicia attenuata, Blume, was described as *Rhopala attenuata* in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 10 from Penang and the specimens were distributed as No. 1040 of Wallich's Catalogue.

Helicia petiolaris, Benn., was described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 10 as *Rhopala moluccana,* and the specimens were distributed as No. 1041 of Wallich's Catalogue.

Helicia serrata, Blume, (*Rhopala serrata,* R. Br.) is thought to have been the plant collected by Raffles on his journey to Menangkabau, which is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 185).

Helicia ovata, Benn., was described by Jack in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 95 as *Rhopala ovata* from Tapanuli, Sumatra.

Helicia spp. Jack in his letters (p. 226) mentions the finding of two species of Rhopala on Pulau Nias.

THYMELAEACEAE.

Phaleria capitata, Jack, was described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 59 from Sumatra.

LORANTHACEAE.

Loranthus ferrugineus, Roxb., was found by Jack in Penang (letters p. 153), and again in Sumatra (letters p. 235). He described it in Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 9 from Sumatra, and also for Wallich (vide Carey's and Wallich's revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica, ii. p. 267).

Loranthus retusus, Jack (*Elytranthe retusa,* G. Don.) was described in Carey's and Wallich's revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica, ii. p. 212, from Singapore.

Loranthus coccineus, Jack, was found in Singapore, (letters p. 179) and described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 8.

Loranthus cylindricus, Jack, was described in Carey's and Wallich's revision of Roxburgh's Flora Indica ii. p. 213, from Sumatra. It is mentioned in the letters (p. 235).

Loranthus patulus, Jack, was described along with the last (p. 214), and appears to be mentioned in his letters (p. 235).

Loranthus incarnatus, Jack, was described from Pulau Nias along with the last two (p. 213).

EUPHOBIACEAE.

Cyclostemon longifolius, Blume, is mentioned as a Penang plant in Jack's letters (p. 166).

Antidesma frutescens, Jack, was described from Bencoolen in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 91.

Baccaurea bracteata, Muell.-Arg., is the *Pierardia dulcis* described by Jack in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 120 from Sumatra.

Baccaurea Motleyana, Muell.-Arg., the Rambai, is mentioned in Jack's letters as a Penang plant (p. 158).

Baccaurea malayana, Hook. f., is the *Hedycarpus malayanus* described by Jack in the Trans. Linn. Soc. xiv. p. 118 from Sumatra.

Galearia Jackiana, R. Br., was obtained by Jack in Penang, and distributed by Wallich as No. 8585 of his Catalogue, under the name of *Limonia leptostachya,* Jack.

Aleurites triloba, Forst., is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 159) as a Penang plant.

Trigonostemon indicus, Muell.-Arg., was described by Jack under the name of *Enchidium verticillatum* in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 89 from Sumatra, and is mentioned at p. 230 of the letters.

Mallotus albus, Muell.-Arg. (*Rottlera alba,* Roxb.) was described as a plant of Penang and Singapore in Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 26.

URTICACEAE.

Conocephalus suaveolens, Blume, appears to be a plant mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 196) without locality—the natural inference of the reference is that he had collected it.

Ficus diversifolia, Blume, was described by Jack in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 71 as *F. ovoidea* from Singapore and from Sumatra, and also as *F. deltoidea* from Sumatra.

Ficus rigida, Jack, was described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 72 from Sumatra.

MYRICACEAE.

Myrica aesculenta, Buch.-Ham., is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 196). It is a very widely distributed plant and doubtless had been obtained in Malaya by him.

CUPULIFERAE.

Pasania spicata, Oerst. (*Quercus spicata,* Smith), was described by Jack in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 86, as *Q. racemosa,* from Sumatra; and it is mentioned in his letters (p. 188) in a way which shows that he had got it at Bencoolen.

Quercus urceolaris, Jack, was described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 87, from Sumatra.

CONIFERAE.

Dacrydium elatum, Wall., was found by Jack in Penang. It is referred to in his letters, pp.153, 174, 177, and 179. He sent it alive to Wallich.

Podocarpus neriifolia, D. Don, was found by Jack in Singapore and is referred to in his letters (pp. 193 and 196).

Podocarpus imbricatus, Blume, was found by Jack in Penang and is referred to in his letters (p. 174).

Agathis loranthifolia, Salisb. was found by Jack in Penang, and is mentioned in his letters (p. 177).

HYDROCHARIDACEAE.

Enhalus Koenigii, Rich., was found by Jack near Bencoolen and is mentioned in his letters (p. 193).

ORCHIDACEAE.

Aerides suavissima, Lindl., may have been the plant of Penang referred to in Jack's letters (p. 174).

Anoectochilus sp.? is mentioned as a Singapore plant in Jack's letters (p. 164).

SCITAMINEAE.

Globba ciliata, Jack, was described as common in Sumatra (Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 5).

Hedychium sumatranum, Jack, was described from Salumah, west Sumatra, in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 1.

Amomum biflorum, Jack, was described from Penang in Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 2.

Hornstedtia megalocheilos, Ridl., is probably the Penang plant to which Jack refers in his letters (p. 160) as an *Amomum.*

Zingiber gracile, Jack, was described from Penang in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 1.

Alpinia capitellata, Jack, was described in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 4, from the interior behind Bencoolen. His letters (p. 234) show that he got it on his journey to Gunong Bengkok.

Alpinia elatior, Jack, was described from Pulau Nias and Ayer Bangi on the west coast of Sumatra, in the Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 2. He mentions it in his letters (p. 225).

Alpinia assimilis, K. Schum., may perhaps be the plant of Penang called by Jack in his letters (p. 160) *A. mutica.*

Alpinia sp. Jack mentions a Hellenia as occurring at Bencoolen (letters p. 184).

BROMELIACEAE.

Ananas sativa, Schultes f., var. **variegata,** was found by Jack to exist in Penang (letters p. 152) and it is still freely cultivated there.

AMARYLLIDACEAE.

Curculigo latifolia, Dryand., was described by Jack from Penang and Sumatra under Roxburgh's name of *C. sumatrana,* in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 7, and it is mentioned as a

Penang plant in his letters (p. 165) as well as being beyond doubt the species with hirsute leaves found in Singapore.

Curculigo sp. Three species are mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 235) as having been found by him, but he give no value.

Pancratium amboinense, Jack (letters p. 174) cannot be precisely identified.

TACCACEAE.

Tacca cristata, Jack, was found in Penang and is mentioned in his letters as *Tacca Rafflesia* (pp. 161, 165, and 174); and later it was got in Singapore (letters p. 178). He changed the name before publishing his description so that it appears in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 3 as *Tacca cristata.*

Tacca sp. Jack mentions in his letters (p. 228) the obtaining of another species in Sumatra.

DIOSCOREACEAE.

Dioscorea pyrifolia, Kunth, was got by Jack in Singapore and distributed by Wallich as *D. glabra,* No. 5105 of his Catalogue.

LILIACEAE.

Dracaena Jackiana, Wall., was collected by Jack in Penang and distributed by Wallich as No. 5145 of his Catalogue.

Cordyline terminalis, Kunth, was collected by Jack in Penang, and was distributed by Wallich as No. 5140 of his Catalogue.

XYRIDACEAE.

Xyris indica, Linn., is mentioned as a Singapore plant by Jack (letters p. 178); but as *X. indica* is not known to occur in Singapore whereas the very similar *X. anceps,* Lamk., does, it seems probably that Jack had the latter.

FLAGELLARIACEAE.

Susum anthelminticum, Blume, was described by Jack under the name of *Veratrum? malayanum* in Malay. Misc. i. No. 5, p. 25. He had got in Penang.

COMMELYNACEAE.

Tradescantia spp. Jack in his letters (p. 235) says that he had obtained three species.

Floscopa scandens, Lour., was collected by Jack in Penang and distributed by Wallich under his Catalogue number 5204.

PALMAE.

Corypha sp.? may perhaps be the Penang palm mentioned in his letters (p. 163).

Oncosperma filamentosum, Blume, was described by Jack under the name of *Areca tigillaria* from Sumatra and the Malay islands in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, p. 88.

Metroxylon Sagu, Rottb., the sago palm, interested Jack, and the description which he gave had furnished the basis for most of those of subsequent authors. Jack first found the sago palm in Penang (letters p. 166) and subsequently examined it in detail at Bencoolen (letters pp. 190 and 193). He records as localities for the tree "Siak and the Pagi islands." His description was prepared for the Malayan Miscellanies, put into proof, but only published by Sir William Hooker in his Conpanion to the Botanical Magazine vol. i. (1835) p. 266.

ARACEAE.

Aglaonema marantifolium, Blume, was described in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 24, from Penang under the name of *Calla nitida.* It is mentioned in Jack's letters (p. 174).

Homalonema angustifolium, Hook. f., was described by Jack from Penang in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 24 under the name of *Calla angustifolia.* It was mentioned in his letters (p. 174).

Homalonema humile, Hook. f., was described from Penang in the Malay. Misc. i. No. 1, p. 22 under the name of *Calla humilis.* Jack in his letters (p. 174) perhaps refers to it.

Arum sp. Jack obtained in Penang an Aroid (letters p. 174) which he refers to the genus *Arum,* not then split up as now.

Lasia aculeata, Lour., is almost certainly the plant of Penang which Jack calls in his letters (p. 154) *Pothos pinnalifida.*

VERY IMPERFECTLY KNOWN.

Coelopyrum coriaceum, Jack in Malay. Misc. ii. No 7, p. 65, from Bencoolen.

Ocetas spicata, Jack, in Malay. Misc. ii. No. 7, from Tapanuli, Sumatra.

Preliminary Diagnoses of some New Species and Subspecies of Mammals and Birds Obtained in Korinchi, West Sumatra, Feb.—June 1914

By Herbert C. Robinson, C.M.Z.S., M.B.O.U.
and
C. Boden Kloss, F.Z.S., M.B.O.U.

The following brief diagnoses, which are merely sufficient to establish the species and subspecies, are published in advance of the detailed report on our expedition to Korinchi Peak to be issued by this society, which may possibly be somewhat delayed. In it will be found the narrative of the expedition, detailed descriptions of all new forms and a complete account of the zoological and botanical results.

MAMMALS.

ERINACEIDAE.

Hylomys parvus, sp. nov. *Type*:—Adult female (skin and skull), Federated Malay States Museums No. 576/14, collected on Korinchi Peak, 10,000′, West Sumatra, on 9th May 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—Like *H. suillus*[1] but smaller, though with tail actually longer and bicolored; fur longer and less harsh and the grey of the underparts rather more pronounced. Skull more lightly built, teeth strikingly smaller.

Measurements:—Head and body, [105 av.]; tail, 25; hindfoot, 23.5 mm. Skull: greatest length, 31.2; basal length, 27.8; palatal length, 17.0; upper tooth row, 15.8; pm^4-m^3, 6.9; breadth of palate behind canine, 4.4; zygomatic breadth, 15.6; length of mandible, 22.4 mm.

Specimens examined:—Twenty.

SCIURIDAE.

Sciurus tenuis altitudinis, subsp. nov. *Type*:—Adult male (skin and skull), Federated Malay States Museums No. 471/14, collected at Sungei Kring, Korinchi Peak, 7,300′,

---

[1] *Mueller and Schlegel, Verhandelingen. Naturr. Gesch. Ind. Zool.* p. 153; pl. 25, figs. 4-7; pl. 26, fig. 1 (1839-44).

West Sumatra, on 28th April 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—A form of *Sc. tenuis* about the size of *Sc. t. gunong*[2] from the mountains of the Siamese Malay States but with much longer fur and longer and narrower nasals.

Measurements:—Head and body, 150; tail, 115; hindfoot, 36 mm. (taken in the flesh). Skull: greatest length, 40.8; condylo-basilar length, 33.2; palatilar length, 15.3; diastema, 9.1; upper molar row inclusive of pm^3, 7.4; median nasal length, 12.3; interorbital breadth, 12.9; zygomatic breadth, 23.5 mm.

Specimens examined:—Thirteen.

Sciurus vanakeni, sp. nov. *Type*:—Adult male (skin and skull), Federated Malay States Museums No. 650/14, collected at Barong Bharu, West side Barisan Range, Korinchi, 4,000′, West Sumatra, on 4th June 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—A small dark-backed member of the *Sc. lowi*[3] group, with the pale colour of the under-surface reduced in extent and indistinctly margined. Skull and teeth smaller than the Bornean and allied Malay Peninsula forms.

Measurements:—Head and body, 122; tail, 57 (imperfect) normally 80-90; hind foot, 30 mm. (measured in flesh). Skull: greatest length, 34.0; condylo-basilar length, 28.1; palatilar length, 14.0; diastema, 7.8; upper molar row including pm^3, 5.7; median length nasals, 9.7; interorbital breadth, 10.5; zygomatic breadth, 19.2 mm.

Specimens examined:—Thirteen.

MURIDAE.

Oromys, gen. nov.

External form as in *Epimys,* tail not shorter than head and body. Fur dense and long, interspersed with longer very slender spines. Hindfoot with fifth toe reaching beyond the middle of the basal phalanx of the fourth; six distinct elevated plantar pads. Seven palatal ridges, the last four divided mesially.

Skull slender, narrow and tapering; zygomata much compressed anteriorly; no masseteric knob present at the base as in *Mus;* lateral profile of rostrum straight; posterior terminations of premaxillae very oblique; interorbital breadth great; no supraorbital or parietal ridges; interparietal transversely long and narrow, front and back edges almost parallel.

---

[2] *Robinson and Kloss, Journ. Fed. Malay States Mus.* v, p. 119 (1914).

[3] *Thomas, Ann. and Mag. Nat. Hist.* (6) ix, p. 253 (1892).

Palatal foramina long and narrow; interpterygoid space narrow, with almost parallel sides, not wider anteriorly. Bullae moderately dilated (as in the *Epimys whiteheadi* group). Ascending ramus of mandible very low, coronal process much reduced.

Bevelled edge of incisors notched and proportions of molars as in *Mus*, but the structure more nearly as in *Epimys*, though the transverse laminae are slightly more curved and the anterior cusp of the first lower molar situated more on the inner side of the tooth. Combined length of the second and third upper molars about three-fourths that of the first. Upper incisors scarcely curved, lower very long and slender.

Type:—*Oromys crociduroides*, sp. nov.

Oromys crociduroides, sp. nov. *Type*:—Adult female (skin and skull), Federated Malay States Museums, No. 571/14, collected on Korinchi Peak, 10,000′, West Sumatra, on the 8th April 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—A small, thickly-furred, dark-coloured rat, belly slightly paler than, and not sharply differentiated from, the sides. Tail longer than head and body.

Measurements:—Head and body, 103; tail, 133; hindfoot, 22 mm. (measured in flesh). Skull: greatest length, 27.7; condylo-basilar length, 25.7; diastema, 9.8; upper molar row, 4.1; length of palatal foramina, 5.0; median nasal length 11.7; breadth of nasals, 2.7; zygomatic breadth, 12.9 mm.

Specimens examined:—Thirty-five.

Epimys setiger, sp. nov. *Type*:—Adult female (skin and skull) Federated Malay States Museums, No. 626/14, collected at Barong Bharu, West side Barisan Range, Korinchi, 4,000′, West Sumatra, on 11th June 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—Like *E. ciliata* (Bonhote)[4] but with underparts chalk-white instead of ivory-white; tail and feet longer. Skull with shorter nasals, larger teeth and longer palatal foramina.

Measurements:—Head and body, 290; tail, 352; hindfoot, 56 mm. (measured in flesh). Skull: greatest length, 60.6; condylo-basilar length, 52.0; diastema, 15.9; upper molar row, 11.3; length of palatal foramina, 9.7; median length of nasals, 22.0; breadth of nasals, 7.0; zygomatic breadth, 26.8 mm.

Specimens examined:—Two.

---

[4] Mus ciliata, *Bonhote, P. Z. S.* 1900, p. 879, pl. LVI.

Epimys ululans, sp. nov. *Type*:—Adult male (skin and skull), Federated Malay States Museums, No. 233/14, collected at Siolak Dras, Korinchi Valley, 3,100′, West Sumatra, on 17th March 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—Externally closely resembling *Epimys vociferans* (Miller)[5] with bicolor tail; but skull with interpterygoid space narrower and parallel-sided, the pterygoids less prominent and projecting and the palatal foramina narrower, the upper tooth row shorter and not diverging posteriorly to the same extent.

Measurements:—Head and body, 237; tail, 253; hindfoot, 45 mm. (measured in flesh). Skull: greatest length, 53.5; condylo-basilar length, 46.1; diastema, 14.1; upper molar row, 9.8; length of palatal foramina, 7.7; median nasal length, 20.5; breadth of nasals, 6.1; zygomatic breadth, 24.7 mm.

Specimens examined:—The type.

Epimys similis, sp. nov. *Type*:—Adult female with worn teeth (skin and skull), Federated Malay States Museums, No. 285/14, collected at Siolak Dras, Korinchi Valley, 3,100′, West Sumatra, on 27th March 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—Resembles *E. pellax* (Miller)[6] of the Malay Peninsula but has the colour of the upper parts extending over the inner side of the fore-limbs and thighs, cutting off the white of the abdomen from the extremities. Skull narrower and less robust.

Measurements:—Head and body, 186; tail, 183; hindfoot, 37.5 mm. (measured in flesh). Skull: greatest length, 43.3; condylo-basilar length, 36.5; diastema, 12.3; upper molar row, 6.9; length of palatal foramina, 6.0; median nasal length, 17.2; breadth of nasals, 4.0; zygomatic breadth, 18.0 mm.

Specimens examined:—Five.

Epimys ravus, sp. nov. Type:—Adult (aged) male (skin and skull) Federated Malay States Museums, No. 422/15, collected at Sungei Kumbang, Korinchi, 4,700′, West Sumatra, on 20th April 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—Like *E. catellifer* (Miller)[7] with comparatively slender dorsal spines but tail more markedly bicolor; tail and feet longer; no buffy abdominal markings.

---

[5] Mus vociferans, *Miller, Proc. Biol. Soc. Washington,* xiii, p. 138, pls. 3, 4, fig. 3 (1900).

[6] Mus pellax, *Miller, Proc. Biol. Soc. Washington,* xiii, p. 147 (1900).

[7] Mus catellifer, *Miller, Proc. U. S. Nat. Mus.* xxvi, p. 464 (1903).

Measurements:—Head and body, 192; tail, 202; hindfoot, 43 mm. (measured in flesh). Skull: greatest length, 48.0; condylo-basilar length, 39.5; diastema, 13.0; upper molar row, 6.8; length of palatal foramina, 6.5; median length of nasals, 18.6; breadth of nasals, 4.9; zygomatic breadth, 21.0 mm.

Specimens examined:—Twenty-four.

Epimys inflatus, sp. nov. *Type*:—Adult female (skin and skull) Federated Malay States Museums, No. 323/14, collected at Sungei Kumbang, Korinchi, 4,700′, West Sumatra, on 2nd April 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—A tawny spinous-backed rat with a bicolored tail and sullied under-surface, having a superficial resemblance to the rats of the *rajah-surifer* group: skull closely resembling these but with a pronounced swelling on the sides of the rostrum immediately in front of the infraorbital plate.

Measurements:—Head and body, 200; tail, 155; hindfoot, 40 mm. (measured in flesh). Skull: greatest length, 46.6; condylo-basilar length, 39.3; diastema, 13.4; upper molar row, 6.5; length of palatal foramina, 8.2; median nasal length, 10.1; breadth of nasals, 5.3; zygomatic breadth, 20.3; breadth of rostrum across swellings, 11.0 (in a specimen of *E. surifer* of equal size, 8.0 mm.).

Specimens examined:—Twenty.

Epimys fraternus, sp. nov. *Type*:—Adult male (skin and skull), Federated Malay States Museums, No. 387/14, collected at Sungei Kumbang, Korinchi, 4,700′, West Sumatra on 13th April 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—Rather darker above than *E. orbus,* Robinson and Kloss,[8] of the Siamese Malay States with the dark tips of the spines more exposed and having below an ochraceous-tawny patch on the chest, which is always lacking in Malayan animals.

Measurements:—Head and body, 162; tail, 231; hindfoot, 32.5 mm. Skull: greatest length, 40.6; condylo-basilar length, 33.5; diastema, 10.2; upper molar series, 6.9; length of palatal foramina, 6.4; median nasal length, 16.4; breadth of nasals, 4.6; zygomatic breadth, 17.2 mm.

Specimens examined:—Thirty-four.

Epimys hylomyoides, sp. nov. *Type*:—Aged male (skin and skull), Federated Malay States Museums, No. 440/14, collected at Sungei Kring, Korinchi Peak, 7,300′, West Sumatra, on 26th April 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

---

[8] *Ann. and Mag. Nat. Hist.* (8) xiii, p. 228 (1914).

Characters:—A small concolorous rat with a bicolored tail: base of pelage throughout dark neutral grey, the fur long and soft, thickly beset on the back with long, slender, pliable spines. Tail almost the same length as the head and body.

Measurements:—Head and body 126; tail, 126; hindfoot, 27 mm. (measured in the flesh). Skull: greatest length, 34.4; condylo-basilar length, 28.8; diastema, 8.3; upper molar row, 6.0; length of palatal foramina, 4.5; median nasal length, 12.9; breadth of nasals, 3.2; zygomatic breadth, 14.9 mm.

Specimens examined:—Fifteen.

Epimys stragulum, sp. nov. *Type*:—Adult male (skin and skull), Federated Malay States Museums, No. 482/14, collected at Sungei Kring, Korinchi Peak, 7,300′, West Sumatra, on 30th April 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—A species of the *concolor-ephippium* group but with the pelage long and soft, beset with a number of slender, long, hardly distinguishable spines, with dark tips and whitish centres. Skull and teeth like those of *E. ephippium*[9] but with the bullae smaller and the posterior termination of the nasals a little narrower.

Measurements:—Head and body, 109; tail, 136; hindfoot, 23 (measured in flesh). Skull: greatest length, 30.0; condylo-basilar length, 25.0; diastema, 7.4; upper molar row, 5.0; length of palatal foramina, 5.2; median nasal length, 10.7; breadth of nasals, 3.0; zygomatic breadth, 14.3 mm.

Specimens examined:—Ten.

Epimys rattus argentiventer subsp. nov. *Type*:—Adult male with worn teeth (skin and skull), Federated Malay States Museums, No. 602/14, collected at Pasir Ganting, coast of West Sumatra, Lat. 2° 7′ S., on 20th June 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—Like *E. r. neglectus* (Jent.)[10] but with the annulations of the fur of the upper parts coarser and less ochraceous and with the underparts silver-grey throughout. Tail shorter than head and body. Skull with larger bullae, palatal foramina and teeth.

Measurements:—Head and body, 184; tail, 173; hindfoot, 32 mm. Skull: greatest length, 41.0; condylo-basilar length, 36.2; diastema, 11.0; upper molar row, 7.9; length of palatal foramina, 8.5; median nasal length, 14.7; breadth of nasals, 4.2; zygomatic breadth, 19.8 mm.

Specimens examined:—One, the type.

---

[9] Mus ephippium, *Jentink, Notes Leyden Museum,* ii, p. 15 (1880).

[10] Mus neglectus, *Jentink, Notes Leyden Museum,* ii, p. 14 (1880).

Epimys korinchi, sp. nov. *Type*:—Adult female (skin and skull), Federated Malay States Museums, No. 442/14, collected at Sungei Kring, Korinchi Peak, 7,300′, West Sumatra, on 26th April 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—Like *E. baluensis* (Thomas)[11] with long, soft and spineless fur, beset on the upper surface with numerous longer piles; but with longer tail and paler underparts; nasals broader, but bullae much smaller: teeth considerably larger.

Measurements:—Head and body, 166; tail, 224; hindfoot, 34; ear, 23 mm. (measured in flesh). Skull: greatest length, 41.0; conylo-basilar length, 35.5; diastema, 10.9; upper molar series, 7.9; length of palatal foramina, 8.2; median nasal length, 15.3; breadth of nasals, 4.9; zygomatic breadth, 19.0 mm.

Specimens examined:—The type and an immature female.

Epimys muelleri campus, subsp. nov. *Type*:—Adult female (skin and skull) Federated Malay States Museums No. 586/14, collected at Pasir Ganting, coast of West Sumatra, Lat. 2° 7′ S., on 18th June 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Characters:—Like the typical *E. muelleri*,[12] but with the buff element in the upper pelage a little richer in tone: rostrum decidedly broader, zygomatic width greater and the bullae a little larger.

Measurements:—Head and body, 214; tail, 256; hindfoot, 44 mm. (measured in flesh). Skull: greatest length, 53.1; condylo-basilar length, 46.0; diastema, 14.2; upper molar row, 9.2; length of palatal foramina, 8.6; median nasal length, 22.0; breadth of nasals, 6.0; zygomatic breadth, 26.6 mm.

Specimens examined:—Three.

BIRDS.

STRIGIDAE.

Pisorhina vandewateri, sp. nov. A small species of owl, with the bill clear yellow, tarsi partially bare for one third their length in front, post-cervical collar strongly marked. A member of the group in which is included *Heteroscops luciae*[13] of Borneo, *Heteroscops vulpes*[14] of the Malay Peninsula and

---

[11] Mus baluensis, *Thomas, Ann. and Mag. Nat. Hist.* (6) xiv, p. 458 (1894).

[12] Mus muelleri, *Jentink, Notes Leyden Museum,* ii, p. 16 (1880).

[13] Scops luciae, *Sharpe, Ibis,* 1888, p. 478; *id. op cit.* 1889, p. 77, Pl. III.

[14] Heteroscops vulpes, *Ogilvie Grant, Bull. Brit. Orn. Club,* xix, p. 11 (1906).

Scops rufescens[15] from the same general region. From the latter it can be separated by its strongly mottled undersurface and from the two former by its strongly marked collar and much darker general tone. The characters of the facial plumes are similar to those of *H. luciae.*

Type:—Adult female, No. 1097, collected on Korinchi Peak, at 7,300 feet, West Sumatra, on April 23rd 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Specimens examined:—One, the type.

EURYLAEMIDAE.

Serilophus lunatus intensus, subsp. nov. Differs from the Malay Peninsula form *Serilophus lunatus rothschildi,* in the same way as that does from the typical race from Tenasserim. General colour of the mantle and the chestnut of the inner secondaries and rump very much richer in tone, and under surface a darker grey. Greyish white of the crown, stopping somewhat abruptly at the level of the eyes and the ear-coverts washed with clay brown as in the typical race and not so grey as in *S. l. rothschildi.*[16]

Dimensions:—6 ♂. Total length, 167-177; wing, 80-86; tail, 66-70; tarsus, 17.5-19; bill from gape, 20.5-22.5 mm. (measured in the flesh). 4 ♀. Total length, 165-178; wing, 78-87; tail, 67-69; tarsus, 18.5-20.5; bill from gape, 20.5-22.5 mm. (measured in flesh).

Types:—Male No. 256; female No. 36; collected at Siolak Dras, Korinchi Valley, 3,100 feet, West Sumatra, on 19th and 24th March 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Specimens examined:—Ten.

TIMELIIDAE.

Turdinulus epilepidotus dilutus, subsp. nov. Differs from *T. epilepidotus*[17] from Java in being considerably lighter (less blackish) above and in having the feathers of the throat more decidedly tipped with black, those of the Javan form being almost immaculate in the centre of the throat. Dimensions slightly different from those of the Javan bird, the tail and tarsus being slightly longer and the bill decidedly shorter.

Dimensions:—Of type: Total length, 110; wing, 57; tail, 36; tarsus, 23; bill from gape, 19 mm. Range of eight adult males. Total length, 108-120; wing, 55-58; tail 36-40; bill from gape, 17-19; tarsus 22.5-27 mm. Range of six Javan specimens. Total length, 116-125; wing, 52-59; tail, 31-35;

---

[15] Strix rufescens, *Horsfield, Trans. Linn. Soc.,* xiii, p. 140 (1820).

[16] Serilophus rothschildi, *Hartest, Bull. Brit. Orn. Club,* vii, p. 50 (1908).

[17] Myiothera epilepidota, *Temminck, Pl. Col.* ii, pl. 448, fig. 2 (1827).

bill from gape, 19.5-21; tarsus, 21-24 mm. All measurements taken in the flesh.

Type:—Adult male, collected at Sungei Kumbang, Korinchi, 4,700′, West Sumatra, on 13th April 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Specimens examined:—Twenty-one.

TURDIDAE.

Turdus indrapurae, sp. nov. Very closely allied to *Turdus fumidus*[18] from the Gedeh Volcano, West Java, but distinguished by having the general colour of the upper parts and of the throat and upper breast dark earthy brown, distinctly paler on the cap; whereas in *T. fumidus*, the mantle is dark bronzy grey, tinged with olivaceous, with the cap blackish, distinctly darker than the rest of the upper parts. Belly and flanks earthy chestnut richer in tint than the corresponding parts of *T. fumidus*, centre of belly and anal patch whitish, under tail coverts blackish brown with narrow shaft stripes, white, tinged with buff, these shaft stripes being narrower than in *T. fumidus* but broadening to the tip.

Dimensions:—Male: Total length, 242; wing, 122; tail, 110; tarsus, 32; bill from gape 25 mm. (measured in flesh). Female: Total length, 242; wing, 122; tail, 103; tarsus, 30; bill from gape, 27 mm. (measured in flesh).

Types:—Male, No. 1196; female, No. 1274; collected on Korinchi Peak, at 10,000 feet, West Sumatra, on April 27th and April 29th 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Specimens examined:—Twenty seven.

MUSCICAPIDAE.

Cryptolopha sumatrensis, sp. nov. Closely allied to *Cryptolopha grammiceps* (Strickl.)[19] of Java, from which it differs in having the mantle and back clear grey, not light ashy brown and in the absence of the white on rump, which is uniform with the lower back.

Dimensions:—Male: Total length, 107; wing, 54; tail, 48; tarsus, 17.5; bill from gape, 12.5 mm. Female: Total length, 107; wing, 52; tail, 43; tarsus, 18; bill from gape, 12.5 mm. (taken in the flesh).

Types:—Male, No. 538; Female, No. 529; collected at Sungei Kumbang, Korinchi, at 4,700 feet, on 31st March and 1st April 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Specimens examined:—Seventeen.

---

[18] *S. Mueller, Verh. Nat. Gesch. Nederl. Ind.* p. 201 (1839).

[19] Pycnosphys grammiceps, *Verreaux, Mss; Strickl. Contrib. Orn.* 1849 p.—. *Jardine, Memoir of Hugh Strickland.* p. 323 (1858).

Cryptolopha muelleri, sp. nov. In general appearance resembling the preceding species but differing in having the rump, sides of the body and under tail coverts bright sulphur yellow, the scapulars and lower back olive green and the outer tail feathers edged and tipped with white. In these particulars it resembles *C. castaneiceps* (Hodgs.)[20] of the Himalayas, from which it is separated by the cinnamon chestnut of the lores, sides of the head and ear coverts, which are white or grey in that species.

Dimensions:—Total length, 98; wing, 53; tail, 41; tarsus, 18; bill from gape, 13 mm. (in dried skin).

Type:—Adult male, No. 2088, collected at Barong Bharu, Barisan Range, 4,000 feet, West Sumatra, on June 8th 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Specimens examined:—One, the type.

DICAEIDAE.

Dicaeum beccarii, sp. nov. Allied to *D. ignipectus*[21] from the Himalayas and the Malay Peninsula, but differing in the entire absence of red in the plumage and in the reduction of the black abdominal patch, which is without gloss.

Dimensions:—Male, total length, 92; wing, 50; tail, 34; tarsus, 14; bill from gape, 10 mm. (measured in flesh).

Type:—Adult male, No. 1,171, collected on Korinchi Peak, at 7,300 feet, West Sumatra, on 26th April 1914, by H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss.

Specimens examined:—Three.

---

[20] Abrornis castaneiceps, *Hodgs, in Gray's Zool. Misc.* p. 82 (1844).

[21] Myzanthe ignipectus, *Hodgson, Journ. Asiat. Soc. Bengal,* xx, p. 983 (1843).

CONTENTS

PAGE

Notes on Malay History. *By C. O. Blagden*

1. An Early Reference to Menangkabau 127

2. An Early Mention of the old Singapore. ... 127

An Experimental Investigation concerning the Effects of "Tuba" (Derris elliptica) Fish-Poison. ... *By J. Argyll Campbell* ... 129

New and Rare Malayan Plants, Series VIII. ... *By H. N. Ridley* ... 139

William Jack's Letters to Nathaniel Wallich, 1819-1821. ... Edited *by I. H. Burkill* ... 147

Preliminary Diagnoses of some New Species and Subspecies of Mammals and Birds obtained in Korinchi, West Sumatra, Feb.—June 1914. *By H. C. Robinson and C. Boden Kloss* ... 269

Third part for the year
1916.

Price to non-members
$2.00.

STRAITS BRANCH
ROYAL ASIATIC SOCIETY.

[No 74]

JOURNAL

December, 1916

Smithsonian Institution
SEP 1 1917
241468
National Museum

Sold at the Society's Rooms, Raffles Museum, Singapore,
and by
MESSRS. WILLIAM WESLEY & SON
82, ESSEX STREET, STRAND,
LONDON. W. C.

PRINTED AT THE METHODIST PUBLISHING HOUSE, SINGAPORE.

[No. 74]

JOURNAL

of the

Straits Branch

of the

Royal Asiatic Society

Smithsonian Institution
SEP 17 1917
National Museum

December, 1916.

SINGAPORE:
PRINTED AT THE METHODIST PUBLISHING HOUSE
1916

Barnacles from deep-sea Telegraph Cables in the Malay Archipelago.

By N. Annandale, D. Sc., F. A. S. B.
(*Zoological Survey of India*).

Many years ago Capt. F. Worsley of the S. S. 'Sherard Osborne' obtained a number of deep-sea barnacles from cables that his ship was engaged in repairing. Some of these he presented to the Indian Museum in Calcutta, the others (the major part) to the Raffles Museum in Singapore. Those in the Indian Museum were described by me in 1905 in the *Memoirs of the Asiatic Society of Bengal;* I have now to thank Dr. Hanitsch for the opportunity of examining those in Singapore and of comparing selected specimens with the collection in Calcutta.

There is one slight uncertainty as to the *provenance* of the Singapore specimens. A large portion of them are stated to have been found in lat. 10° 22′ 30″, but it is not stated whether North or South. There can, however, be little real doubt that South is meant, for the corresponding specimens in Calcutta are labelled "Bali Straits."

The majority of the specimens are from Bali and Gasper Straits and the Java Sea. There is also one species from off Timor. Probably all were brought up from depths of between 60 and 200 fathoms, except *Heteralepas malaysiana,* the type-specimen of which came from 30 fathoms.

A remarkable feature of the collection is the very large proportion of otherwise unknown forms represented in it. In the following list those species that are recorded also from other sources are distinguished by a star at the end of their names.

List of the Pedunculate Barnacles from Telegraph Cables in the Malay Archipelago.

Scalpellum (*Smilium*) *nudipes,* sp. nov.
Scalpellum sociabile,* Annandale.
Scalpellum hamulus,* Hoek.
Scalpellum sociabile var. *parviceps,* var. nov.
Scalpellum stearnsi,* Pilsbry.
Scalpellum persona, sp. nov.
Heteralepas gigas (Annandale).
Heteralepas (*Paralepas*) *malaysiana* (Annandale).

Poecilasma (*Glyptelasma*) *gigas,* sp. nov.

Thus, of nine forms, six, or two-thirds, are only known from a small series of less than a hundred specimens. This is the more remarkable from the fact that some eighty species of bottom-haunting Cirripedia Pedunculata were represented in the collection made by the Dutch 'Siboga' Expedition in the seas of the Malay Archipelago.

Now the greater part of the sea-bottom is soft, buried in deep ooze; and fixed sessile organisms must often have great difficulty in finding solid objects to which to attach themselves on settling down in life. To such organisms a telegraph cable is a godsend. A scientific expedition, no matter how well equipped, may dredge over the sea-bottom for thousands of miles and discover no nidus so favourable. Deep-sea Cirripedes are usually fixed to the more solid parts of other organisms such as the anchor-fibres of Hexactinellid sponges like *Hyalonema* or the stems of colonial Coelenterates. These organisms grow anchored in the ooze. The surface of attachment is, however, small. Other favourite bases for deep-sea barnacles are the manganese nodules that form themselves round bodies such as the teeth of dead sharks, the solid ear-bones of whales, and cinders dropped from passing ships. But even these, if the vast area of the sea-bottom be considered, must be scanty upon it. When the larvae of a barnacle, produced as they are in hundreds if not thousands simultaneously, chance on a cable at the moment of fixation, it is evident that a much larger proportion of them will survive than would otherwise be the case. A large number of the species of the group known from depths greater than 100 fathoms are only known at most from a few isolated specimens. One species (*Scalpellum albatrossianum,* Pilsbry) only exists so far as museums are concerned in two individuals, one of which was dredged by the 'Albatross' in the north Atlantic from 2045 fathoms, the other by the 'Investigator' in the Bay of Bengal from 1997 fathoms. Two-thirds of the species in Capt. Worsley's collection are, however, represented by series of ten or more specimens each.

The barnacles are not only remarkable for their abundance but also for their large size. Only one of the species (*Heteralepas malaysiana*) can be called a small one, while no less than three of the nine species are, each in its own genus, the largest known, namely *Scalpellum stearnsi*, *Poecilasma gigas*[1] and *Heteralepas gigas*. *S. persona* is also among the most bulky of the Pedunculata. Moreover, the type-specimen of *S. inerme* (= *S. stearnsi*), found by Capt. Worsley on a cable in Bali Straits, is the largest individual of its species as yet recorded, while the examples of *S. hamulus* from cables are twice the size of those found attached to small objects by the 'Siboga' at about the same depth.

---

[1] In *P. subcarinatum* (Pilsbry) from the Atlantic the capitulum is at least as big but the peduncle is shorter.

It is strange to find a barnacle such as *Heteralepas gigas* on the sea-bottom in comparatively deep water, for it has all the appearance of a pelagic form. The specimens in the Raffles Museum, however, were undoubtedly attached to a telegraph cable, as is proved by an examination of the material adhering to their bases. They have been preserved in alcohol for many years and are now dull and formless objects, shrivelled out of all resemblance to their natural form, but much less uniformly contracted than the type-specimen. In life they were in all probability even larger than they are now and their integument must have been smooth, transparent and swollen; they must have borne a close external resemblance to the true *Alepas,* which is found on the surface, as a rule depending from the bells of medusae (see *Rec. Ind. Mus.,* X, p. 276, pl. xxxiii, fig. 2).

Both *Scalpellum stearnsi* and *S. persona,* which are not closely allied species, display a tendency to get rid of the calcareous valves or plates on the capitulum and to substitute for them a homogeneous cartilaginous or thick membraneous investment. In all families of the true Cirripedia Pedunculata a similar tendency occurs and re-occurs in certain genera and species. It may be correlated either with a deep-sea or a pelagic existence or with semi-parasitic habits and therefore affords a rare instance of parallel evolution in which convergence is connected not with similar but with diverse modes of life. In the genus *Scalpellum* itself we find two if not three different manifestations of this curious tendency, which may perhaps be regarded as an ultimate reversion to a primitive condition. In the first place we may note a number of species of comparatively small size (*e.g. S. laccadivicum,* Annandale = *S. polymorphum,* Hoek, and *S. larvale,* Pilsbry) with compressed capitula and very delicate valves in which there is great variation in the development of these plates. Even when they are most degenerate the membrane that covers them is not thick. In some cases individuals are known in which the greater part or the whole of the capitular surface is covered by the valves, while others occur in which the valves are reduced by an excavation of their lower margins until (as in *S. lambda,* Annandale) they may all have a form approaching to that of the Greek letter *l.* In such forms the valves of the young are, at any rate in some species, more complete than those of the adults. At the other extreme we find a little group of very large species such as *S. giganteum, S. persona* and *S. alcockianum,* with stout, more or less inflated capitula and with relatively thick valves almost completely concealed beneath a thick cartilaginous investment. In such species the condition of the valves seems to be much more stable than in the other group; in *S. giganteum* they are relatively large, in the two Oriental species very small. But in these latter their area though small is not, except in the terga and to a less extent in the carinal latera, reduced by excavation of the margins of the plates, but by a general reduction in size. Such forms as *S. stearnsi* and *S. gruvelii* are to some extent intermediate between these two extremes, being very variable in the extent of the valves, having great or moderately great bulk, a moderately thick capitulum and a moderately thick investment. The reduction of their valves, however, is brought about mainly not by excavation of the margins, and it is possible that they may represent an offshoot from the same stock that has produced *A. giganteum* and *S. persona* successively in the direct line, having valves capable of reduction as in the latter, but lacking the very thick investment and other extreme characters of both species.

In spite of its biological and taxonomic interest the collection does not cast much light on the distribution of the deep-sea fauna of Malaysia. One species (*Scalpellum stearnsi*) appears to be a true eastern form, common in Japanese seas in shallow water and at moderate depths near shore and found by the ' Siboga ' at several places in the Malay Archipelago in from 112 to 221 fathoms. It has not been taken anywhere west of the Malay Peninsula. The other seven species have been found only in the Malay Archipelago, but one of them (*Scalpellum persona*) from the Java Sea is closely related to a form (*S. alcockianum*) described from greater depths (859-880 fathoms) off Ceylon. *S. sociabile* is probably confined to the western and central parts of the Archipelago, while *S. nudipes, S. sociabile* var. *parriceps, Heteralepas gigas, H. malaysiana* and *Poecilasma gigas* are only known from the seas round Java and Borneo. None of these species are related to others very closely.

I know of no other collection of barnacles from deep-sea cables in the Malay Archipelago. There is a small one in the British Museum from a cable in the western part of the Indian Ocean, including specimens of three species only, all of which are different from the Malayan ones. It is, however, from a considerably greater depth (1200 fathoms) than the collection considered here. Two of the species (*Scalpellum velutinum,* Hoek and *S. gruvelii,* Annandale) are fairly large forms, but the third, *S.* (*Smilium*) *acutum,* Hoek, is decidedly small. *S. acutum* and *S. velutinum* are both species with a very extensive range in the deep sea, while *S. gruvelii* is known otherwise with certainty only from off Ceylon and from the Laccadive Sea, but is so closely related to American forms from both the Atlantic and the Pacific that their specific identity has been suggested.

Family **SCALPELLIDAE.**

Genus ***Scalpellum,*** Leach.

1851. *Scalpellum,* Darwin, *Mon. Cirr., Lepadidae* (Ray Soc.), p. 215.
1883. *Scalpellum,* Hoek, *Zool. Rep. 'Challenger',* VIII, *Cirripedia,* p. 59.
1905. *Scalpellum,* Gruvel, *Mon. Cirrh.,* p. 23.
1907. *Scalpellum,* Hoek, *Siboga-Exp.,* mon. XXXI a (Cirr. Ped.), p. 58.
1907. *Scalpellum,* Pilsbry *Bull. U. S. Nat. Mus.,* No. 60, p. 6.
1908. *Scalpellum* + *Smilium* + *Euscalpellum, id., Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philadelphia,* pp. 107, 108.
1910. *Scalpellum,* Annandale, *Rec. Ind. Mus.,* V, p. 145.
1916. *Scalpellum,* Joleaud, *Ann. Mus. d'Hist. Nat. Marseilles,* XV, p. 37.

Of the recent species ascribed to this genus by modern authors, now numbering well over a hundred, only six were known to Darwin in 1851 and of these, four had already received separate generic names. The type-species of *Scalpellum* was *S. vulgare,* Leach: 1824 (= *Lepas scalpellum,* Linné: 1767 and Poli: 1795); Gray in 1848 had described a second species under the name *Thaliella ornata;* the same author in 1825 had named a third species *Smilium Peronii,* and a fourth in the same year *Calantica Homii* (= *Pollicipes villosus,* Leach: 1824). All these Darwin included in *Scalpellum,* together with two new species, *S. rutilum* and *S. rostratum.* He was not, however, by any means dogmatic in so doing, for he wrote, "I have felt much doubt in limiting this genus: the six recent species which it contains, differ more from each other than do the species in the previous genera."

Hoek in his report on the 'Challenger' collection (1883) followed Darwin in recognizing only one genus, in which he set up two primary divisions, to include (A) those with imperfectly and (B) those with perfectly calcified valves.

Gruvel, in his *Monographie des Cirrhipèdes* (1905), accepted Hoek's classification.

In his account of the Cirripedia in the collection of the United States National Museum (1907) Pilsbry considerably elaborated this system, accepting three subgenera (*Calantica, Smilium* and *Scalpellum*) and further subdividing the subgenus *Scalpellum* into three sections, which he called *Scalpellum, s. str., Holoscalpellum* and *Neoscalpellum.* He based these subgenera and sections mainly on the number, form and position of the capitular valves of the hermaphrodite or female but also considered the characters of the dwarfed males when these were known.

In the following year, in a paper "On the Classification of the Scalpelliform Barnacles," he carried the process further, laying greater stress on the males, and recognized four genera, *Calantica, Smilium, Euscalpellum* and *Scalpellum. Scalpellum* he subdivided into two subgenera, *Arcoscalpellum* and *Scalpellum, s. str.* He also recognized other minor groups.

In the meanwhile (1907) Hoek had published his report on the Cirripedia Pedunculata of the 'Siboga' and had introduced into literature the names *Euscalpellum* and *Arcoscalpellum,* which Hoek adopted from him. These names, however, Hoek used only as those of "Sectiones," together with two others of similar application—*Proto-Scalpellum* and *Meso-Scalpellum.* In all cases he inserted a hyphen and spelt the '*Scalpellum*' part of the compound with a capital S. In distinguishing the four sections he gave great importance to the form of the carina, but also considered other valves in the hermaphrodite and female and did not ignore the males.

In 1910 I gave reasons for recognizing only the genus *Scalpellum* with two subgenera, *Smilium* and *Scalpellum, s. str.*

Quite recently (1916) Joleaud, writing largely from a palaeontological point of view and ignoring everything but the capitular valves of the hermaphrodites or females, has proposed an entirely new classification. He separates off the apparently more primitive forms assigned to *Scalpellum* by Hoek and places them in the genera *Pollicipes,* which he distinguishes from *Mitella,* and *Scillaelepas.* The remaining species he retains in *Scalpellum,* which he divides into two subgenera. To these he assigns the names *Protoscalpellum* and *Scalpellum.* In *Protoscalpellum* he recognizes three sections, *Euprotoscalpellum, Subpseudoscalpellum* and *Pseudoscalpellum.* To *Scalpellum* (*s. str.*) he also assigns three sections, which he calls *Adeuscalpellum, Subeuscalpellum* and *Euscalpellum.* To say the least of it, these sectional names are ponderous. Their invention, considering the terminology already available, seems to have laid an unnecessary burden on the ingenuity of the author.

In all of this I see no reason to recede from the position I took up in 1910. at any rate so far as the Indo-Malayan species are concerned. The forms assigned by Joleaud to *Pollicipes* and *Scillaelepas* are certainly very remarkable and may be worthy of subgeneric or even generic rank, but none of them occur in the Indian Ocean and I have little personal experience of any. Of course I do not deny that among the numerous species I retain in *Scalpellum* (*s. str.*) several more or less distinct groups occur, but these groups are not strictly separated one from another and I think it better, when it is necessary to refer to them separately, merely to call them after the most characteristic species known (as "the group of *S. alcockianum*" or "the group of *S. stratum*").

Throughout the Pedunculata valves are liable to degenerate and disappear and I doubt whether the absence of any one valve has much significance. The presence, on the other hand, of more than a definite number is in most genera a fact of importance. In *Scalpellum* (*s. l.*) there may be as many as 15 valves on the capitulum of the hermaphrodite, or as few as 13; but it is significant that in all known males of the genus in which the calcareous armature is not degenerate there are six valves. Moreover, in many if not in all species a stage in the post-larval development of the female or hermaphrodite can be found in which there are six main calcified areas.[1] The six valves that appear on these grounds to be primitive are the carina and rostrum, a pair of terga and a pair of scuta. The primitive armature thus differs from that typical of the Lepadidae mainly in the presence of a rostrum. In *Mitella,* on the other hand, there seems to be no evidence for the existence at any stage in the evolution of the genus of so small a number of valves. As I have pointed out elsewhere,[2] the lines of evolution in the Cirripedia are so complicated and uncertain that any statement as to the descent of any genus or group of species must be regarded as little more than an expression of individual opinion. I do not deny that a morphological classification would be the ideal one, but when so many doubts exist as to the significance of different structures and organs, convenience is the safest course to follow. It is not convenient to refer to a species as belonging to the genus *Scalpellum,* the subgenus *Proto-scalpellum* and the section *Subpseudoscalpellum,* and though this terminology may convey a definite morphological meaning to its author and his followers, it is merely confusing to the average carcinologist, as well as being technically incorrect.

---

[1] How readily extra valves of no particular significance can be produced in *Scalpellum* is shown by *S. valvulifer,* Annandale, *Vid. Meddel. naturh. Foren. Kbhavn.,* 1910, p. 214, pl. iii, figs. 1, 2.

[2] *Mem. Ind. Mus.,* II, p. 64 (1909).

Subgenus **Smilium,** Gray.

1910. *Smilium,* Annandale, *Rec. Ind. Mus.,* V, p. 150.

Scalpellum nudipes, sp. nov.

(Pl. IV, fig. 1; pl. V, figs. 1-6; pl. VI, figs. 1, 2).

The species is a somewhat isolated one readily distinguished by the vestigial nature and microscopic size of the calcareous valves of its stalk. This character is combined with a fully calcified capitular armature, great bulk and leaf-like anal appendages.

CAPITULUM.

The capitulum is large, ovoid and compressed. There are thirteen large, fully calcified capitular valves in all of which the umbo is apical. They are of a dead white colour and are covered by a thin, smooth, transparent membrane and embedded in a brown cartilaginous investment that separates them slightly. Together they practically cover the surface of the capitulum; none of their apices project strongly. Their surface is smooth, with widely separated obsolescent angulate ridges and furrows. They are all stout and brittle. There are no upper latera.

Terga. The tergum is relatively large, triangular in outline and with all its angles acute. The three angles are situated, one (the umbo) at the apex of the capitulum, one underneath the apex of the scutum on the orificial margin, and one close to the carina and to the posterior angle of the upper latus. The posterior margin of the valve slopes backwards and downwards and is somewhat sinuous but convex outwards as a whole; the anterior margin is straight and relatively short; it is directed downwards and only a very little outwards; the lower margin resembles the upper but with its convexity reversed. The apex is very slightly retroverted.

Scuta. The outline of the scutum somewhat resembles that of the tergum but is relatively shorter and more irregular; the valve is also somewhat smaller. The upper posterior angle is situated immediately above the apex of the upper latus. The apex of the scutum is distinctly retroverted and overlaps the tergum.

Inframedian. The inframedian latus is comparatively large and of broadly triangular form. Its base forms an acute angle anteriorly with that of the carinal latus. The posterior angle dives beneath the carina and is truncate; the anterior angle is somewhat produced below the base of the scutum.

Carinal latera. The carinal latus is also triangular, but more symmetrical, more produced at the anterior and posterior angles and with its base parallel to that of the capitulum and its apex pointing directly upwards between the upper latus and the carina. The base of the valve is buried in the cartilaginous investment but the apex projects outwards almost to the surface.

Rostral latera. The rostral latus resembles the carinal latus in shape and orientation but is even more transverse and is considerably produced backwards, extending for some distance below the base of the latter valve.

Carina. The carina is of moderate size. It extends upwards very little beyond the apex of the scutum and falls far short of that of the tergum. Viewed from the side it is narrow and tapers gradually to the apex; its upper half has a distinct but by no means strong curvature and the apex projects very little behind the posterior margin of the tergum. The base is convex downwards. The dorsum is obscurely carinate and slopes outwards on either side. The base is subangulate and the apex sharply pointed.

Subcarina. The subcarina, which projects almost directly backwards but extends very little behind the carina, is broadly triangular and of comparatively large size. Its apex lies below the middle of the base of the carina and between the posterior angles of the carinal latera.

Rostrum. This valve resembles the subcarina closely but is a little larger and has its apex retroverted below the base of the capitular orifice. It projects hardly at all.

PEDUNCLE.

The peduncle is stout, somewhat compressed and distinctly constricted in the middle. It is of a pale brown colour and a cartilaginous consistency. The surface is wrinkled transversely and divided into small areas, which on the lower part are transverse and rhomboidal, by a network of minute grooves. To the naked eye the capitulum appears to be quite unarmed, but a lens reveals numerous microscopic calcareous particles embedded in the membrane. They have a spindle-shaped or oval outline, are flattened and for the most part directed outwards but do not penetrate the surface. Their position is not correlated with that of the areas on the surface, which are perhaps of artificial origin.

CIRRI, ETC.

1st Cirrus. Both rami are slender and tapering, without dilated segments, the anterior ramus is considerably the shorter of the two and has about 22 segments. The first cirrus is widely separated from the second.

Cirri 2-6. The remaining cirri are moderately stout and long. Their anterior fringe is well developed though consisting of rather short chaetae; the posterior armature consists of bunches of fine hairs, of which the longest is about equal in length to the segment, attached to the upper extremity of each segment. Except at the extremities of the rami, each segment is ornamented on its anterior half by several sloping, sinuous lines constituted by an internal thickening of the cuticle.

Anal appendages. These are flattened from before backwards and expanded. They consist of a single leaf-like segment devoid of all armature except a very minute and scanty pilosity. The outer margins are strongly concave, the inner a little sinuous. The tips of the appendages do not reach as far as the upper end of the basal segment of the peduncle of the sixth cirri.

Penis. The penis is long, rather broad but compressed laterally, strongly and closely annulate, pointed, armed only with soft fine hairs.

MOUTH-PARTS.

Labrum. The labrum is by no means large and not at all bullate. It has a sharp chitinous edge posteriorly but no teeth. The palps are rather short and stout.

Mandible. The mandible is broad and has a large number of teeth, but, as is usual when it takes this form, is probably variable. In the specimen examined the biting margin is almost straight and bears five main teeth, of which the outermost, the 4th and 5th are subequal and larger than the 2nd and 3rd. Between the 1st and 2nd, 2nd and 3rd and 3rd and 4th there are smaller subsidiary teeth. Of these the first is the largest and the third much the smallest. The inner angle, which projects very little beyond the base of the 5th tooth, is asymmetrical. None of the teeth are pectinate and the whole appendage is practically naked.

Maxilla. This appendage is rather broad. The outer chaeta is very stout and is followed by a rather deep but short quadrate excavation. There is also a small notch on the margin about half way between the excavation and the inner angle. The marginal bristles are numerous and long but delicate. There is a fringe of fine hairs running almost parallel to and at some distance from the margin on the posterior surface of the appendage.

Outer maxillae. The form of these appendages is normal. The sensory organ connected therewith is situated on a rounded papilla.

ACCESSORY MALE.

There are four accessory males attached to the capitulum of the hermaphrodite just below the orifice, but only one of them appears to be mature. It possesses a well differentiated capitulum armed with 8 valves. The number of valves is, however, probably abnormal as it is brought about by the separation, quite asymmetrically, of two small plates, one on either side of the carina a little above its base. The normal number is, as in allied forms, probably 6. The capitulum is about as broad above as it is high, it is much broader than the peduncle and moderately compressed from side to side. The orifice opens upwards and outwards.

The six valves are stout and of comparatively large size. The terga are much smaller than the others and have an almond-shaped outline. Their main axis is vertical. The scuta are broadly triangular and much wider than the other valves: their apices are pointed and turned backwards slightly. The rostrum is large, relatively narrow, very prominent but somewhat retroverted at the apex. The carina is narrow, curved, pointed above and subtruncate at the base. The apices of this valve, of the terga and of the scuta are almost on a level. The appendages are relatively shorter than in the hermaphrodite but otherwise similar. They lack the peculiar ornamentation characteristic of the larger sex but are armed similarly. The mouth-parts are well developed and also resemble those of the hermaphrodite, except that the labrum is relatively smaller and the mandibles have fewer teeth. The anal appendages are leaf-like and consist of a single segment: there is a small bunch of long hairs at their free extremity. The penis is not annulated.

The younger males have a much narrower capitulum of oval outline. The rostrum and carina are considerably smaller and not at all prominent, while the other valves are less regular in shape. The vesicula seminalis, a conspicuous feature of the large male, is barely visible in the smaller individuals.

MEASUREMENTS.

	Hermaphrodite (*type*)	Adult Male	Young Male
Height of capitulum	55 mm.	4·5 mm.	2·5 mm.
Width of capitulum	40 ,,	4·5 ,,	2·0 ,,
Thickness of capitulum	20 ,,	—	—
Length of peduncle	56 ,,	2·8 ,,	1·5 ,,
Diameters of peduncle	25 x 18 ,,	—	—

Type-specimen. Crustacea, 9319/10, Z. S. I. (Ind. Mus.).

Locality. Lat. 10° 22′ 30″ (?S), long. 120° 7′ 30″ E. (130-500 fathom), Java Sea.

This species, taking both the hermaphrodite and the male into consideration, would find a place in the genus *Calantica* as redefined by Pilsbry in 1908, but is not at all allied to *S. villosum* (Leach), the type of that genus. Nor is it related to the North Atlantic forms assigned by Pilsbry to the group *Scillaelepas.* In spite of the absence of an upper latus in the hermaphrodite it seems to me to be probably related to such forms as *Scalpellum stratum*, Aurivillius, from the West Indies and *S. sinense*, Annadale, from the seas of Burma and China. It is, in any case, an extremely distinct species, remarkable for its large size, almost naked peduncle and curious anal appendages. The regularity of the valves of the hermaphrodite is a noteworthy feature and the comparatively large size and high development of the male another.

I have examined only the type-specimen, but there is, I think, another from the same locality in the Raffles Museum.

Subgenus **Scalpellum**, Leach.

1910. *Scalpellum (s. s.)*, Annandale, *Rec. Ind. Mus.*, V, p. 150.
1913. *Scalpellum (s. s.), id., ibid.*, IX, p. 227.

Scalpellum hamulus, Hoek.

1907. *Scalpellum hamulus*, Hoek, *Siboga-Exp.*, mon. XXXI a (Cirr. Ped.), p. 86, pl. vii, figs. 14, 14a.

I assign to this species two comparatively large specimens from Johul Bank 90 miles south of Timor (70 fathoms). They were attached to the cable in the midst of a massive Alcyonarian of the genus *Dendronephthya*. The capitulum in one specimen is 36 mm. long by 22 mm. broad, the peduncle 37 mm. by 11 mm. The valves are tinged with pink, especially at the apices. The only difference from Hoek's figure that I can detect is that all the lower latera are relatively a little larger, the carina distinctly longer and the upper margin of the tergum less sinuate above. The two last characters are probably correlated.

The cirri of this species are extremely slender and the hairs on their anterior margin very delicate. The basal segment of the anal appendages is expanded and flattened, but much less so than in *S. sociabile;* it bears a long flagellum-like process with about sixteen segments, the exact number, as in *S. sociabile,* being probably variable.

Scalpellum sociabile, Annandale.

1905. *Scalpellum sociabile,* Annandale, *Mem. As. Soc. Bengal,* I, p. 77, pl. viii, fig. 1.

1908. *Scalpellum sociabile, id. Ill. Zool. 'Investigator', Entomostraca,* pl. iii, fig. 9.

The typical form, which is well represented in Capt. Worsley's collection, is more variable (in particular as to the mouth-parts and the number of segments in the anal appendages) than I realized when drawing up the original description. Indeed, the mandibles of the specimen then dissected seem to have been altogether abnormal (*op. cit.,* 1905, p. 78, fig. 2). A characteristic feature of the appendage is, however, shown even in the abnormal specimen, namely the great distance between the first and second tooth and the strong sinuosity or irregular outline of the margin between these two teeth (*cf.* pl. vi, fig. 6). The form of the anal appendages, with their large and greatly expanded basal segment and short cylindrical flagellum, is also most characteristic, though the number of segments in the flagellum is variable.

The characteristic features of the typical form are, as distinguishing it from both the two varieties discussed below, its comparatively narrow and compressed capitulum, the large size of the calcareous plates on the upper part of the peduncle and the relatively considerable, though not excessive size of the peduncle.

The type-specimens in the Indian Museum are from Bali Straits (160 fathoms), while the examples in the Raffles Museum are labelled, lat. 10° 22′ 30″ (S.?), long. 120° 7′ 30″ E., 130-500 fathoms. The latter do not exhibit the extreme gregariousness of those figured in 1905.

var. **pellicatum,** Hoek.

1907. *Scalpellum pellicatum*, Hoek, *Siboga-Exp.*, mon. XXXI a (*Cirr. Ped.*), p. 91, pl. vii, figs. 18, 19.

1909. *Scalpellum sociabile* var. *pellicatum*, Annandale, *Rec. Ind. Mus.*, III, p. 270.

Hoek recognized the close relationship of this form to my species, which was described while his 'Siboga' report was in the press, but left it to future investigators to ascertain the precise connection. In view of the variations seen in the large series of *S. sociabile* I have now examined, I am convinced that *S. pellicatum* is no more than a variety of that species. The curious hook on the upper margin of the capitulum, due to the fact that the apex of the carina is entirely free from the capitular membrane, is perhaps abnormal, but the form differs otherwise from the *forma typica* in its relatively broad capitulum and short peduncle armed with close-set plates.

The specimens dredged by the 'Siboga' (the only examples known) were taken in the Celebes Sea and east of Halmaheira in depths of 450 and 397 metres. They were probably all attached to sea-urchins. I have not examined specimens.

var. **parviceps,** nov.

(Pl. IV, fig. 2; pl. V, fig. 9; pl. VI, fig. 6).

This variety differs from the typical form mainly in its very large peduncle, which is armed with relatively small, widely-separated plates, in the strong development of the hairy capitular epidermis and of the membrane in which the valves are buried. The capitulum is also stouter and more quadrate and the valves are relatively a little smaller. I figure the type specimen and also its mandible and anal appendage.

The measurements of the type-specimen are as follows. It is numbered 9318/10, Crustacea in the books of the Zoological Survey of India. There is a cotype in the Raffles Museum.

Height of capitulum	35 mm.
Breadth of capitulum	25 „
Length of peduncle	53 „
Diameter of peduncle	17 „

The two specimens were taken in lat. 10° 22′ 30″ (?S), long. 120° 7′ 30″ E. (130-500 fathoms) in the Java Sea. They were attached side by side to the cable.

The differences in the three varieties of this species may perhaps be correlated with differences in environment. The specimens of the typical form were found attached to a telegraph cable or to one another and those of var. *pellicatum* probably to the spines of sea-urchins. In the first instance there was obvious opportunity for free growth and rapid reproduction, in the second the short peduncle may have been of advantage in permitting the guests to lie closer to their host and so to receive full protection from its spines; but I am unable to suggest an explanation of the long peduncle and thick investment of the var. *parviceps*.

Scalpellum stearnsi, Pilsbry.

? 1851. *Scalpellum magnum,* Darwin, *Mon. Fossil Lepadidae,* p. 18, pl. i, fig. 1.

1890. *Scalpellum Stearnsi,* Pilsbry, *Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philadelphia,* p. 441, fig.

1891. *Scalpellum calcariferum,* Fischer, *Bull. Soc. Zool. France,* XVI, p. 116, fig.

1905. *Scalpellum inerme,* Annandale, *Mem. As. Soc. Bengal,* I, p. 75, pl. viii, figs. 1, 2.

1907. *Scalpellum stearnsi* varr. *robusta* and *gemina,* Hoek, *Siboga-Exp.* mon. XXXI a (Cirripedia Pedunculata), p. 69, pl. vi, figs. 1-12.

1907. *Scalpellum stearnsi* and *S. inerme,* Pilsbry, *Bull. U. S. Nat. Mus.,* No. 60, p. 14.

1909. *Scalpellum stearnsi,* Annandale, *Rec. Ind. Mus.,* III, p. 270.

1907. *Scalpellum stearnsii,* Krüger, *Abh. K. Bayer. Ak. Wiss.,* Suppl.-Bd. II, p. 18, pl. ii, figs. 18, 19.

I have already pointed out (*op. cit.,* 1909) the close resemblance between recent examples of this species and Darwin's figure of the fossil *S. magnum*[1] of the Coralline Crag of Sudbourne. Apart from possible anatomical differences, which of course cannot be discussed, I would have no hesitation in regarding the fossil and the recent form as specifically identical.

Scalpellum stearnsi was described under that name by Pilsbry in 1890 and redescribed as *S. calcariferum* by Fischer in the following year. In 1905 I described *S. inerme,* which I now believe to be merely an extreme form of the species, without recognizing its true relationship. My attention was first drawn to the close affinities of the two forms by the Rev. T. R. R. Stebbing, F. R. S. Two years later Hoek referred specimens from the Malay Archipelago to two new varieties, which he called *robusta* and *gemina*. The type of *S. inerme* differs from one of his specimens of the variety *gemina* hardly more than these specimens vary among themselves. Hoek's Malayan examples differ considerably from those hitherto described from Japan, in particular in the great development of the peduncle and the capitular investment. I have, however, been able to examine a good series both from Japan and from the Malay Archipelago and cannot find any distinct break either between specimens from different localities or between those of the supposed varieties.

---

[1] This resemblance was first noticed by Fischer in 1891, *op. cit.,* p. 118.

There are in the Indian Museum four specimens from Japan. Two of these, which were received in exchange from the British Museum, are comparatively small, the capitulum of the larger example being only about 25 mm. in length. They agree sufficiently well with Pilsbry's and Fischer's figures and differ little, apart from size, from the young specimen of the variety *robusta* figured by Hoek, except that all the prominent valves are a little more pointed. I recently obtained in Japan two very large specimens which have the following measurements:—

	A	B
Height of capitulum	63 mm.	55 mm.
Breadth of capitulum	43 ,,	35 ,,
Thickness of capitulum	26 ,,	22 ,,
Length of peduncle	62 ,,	49 ,,
Diameter of peduncle	25 ,,	22 ,,

In measuring the breadth of the capitulum I have not included the prominent part of the carinal latera; I have measured the thickness of the capitulum at the base.

These two specimens, which were taken side by side, agree much more closely with the description and figures of the variety *robusta* than they do with those of the typical form. The investment of their capitulum is thick and semi-opaque and their peduncles, though less swollen than those of the type of *robusta*, are very nearly as long. I do not think, therefore, that the Japanese form can be regarded as a local race of the Malayan one and I see no reason for giving the latter a distinct name, so far as well calcified examples are concerned.

My supposed species *inerme* differs from the typical form and from *robusta* merely in the rather shorter peduncle and in the extreme degeneration of the capitular valves, for the anatomical differences noted by Pilsbry are certainly not beyond the limits of variation. In respect to the degeneration of the valves it is merely an extreme form of Hoek's form *gemina*, one of the co-types of which is now in the Indian Museum. There is in the Raffles

Museum a fairly large series from the Malay Archipelago, and the series includes a number of individuals intermediate between the forms *robusta* and *gemina*. I am doubtful, therefore, whether distinct varieties based on the development of the valves should be recognized in the species, but if it is considered desirable to refer to the form with degenerate valves by a distinct name, they should clearly be called var. *inerme*. Some justification may be found for this course in the apparent absence from Japanese seas of individuals with degenerate valves.

S. stearnsi was originally described from shallow water (6-10 fathoms), on the east coast of Japan. The type was attached to a *Vermetus* shell. The type of *S. calcariferum* was from Enoshima in Sagami Bay. My own Japanese specimens are also from Sagami Bay, but probably came from rather deeper water, as Pilsbry's (*op. cit.*, 1907) from off Hondo certainly did. The latter were taken in 94 fathoms. Mine were attached to a dead shell of *Xenophora*, which was mined by the sponge[1] *Cliona vastifica* v. *concharum*, Thiele. Hoek's specimens were from the Sulu Archipelago and the Sulu Sea; they came from depths of from 204 to 405 metres. The types of *gemina* were taken at the latter depth, but no examples of the var. *robusta* were found in depths greater than 330 metres. The specimens in the Raffles Museum are from the Java Sea, from depths of between 130 and 500 fathoms, while the type of *S. inerme* was from Bali Straits (160 fms.). Hoek's specimens were attached to shells or (the types of *gemina*) to the anchor-filaments of a Hexactinellid sponge: all of those from Malaysia in the Raffles and the Indian Museum were fixed to telegraph cables.

It is possible that large size and a strong development of the capitular investment are correlated in this species with life in comparatively deep water, but I have not found this to be the case in the European *S. vulgare*, in which somewhat similar, but not so extreme, variation occurs so far as the calcification of the capitulum is concerned.

Scalpellum persona, sp. nov.

(Pl. IV, fig. 3; pl. V, figs. 7, 8; pl. VI, figs. 3-5).

This species belongs to a little group of large *Scalpella* of doubtful affinities and remarkable for the great development of the capitular investment, in which the valves are buried and almost completely hidden. The valves themselves are more or less reduced in size but their margins, except in the terga and to some extent the carinal latera, are not excavated.

---

[1] Pearl-oyster shells from shallow water in Sagami Bay are attacked by a form of the same sponge much more closely resembling the *forma typica*. The upper surface of the *Xenophora* shell, round the base of the barnacles, was almost completely covered by a thick crust of another sponge, *Gellius glacialis* v. *niveus*, Ridley and Dendy, which I do not think has hitherto been recorded from Japan. The apertures of the mining species were mostly on the lower surface of the shell, which was rather deeply concave owing to breakage. It would seem to have been lying free on the bottom.

CAPITULUM.

The capitulum is ovoid, of large size and considerably inflated. The valves are completely concealed (except, in some cases, for the apices of the terga, carina and latera) in a thick, opaque, brownish, cartilaginous investment, the surface of which is glabrous and almost smooth. There are eleven relatively well developed valves in addition to a vestigial rostrum. Even those that are relatively well developed are actually of small size and they occupy together only a small proportion of the capitular area. They have, however, an opaque white colour and are fairly thick. Their umbones are apical. There is no subcarina.

Terga. The tergum is much reduced and has the form of a four-pointed star with two of its rays greatly and two slightly produced. The two long rays extend downwards, one reaching the tip of the scutum, the other a point about midway between the upper latus and the carina; one of the short rays is directed upwards and forms the tip of the capitulum, while the other points backwards and downwards. Both the long rays are strongly ridged.

Scuta. The scutum, though of small size and widely separated from all other valves but the tergum, is of normal form and has none of its margins excavated or deeply concave. It constitutes a triangle with a broad base and acutely pointed apex. The base lies parallel to that of the capitulum. The anterior margin of the valve is convex forwards, the posterior margin slightly concave and the basal margin nearly straight. The apex slightly overlaps the lower margin of the tergum.

Upper latera. The upper latus is small, triangular, non-emarginate. It is widely separated from all the other valves. Its larger axis occupies a line running from the apex of the scutum to the upper angle of the carinal latus. The antero-superior part of the valve is carinate.

Inframedian latera. These valves are almost vestigial, consisting of minute triangular plates deeply embedded in the investment. They are situated immediately below the upper latera and nearer the rostral latera than any other valve.

Rostral latera. The rostal latus is transverse, elongate and band-shaped. The two valves meet below the orifice. Their inner angles are immediately below those of the scuta.

Carinal latera. The carinal latera project strongly behind the capitulum some distance below the base of the carina. Their bases, however, lie deeply buried. Their apices are very slightly turned upwards.

Rostrum. The rostrum is vestigial and concealed behind the rostral latera.

Carina. The carina is reduced in size. Above it extends nearly to the apex of the capitulum, but below falls far short of the base. Its apex approaches that of the terga; otherwise it is widely separated from the other valves. In lateral view it is almost linear, strongly curved in its upper third and with its umbo strictly terminal. The dorsum, which is deeply buried, is narrow and feebly convex; the base is subangulate.

PEDUNCLE.

The peduncle is cylindrical and of about the same length as the capitulum. It is armed with distinct circles of large, projecting alternate plates more or less completely covered by a cartilaginous investment. They are much compressed from above downwards and their exposed margin is angulate or sub-angulate.

CIRRI, ETC.

1st Cirrus short and rather stout, the two rami subequal, the central segments of the anterior ramus expanded and produced backwards, the inner surface of both densely covered with hairs.

Cirri 2-6 not far removed from 1st cirrus, slender, armed anteriorly with two rows of long stiff but slender chaetae and posteriorly with terminal bunches of slender hairs, the largest of which are a little longer than the segment to which they are attached. Each bunch proceeds for a short distance down the back of the segment; those of the 6th cirri are feebly developed.

Anal appendages long, slender and tapering, consisting of a large number of segments, but much shorter than in *S. alcockianum.* The basal joint much the longest and somewhat expanded and flattened from before backwards.

Penis. Rather short, smooth, slender and pointed.

MOUTH PARTS.

Labrum. Small, not at all bullate; labial palp slender, pointed.

Mandible. Rather small, variable in dentition, but with three main teeth in addition to the inner angle, which is variously divided and broad as a whole; the outer tooth remote from and larger than the 2nd and 3rd, which are equal and situated rather close together.

Maxillae. Relatively large, with a broad shallow excavation on its upper margin occupying more than half the margin, the remainder of which is obliquely subtruncate. The two outer spines very stout but not lengthy.

Outer maxilla remarkable for the great development of the olfactory organ, which takes the form of a blunt conical process about half as long as the appendage is broad.

Family **LEPADIDAE.**

1909. Lepadidae, Annandale, *Mem. Ind. Mus.,* II, p. 64.

Subfamily **LEPADINAE.**

1909. Lepadinae, *id.*, *ibid.*, p. 71.

Genus ***Heteralepas,*** Pilsbry.

1907. *Heteralepas,* Pilsbry, *Bull. U. S. Nat. Mus.,* No. 60, p. 100.
1909. *Heteralepas,* Annandale, *Mem. Ind. Mus.,* II, p. 83.

Subgenus ***Heteralepas,*** Pilsbry.

Heteralepas gigas (Annandale).

1905. *Alepas gigas,* Annandale, *Mem. As. Soc. Bengal,* I, p. 80, pl. viii, fig. 3.

The type-specimen was taken by Capt. Worsley in Bali Straits on a cable at a depth of 160 fathoms. There are numerous specimens from the Java Sea (lat. 10° 22′ 30″ (?S.), long. 120° 7′ 30″ E.: 130-500 fathoms) in the Raffles Museum. The latter are considerably more swollen and distorted than the former and show that the animal must have had a gelatinous appearance in life much like that of the *Alepas* found attached to medusae on the surface. The hairs I described on the external surface of the type do not belong to the animal but are the remains of a Hydroid attached to it. I reproduce a photograph of a specimen from the Java Sea.

The type-specimens of *Poecilasma* (*Glyptelasma*) *gigas* were found attached to the peduncle of examples of this species.

Subgenus ***Paralepas,*** Pilsbry.

1907. *Paralepas,* Pilsbry, *op. cit.,* p. 100.

Heteralepas malaysiana (Annandale).

1905. *Alepas malaysiana,* Annandale, *Mem. As. Soc. Bengal,* I, p. 81, pl. viii, fig. 4.
1909. *Heteralepas malayana* (*lapsu*), Annandale, *Mem. Ind. Mus.,* II, p. 130.

Subfamily **POECILASMATINAE.**

Genus ***Poecilasma,*** Darwin.

1851. *Poecilasma,* Darwin, *Mon. Cirr., Lepadidae,* p. 99.
1907. *Poecilasma* and *Glyptelasma,* Pilsbry, *Bull. U. S. Nat. Mus.,* No. 60, pp. 82, 87.
1907. *Megalasma* (in part). *id., Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philadelphia,* p. 415.
1909. *Poecilasma,* Annandale, *Mem. Ind. Mus.,* II, p. 90.

Subgenus ***Glyptelasma,*** Pilsbry.

This subgenus only differs from that which contains the typical forms of *Poecilasma* in the peculiar structure of the base of the carina. Pilsbry regards it as intermediate between *Poecilasma* and *Megalasma* and as probably ancestral to the latter, under which he places it. The species now to be described, however, though it evidently comes into the subgenus is in most respects a true *Poe-*

cilasma and I think that Pilsbry's *Glyptelasma* has on the whole greater affinity with Darwin's genus than with Hoek's *Megalasma,* in which the umbo of the scuta has undergone a peculiar rotation.

Poecilasma gigas, sp. nov.

(Pl. IV, fig. 4; pl. V, figs. 10-14, pl. VI, figs. 7, 8).

This is one of the largest species as yet known either in *Poecilasma* or in *Megalasma.* It has also a longer peduncle than is usual in either *Megalasma* or *Glyptelasma,* both of which usually differ in their very short peduncle from the more *Lepas*-like *Poecilasma* (*s. str.*). The form of the base of the carina is characteristic of the species.

CAPITULUM.

The capitulum is large, rather narrow, strongly compressed in the tergal and carinal regions and only moderately inflated in the scutal. In form it is nearly rectangular, but rendered asymmetrical by the strong backward slope of the upper margin. The valves are nearly smooth, white and opaque; they are separated by lines of membrane and covered with a rather thick brownish cuticle, which is usually torn.

Terga. The terga are broad but have comparatively little vertical depth. They are rendered quadrangular by the fact that the posterior angle is distinctly truncated by the apex of the carina. The backward slope of the valve is well marked, its margins are all straight and its apex though not retroverted forms a very acute angle. The occludent margin almost forms an angle with that of the scutum, being directed backwards as well as upwards. There is a well-developed triannular tooth at the outer end of the lower margin on the inner surface of the left valve, but none on the right valve.

Scuta. The scuta are large, quadrangular in outline, moderately inflated in their basal parts, and symmetrical externally. The carinal margin is arched, the others almost straight. The occludent margin is, however, a little rounded below and the basal margin, which is the shortest of the four, slightly concave. The umbo is slightly introverted. The occludent margin is much the longest. There is a well-marked groove running along the basal margin above the edge. The right valve bears a blunt tooth on the inner surface at the basal occludent angle. This tooth fits into the concave surface of a short process in the corresponding position on the other valve.

Carina. The carina is of normal length. Seen from the side it is strongly arched and narrow, especially above, but bears at the base two short transverse processes with blunted extremities that impinge on the inner ends of the basal grooves on the scuta. Seen from behind the valve is quite flat in its upper half but strongly carinate towards the base, at which the carina terminates in a sharp, slightly introverted point; the apex is subangulate and a little expanded. The transverse basal processes are strongly carinate, their carinae meeting that of the dorsum at a right angle but not extending so far outwards towards the surface of the capitulum. The inner surface of the carina is flat above; below it is deeply but narrowly grooved. The basal floor is slightly concave inwards and terminates at either side in a blunt tubercle.

PEDUNCLE.

The peduncle is slender and cylindrical, sometimes nearly as long as the carina. In the specimens examined it is much wrinkled, but this condition is probably artificial. It is quite naked.

CIRRI, ETC.

1st Cirrus short, slender, with the basal segments of both rami very long; the anterior ramus a little longer than the posterior; both rami somewhat bluntly pointed.

2nd-6th Cirri slender, rather short, with the anterior bristles numerous and well-developed, long and rather stout, the posterior hairs forming short transverse bands across the posterior surface of the tips of the segments; some of these hairs on some segments longer than the segment, but the majority distinctly shorter.

Anal appendages short, conical, having on the upper part of the opposed surfaces a small, ovoid, flattened squamose area; a scanty vertical row of bristles borne on the upper part of this area and extending over the tip of the appendage; the bristles of variable length but the apical one much the longest.

Penis long, slender, smooth; the tip rather blunt, bearing a dense bunch of soft hairs.

MOUTH-PARTS.

Labrum short, triangular, armed at its base with a semicircular row of minute conical teeth; the teeth in the middle part of the row much smaller than those in the outer parts. Labral palps short and rather stout.

Mandibles evidently very variable, with a considerable number of teeth, narrow and long.

Maxillae broad; the only chaetae of large size at the outer angle; a well-marked excavation occupying nearly one-half of the margin, the inner lobe of which is broadly rounded; a few short bristles present at the base of the excavation; no stout chaetae on the lower part of the margin.

Outer maxilla of normal type.

Measurement of Type.

Height of capitulum	24 mm.
Breadth of capitulum	13 „
Thickness of capitulum	6·5 „
Length of peduncle	12 „
Diameters of peduncle	6 x 4 „

Type-specimen. Crustacea, 9322/10, Zoological Survey of India (Ind. Mus.)

Locality. 10° 22′ 30″ (?S.), long. 120° 7′ 30″ E. (130-500 fathoms).

The species is an isolated one, intermediate between the genus *Megalasma,* Hoek, which it resembles in the structure of its carina, and *Poecilasma,* Darwin, with which it agrees in other points. On the whole it seems to be most nearly related to *P. kaempferi,* Darwin, a Japanese species with local races in many seas. It is easily distinguished, however, from all of these by its large size and by the form of its carina.

The type-specimens were attached to the peduncle of *Heteralepas gigas*: a considerable number of specimens were found thus associated with a group of that species from a telegraph cable. Other, smaller examples were fixed to the capitulum of the type of *Scalpellum nudipes* from the same locality.

Description of Plate IV.

Fig. 1.—Type-specimen of *Scalpellum* (*Smilium*) *nudipes,* sp. nov., with young specimens of *Poecilasma* (*Glyptelasma*) *gigas* attached to its scuta.

Fig. 2.—Type-specimen of *Scalpellum sociabile* var. *parviceps,* var. nov.

Fig. 3.—Type-specimen of *Scalpellum persona,* sp. nov.

Fig. 4.—Type-specimen of *Poecilasma* (*Glyptelasma*) *gigas,* sp. nov.

Fig. 5.—Specimen of *Heteralepas gigas* (Annandale) from the Java Sea.

All the figures are of the natural size.

Description of Plate V.

Scalpellum nudipes, sp. nov.

Fig. 1.—Part of 4th cirrus (greatly enlarged).

Fig. 2.—Body from behind, showing anal appendages and base of 6th cirrus (x 4).

Fig. 3.—First cirrus (x 2).

Fig. 4.—Mouth-parts in lateral view (x 4).

Fig. 5.—Immature male (x 8).

Fig. 6.—Capitulum of adult male (x 8).

Scalpellum persona, sp. nov.

Fig. 7.—Outline of capitulum and capitular valves (reduced).
Fig. 8.—Dorsal view of anal appendage (x 10).

Scalpellum sociabile var. *parviceps,* var. nov.

Fig. 9.—Right anal appendage as seen from behind (x 15).

Poecilasma gigas, sp. nov.

Fig. 10.—Lateral teeth and right lateral palp as seen from in front (x 75).
Fig. 11.—Part of fifth cirrus (greatly enlarged).
Fig. 12.—Oblique internal view of anal appendage (x 15).
Fig. 13.—Base of carina and right scutum in lateral view (x 3).
Fig. 14.—Internal view of base of carina (x 8).

Description of Plate VI.

Scalpellum nudipes, sp. nov.

Fig. 1.—Mandible (x 10·66).
Fig. 2.—Maxilla (x 10·66).

Scalpellum persona, sp. nov.

Figs. 3, 3a.—Mandibles of type (x 12).
Fig. 4.—Maxilla (x 12).
Fig. 5.—Outer maxilla (x 20).

Scalpellum sociabile var. *parviceps,* var. nov.

Fig. 6.—Mandible of type (x 6·66).

Poecilasma gigas, sp. nov.

Figs. 7, 7a.—Mandibles of type (x 20).
Fig. 8.—Maxilla (x 20).

A Kelantan Glossary.

By W. E. Pepys,

F. M. S. Civil Service.

Introduction.

The omissions and shortcomings of this glossary will be obvious to the many Europeans who have some knowledge of Kelantan Malay. The only excuse for its publication is that I know of no other published collection of Kelantan phrases and idioms except Mr. A. J. Sturrock's article " Some Notes on the Kelantan Dialect," published in the Journal of the R. A. S. (Straits Branch) in December 1912, to which I am much indebted in the compilation of the following pages.

It has been my object to include (1) words and expressions peculiar to Kelantan, most of which have a Siamese origin, (2) words used in Kelantan in a different sense to that in which they are usually found in the F. M. S. and (3) words which, though common in literature, are rarely heard colloquially in the F. M. S., though daily used in ordinary speech by Kelantan Malays.

Most of the words included I have noted when first heard in the mouth of some Kelantan Malay: but some too have been in the first instance supplied me by various Malay clerks, whose assistance I gratefully acknowledge.

I am also indebted to Mr. R. O. Winstedt, to whom I showed this collection, for criticism and advice.

In such a compilation as this, spelling presents an unusual difficulty; since most of the words being essentially colloquial and rarely if ever written, there is no standard. I have in the majority of cases followed phonetic spelling.

W. E. Pepys.

Pasir Puteh, Kelantan, 20th Sept., 1916.

Pronunciation.

Malay as talked in Kelantan is in many ways different from the language spoken in the Western States: and the European who comes here from the other side hears a jargon, the worst feature of which (from his point of view) is not the intersprinkling of Siamese or local terms, which he may soon pick up for practical purposes, but the clippings and contortions of words he used to know but in their new form fails to recognise. Nor is the difficulty confined to Europeans: Malays from Perak or Selangor find it almost as hard at first to understand or make themselves understood.

Jour. Straits Branch R. A. Soc., No. 74, 1916.

The following are a few of the more obvious differences in Kelantan pronunciation as compared to that of the Western States.

(1) Final - *a* - *ah* - *ak* - *ar* become - *aw*.

Every where there is a tendency among Malays to pronounce *apa* or *mana,* when spoken by themselves, as if they were *apah* or *manah*: in Kelantan this is intensified, and the sound is definitely *apaw, manaw, kitaw,* etc.

So too one hears *timaw* for *timah, kakaw* for *kakak* and (though less pronouncedly) *bĕsor* for *bĕsar.*

(2) Final *-am, -ang, -an* become - *ain.*

Words like *pĕtang, tuan,* are pronounced so as to rhyme exactly with the French termination—ain in "demain" or "bain:" *e.g.* "*Awang datang samalam, Tuan,*" has a nasal ring very different to the effect of the same sentence pronounced on the other side.

But most monosyllables, *e.g. lain, kain* and *main* are exceptions to this rule, and are pronounced as elsewhere. *Cham* however becomes "*chain.*"

(3) Final - *ai* become - *ă.*

e.g. pakai is pronounced *pakă, tupai* is pronounced *tupă.*

(4) Medial - *m* or *n* before another consonant is omitted.

Thus *Kĕlantan* becomes *Kĕlătain,* and *tumpat tupat*: in the case of the latter word, the final - *t* is practically inaudible, and thus the pronunciation of *tumpat* is indistinguishable from that of *tupai* noted above.

(5) Final - *s* inaudible in many words.

e.g. lĕpa for *lĕpas, sa-bala* for *sa-balas* (resembling) *sa-bĕla* for *sa-bĕlas* (eleven). But the *-s* here taken away is reinstated sometimes where it has no business to be, *e.g. duas* for *dua, Dollas* for *Dollah, pulos* for *puloh,* and *bharus* for *bharu.*

(6) Medial - *ng* before *k* is often omitted.

Thus *longkah* (which takes the place of the more common *lekong* in the F. M. S.) becomes *lokah* and *chongkil choki.*

Phrases for Divisions of Time.

Of the phrases given in Maxwell's Grammar, a few only are heard in Kelantan in common use, viz.

Jindera budak,	about 9 p.m.
Tuli tenggala muda,	about 9 a.m.
Tuli tenggala tua,	about 11 a.m.

Lepas sembayang jumaat is more commonly heard than the technical phrase "*lepas baadah salah.*"

The ordinary Kelantan Raiat more often employs, in place of these picturesque phrases, the name of the Mohammedan periods of prayer, somewhat loosely, to denote stages of the day, viz.

Dlohor: any time from 12 noon to 2 p.m., and *lĕpas Dlohor* 2 p.m. to 3 p.m. [So too *pernama Dlohor,* the middle of the period, for 1 p.m. and even for 1 a.m.].

Asar: Any time from 3.30 p.m. to about 6 p.m.

Maghrib and *Isha* for after dark.

Suboh, daybreak, does not trouble him much: [*bĕlum chĕrah* or *bĕlum ayam terkukor* is the phrase he employs for that period].

But the only way by which he can denote at all accurately at what o'clock a given event took place, and the method he feels most at home in using, is by pointing and indicating "matahari bagitu," taking himself as noon, behind his back as A.M. and in front of him as P.M.

Numbers.

"Lēkor" a score is in common use to describe numbers in the twenties. One never hears *dua puloh tujoh* naturally from a Kelantan Malay but *tujoh lēkor.*

Again the use of *tĕngah* is commoner than on the other side: *Tengah ampat puloh,* not *tiga puloh lima.*

Sa', abbreviated from *satu* is common: *tiga puloh sa', korang sa' ampat puloh.*

In expressing sums which fall short of a round sum by 50 cts. use is made of *sa'mas, e.g. korang sa'mas* $50, = $49.50 cts.

Personal Pronouns.

The most remarkable use is that of *kita* for "you." This is rather a polite use, or rather *kamu* is ruder. Kita (pron. *kitaw*) is the usual word.

It is also often used for "I."

Dĕma is often heard for "they." It is really a corruption of *dia sumua,* but illogically enough it is sometimes used for *dia,* "he," singular, and even for "you."

ACHAP KALI.	Often.
AMBO.	Pronounced 'mbu. Elephant language: said by the driver to make a kneeling elephant get up.
ANCHAK.	Drying fish screens.
ANDOR.	The cry of ploughman to his lembu to urge it to go to the left, pronounced *No No*: to the right is *cha chi chi.*

ANGIN BESAR.	The great wind which swept Kelantan from shore to ulu about 30 years ago, tearing up houses and trees, lifting boats out of rivers and depositing them on dry land. This dates everything to the older generation in Kelantan, just as the "entry of the *orang puteh*" does in the F. M. S.
ANJING.	*Mĕnganjing,* to pull one's leg, try to be funny.
APAR-APAR.	Jelly fish.
ARA.	*Tiada ara = tiada daya upaya,* "Impossible."
AREK-AREK.	cp. *Tidor ayam*: to doze, but with one's ears open for any unusual sound: not fast asleep.
AWAK.	*Awak-awak pĕrahu*: the crew of a boat, *anak pĕrahu.*
AYAR.	Of children and animals, something like *Nakal*: "up to tricks," "restless," "a "handful."
BABOK.	Stupid.
BADA.	*Bada-bada* is a phrase expressing inevitability, nolens volens.
BADIK.	A small dagger = the Phg. *tumbok lada.*
BAGIH.	A form of *pĕtĕri* without music: the *bagih* is the medium who shakes his head until he gets into a trance, and then replies to the questions of the *Mindo* (*Bomo*).
BALAH.	Quarrel, ill feeling, grudge. *Kita berbalah sa-umur,* "we have an old feud."
BALAR-LAH.	= *Tid'apa, biar-lah.*
BALAS.	With prefix *sa-*: *sa-balas* (q.v.) *dĕngan* = resembling. An odd sounding phrase is sometimes heard: it sounds like *Balah itu kenek*: this is really *sa-balas dĕngan itu-kah ini?*, a question, and resolves itself into the more simple *Bagitu-kah?*
BALEK.	*Balek sana* 30 = more than 30.
BALOH.	= *Jelapang,* padi granary.
BANGAT.	To hasten, hurry.
BARAT.	Indicates Southern Siam, as *Timor* indicates Singapore, Johore and F. M. S. (vide *Menimor*).
BAROH.	A wet rice field (pron. *Barus*) = *Sawah.*

Beka.	*Bĕr-bĕka* flirting, carrying on an intrigue.
Bekal.	Common colloquially for food, provisions.
Bekas.	*Bĕkas Toh Kweng,* the ex-Penghulu.
Belimbing Kris.	The Kelantan name for the fruit called *bĕlimbing manis* in Pahang, because it is used for cleaning the blade of a *kris.*
Benar.	*Orang kĕbĕnaran = orang bunian,* the good fairies in the jungle. *Orang kĕbĕneran* is also a common euphemism for Government servants, especially Police: cp. *orang tengah.*
Bengkeng.	pron: *bĕkeng*: fierce, irascible, of men as well as animals.
Berbewah.	To give a wake (*kĕnduri*) for the dead.
Berhuma.	Rice planted on a cleared patch of jungle, distinct from *tugalan* (q.v.), although the method of planting on each is the same.
Beri	*Pĕmbrian hidup = hĕbah,* a gift inter vivos.
Berlaga.	Not confined to the fighting of large animals. In fact *bĕrlaga ayam* is more commonly heard than *menyabong. Bĕrlaga angin,* to get on well with a person. *Tiada bĕrlaga angin,* "I can't stand him."
Bichara.	*Bichara mal,* a civil case. *Bichara jĕnaiah,* a criminal case. *Kĕrat bichara,* to give judgment.
Bojing.	Hair brushed with a parting: =*suak, berkĕrol* (Johore).
Bong.	A cock-pit.
Buah.	*Dua buah rumah* does not necessarily mean two separate houses (which would be indicated by the use of *suku*) but two divisions or rooms of what we should call the same house, separated by an uncovered passage (*jĕmuran*).
Buas.	Besides its ordinary meaning 'fierce,' 'wild' of animals, *buas* is used of a naughty mischievous child. Applied to grown up persons it means immoral.
Bujang.	The usual word for widow: *janda* is rarely used.

Buleh Kelik.	"To get back" a thing that was lost: *buleh* here has its full possessive sense = posse rei.
Burok.	An odd use "*Toh Kweng Burok,*" the ex-Penghulu, cp. *bĕkas.*
Butir.	A small lump on the surface of a lĕmbu's skin which the owner will quote as his distinguishing mark, cp. *pusaran. Butir* is also the numeral coefficient used with *pusaran* and *padang* (padi field) besides its normal use with fruit, jewels, seeds, etc.
Cha Chi Chi.	The cry of a ploughman ordering his *lĕmbu* to go to the right.
Chak.	= *changkul*: *chak bĕtul* = a 'hoe.'
Chak Doh.	Dirty cooking: *masaknya chakdoh sangat.*
Chanchang.	Standing upright.
Chatok, Menyatok.	To sit or squat (dudok bersila).
Chebik.	To carry in the fingers, with arm at full length hanging down.
Chedera.	Maimed (= *kudong*). *Mata chĕdĕra,* squinting, cp. *pĕrit.*
Chedongan.	*Tanah chĕdongan* = sawah, bendang, a rice swamp to which the rice seed is transplanted from a nursery. Vide *tugalan* and *bĕrhuma.*
Che Weh.	*Che Che Weh* a euphemism for tiger in jungle.
Chelika.	= *chĕrdek,* cunning, but always in bad sense.
Chemoh.	= *jĕmu.* Sated, "fed up."
Chendana.	A *sireh* set.
Cherah.	*Korang chĕrah* = korang pĕreksa, but more polite: "I am afraid I don't know." "It is not clear."
Chokih.	To carry on a stick over the shoulder.
Chut.	"To let go," when one has one end of a rope, or to "let out" the string of a kite.
Damah.	To lose money in speculation.
Dapat.	Common for to recover from illness with or without the addition of *sihat. Dapat sadikit* "A bit better."
Deka.	With one arm deformed *i.e.* bent.

DEMA.	"They" a corruption of *dia sĕmua* but sometimes used illogically for *dia* singular and sometimes for "you."
DENING.	*Sa-dĕning* = "a pair," used only of yoked oxen.
DEPA.	The *dĕpa* in use in Kelantan is the Siamese, 6·6 feet.
DERAK.	"To find out" = *pareksa, siasat.*
DERAR.	*Bĕrdĕrar* = bĕrgilir, taking turn and turn about.
DONG.	*Hĕrta dong* = property which one possessed prior to marriage, as opposed to property acquired during marriage, (sa-charian).
EMBING.	Very, excessively. *Embing dia kĕna hukum,* "he got a heavy sentence."
ENDOR.	Cradle.
GAGOK.	= *gagap,* to stammer.
GAK.	An affix = *juga* (vide *siat*).
GAYONG.	*Bĕrgayong* = the dance known as *bĕrsilat,* (which term is rarely heard).
GEGER-GEGER.	= *Bising,* to make a row (colloquial).
GELAR.	Breadth of horns. *Tandok sama gĕlar* = horns the same breadth all the way.
GEMOLAH.	= *Si mati,* "the deceased."
GERAI.	= *Pangkeng.* Not confined to the marriage couch, but = sleeping bench, generally. It is also used of Market Stalls.
GERUN.	(1) Faintness at the sight of blood: (2) dizziness at high altitudes, and the feeling one must fall. Cp. *gayat,* and (Phg.) *sĕrun.*
GETEK.	"Also."
GOK.	(hard g) = Gaol. *Gok ayam* = *Rĕban.*
GONDEK.	*Tandok gondek* = drooping horns (= *tandok badul*).
GONG.	Stupid.
GU.	*Sa-gu* "a pair" (of rings) besides a "yoke" of oxen. *Gu lak ini* = *sa-rupa dĕngan ini,* "another exactly the same."
GUAMAN.	A court case. *Anak guaman* = parties to a case. *Bĕrguam,* to go to law.
GUDANG.	Usual for a shop. *Kĕdai* is a market stall.
GUNDOL.	A tally.

GURI.	If a shopkeeper tells you to *bĕrguri,* it means that for your first purchase of all you must pay cash but for anything else you will be allowed credit.
HABOK.	*Tiada sa-keteh habok* (or *habu*), an emphatic negative, “There is none at all:” “It is all gone.” *Sa-keteh* is only found in this phrase. *Ta'pakai sa-kali habok,* “I never use it at all.”
HAK.	(Arab, = “property”), the common possessive pronoun in Kelantan. *Hak kita* = mine (*sahaya punya*). Not used as an adjective: one cannot say *Rumah hak kita* for “my house,” but *Rumah itu hak kita* for “That is my house” is correct. Sometimes *Hak ini, i.e.* “this” simply: or *hak tua,* “the old one.”
HALA.	Direction: *Hala ka darat. Hala ka sana,* in that direction.
HERAU.	*Ta'herau* = *ta pĕduli,* “don't care.”
HUNGGAL.	(pron: *honggah*), to hasten, run quickly.
HUSANG.	*Bĕras husang,* rice over from last year.
HUTANG.	In Kelantan is used as a delicate way of referring to a loan. Few Malays will openly say “I want to *pinjam* $5 from you:” but most will suggest that they shall *hutang* you as much as they think you are good for.
IBU.	*Sa ibu, dua ibu,* etc: “once,” “twice,” etc. of blows, stabs, snake bites and insect stings.
IGAT.	= *tangkap,* to catch or arrest.
IKAT TANGAN.	A method of making one's guests pay—and overpay—for their dinner or entertainment by sending round the hat.
JAM.	A round in cock fighting, marked by the fall of a small cup with a hole in the bottom, which is placed in a bowl of water: when it is full it sinks, and the round is over.
JANGAK.	Used of men and women = “smart,' ”“got up to kill,” *e.g. pakai jangak.* So “*mahu jangak ka-mana?*” “Where are you off to, dressed in all your best?”
JEBAT.	= Black.

JEMOK.	*Bĕrjĕmok* = *muafakat,* to consult.
JEMURAN.	The uncovered passage connecting two divisions of a Malay house (2 *buah rumah*).
JENAIAH.	*Bichara jĕnaiah* = "a criminal case."
JENALIT.	= *biasa,* familiar with, well acquainted with.
JENTING.	With one leg shorter than the other.
JERAGAN.	(a corruption of *juru agong*), the usual word for Captain of a boat (*nakhoda*).
JERIT.	The usual word for "to call out" (*tĕriak*) is *mĕnjĕrit.* It generally implies alarm or excitement but not necessarily great fear .
JUJOK.	*Bĕrjujok.* In single file.
JUJU.	Said by driver to make an elephant pick up something and give it to him.
JURU.	Much used in Kelantan to express an agent: *e.g. juru pĕmikat, juru silam, juru tukang* and *jeragan* noted above. It is often used where in the F. M. S. the prefix *pĕr-* would suffice: thus of a *lĕmbu,* "Mat was pulling it, Ali driving it from behind, *Mat juru hĕret, Ali juru hambat.* JURU KAKAK, a distinctive use of *juru* for an extra domestic servant or assistant at an entertainment.
JURUS.	Clever, smart. So negatively *ta'bĕrapa jurus,* "Not quite all there."
KADAH.	*Bĕrkādah* = different; bĕrbēza (which is rarely used).
KAKAK.	The usual word for *abang,* elder brother. To specify the female, *Kak nik* or *Kak wan* is used. (2) *Kakak bulan yang habis,* = the month before last.
KASA.	A brass "cakestand" or plate for eatables on a pedestal.
KECHEK.	Very common for "to chat." It often implies an intrigue. *Dia kēchek bĕtina hamba sa-umur,* "he is always trying to flirt with my wife."
KECHOK.	= *Kekok,* awkward, clumsy.
KEDAI.	A market stall. *Gudang* is "shop."
KEKAH.	To bite, of dogs or humans in a fight.
KELEH.	Usual word for "to see."

KELEPEK.	With sticking out ears.
KELIK.	To return. *Buleh kĕlik* = to get back (something that was lost).
KELINTASAN.	*Kĕna kĕlintasan* = *tĕrkĕna,* is to be struck by an evil spirit of any kind, *e.g.* resident in a well or ditch which one passes.
KELOK.	To call out (= *teriak*). *Sa-jauh mana rumah kita dĕngan rumah dia? Kĕlok dĕngar.* "How far is your house from his? Within earshot."
KEMESEK.	Easily done, not difficult.
KENALING.	Trembling from fear, = *mĕnggĕlitar.*
KENDERI.	3 cents (not a coin): *Sa-kendĕri dua,* a paraphrase for "cheap."
KEPALA.	*Sa-kĕpala,* a team or troop: less common than *sa-puak.*
KEPING.	*Satu kēping* = a 'pitis' (q.v.).
KERAJA.	= *chukai,* duty, tax.
KERAT.	*Bichara,* to give judgment: *kĕratau* a judgment.
KEREK.	(= *Rapat*) *too* close together, *e.g.* of trees too closely planted.
KERJA.	(Besides "work) the usual name for any kind of entertainment (*kĕnduri*)"—*tuan kĕrja,* the giver of the entertainment.
KERTO.	The wooden clapper or bell around the neck of buffaloes cattle or sheep (= *kĕronchong*).
KESOK.	= *Kĕsak* (F. M. S.) to move up, make room.
KETAM.	*Mengĕtam padi,* the usual word for harvest (= Phg. *menuai*).
KETERAI.	An acid fruit, something between a *jambu* and a *belimbing.*
KETING.	= Knee of a *lĕmbu* or *kĕrbau* (*not* Tendo Achillis). (2) *Mĕngĕting* = to claim.
KHABAR.	'*Ta'khabar*' unconscious; more common than "ta' sadar."
KIRA.	A very common Kelantan word: it is used of the preliminaries before money changes hands in any kind of transaction. *E.g.* "*kira bĕras*" = to see about buying rice. (2) *Masok kira,* to interfere, to be a busy body.

KIRIM.	To entrust money or anything else to another's keeping (= *pĕrchayakan*).
KITA.	The usual word for "you."
KOHOR.	*Kohor dahulu* = *sabar dahulu,* wait a little: *kohor kohor* = *pĕrlahan-pĕrlahan,* "slowly." Sometimes also *chakap kohor-kohor,* to speak softly.
KOLEK.	Not a little canoe like the Tioman *kolek,* but a big fishing boat costing about $200 like the Pahang *Jalak.*
KUDI.	A unit of timber measure = 20 *kĕping.*
KUET.	Said by driver to make an elephant clear branches etc. out of his way.
KUKAR.	*Kukar kukar* (onomat.) for the restless moving of oxen in the stable.
KUPANG.	12½ cents, not 10 (not a coin).
KUPI.	A small tin box.
KUPIN.	= *Sengau,* talking through the nose.
KUTIR.	To pinch, or nip with fingers.
KWENG.	Siamese. The territorial division in Kelantan which corresponds to a Mukim in the F. M. S. *Toh Kweng* corresponds to the *Penghulu,* a word used in Kelantan exclusively for the petition writer or 'lawyer burok.' *Mukim* is a "Surau" or Mosque division.
LABOT.	Naturally, probably: *labot-nya jika hujan bagini bah-lah sungai*—"If it goes on raining like this, the river will surely flood." cp. *lazim;* "judging from experience I should say."
LAH, OR LAHKAN.	(*sahaja*) to let alone, not to interfere; *orang Europa bĕrpĕrang orang Mĕrikan dia lahkan sahaja.*
LAH LOH.	Come on, hurry up.
LAIUT.	Of horns of cattle, sloping outwards slightly at the tips.
LANAS.	= *Nanas,* Pineapple.
LATLAU.	Irregularly "*Dia datang latlau*:" "sometimes he comes, sometimes he does not."
PELAWAK.	To lie—more common than *Bohong.*
LAYANG.	*Layang rumah* = the eaves.
BERLELEK.	(= *tĕrlondek*) of a sarong carelessly tied around the breast.

LELEK.	(1) The same “alike:” it can be used alone or following *sa-rupa*. “*Moga ini leklek dĕngan itu,*” “This article is exactly the same as that.” (2) ‘Verily, in truth’ *lek lek dia pukul Awang, tĕlapi ta’ mĕngaku,* he truly did hit A, but won’t admit it.”
LEMPAR.	To cast or throw. Cp. *pĕkong*.
LE-IT.	= *Lumat,* “fine,” of flour.
LEREH.	*Orang lĕreh,* a rolling stone, one who does not stick long at one job.
LIAR.	= *Chĕrdik* (common).
LICHIN LEYEH OR LICHIN DALIK	All spent, all finished (of money).
LIKONG.	To surround.
LOH LAH.	Ignorant, stupid, often followed by bodok —Generally in a limited sense of stupid = hasty, of a man who goes and does a thing straight off without taking sufficient thought.
LOH-LOH.	Immediately, at once.
LOH INI.	(Pronounced *laūni*) now = *sakarang*.
LORAT.	(? From *gĕlorat,* = *gĕlora*) = *bangat* “to hurry.”
LOH LEH.	To dawdle.
MAK.	*Ber Mak-anak* = *bĕrmadu,* the relationship of 2 wives to the same husband.
MAK CHIK.	Aunt.
MAK-NGAH.	= Late, unpunctual.
MAI.	*Bĕri mai* = to suckle, *menyusukan*.
MAL.	*Bichara mal* = A civil case.
MAS.	*Sa-mas* = 50 cents.
MASOK KIRA.	*Dia sĕlalu masok kira* = he is a busy body, meddler. (Cp. Pahang *Ganggu, sĕleweng*).
MENDA.	*Bĕli menda* = to get a thing cheap.
MENGETING.	To claim = *tuntut*.
MENIMOR.	“To adopt Eastern habits,” said of a person just returned from a more civilised country *e.g.* Johore, Singapore, or even from the F. M. S. (though not east of Kelantan) and adopting un-Kelantan talk and habits which include the saying of *punya* every other word.

Menunggah.	Of thing sold one for one *pitis* (a coin $\frac{1}{5}$ cents [like "one a penny"] a *pitis* being the chief unit of currency in the Market. *Jual mĕnunggah* = 'a pitis each.'
Menyatok.	To "Squat," *bĕrsila.*
Menyirau.	(Onomat:) "lowing" of oxen.
Mestah.	*Buah mesta* = *manggis* the mangosteen.
Mindo.	The *Bomo* in a '*Bagih*' q.v.
Moga.	A "thing"—vague, nonspecific—"*Moga ini*" 'this article' "this what's-its-name."
Molek.	Pretty, excellent = the Pahang *Elok.*
Moreh.	The Kelantan variation of *Marah.*
Muda.	*Anak muda,* "virgin:" more common than *anak darah.*
Mulih.	A small mark like the *Pusaran* q.v.
Nangga.	Ploughshare.
Nebing.	(Siamese) the *Kĕtua of a Kampong.* These are the administrative officers under the Toh Kweng (Penghulu).
Nya.	Attached after personal pronouns without any special meaning, *e.g. Hamba-nya* "I" and *itu-nya. Ini-lah Sayid-nya,* "This is Sayid."
Ok.	Bearable, of sickness or a wound.
Oleng.	"Rolling" of a boat, from *bergoleng.*
Padang.	A padi field, or stretch of padi fields.
Pakau.	A small hillock = (Pk.) *changkat.*
Palu.	Land given to bride in part or wholly instead of the usual cash "*bĕlanja kahwin.*"
Pangan.	*Orang Pangan* = Sakai.
Panggong Ayer.	A dam on a watercourse.
Patah Tabuan.	A description of dark red colour, but lighter than *Nibong.* Black with some dark red.
Patut.	Used differently to its common use, as "probable." *Patut Mat churi lĕmbu itu* "I suspect Mat stole that cow."
Pa'ubi.	A silly ass. "*Jangan buat pa' ubi dĕngan hamba,*" don't play the fool with me.
Pauh.	*Buah Manggah,* Manggo.

Patah Tabuan.	A description of dark red colour, but lighter than "*Nibong*." Black with some dark red.
Pekong.	To throw = *baling*.
Peleka.	= *herau* (q.v.) to take notice of, pay attention to.
Pelima Gelanggong.	On the day that a *bĕrsilat* pupil "passes" and emerges from his novitiate he is said to be the "*pĕlima gĕlanggong*," and gives a feed and presents (a *Songkok*, etc.) to his *guru*. He is now eligible to be a teacher himself.
Penaka.	*P. dĕngan* "like," identical with.
Pengas.	Lascivious, fast, of a young girl.
Penghulu.	A native pleader or petition writer, generally used disparagingly as *lawyer burok*. (The F. M. S. *Pĕnghulu* corresponds to the *Toh Kweng*).
Penjuru.	A land measure, 400 square *depa*. 2½ *penjuru* = 1 acre.
Perah Perah.	Onomatopoeic sound for rain. "Drip drip."
Perat Perat.	Onomatopoeic sound for foot steps "Pit pat."
Perak.	The most common word for money generally: when speaking of coins it means dollar pieces exclusively.
Perhisab.	(From Arabic *Hisab* which ordinarily means "to calculate") used in Kelantan for "to search," *e.g.* of a Policeman searching a house on a search warrant, pron. *Pēsa*.
Perit Perit.	*Mata*: Squinting or twitching eyes: cp. *chĕdĕra*.
Perlahan.	*Chakap perlahan perlahan* to speak softly (not "slowly").
Pernama.	*Pĕrnama bulan* the full moon: the kampong man's ability to date an event is generally confined to saying whether it occurred *bĕlum pĕrnama* or *lĕpas pĕrnama*—before or after the middle of the month. *Pĕrnama dlohor*: about 1 p.m., *i.e.* the middle of the period.

PETERI.	*Bermain pĕtĕri,* any kind of incantation or magic seance, but usually in a sick house. The *pĕtĕri* is the medium who becoming possessed drives out the evil spirit from the sick person. Unlike the bĕrbagih (q.v.) it is a musical ceremony.
PERWAI-WAI.	A notice; *pĕrwawakan,* to give notice.
PETOLOH.	A pimp.
PITIS.	A round tin coin with a hole in the centre 5 go to a cent.
POHO'.	Soft, properly cooked of meat.
PO' NGOH.	Irritable.
PONGOK.	*Sombong.*
PONGSU.	Ant heap = *busut,* which is rarely used.
PUAK.	*Sa-puak,* a troop, band: cp. *kĕpala.*
PUENG.	*Bĕrpueng,* to struggle with someone detaining you and try to get away.
PUNAH.	Adjective, 'wicked.'
PUNJOR.	$20 *punjor,* = $20 odd.
PUSARAN.	The natural centre of a crest of hair on cattle, corresponding to the crown of a head of hair. A Malay owner will carefully count these and, if his bullock be lost, can enumerate how many *pusaran* it had and where.
PUTING.	A numeral coefficient with teeth.
RAJIN.	*Ta' rajin* = never, *ta' pernah.*
RASA.	*Bĕrasa* = *uzur,* indisposed.
RATING.	*Bĕrating bĕrsabit,* connected with.
REK NGAM.	*Padi rek ngam* is rice planted in a swamp (*baroh,* q.v.) but reaped before the Monsoon, when the padi *chĕdongan* (q.v.) has only a short time been moved from the nursery.
REMBAS.	To hurl to the ground: *bĕrembas,* to struggle.
RIANG.	Elephant language: said by the driver to make the elephant avoid a tree.
RIYAL.	The common word for the Straits dollar (ringgit).
RIOK.	'Lame,' not the result of a fracture.
RODONG.	Companion. *Bĕradong dĕngan,* in company with.

Rok.	*Hutan rok* = bĕlukar.
Rompong.	Lacking a nose.
Royang.	(Pron: *Royain*) the wayang Kulit.
Royat.	The Arabic for narrative (= *riwayat*): this is the common Kelantan word for "to tell," and may be used equally well for *kata, bilang, chĕritakan* and *khabarkan* (pronounced *roya*).
Sa-	This prefix is often put before an adjective or adverb of time or place, followed by mana in a question. Thus *sa-jauh mana, sa-bĕsar mana,* how far?, how big? *Sa-lama mana dĕngan loh ini?* How long ago?
Sa-balas.	*Sa-balas dĕngan* = resembling, like (pron. *săbālă*).
Sa-'ik.	(Pron: dissyllabic) 'Warm' of body, damp with slight perspiration.
Sain.	'Intimate with,' 'friendly with:' = *kawan.* Not only "travelling together." *Hamba bĕrsain dĕngan dia sa-umur,* I am an old friend of his.
Sakar.	Persian, for sugar, is common, not *gula.*
Sakendri Dua.	A paraphrase for "cheap," a kĕndri being 3 cents (not a coin).
Salalu.	The universal word for continuity of action = forthwith, straightway. *Langsong* is rare.
Sa-marap.	The distance from the elbow to the knuckles of the clenched fist: *i.e.* less than a hasta by the length of the fingers.
Sa-mentara.	Usual word for boundary (*sĕmpadan*).
Sampeng.	(pron: *săpeng*): *rumah săpeng* a brothel.
Sa-penanak Nasi.	A paraphrase for ¼ hour: as long as it takes to cook a plate of rice.
Sa-tangan.	= *Tengkolok,* a head kerchief.
Sa-umur.	The usual phrase for "a long time," but not necessarily "all my life," "a lifetime." Also "often," "always:" *Dia mari sa-umur,* "he often comes." *Dia makan chandu sa-umur,* "he is always smoking chandu."
Selibah.	*Bĕrsĕlibah,* confused, not clear.
Semping.	Lacking an ear.

SENARAI.	A list.
SENDONG.	To 'tie up securely' a boat or buffalo.
SENGELING.	= *dĕngan sĕngaja,* "on purpose."
SENG.	= *lagi.* *Hitam seng,* 'blacker.'
SER.	Only found in negative. *Ta ser = ta mahu.* Cp. Phg. *Ta'amboh.* [pron: *Tă sāy*]. There is an expression pronounced *say ay,* an abbreviation of *Ta' ser ayer* = "water funk" of children, but extended so as to include dislike of mud and even of medicine. [The same word as *Sir,* lust].
SERAMPANG.	A fork.
SEREK.	If one happens to pass a lot of things in a heap and picks one up and takes it away, one is said to *sērek sadikit.*
SEROH SERAH.	(onomatopoeic) Scratching on floor, etc.
SERUNAI.	The *batang sĕrunai* is that part of a *sarong kris* which is just below the cross piece (sampiran) and just above the join with the *batang* proper.
SIAT GAK.	= *Jangan-lah.*
SILAM.	*Hukum menyilam,* the ordeal by diving.
SODOK UDANG.	Of horns, = sticking straight out. Elsewhere cp. *Sinar matahari.*
SUAR.	Before a bull fight, the animals which are to fight are taken in couples to look at one another across a hurdle, and it is then decided whether in size and demeanour they are properly matched. This mutual inspection is called *Bĕrsuar.*
SUKU.	Separate, distinct. *Rumah suku,* a separate house. *Dudok suku,* I live elsewhere.
SUSUT.	The general word for "to hide," apparently an extension of its literary and western meaning "To place under."
TAKUT.	Often used like "I fear," "I am afraid" colloquially in English when fear is not really meant, *e.g. Takut dia tiada,* "I am afraid he may be away." Really = 'perhaps.' *Rumah siapa ini? takut hak Che Mat,* "Whose house is this? may be Che Mat's."

Tali Tangan.	More common than *gĕlang* for 'bracelets.'
Tandeh.	*Senyap tandeh* or *chuchi tandeh* = *sudah habis,* all finished.
Tanyih.	To urge on a cock to fight.
Tar.	*Roma buah tar muda,* a description of colour of animals, light red yellow (? from lontar).
Tebeng.	To try vainly, persist in a useless effort. "*Jangan-lah tēbeng,*" "its no good."
Teh.	As an affix is a superlative: *mahal teh,* "very dear," often sarcastically "*molek teh,*" "what a beauty."
Tejuih.	Prominent teeth.
Tengah.	*Orang tĕngah* = Government servants, especially Police.
Tepong.	Usual where in F. M. S. they would say *kueh.*
Terunai.	*Anak tĕrunai* bridegroom.
Tetirok.	Snipe. *Berkek* is rarely used.
Thabit, Sabit.	(Arab.) Connected. *Ini tidak bĕrsabit dĕngan hamba,* "This has nothing to do with me." Also *Hamba bersabit dĕngan dia,* "He is a connection (relative) of mine."
Tibang.	To hit with a stick.
Tohok.	To throw away as useless (*buang*).
Tokok.	*Bertakok,* to wrestle.
Topeng.	*Tiang topeng,* the foremast.
Tuba Tikus.	Arsenic.
Tugalan.	*Padi tugalan,* distinct from *berhuma* because the latter always means that jungle has been cleared, whereas *padi tugalan* is on a flat rice field, from a distance exactly like *chĕdongan* or *baroh* (q.v.) but it is higher ground, and the rice is planted direct therein (and not transplanted from a nursery), with the *tugal* as in *bĕrhuma.*
Tukir.	A cylindrical vessel: prond: *Tōkĕh.*
Uchah Acheh.	= *Goyang-goyang,* of reeling gait.
Utun.	Appeal.
Wau.	A kite.
Wangan.	A 'lot' of land, = *sa-kĕping.*

WEH.	An interjectory affix of alarm. *Bangat weh* Quick! *Pĕnchuri weh.* Thieves!

Notes on the *Hukum Menyilam* and the *Hukum Ber-chelor.*

The following is a literal translation of an account of the Test by Immersion and the Test by Scalding given by a Kelantan Malay.

" About twenty years ago, before there were white men in " Kelantan, cases of libel, jealousy, disputed lands, quarrelling, etc., " were tried by the old Malay Judges appointed by the reigning " Sultan.

" Sometimes it was hard for the judge to arrive at a decision, " as both the plaintiff and the defendant were willing to swear in " the mosque with the Koran on their heads. The judge then " came out of the balai followed by the Court Officials, the parties to " the case, and a crowd of spectators. Proceeding to the river bank, " the judge ordered the Court Officials to catch hold of two male " passers by, who were not in any way connected with the matter. " The Judge alloted one as champion to the plaintiff and the " other to the defendant, and ordered them both to dive under " water 5 or 6 feet deep, holding fast to the posts which had been " fixed in the river bed. The party, whose champion rose to the " surface first lost the case.

" Another time two wrong doers were arrested for theft by the " Budak Raja," who did the work of Policemen now-a-days. These " two men accused each other of the crime, and both were willing " to swear or do whatever the judge ordered. The judge called the " Imam, who wrote something on a piece of metal, which was placed " in a big pan full of coconut oil. The oil was then heated until it " boiled, and the two men were then ordered, in front of the guards " and the assembled people, to plunge their hands in and take out " the piece of metal.

" It is wonderful to relate that by some magic in the metal the " one who succeeded in seizing and drawing it out escaped scalding, " and he was declared innocent. But the other, who was adjudged " to be the culprit, had to suffer the consequence of plunging his " hand in the boiling oil.

" This method of deciding a case, called " Berchĕlor " was " often employed."

INDEX.

A

Abortion by Derris, 129
Acanthus ebracteatus, 155, 261
,, ilicifolius, 155, 261
Acheen throne, 150, 155, 172, 175
Acrotrema, 228
,, costatum, 242
Adinandra dumosa, 244
,, sylvestris, 244
Aegiceras majus, 190, 257
Aerides suavissima, 174, 266
Aeschynanthus grandiflora, 228, 233, 259
,, radicans, 237, 259
,, volubilis, 237, 259
Afzelia retusa, 186, 249
Agathis loranthifolia, 184, 265
Agelaea vestita, 197, 248
Aglaia odorata, 189, 220, 247
,, sp., 247
Aglaionema oblongifolium, 174
,, marantifolium, 268
Agricultural Society of Bencoolen, 211
Alepas gigas, 298
,, malaysiana, 290
Aleurites triloba, 159, 265
Allomorphia exigua, 252
Alpinia assimilis, 160, 266
,, capitellata, 234, 266
,, elatior, 225, 266
,, mutica, 160, 162
,, punicea, 160, 162
,, sp., 266
Alsodeia, 219, 243
Altingia excelsa, 183
Amomum biflorum, 266
Ananas sativa, 266
Anisophyllaea trapezoidalis, 250
Annandale, N., On Barnacles, 281
Anoectochilus sp., 266
Anplectrum divaricatum, 253
,, glaucum, 234
,, viminale, 253
Antidesma frutescens, 264
Araliaceae, 254
Archytaea vahlii, 181, 244
Ardisia divergens, 196, 219, 257
,, humilis, 175, 178
,, javanica, 257
,, punctata, 219
Arenga saccharifera, 244
Argostemma humile, 255
Aristolochia hastata, 263
Artictis Binturong, 200
Arum, 174, 268
Asiatic Society of Bengal, 186
Auber, Captain, 234
Avicennia resinifera, 220
,, sp., 262

B

Baccaurea bracteata, 264
,, malayana, 265
,, motleyana, 158, 264
Bali Straits, barnacles from, 281
Bannerman, Colonel J. A., 156, 192
Barnacles, 281
Barringtonia macrostachya, 251
,, racemosa, 175, 251
,, speciosa, 174, 251
Bataks, cannibalism of, 199
Bauhinia bidentata, 165, 250
,, emarginata, 250
Begonia, 222, 234
,, bracteata, 254
,, caespitosa, 254
,, fasciculata, 254
,, isoptera, 254
,, orbiculata, 254
,, pilosa, 254
,, racemosa, 254
,, sublobata, 254
Bintooron, 200
Blagden, C. O., on Malay History, 127
Brown, Robert, 168
Brucea sumatrana, 188, 246
Bruguiera caryophylloides, 154, 256
,, cylindrica, 154
,, gymnorhiza, 175, 250
Buettneria brevipes, described, 144
,, uncinata, 145
Bufo melanostictus, effect of Derris on, 131
Burkill, I. H., Jack's letters edited, 147

C

Calautica homii, 225
Calder, James, 161
Callicarpa arborea, 225, 261
,, longifolia, 261
Calophyllum sp., 243
Calycopteris floribunda, 184, 251
Campbell, J. A. On Tuba poison, 120
Cardiospermum sp., 248
Cassia alata, 155, 249
Celastrus lucida, 247
,, pauciflorus, 234, 247

Celtis attenuata, 196
Chirita Horsfieldii, 228, 260
Cholera in Penang, 191
Cinnamomum Parthenoxylon, 203, 263
Cirripedes, 282
Clausena excavata, 162, 246
Clerodendron inerme, 190
„ neriifolium, 190, 261
„ paniculatum, 261
„ penduliflorum, 163, 165, 261
„ serratum, 261
„ villosum, 261
Cleyera rubiginosa, 244
Cliona vastifica, 295
Clove, 152
Cnestis emarginata, 249
„ florida, 249
„ longifolia, 197, 249
Coelopyrum coriaceum, 268
Colebrooke, H. T., 168
Connarus ferrugineus, 163, 197, 249
„ grandis, 249
„ lucidus, 249
Connarus semidecandrus, 197, 249
„ villosus, 249
Conocephalus suaveolens, 196, 265
Coombs, Captain J. M., 173, 192
Cordia campanulata, 179
„ subcordata, 179, 259
Cordyline terminalis, 267
Corypha sp., 268
Cotton, Pernambuco, 169
Cratoxylon formosum, 243
„ sumatranum, 243, 226
Cryptolopha muelleri, described, 278
„ sumatrensis, described, 277
Curculigo, 235
„ latifolia, 165, 266
„ spp., 267
Cyclostemon longifolius, 166, 264
Cyrtandra aurea, 260
„ bicolor, 260
„ carnosa, 260
„ frutescens, 260
„ glabra, 261
„ hirsuta, 261
„ incompta, 260
„ macrophylla, 261
„ maculata, 260
„ peltata, 260
„ rubiginosa, 260

D

Dacrydium elatum, 153, 174, 177, 179, 265
Daphne cannabina, 214
Datura arborea, 217, 259
Dehaasia microcarpa, 230, 263
„ sp., 263
Dendrocalamus hirtellus, described, 146
Derris elliptica, poison of, 129
Diard, 145, 187, 201, 204, 205, 208
Dicaeum beccarii, described, 278
Didissandra elongata, 221, 228, 260
„ frutescens, 260
Didymocarpus corniculata, 198, 260
„ crinita, 162, 260
„ elongata, 221
„ frutescens, 162
„ racemosa, 228, 260
„ reptans, 162, 258
Diodia sarmentosa, described, 145
Dioscorea pyrifolia, 267
Dissochaeta bracteata, 253
„ celebica, 253
„ pallida, 163, 253
Dookoo, 159
Dracaena Jackiana, 267
Dregea volubilis, 228
Dryobalanops Camphora, 182, 198, 244
Dugong, 181
Durio singaporensis, described, 143
Dutch, commercial policy of, 169
Duvaucel, 145, 201, 204, 206, 208

E

Elaeocarpus, 165
„ Jackianus, 245
„ nitidus, 245
„ petiolatus, 245
Embelia canescens, 257
Enhalus Koenigii, 193, 266
Epimys fraternus, described, 273
„ hylemyoides, described, 273
„ inflatus, described, 273
„ korinchi, described, 275
„ muelleri campus, described, 275
„ rattus argentiventer, described, 274
„ ravus, described, 272
„ setiger, described, 271
„ stragulum, described, 274
„ ululans, described, 272
Erioglossum edule, 248
Euchelia, 219
Eugenia caryophyllata, 251
„ Jambos, 251
Eurycoma longifolia, 246
Euthemis leucocarpa, 204, 246
„ minor, 179, 204, 246,
Exchanges, xxiii

F

Fagraea auriculata, 178, 215, 226, 258
„ carnosa, 258
„ fragrans, 215, 259
„ obovata, 195, 259
„ racemosa, 215, 226, 259
"Fame," Shipwreck of, 239
Farquhar, Major W., 150, 153, 156, 170

Ficus diversifolia, 265
,, rigida, 265
Fish-poison, Derris elliptica as a, 129
Flacourtia inermis, 243
Flora indica, Roxburgh's, 214
Floscopa scandens, 267

G

Galearia Jackiana, 196, 265
Garcinia clusiaefolia, described, 140
,, Mangostana, 243
,, pyriferum, described, 140
Gardner, E., 164
Gasper Straits, barnacles from, 281
Gellius glacialis, 295
Geological Society of London, 236, 238
Getonia floribunda, 184
Gibbs Sir V., 213
Glaphyria nitida, 251
,, setacea, 251
Globba ciliata, 266
Gluta Benghas, 229, 248
Glycosmis pentaphylla, 245
Gmelina sp., 261
,, villosa, 261
Gomphia sumatrana, 246
Gordonia excelsa, described, 142
,, grandis, 141
,, hirtella, described, 142
,, penangensis, 142
,, singaporeana, 141
Gossypium brasiliense, 244
Greenea Jackii, 254
Grewia Microcos, 245
,, paniculata, 188, 245
Guettarda speciosa, 174, 255

H

Hardwicke, Major-General T., 160, 180
Hedychium sumatranum, 266
Helicia attenuata, 263
,, ovata, 226, 264
,, petiolaris, 263
,, serrata, 185, 264
,, spp., 226, 264
Heteralepas gigas, 282
,, malaysiana, 282, 298
Hikayat Sri Rama stereotyped, vii.
Hippocratea, 221, 247
Homalonema angustifolium, 174, 268
,, humile, 174, 268
Hopea albescens, described, 142
,, Lowii, 143
Hornstedtia megalocheilos, 160, 266
,, punicea, 160
Horsfield, T., 185
Hoya gracilis, 225
,, spp., 258
Humphreys, J. L., a Naning Wedding Speech, 25
Hyalonema, 282
Hydnophytum formicarum, 256
Hydrocotyle asiatica, 254
Hylomys parvus, described, 269

I

Idronema canescens, 261
Impatiens, 234, 245
Incarvillea parasitica, 228, 233
Insecticide, Derris as, 129
Ipoh poison, 129
Ixonanthes icosandra, 245
,, reticulata, 245
Ixora neriifolia, 228, 255
,, pendula, 228, 255

J

Jack, William, letters of, 147
Journal, paging of, vii.

K

Kayu Gadis, 203
Kedah, Annals of, 37
Kelantan, history of, 1
,, language of, 303
Kibessa simplex, 253
Kloss, C. B., on new Mammals, 269
Knema glaucescens, 263
Korinchi Peak, mammals and birds of, 269
Kuala Lumpur, origin of name, 35

L

Lagerstroemia floribunda, 254
Lambert, A. B., 200, 237
Lansium domesticum, 199, 247
,, montanum, 247
Lasia aculeata, 154, 268
Lasianthus attenuatus, 256
,, cyanocarpus, 256
Lecananthus erubescens, 255
Lepas, 285
Lepidopetalum Jackianum, 248
Leptospermum sp., 251
Leuconotis anceps, 258
Leucopogon malayanum, 219, 257
Lignum Emanum, 193
Lindsay, 172, 215
Linoceira purpurea, 258
Litsea cordata, 263
Lobelia, 234, 256
Loranthus coccineus, 179, 264
,, cylindricus, 235, 264
,, ferrugineus, 153, 235, 264
,, incarnatus, 264
,, patulus, 235, 264
,, retusus, 264
Loxonia, 233
,, acuminata, 260
Lucinaea Morinda, 194, 255
Lumnitzera coccinea, 165, 205, 250
Lumsdaine, Dr. J., 184, 228
Lun Drahman of Kelantan, 2, 14

M

Macacus cynomolgus, effect of Derris on, 132
„ nemestrinus, effect of Derris on, 132
Macfadyen, E., on name Kuala Lumpur, 35
McKenzie, Captain, 212, 236
Mahmud of Linggi, Sultan, 1
Malayan Miscellanies, 195, 211, 218, 225
„ Appendix to, 227, 229
Mallotus albus, 265
Mangifera caesia, 215, 248
„ foetida, 152, 154, 248
„ gandaria, 160
„ indica, poisonous, 197
„ quadrifida, 152, 163, 248
Mangosteen, 152, 217
Mansur, Sultan, 2, 14
Map, Society's, abandoned, vii
Marong Mahawangsa, Hikayat, 37
Marriott, H., on History of Trengganu, 1
Marsden, W., 203
Marsdenia volubilis, 258
Marumia nemorosa, 253
„ stellulata, 252
Medinilla alpestris, 234, 252
„ eximia, 233, 252
„ rubicunda, 252
Melaleuca Cajuputi, 160
„ Leucadendron, 163, 251
Melastoma decemfida, 230, 234
„ erectum, 252
„ malabathricum, 152, 234, 251
„ obvolutum, 251
„ polyanthum, 251
„ sanguineum, 252
Melia excelsa, 165, 246
Meliosma nitida, 248
Member list, xiii
Memecylon coeruleum, 185, 253
„ paniculatum, 253
Menangkabau, 127, 185, 232
Metroxylon Sagus, 166, 190, 268
Mezoneuron sumatranum, 188, 249
Micromelum hirsutum, 246
Middleton, Bishop T. F., 177
Millettia atropurpurea, 249
Mimusops Kauki, 153
„ sp., 257
Monkeys, effect of Derris on, 132
Morinda umbellata, 153, 163, 193, 256
Murraya caloxylon, 145
„ exotica, 189, 220, 246
„ paniculata, 220
„ sumatrana, 220
Mussaenda glabra 155, 255
Myrica aesculenta, 196, 265
Myristica fragrans, 263
Myrmecodia tuberosa, 231, 256

N

Naning, Wedding speech of, 25
Nelumbium speciosum, 152, 243
Nepenthes ampullaria, 163, 178, 262
„ gracilis, 163, 262
„ phyllamphora, 186, 262
„ Rafflesiana, 163, 178, 262
Nephelium lappaceum, 154, 248
Neuropeltis racemosa, 166, 216, 259
Nutmeg, 152, 184
Nymphaea stellata, 174, 175, 243

O

Ocimum basilicum, 262
Octas spicata, 268
Officers, past, x
Oncosperma filamentosum, 268
Ophiocephalus gachua, effect of Derris on, 130
Ophiorhiza heterophylla, 254
Oromys crociduroides, described, 271

P

Palmer, J., 236
Pancratium amboynense, 174, 267
Paper, Nepal, 214
Paracelastrus bivalvis 165, 247
Parinarium costatum, 250
„ Jackianum, 250
Pasania spicata, 188, 265
Patisna, 196, 198, 218
Paton, 214
Pemphis acidula, 178, 254
Pentaphragma begonifolium 165, 257
Pepys, W. E., On language of Kelantan, 303
Petaloma, 220
Phaleria capitata, 264
Phillips, W. E., 192
Photographic record, vii
Phyllagathis rotundifolia, 252
Pineapple, variegated, 152
Pisorhina vandewateri, described, 275
Pithecolobium bubalinum, 250
„ Clypearia, 165, 230, 250
„ lobatum, 159, 165, 250
Podocarpus imbricatus, 174, 265
„ neriifolia, 196, 265
„ Rumphii, 193
Poecilasma gigas, 282, 299
„ subcarinatum, 282
Pogonanthera pulverulenta, 253
Poisoning by Derris 129
Pollicipes, 286
„ villosus, 285
Pothos pinnatifida, 154
Prince, J., 223

Psilobium nutans, 256
,, tomentosum, 256
Psychotria malayana, 256
,, stipulacea, 256
,, viridiflora, 256
Pternandra coerulescens, 253
Pterospermum Jackianum, 245
Pterygota Roxburghii, 144
Pulau Nias, 221

Q

Quercus spicata, 188, 265
,, urceolaris, 265
Quisqualis densiflora, 251

R

Raffles' children, 168, 206, 234, 239
,, scientific assistants, 147, 185, 187, 201
,, zoological collections, 201, 205, 209, 211
Rafflesia Arnoldi, 203, 208, 262
Rambai, 158
Rambutan, 154
Randia anisophylla, 196, 220, 255
Rasamala, 183
Rauwolfia sumatrana, 258
Rhio, 1, 181
Rhizophora, 154
,, mucronata, 175, 250
Rhodamnia trinervia, 222, 251
Rhododendron malayanum, 234, 257
Rhopala attenuata, 226
,, moluccana, 226
Rice, 224
Ridley, H. N., on new plants, 139
Robinson, H. C., on new Mammals, 269
Rourea concolor, 248
Rubus alceaefolius, 152, 250
,, moluccanus, 152
Rules, xxvii
Rumphius, 236
Ryparosa Wallichii, described, 139

S

Sago palm, 190
Sagus Ruffia, 230
Salacia, 219, 221, 247
Salmond, Captain F., 235
Sandoricum indicum, 246
Saraca declinata, 216, 249
Saurauja sp., 244
,, tristyla, 197, 244
Scaevola Koenigii, 175, 256
Scalpellum albatrossianum, 282
,, alcockianum, 283
,, calcariferum, 283
,, gruvelii, 283
,, hamulus, 290
,, inerme, 283
,, laccadivicum, 283
Scalpellum lambda, 283
,, lavale, 283
,, magnum, 283
,, nudipes, 287
,, persona, 283, 285
,, pellicatum, 292
,, polymorphum, 283
,, rostratum, 285
,, rutilum, 285
,, sociabile, 284, 291
,, stearnsi, 283, 293
,, stratum, 290
,, valvulifer, 286
,, velutinum, 283
Scaphium affine, 144
,, Beccarianum, 144
,, linearicarpum, 144
,, longiflorum, described, 143
,, Wallichii, 144
Schizostachyum elegans described, 146
Schrebera swietenioides, 198, 258
Scillaelepas, 286
Sciurus tenuis altitudinis, described, 269
,, vanakeni, described, 270
Scyphyphora hydrophyllacea, 219, 255
Serilophus lunatus intensus, described, 276
Sideroxylon Brownii, 222
,, sp., 257
Singapore, early mention of, 127
,, founding of town, 161, 170
Slave trade of Nias, 224
Smilium peronii, 285
Smith, Christopher, 152, 189
Snik, Tuan, of Trengganu, 1
Sonerila erecta, 160, 162, 252
,, heterophylla, 252
,, moluccana, 162
,, paradoxa, 252
,, spp., 186, 252
Sphaeranthus africanus, 256
Sphenodesme pentandra, 184, 261
Stagmaria verniciflua, 229
Sterculia alata, 144
,, laevis, 244
,, rubiginosa, 245
Strophanthus Jackianus, 195, 218
Sturrock, A. S., on Kedah Annals, 37
Styrax Benzoin, 198, 257
,, serrulatum, 258
Sugar-loaf mountain, 233
Susum anthelminticum, 267

T

Tabernaemontana macrocarpa, 238
Tacca cristata, 161, 165, 174, 178, 267
,, sp., 228, 267
Telegraph cables, barnacles from, 281
Ternstroemia acuminata, 229, 244
,, montana, described, 141
,, serrata, 229, 244

Tetracera arborescens, 229, 242, 263
  ,, euryandra, 229
Tetralepas gigas, 298
Thaliella ornata, 285
Thetis' drinking cup, 180
Timonius Koenigii, 255
Tradescantia, 235, 267
Trengganu, history of, 1
Trigonostemon indicus, 230, 265
Tuba, fish poison, 129
Turdinulus epilepidotus dilutus, described, 276
Turdus indrapurao, described, 277
Tylophora grandiflora, 222
Tytler, John, 170

U

Uncaria Gambier, 254
  ,, lanosa, 196, 254
  ,, pilosa, 197
Urophyllum glabrum, 196, 255
  ,, villosum, 196, 255
Uvaria grandiflora, 197
  ,, Hamiltonii, 197
  ,, hirsuta, 243
  ,, purpurea, 243

V

Vaccinium sumatranum, 234, 257
Vitex pubescens, 261
Vitis angustifolia, 208, 247
  ,, racemifera, 247

W

Wallich, George C., 167, 205, 213, 231
Wallich, Nathaniel, 147, 149, 171, 178, 207, 239
Wallichia, 198
Waltheria indica, 145
Ward, Rev. N. M., 192, 237
Wedding speech, Naning, 25
Wilson, Dr. H. H., 187
Winter, Rev. C., 193
Wormia excelsa, 243
  ,, pulchella, 243
Wrightia dubia, 195, 218, 258

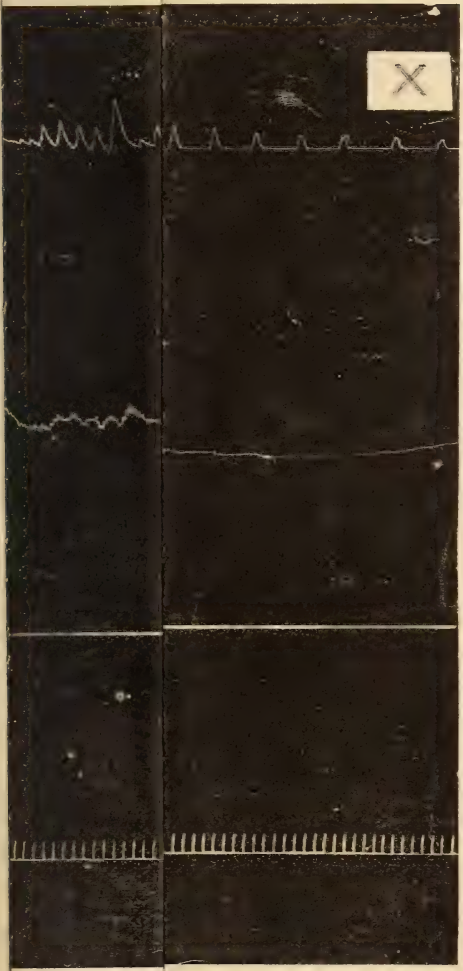
X

Xanthophyllum discolor, 140
  ,, hebecarpum, 140
  ,, puberulum, described, 140
Xyris anceps, 178
  ,, indica, 178, 267

Z

Zingiber gracile 266
Zoophyte from Singapore, 180

PLATE I.

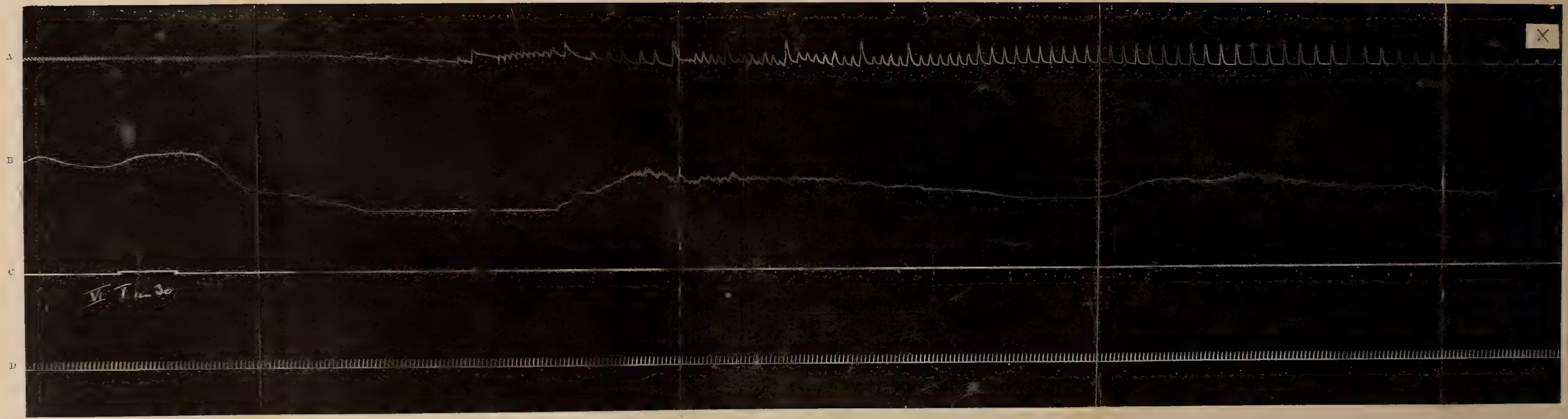


ecting 1 c.c. 1

ord of Respiratio
d Pressure in F

D. Blood Pressure in Femoral Artery. E. Time in Seconds.

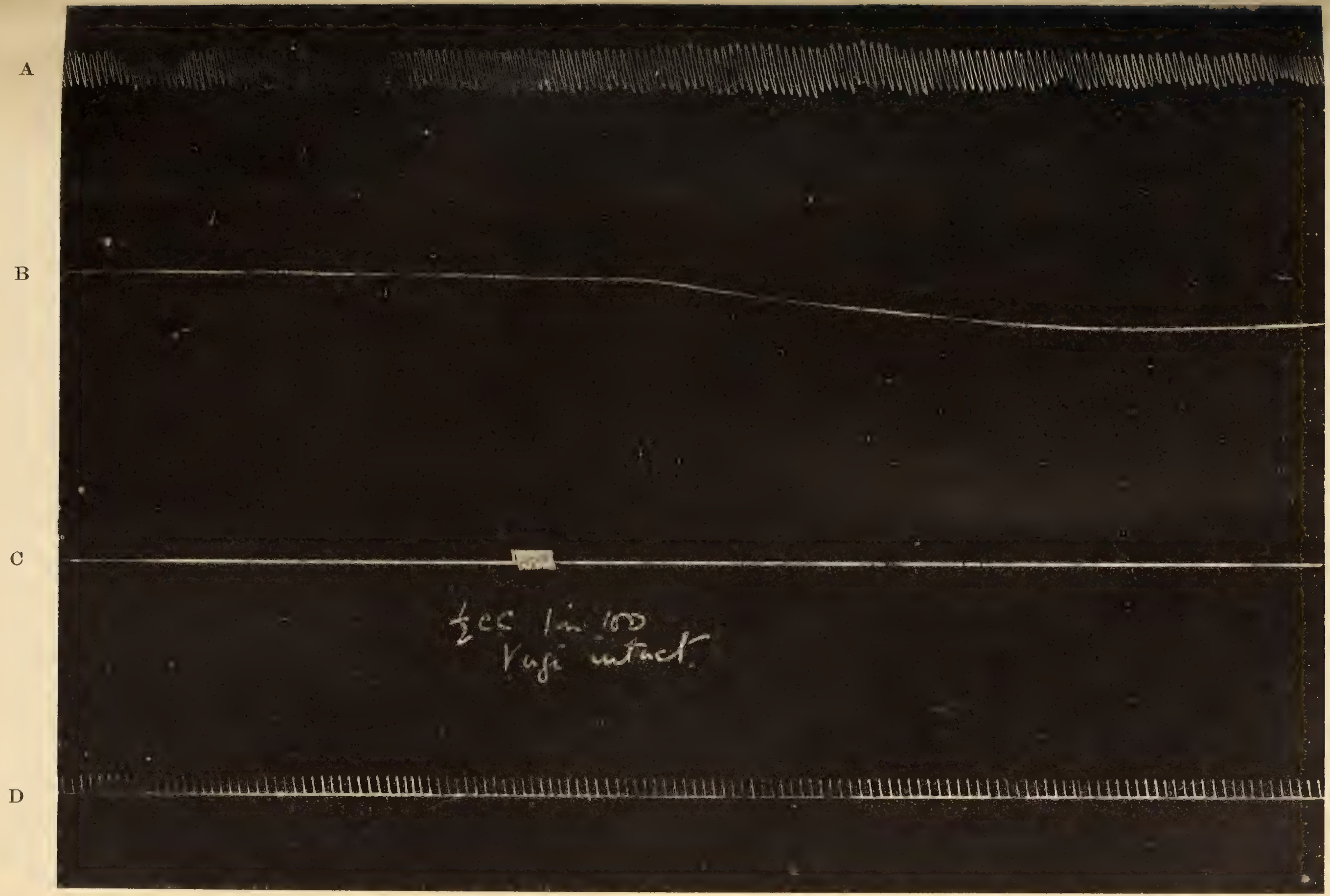
Plate I.



Effects on Respiration and Blood Pressure of injecting 1 c.c. 1 in 30 "Tuba" Poison into the Femoral Vein of a Monkey, under Chloroform Anæsthesia

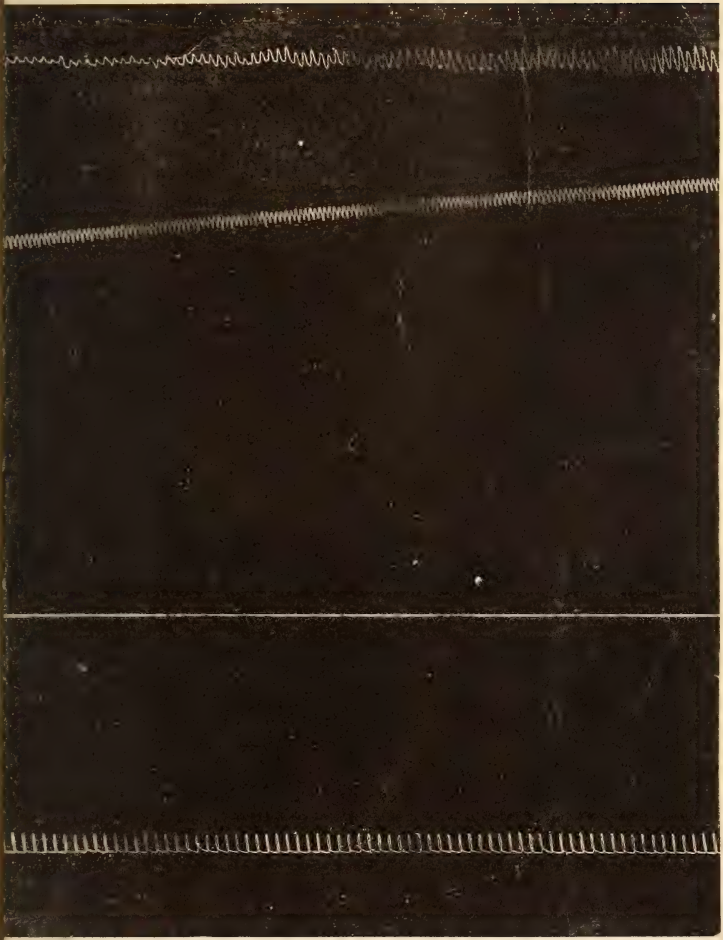
A. Record of Respiration.
B. Blood Pressure in Fomoral Artery.
C. Signal of Injection.
D. Time in Seconds.

PLATE II,



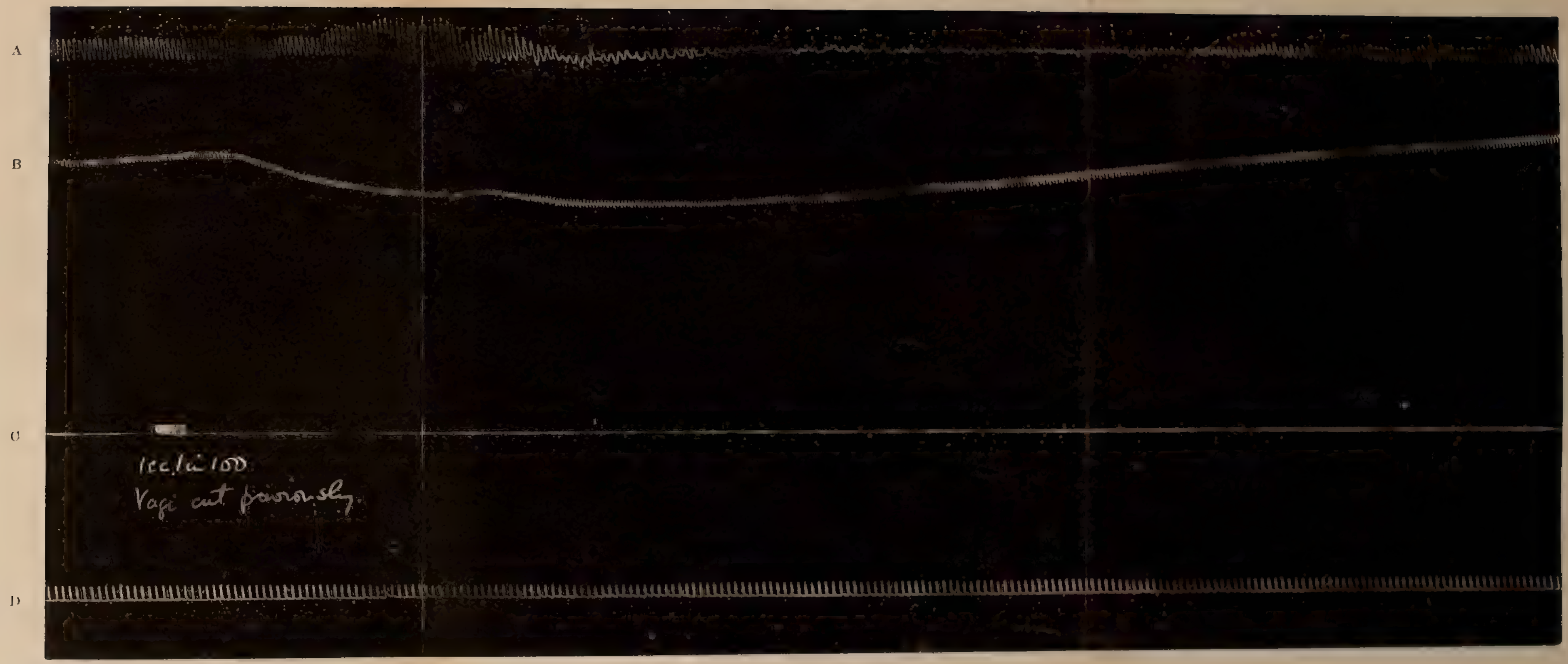
Effects on Respiration and Blood Pressure of injecting ½ c.c. 1 in 100 "Tuba" into the Femoral Vein of a Monkey under Chloroform Anæsthesia, Vagi intact.

A. Record of Respiration.
B. Blood Pressure in Femoral Artery.
C. Signal of Injection.
D. Time in Seconds.



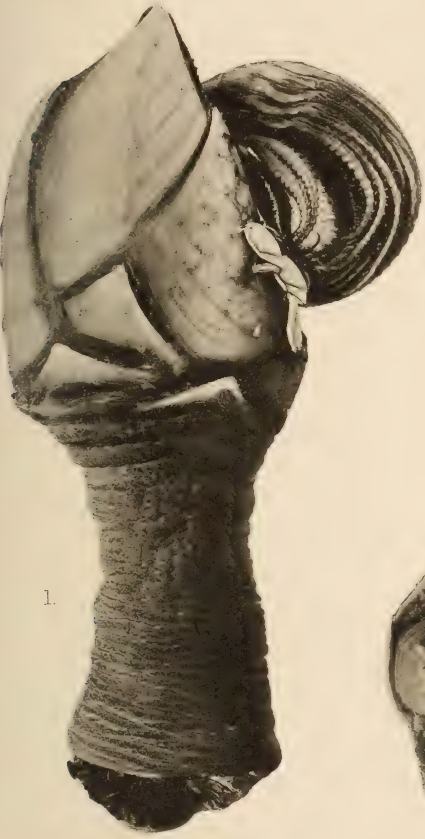
nal as the last, but with the Vagi cut.

Plate III.

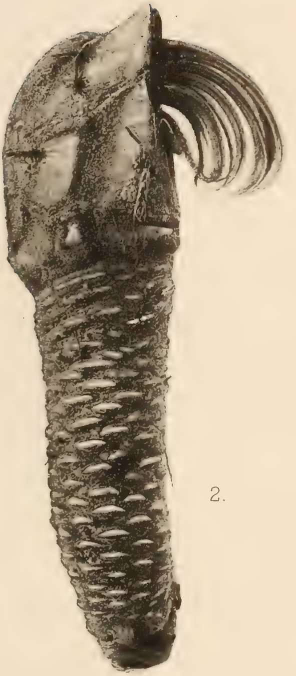


Effects on Respiration and Blood Pressure of injecting 1 c.c. 1 in 100 "Tuba" into the Femoral Vein of the same Animal as the last, but with the Vagi cut.

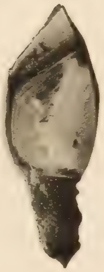
A. Record of Respiration.
B. Blood Pressure in Femoral Artery.
C. Signal of Injection.
D. Time in Seconds.



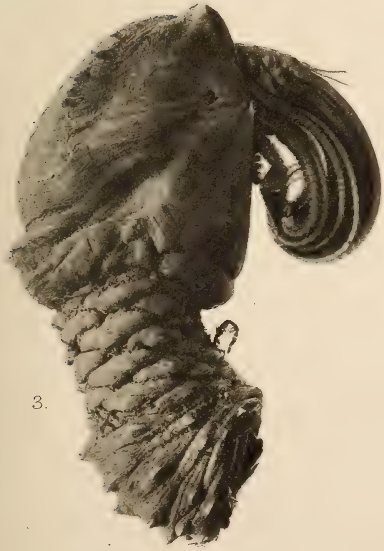
1.



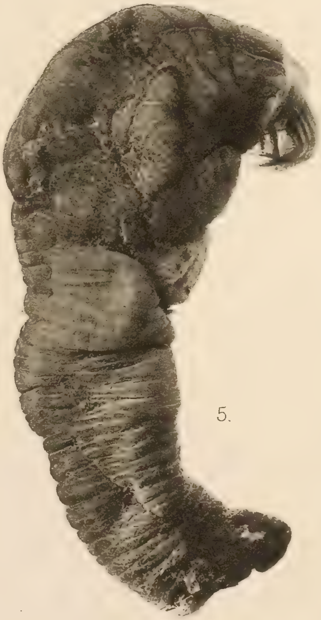
2.



4.



3.

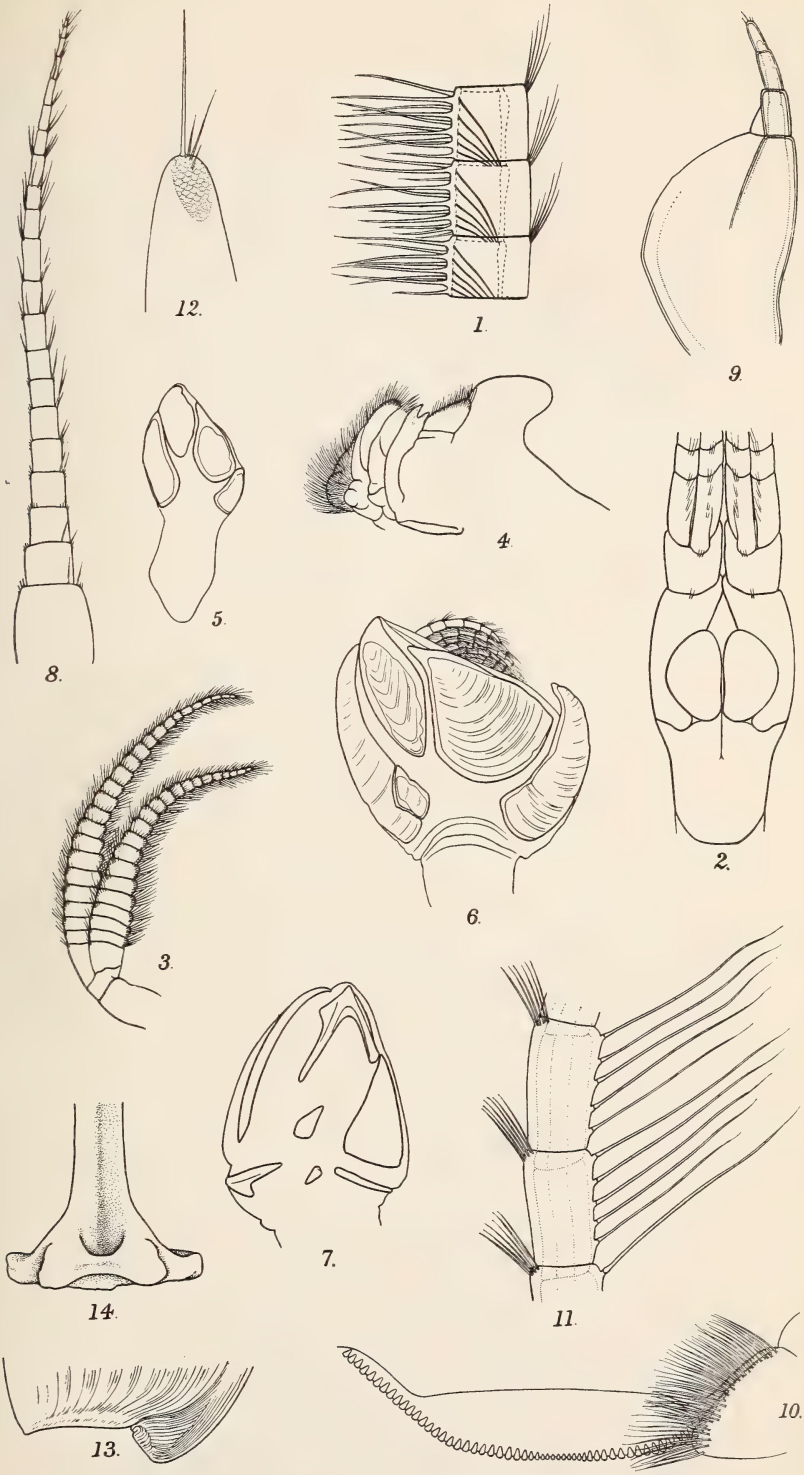


5.

S. C. Mondul, Photo.

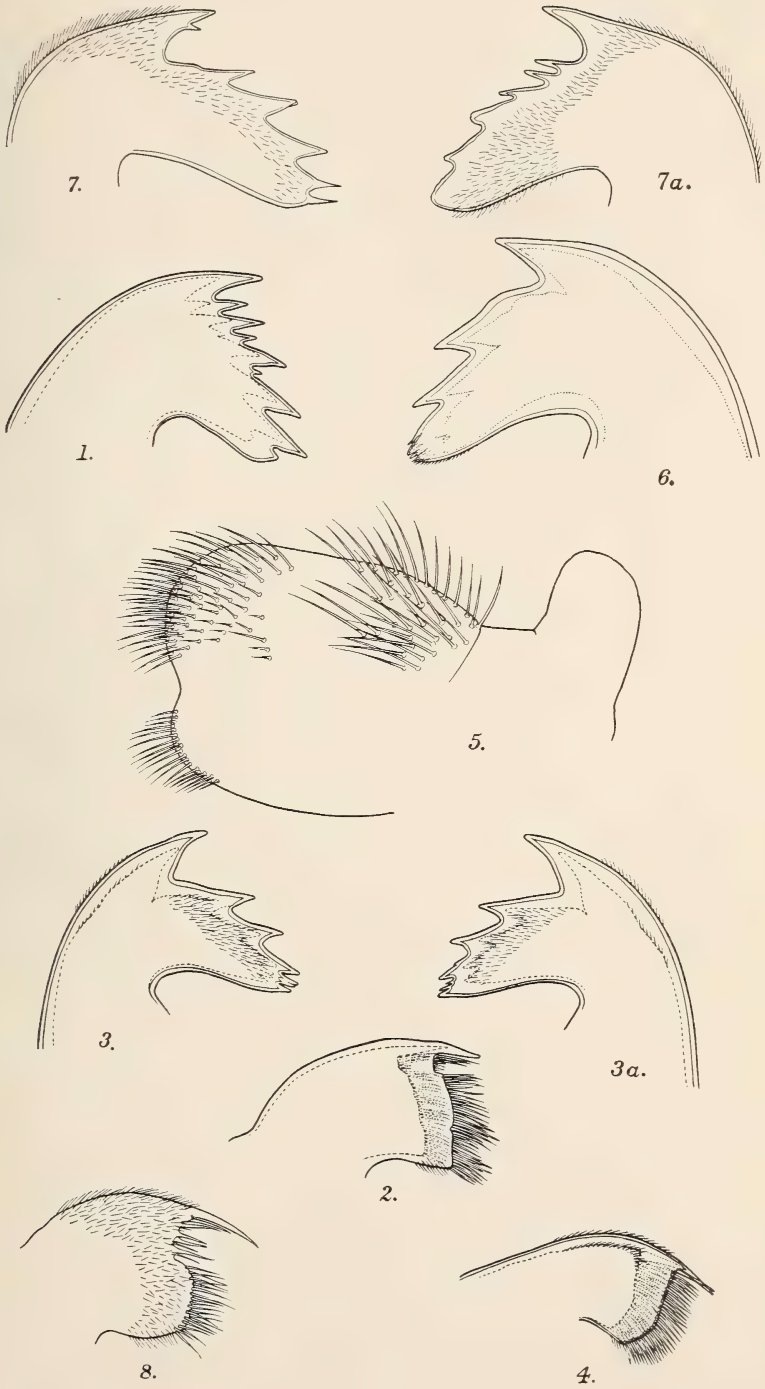
Photogravure _ Survey of India Offices, Calcutta, 1916.

MALAYAN DEEP-SEA CIRRIPEDIA.


12.
1.
9.
4.
5.
8.
6.
2.
3.
7.
14.
11.
13.
10.

S. C. Mondul, & D. N. Bagchi, *del.*

MALAYAN DEEP-SEA CIRRIPEDIA.


7.
7a.
1.
6.
5.
3.
3a.
2.
8.
4.

S. C. Mondul, & D. N. Bagchi, *del.*

MALAYAN DEEP-SEA CIRRIPEDIA.

CONTENTS

PAGE

Barnacles from deep-sea Telegraph Cables in the Malay Archipelago, *by N. Annandale* 281

A Kelantan Glossary, *by W. E. Pepys* 302

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION LIBRARIES

3 9088 01309 9783